Inductive Greek Primer

HARPER & CASTLE

NEW YORK : CINCINNATI : CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

CLASSICAL LIBRARY
COLORADO COLLEGE

No. 108929

Loaned by Mrs. M. C. Gile
488 H23i

Colorado College Library

488 H23i

Library No. 108929

From Classical Library

Received Feb. 1946

M. C. Gile.

WITHDRAWN

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/inductivegreekpr0000will

AN INDUCTIVE

GREEK PRIMER

BY

WILLIAM R. HARPER, PH.D., D.D.
PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

AND

CLARENCE F. CASTLE, PH.D.
OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

NEW YORK ·:· CINCINNATI ·:· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Copyright, 1893, by
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

H. & C. Ind. Gr. Prim.

Printed by
Wm. Ivison
New York, U. S. A.

488
H23i

PREFACE.

This volume, designed like the "Inductive Greek Method" for a beginner's Greek book, will meet the needs of younger pupils as well as of those to whom the "Method" is adapted. While retaining all the good features of the "Method," the "Primer" will be found to differ from it in several important particulars: —

1. The Lessons are shorter.

2. The "Notes" are more copious and elementary in character. In their preparation help has been obtained from the best American editions of the Anabasis, to which credit is here given.

3. The Lessons are based upon Chapters I.–VIII. of Book I. of the Anabasis instead of on the whole of Book I.

4. There are no references to the grammars in the first half of the volume. In this part, the "Primer" contains all the grammar that is needed. In the last half, the grammatical references which are found are intended partially for a topical review of principles already known to the pupil.

5. The "Exercises" are simpler. Greek sentences for translation are abandoned early in the book, and more attention is given to the text of the Anabasis, and to rendering in Greek, English sentences based upon it. Much practice is given in rendering English in Greek, orally, as well as in written exercises.

6. As the "Latin Primer" proceeds from English Grammar to Latin by drawing on the pupil's knowledge of English Grammar to illustrate and facilitate the acquisition of Latin Grammar, so this volume calls to the pupil's aid his knowledge of Latin Grammar. An elementary comparison between principles of Latin and Greek Grammar has been made in the "Introduction." This comparison has been supplemented by fuller statements and additional matter in the "Appendix." In the Lessons the Greek declensions are also built up partially by a comparison with the Latin. The study of Latin in our schools and academies so uniformly precedes that of Greek that it seems wise to let the former serve as the stepping-stone to the latter, by calling attention to the analogies between the two languages.

108929

7. The pupil is taught to read Greek in the order of the original, and attention is called in many places in the "Notes" to the significance of this order. In regard to this point, as well as others pertaining to the methods of instruction, the attention of teachers is directed to the "Suggestions to Teachers" (pp. 7–9).

8. The first occurrence of words is indicated in the text by full-faced type, and in the "Vocabulary" by the number of the chapter and section in which the word occurs.

9. This volume articulates with the "Greek Prose Composition" of the same authors. The pupils who complete the "Primer" are prepared to take up the exercises of the "Composition" based on Book I., Chapter IX., of the Anabasis, or, if it is desired to defer reading Chapter IX. because of its difficulty, to proceed to the exercises based on Chapter X.

10. In the treatment of the declensions, the pupil's attention is first called to the "facts" of the second declension for a twofold reason: more second declension forms occur in the text of the first few Lessons than forms belonging to other declensions, and this declension is naturally the easiest for a beginner. Moreover, it is easy to show the similarity between this declension and the Latin second declension. The first declension is treated next. Then the pupil's attention is directed to verb-forms, review of the first two declensions, and adjectives and other words declined according to the vowel-declension, while the third declension is gradually built up from the text read. By this plan of procedure the pupil will have sufficient time to fix in memory the forms of the vowel-declension without confounding them with those of the consonant-declension.

In the preparation of this volume we have received much help from Professor E. B. Clapp, of Yale University, Mr. I. B. Burgess, Mr. F. M. Bronson, and Mr. M. C. Gile, of the Morgan Park Academy of the University of Chicago, and Dr. F. J. Miller and Mr. E. J. Goodspeed, of the University of Chicago. The constant and efficient aid of the editors of the American Book Company has added not a little to whatever of merit the volume may possess.

The "Primer" is issued with the hope that it may aid in making the elementary work in the study of Greek less a task and more a work of love. We shall be grateful to any who will kindly indicate to us any errors which the book may contain, or who will suggest improvements.

William R. Harper.
Clarence F. Castle.

The University of Chicago,
August, 1893.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
List of Abbreviations	6
Suggestions to Teachers	7
Introduction	11
Lessons	23
Text of Anabasis I. i.–viii.	301
Word-for-Word Parallel	337
Free Translation	343
Appendix	345
Vocabulary	387

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
Map showing Xenophon's Route	300
ὁπλίτης	301
Gold Daric	303
πελταστής with Amazonian shield	305
Paris with τόξον	306
στλεγγίδες	306
Soldier in χιτών	307
Diana in χιτών	307
Greek Helmets	308
Persian War Chariot	308
Greek War Chariot	308
σαλπιγκτής	309
Map of Menon's Route	309
Section of τριήρης	310
ἀκῑνάκης	311
Map of Vicinity of Issus	317
Ostrich	321
Mill and Section of Upper Stone (ὄνος ἀλέτης)	322
Royal Necklace	322
Royal Bracelet	322
σκηπτοῦχος	327
δρεπανηφόρος	329
θώραξ	331
προμετωπίδιον	332
μάχαιραι	332
Persian Foot Soldiers	332
Diagram of Position of Troops before the Battle of Cunaxa	333
δόρυ	335

ABBREVIATIONS.

A., *acc.*, accusative.
Ab., *abl.*, ablative.
abs., absolute.
act., active.
adj., adjective.
adv., adverb.
Anab., Anabasis.
aor., aorist.
App., Appendix.
art., article.
attrib., attributive.
cf., *confer*, compare.
Chap., Chapter.
circum., circumstantial.
com., commonly.
comp., comparative, compound, composition.
cond., condition, conditional.
conj., conjunction, conjugation.
contr., contract, contracted.
D., *dat.*, dative.
decl., declension.
demons., demonstrative.
dep., deponent.
dir., direct.
disc., discourse.
Dor., Doric.
e.g., *exempli gratia*, for example.
encl., enclitic.
Eng., English.
etc., *et cetera*, and so forth.
ff., following.
fem., feminine.
foll., followed.
fr., from.
freq., frequently.
fut., future.
G., Goodwin's Greek Grammar.
G., *gen.*, genitive.
gen., general, generally.
gend., gender.
gov., governs, governing.
Gram., Grammar.
H., Hadley and Allen's Grammar.
hist., historical.
i.e., *id est*, that is.
imp., *imperf.*, imperfect.
impv., *imv.*, imperative.
ind., *indic.*, indicative.
indef., indefinite.
indir., indirect.
infin., infinitive.
Int., Introduction.
intr., *intrans.*, intransitive.
Lat., Latin.
lit., literal, literally.
Less., Lesson.
masc., masculine.
mid., middle.
N., *nom.*, nominative.
N., Note.
neg., negative.
neut., neuter.
obj., object.
Obs., Observation.
opt., optative.
p., *pp.*, page, pages.
part., partitive.
partc., participle.
pass., passive.
per., *pers.*, person.
perf., perfect.
plu., *plur.*, plural.
plup., pluperfect.
poss., *possess.*, possessive, possessor, possession.
postpos., postpositive.
pred., predicate.
prep., preposition.
pres., present.
pro., *pron.*, pronoun.
reg., regularly.
rel., relative.
Rem., Remark.
sc., *scilicet*, supply.
sing., singular.
sub., *subj.*, subject.
subj., *subjunc.*, subjunctive.
subst., substantive.
superl., superlative.
suppl., supplementary.
trans., translate, transitive.
V., *voc.*, vocative.
viz., namely.
Vocab., Vocabulary.
w., with.

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

[It is hoped that the following suggestions may prove helpful to those who use the "inductive method" for the first time.]

1. Use one third of the time of each recitation in directing the attention of the class to the "Text" of the "advance" lesson for the following day:

(*a*) Let the teacher read the text aloud expressively, with proper emphasis and inflections. (*b*) Let different pupils read the Greek aloud until it has been read several times. (*c*) Let the pupils be asked to give in their own words the thought which they have obtained from the reading of the Greek. (*d*) Ask the pupils for any word or words in the text, which they have had before. (*e*) Call the attention of the class to some word in previous lessons which suggests the meaning of a word in the text under consideration. (*f*) Suggest the division of compounds into their elements, and thus strive to draw from the pupil the meaning of the word. (*g*) If possible, call the attention of the class to some English word which will suggest the meaning of the Greek word under consideration. (*h*) Call to your aid any other language *with which you know that the class is familiar*, if thereby the meaning of words or idioms will be illustrated; but care should be taken to cite nothing which will confuse the pupil's mind. (*i*) Until the pupils know the paradigms call forth from them the cases, tenses, modes, parts of speech, etc., in the "Text" by analysis of the words. (*j*) Use any method which you can devise to call out all that the pupils know about the "Text," but do not stop with their knowledge; under your guidance the class will make new attainments in knowledge, and that, too, *for themselves*, and in such an entertaining way that much of it will be impressed indelibly upon their minds. (*k*) Do not permit the class to use the "Notes" until you have gone over the Greek with them as before described. (*l*) Do not tell the class anything which you can make them tell you by a little guidance. (*m*) In the early stages care must be taken to suggest only those "facts" which are closely connected with the "facts" of previous lessons.

2. Do not fail to have the class read the Greek of each "advance" lesson *aloud*, and insist that it be done with facility and expression.

3. Require each pupil so to master the text that he can repeat or write the original accurately and readily from the English parallel.

4. When all books in the class have been closed, read the Greek text of the "immediate review lesson" (i.e., review of the advance lesson of the day before,) to the class, and let them translate it at hearing. This should be a *daily exercise*, or nearly so. (See 1.)

5. For the first twenty or thirty "Lessons," let the class read aloud in Greek at each recitation as much as possible of the "Text" of all preceding lessons. A portion of this work may be done in concert. Ascertain whether the members of the class apprehend the thought by calling upon them for the thought expressed in their own language — *not a translation.*

6. As soon as the pupils have made sufficient progress, point out to them the reasons for the order of arrangement of the words in the original. Show them that the Greek order of words is as natural for the Greek as the English order for us. Many students have gone through college with the notion that the words of the Greek authors which they have read are arranged without regard for beauty or fitness.

7. Let every point in the "Notes" be called up in the class-room in one form or another.

8. Require the pupil to memorize the *substance* of the "Observations," if not the *language*. The "Notes" are intended to be read, the "Observations" to be memorized.

9. The "Vocabularies" should be mastered so as to be recited from English into Greek as well as from Greek into English.

10. In translating English into Greek, insist upon it that the pupils model the sentences after the Greek original. It may be found advisable, especially at first, to require each student to write out the "Exercises for Oral Translation" on paper, and then, after the sentences have been corrected before the whole class, to call for the exercises orally as a part of the review lesson. The "Exercises for Written Translation" should always be treated in this way.

11. The English parallel will be found especially helpful in acquiring vocabulary, pronunciation, and order of the Greek words. Do not neglect suggestion 3.

12. Divide the "Lessons" in the "Primer" to suit the needs and capacity of the class; the "Primer" contains matter for the work of a school year.

13. The "Review Lessons" are very important: subdivide them to suit the needs of the class.

14. Require the mastery of each particular paradigm the first time it

occurs. Do not pass to a new one till this is accomplished. If necessary, assign a very short "advance" lesson, and insist that the particular paradigm in question *be learned*.

15. As a general rule assign short "advance" lessons and much review. Nothing is gained, but much is lost, by advancing too fast with beginners. *But keep your class busy!*

16. Do not tell your pupils everything which can be said about a word when it first occurs. Let what you say be closely connected with what the pupils already know. In making general statements drawn from the "Text" already studied, say nothing about exceptions which may occur subsequently. Just enough is better than too much.

17. To avoid monotony, vary the work from time to time: e.g., give short English or Greek sentences based upon the lesson, and let the pupil translate them at hearing; give a free translation of the lesson and let the pupil give the Greek at hearing; put English sentences on the board, and let the pupils put them into Greek on paper or on the board; occasional written recitations of the nature of short examinations are very helpful.

18. Study your class, and employ the methods which seem best to *you* under the circumstances.

19. The pupil should be taught to comprehend the meaning of the Greek in the order in which the words stand in the text, and not by rearranging the Greek words in the order of the English translation, nor by first finding the subject and then the predicate or *vice versa*.[1] (See 6.) To accomplish this will require considerable time, and too much must not be expected of a beginner; yet it is very important that the pupil make a right beginning.

20. The pupil should also be taught to translate in *idiomatic English, not* in a word for word parallel. To read and to understand Greek in the original order of the words, *without translation*, is of transcendent importance to the student of Greek; but to translate the Greek *into English* is a very different, though hardly less important, matter.

21. When the attainments of the class are sufficient to justify it, easy passages from other parts of the Anabasis may be put on the board for them to translate at sight. The discovery that they can perform this task will encourage the class, and at the same time the teacher can ascertain their habits in regard to translating an advance lesson. In an exercise of this sort an opportunity is afforded the teacher to correct bad habits of study, and to show to the student the proper method of preparing a language lesson.

[1] It is hoped that the teacher is familiar with Professor Hale's *Art of Reading Latin*; the same method should be used in reading Greek.

INTRODUCTION.

1. In beginning the study of the Greek language, it is useful to observe that it is closely related to the Latin language, and resembles it in many particulars. In the following pages it is proposed to indicate briefly some of the most evident of these similarities. A few other facts about the Greek language and its treatment in grammars, which do not strictly fall under the head of similarities in language, are incorporated here, either because they seem to be necessary as preliminaries, or because it will be convenient to make subsequent references to them.

2. Letters. — The Romans are indebted to the Greeks for their alphabet. The Greeks derived their alphabet from the Phœnicians. Many striking resemblances are found in the two alphabets, and the following characters occur in both: **A, B, E, Z, H, I, K, M, N, O, P, T, X.** Several other letters of the Greek alphabet differ so slightly from their Roman equivalents that they will be easily recognized, e.g., α, β, δ, ϵ, ι, κ, ο, ς, τ. What are the Roman letters which correspond to these letters? Still other letters, when placed side by side with the Latin, show essential similarities (see Appendix 1). The Greek alphabet has twenty-four letters. How many has the Latin?

3. Vowels and Consonants. — In both Latin and Greek the letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*. The vowels may be *long*, *short*, or *doubtful*, i.e., sometimes long and at other times short. The usual marks for quantity, long ¯, short ˘, are not needed in Greek except to mark *doubtful* vowels; for some vowels are always short, others always long. Quantity thus becomes a simple matter.

4. Sounds of Vowels. — The Greek vowel-sounds are the same as the Latin (according to the Roman pronunciation), except that Greek has one sound for which no equivalent is found in Latin, the sound of French **u**.

5. Diphthongs. — Two vowel-sounds often unite in a single syllable in Greek as well as in Latin. The name *diphthong* (a Greek word meaning *double-sound*) is given to this combination. The last vowel of a diphthong is usually a *close* vowel; the first one is an *open* vowel (or *medial* by some classifications in Latin). In the case of **ui** two close vowels unite to form the diphthong, which has its Greek equivalent. The Appendix will supply more complete details.

6. Sounds of Consonants. — Most of the Greek consonants have Latin equivalents. The Appendix will supply details.

7. Classification of Consonants. — The Roman *liquids*, **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, represent the Greek *liquids*. The *labials*, **p**, **b**, **ph**; *linguals*, **t**, **d**, **th**; *palatals*, **c** or **k**, **g**, **ch**, — all are represented by corresponding *mutes* in Greek. The *nasals*, **m**, **n**, **ng**; *double consonants*, **x** (= **cs**), **z** (= **ds**), have their equivalents in Greek. See Appendix.

8. Vowel and Consonant Changes. — The familiar terms *contraction*, *interchange*, and *lengthening* of vowels will be met with in the study of Greek. These changes, as well as many euphonic changes in consonants, can be best illustrated when they appear in the "Lessons" which follow.

9. Syllables. — A word has as many syllables as it contains vowels and diphthongs: the last syllable of a word is called the *ultima;* the next to the last, the *penult;* the one before the penult, the *antepenult:* true in Latin and in Greek.

10. Quantity. — A syllable is long by *nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: equally true for both languages.

11. Accent. — Accent is practically a stress of voice upon a particular syllable. Latin does not need special marks of accent; for the rule, "Accent the *penult* when *long*, otherwise the *antepenult*," is sufficient. Accent in Greek, however, is not so simple

a matter: There are three accent marks which are sometimes seen in our "Readers" and "Primers" to mark "inflection"; they are, *acute* ´, *circumflex* ˆ, *grave* `. The rules for their use will be determined later. Practically all of these accents indicate a slight stress of voice upon the syllable over which they stand. *In Latin the quantity of the penult determines the accent, in Greek* (generally) *that of the ultima.*

12. Proclitics. — Words which attach themselves so closely to a following word as not to have an accent of their own are called proclitics (*leaning forward*), e.g., **in** in the phrase **in pártēs.** There are proclitics in Greek. See Appendix.

13. Enclitics. — Words which *lean on* a preceding word and have no separate accent are called *enclitics*, e.g., **que** in **miniméque.** This statement is also true of Greek. See Appendix.

14. Parts of Speech. — In Latin and in Greek the same parts of speech are found, except that the Greek adds the *definite article* to the list found in the Latin.

15. Inflection. — *Nouns*, *adjectives*, *pronouns*, and *verbs* are inflected to show their relation to other words in the sentence, thus giving the same word different forms for different relations; e.g., *Gallus* (nom.), *Gallum* (acc.), represent a *Gaul* in different relations, the nominative as *actor*, the accusative as *acted upon.* Inflection is effected by adding certain endings to a common part called the stem.

16. Properties of Nouns. — They are *gender*, *number*, and *case.* This applies to *adjectives* and *pronouns*, and to the Greek *article.*

17. Gender. — There are three genders, *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*, in both Latin and Greek.

18. Numbers. — In addition to the *singular* and *plural* numbers which Latin and Greek have in common, there is a *dual* number in Greek, used of two only; yet the *plural* is often used instead of the *dual.*

19. Cases. — There are six cases in Latin: *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, and *ablative.* Greek has all of these except the *ablative.* They correspond exactly in most of their uses, as will be seen under syntax.

20. Stem and Case-endings. — The stem is that part of a word which is common to all of its cases and from which all of the cases are formed by adding case-endings. (See 15.) The union of stem and case-endings causes many changes. See declensions in Appendix.

21. Stem-endings and Declensions. — In Latin there are stems ending in **a, o, i, u,** and **consonants.** In nouns of the first declension the stem ends in **a,** of the second in **o,** of the third in **consonants** and in **i.**

In like manner in Greek, the stem of first declension nouns ends in an **a**[1]-sound, the stem of second declension nouns ends in an **o**-sound, and third declension nouns include stems ending in **consonants** and in an **i**[2]-sound (Greek includes also stems which end in the vowel corresponding to French **u**). For further particulars, see Appendix.

22. Cases alike. — In the singular of Latin and Greek nouns the nominative and vocative are often alike, and in the plural always so. The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuters are alike, and in the plural they end in an **a**[1]-sound.

23. Similarities in Case-endings. — The Latin case-endings correspond more or less closely to the Greek in declensions where the stems are alike in the two languages; thus stems ending in the **a**-sound, **o**-sound, and **consonants** show many similarities in declension. The student will do well to remember this fact, and to wait for further particulars in connection with the "Lessons."

24. Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension. — Adjectives like *bonus*, ending in **-us, -a, -um** in the nominative singular, follow the second or **o**-declension in the masculine and neuter, and the first or **a**-declension in the feminine. In like manner in Greek, adjectives of the vowel-declension follow the **o**-declension in the masculine and neuter, and the **a**-declension in the feminine.

25. Adjectives of the Third Declension. — In Latin they may have, (1) a different form for each gender, (2) masculine and feminine alike, or (3) one form for all genders. The masculine and feminine

[1] Pronounced like *a* in *father*.

[2] Pronounced like *i* in *pique*.

in Greek may be alike; but when they differ, the feminine follows the first declension.

26. Comparison of Adjectives. — Adjectives are compared by means of certain terminations added to the *stem of the positive* in Latin; comp. **-ior, -ior, -ius**; superl. **-issimus, -issima, -issimum.**

In Greek one method of comparison consists in adding certain endings to the *root.* See Appendix.

A more common method of comparison in Greek is to add certain other endings to the *masculine stem of the positive.* See Appendix.

27. Cardinal Numbers. — Many of the Latin and Greek cardinal numbers are identical, and they are partly declinable and partly indeclinable. Compare the following: —

Latin:	duo,	trēs,	sex,	septem,	octo,	decem,
Greek equivalent:	dyo,[1]	treis,	hĕx,	hépta,	ŏctō,	dĕka,

Latin:	ūndecim,	duodecim,	tredecim,	centum.
Greek equivalent:	hĕndĕka,	dōdĕka,	treis-(kai)-dĕka,	hĕkatŏn.

28. Pronouns. — The Latin *personal, relative, demonstrative, interrogative, indefinite, indefinite-relative,* and *reflexive* pronouns have equivalents in Greek. The Greek pronouns are inflected, and in many points show resemblances to the Latin in formation and inflection. See Appendix.

VERBS.

The following similarities between Latin and Greek verbs are noticeable: —

29. Voice. — *Active, passive,* and *deponent* verbs are common to both languages. Greek adds a *middle* voice, which represents the subject as acting (1) *on himself,* (2) *for himself,* or (3) in a manner but slightly different from the active voice.

30. Modes. — The Greek language has one more mode than the Latin, viz., the *optative.* The other modes are the *indicative, subjunctive, imperative,* and the *infinitive* and *participle,* which are essentially nouns.

[1] The Greek numerals are here transliterated into Roman letters for the sake of comparison.

31. Tenses. — The *present, imperfect, future, perfect, future perfect,* and *pluperfect* are common to both Latin and Greek. The Greek has a special tense, the *aorist,* for indefinite action. The tenses may be divided into *principal* (those which express present or future time) and *historical* (those which express past time).

32. Inflection. — The different forms of the verb are made by adding to the different stems certain *endings,* which in finite modes distinguish the different persons and numbers. These are sometimes called personal endings.

33. Formation of Tenses. — The different tenses are formed from a common basis, which may be called a *theme* or *verb-stem,* by the addition of suffixes or prefixes. These prefixes and suffixes constitute the "*formative elements of the verb.*" They may distinguish *voice, mode, tense, person,* and *number,* which are the properties of verbs. Starting with the *verb-stem* **ama,** the present tense can be formed by adding the personal endings, **(o), s, t, mus, tis, nt.** In a similar manner the present tense of the Greek verbs is formed and inflected. If a Latin imperfect is desired, the endings **bam, bās, bat, bāmus, bātis, bant** must be added to the stem. The Greek imperfect is formed from the theme by means of a *prefix* and by the addition of *personal endings.* The Latin future employs endings of its own; e.g., **bo, bis, bit, bimus, bitis, bunt.** In like manner the Greek employs the **s**-sound with a vowel and personal endings. This will illustrate briefly the way in which tenses are formed. The "Lessons" and Appendix will give a complete survey.

34. Formation of Modes. — Latin **amem, amārem, amāre, amāto,** all contain certain elements which distinguish them as belonging to certain modes. So in the Greek verb there are *mode-suffixes,* to distinguish other modes from the indicative.

35. Formation of Voice. — In Latin there are different sets of endings for the active and the passive voice. In a similar manner *active, middle,* and *passive* voices are distinguished in Greek.

The foregoing statements have helped to show the close relationship which exists between Latin and Greek words in etymology. If the attention be directed to the subject of syntax, this relation-

ship will be exhibited still more clearly. In the paragraphs which follow, unless otherwise specified, all statements are true of both Latin and Greek.

SYNTAX.

36. Sentences. — Syntax treats of the construction of sentences. Every complete sentence must have a *subject* and a *predicate*. Both subject and predicate may each be a single word, or indefinitely expanded by modifiers of different kinds. As the simple subject must be a noun or something used as a noun, its modifiers are adjectives, adjective phrases, and adjective clauses. The modifiers of the predicate, the basis of which must be a verb, are adverbs, adverbial phrases, or adverbial clauses; but a transitive verb has an object which must be a noun or its equivalent, hence the object may be modified like the subject. A predicate noun may take modifiers like any other noun.

37. Classification of Sentences. — Sentences may be classified as *simple* and *complex*. A simple sentence consists of a single sentence. A complex sentence consists of a principal sentence modified by one or more dependent sentences. Two or more simple sentences may be united by coördinate conjunctions; such sentences are often called *compound* sentences.

Again, sentences may be distinguished as —

1. *Declarative:* those which make an assertion.
2. *Interrogative:* those which ask questions.
3. *Imperative:* those which have the form of a command, an exhortation, or an entreaty.
4. *Exclamatory:* those which make an exclamation.

38. The Nominative Case. — This case is used (1) as subject of a finite verb, or (2) predicate with intransitive or passive verbs, or with the copula (verb *to be*). Nominative is applied to this case because it is the form of the word (i.e., case,) which *names* the subject of the sentence.

39. The Accusative Case. — This case expresses that upon which the action of the verb falls. It is therefore the case of the *direct*

object. The object may repeat the verb in the form of a noun: it is then called a *cognate accusative.* Verbs of *asking* (and others) may have *two objects,* one of the person and one of the thing. Verbs of *making* (and others) may have *two objects* of the same person or thing; or one of these objects may be regarded as a *predicate accusative.* The accusative may specify that to which something applies, *accusative of specification.* In many words and phrases the accusative has the force of an adverb, *adverbial accusative.* The answer to the question "How long?" is expressed by the accusative, *accusative of extent.* The accusative is used *after prepositions.*

40. The Genitive Case. — The genitive case is the form of a word which is regularly used to express the relation of one noun to another. It corresponds to the English *possessive* or "*of*" *with its object.* It is most commonly used with nouns, but is also used with verbs, adjectives, and adverbs.

41. Genitive with Nouns. — When the genitive limits or qualifies a noun it may express various relations, e.g.: —

(*a*) *Possession* or *authorship.*
(*b*) The subject of an action, *Subjective Genitive.*
(*c*) The object of an action, *Objective Genitive.*
(*d*) The whole of which a part is taken, *Partitive Genitive.*
(*e*) The measure, value, or size of something, *Genitive of Measure.*

These are not the only relations, but they illustrate the use of the genitive with substantives.

42. Genitive with Verbs. — The genitive in Greek has to do partial service for the Latin ablative, so that its uses are more numerous and varied in Greek than in Latin. Some of the uses which are common to both languages are: —

(*a*) With verbs of *remembering, forgetting,* and *reminding.*
(*b*) With verbs of *judicial action.*
(*c*) With verbs of *emotion.*
(*d*) With verbs of *plenty* and *want.*

Other uses of the genitive in Greek may be illustrated from English expressions, *to taste of, take* (some) *of, take hold of,* etc.;

the action of the verb affects the object only in part: all such verbs may take the genitive in Greek, hence the genitive is used with —

(*e*) Verbs of *sharing*.

(*f*) Verbs of *touching, taking hold of, beginning*.

(*g*) Verbs of *aiming*, *reaching*, and *attaining*.

(*h*) Verbs of *ruling* and *leading*.

(*i*) Many verbs expressing action of the *senses* and the *mind*; e.g., *taste*, *smell*, *hear*, *remember* (cf. *a*), *forget*, *care for*, *spare*, *neglect*, and *desire*.

(*j*) With verbs of *valuing*, *buying*, and *selling*.

In its *ablative use*, the genitive is used with

(*k*) Verbs of *separation*.

(*l*) Verbs of *superiority* and *inferiority*.

(*m*) Many verbs to express *source*.

43. Genitive with Adjectives. — In Latin many adjectives govern the genitive, and in Greek adjectives which correspond either in derivation or meaning to verbs which govern the genitive are used with the genitive.

44. Genitive with Adverbs. — In Greek adverbs derived from adjectives which govern the genitive may take the genitive; also many adverbs of place.

45. Genitive with Prepositions. — The genitive is used after several prepositions. In this way this case helps to supply the lack of the ablative.

46. Genitive after Comparatives. — Comparatives without the word for *than* take the ablative in Latin, the genitive in Greek.

47. The Dative Case. — This is the case of the indirect object corresponding to the English *to* or *for* with an object. It may be used with *verbs* both transitive and intransitive, and with *adjectives*. The *possessor* with the verb *to be* is expressed by the dative. Many *verbs compounded with prepositions* govern the dative.

The dative in Greek also does partial service for the Latin ablative, thus —

(*a*) Words of *association* and *likeness* take the dative.
(*b*) *Instrument, means, manner,* and *cause* are expressed by the dative.
(*c*) *Time at which* is expressed by the dative.
(*d*) The dative is used with prepositions.

48. Agreement of Adjectives. — An adjective must agree with its noun in *gender, number,* and *case.*

49. Agreement of Relative. — A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in *number* and *gender.*

50. Agreement of Verb with Subject. — A verb must agree with its subject-nominative in *person* and *number.* But the *Greek neuter plural* has its *verb in the singular:* there are exceptions in Xenophon.

51. The Subject of an Infinitive is in the accusative case.

52. Tenses. — The Greek tenses do not simply distinguish *time,* as they do in English. Besides this they show whether the *action* of the verb is a progressive one, i.e., *continued* or *repeated; completed;* or merely brought to pass, i.e., *indefinite.*

The distinction of *action* belongs to all modes, while the distinction of *time* is nearly confined to the indicative; other modes express time only as it is *implied in the connection.*

53. The Tenses of the Indicative Mode. — The *present, imperfect, future, future perfect,* and *pluperfect* in both Latin and Greek are, in the main, alike in usage. Exceptions will be noted elsewhere. The Greek *perfect* corresponds to the Latin *perfect definite,* and the Greek *aorist* (meaning *indefinite*) does duty instead of the *perfect indefinite* of the Latin.

The present and imperfect represent the action as *continued* or *repeated;* the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect as *completed;* the aorist and future as *indefinite* (cf. 52).

The present and perfect express *present* time; the imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect, *past* time; the future and future perfect, *future* time.

54. Tenses in Other Modes. — In the other modes, subjunctive, optative, imperative, and infinitive, the tenses do not of themselves designate time. It may be *implied* in the connection.

The present denotes an action simply as *continued* or *repeated.*

The aorist denotes an action simply as *brought to pass,* i.e., *indefinite.*

The perfect denotes an action simply as *completed.*

55. The Participle. — In Greek the tenses of the participles denote time relatively to that of the verb on which they depend. The present and perfect participles denote time relatively *present,* the aorist participle time relatively *past,* the future participle time relatively *future.*

56. Use of the Indicative Mode. — The indicative mode is used in making assertions and in asking questions.

57. Use of Other Modes. — In a general way the Latin *imperative, infinitive,* and *subjunctive* correspond in signification to the same modes in Greek, but the Greek has an additional mode, the *optative,* which has some of the functions of the Latin subjunctive. It is necessary to defer any detailed treatment of the syntax of the Greek modes till instances occur in the "Lessons." See Appendix.

58. Attributive Participle. — The participle, like an adjective, may qualify a substantive as an attributive.

59. Predicate Participle. — When the participle forms a part of the predicate and is *asserted* of its substantive, it is called a *predicate participle.*

Such participles may add some circumstance connected with the action of the principal verb: they are then called *circumstantial participles.* In Greek the predicate participle may be closely connected with the verb, and supply an essential part of the predicate, belonging either to the subject or to the object of the principal verb: it is then called a *supplementary* participle. In this supplementary use the participle is often to be translated by an English *infinitive,* or by a clause introduced by *that.*

60. The Genitive Absolute. — The circumstantial participle may be joined with a genitive not immediately dependent upon any word in the sentence. The genitive and the participle together are called the *genitive absolute,* and are usually to be translated by a subordinate clause. Cf. the Latin Ablative Absolute.

SUGGESTIONS TO PUPILS.

In studying the "Lessons" of the "Primer" observe the following suggestions: —

1. Beginning with the first word of the text (Δᾱ-ρεί-ου in Lesson I.) observe the form of each Greek letter; the transliteration in English letters below it; the number of letters in each syllable; the vowels and consonants in each syllable, and whether the syllable contains a diphthong; the number of syllables in the word; the place of the accent, i.e., whether upon the ultima (Int. 9), the penult (Int. 9), or antepenult (Int. 9); the character of the accent, i.e., whether it is written (ʹ) (as on -ρεί- in Δᾱ-ρεί-ου), or (ˋ) (as on καὶ), or (῀) (as on -παῖ- in παῖ-δες).

2. Read carefully the "Note" upon the word.

3. Then pronounce the word *aloud*, and immediately after the pronunciation utter the translation given below the word (this, too, *aloud*). Repeat this process several times.

4. Next copy the word on paper several times, and after each separate act of copying utter the translation of the word *aloud*.

5. Write the word from memory a few times, comparing the result with the printed form.

6. Write out the English translation on paper; close the "Primer," and below the translation reproduce the Greek from memory; and each time a Greek word is written pronounce it aloud, and also the translation aloud. The appearance, sound, and sense of each word should always be associated.

7. Treat the remaining words of the "Text" in the same way, but never leave a word till it has been thoroughly mastered.

8. After mastering the words separately, pronounce a phrase or a whole clause of the Greek aloud, and immediately after it the English translation aloud.

9. Write out the English translation of a clause in the natural English order, e.g., *Two sons are born of Darius and of Parysatis*; close the "Primer," and below the translation write from memory, as nearly as you can, the Greek in the order of the Greek words in the "Text"; compare the result with the "Text," and notice all words wrongly placed or accented.

10. Nothing but absolute mastery of every sentence of the Greek will answer the purpose.

11. The "Observations" contain the facts of the lesson to which attention is called in the "Notes"; their substance should be memorized.

12. The "Vocabularies" should be memorized so as to be recited from Greek into English and from English into Greek.

13. All Greek "Exercises" should be pronounced aloud.

14. The "Topics for Study" will be helpful for self-examination upon the lesson.

INDUCTIVE GREEK PRIMER.

LESSON I.

1. TEXT.

[For a few lessons the words will be divided into syllables, and the length of the vowels (when not united in diphthongs or marked by a circumflex accent) will be indicated by marks over them, ˉ for a long vowel, ˘ for a short one. Diphthongs and all vowels over which the circumflex accent is found are long in quantity. The text as it ordinarily appears will be found on pages 301–336.

All words are printed in heavy-faced type on their first occurrence.]

Δᾱ-ρεί-ου	**καὶ**	**Πᾰ-ρῠ-σᾰ́-τῐ-δŏς**	**γῐ́-γνŏν-ται**	**παῖ-δĕς**	**δῠ́-ŏ,**
Da-rei-ou	kai	Pa-ry-sa-ti-dos	gi-gnon-tai	pai-des	dy-o,
Of-Darius	*and*	*of-Parýsatis*	*are-born*	*sons*	*two,*

2. NOTES.

1. **Δᾱ-ρεί-ου**, *of Darius* (note the orthography of the English word):

(*a*) A word of three syllables, accented upon the *penult*, *the second syllable from the end of the word;* ᾱ has the sound of *a* in f*a*ther, ει[1] (a diphthong) the sound of *ei* in h*ei*ght, ου (another diphthong) the sound of *ou* in y*ou*th.

(*b*) The consonants Δ and ρ are sounded like the English *d* and *r*.

(*c*) The mark (´) over the penult of this word is the *acute accent*, and indicates where the stress of voice is to be put in pronouncing the word (Int. 11).

(*d*) The ending **-ου** indicates the gen. sing.

(*e*) The genitive case corresponds with the Latin gen. and the English objective with *of*, or possessive (Int. 19).

[1] Some teachers may prefer to give ει the sound of *ei* in *ei*ght, which authority favors; but the sound of *ei* in h*ei*ght is perhaps more generally used for ει at present. It is a matter for regret that there is not uniformity of usage among teachers.

2. **καὶ**, *and*: (*a*) a word of one syllable; (*b*) the diphthong *αι* =[1] *i* in p*i*ne (= *ei* in h*ei*ght), cf. *ει* in *Δᾱ-ρεί-ου* and note that *αι* and *ει* have the same sound; (*c*) the mark (`) (drawn from left to right) is called the *grave accent* (Int. 11); like the acute, it indicates where the stress of voice is to be laid.

3. **Πᾰρῠσατῐδ-ŏς**, *of Parysatis*: (*a*) five syllables: five short vowels: ᾰ = ă in păpā; ῠ (Eng. *y*) is sounded like the German *ü* or French *u*, produced by placing the lips for *oo* in m*oo*n and sounding *ee* in th*ee*; ῐ = *i* in p*i*t; ŏ = *o* in *o*bey; (*b*) *π*, *τ*, = Eng. *p*, *t* (Int. 7); (*c*) two characters for Eng. *s*, *σ* and *ς*, the latter used only at the end of a word; they have the sound of *s* in yes, never of *z*; (*d*) **-ŏς** indicates the gen. sing.; cf. **-ου** in **Δᾱρεί-ου**, and note that the Greek language, like the Latin, has more than one declension (Int. 21).

4. **γῐγνŏ-νται**, (*they*) *are born*: (*a*) *γ* = *g* in *g*o, never soft like *j*; (*b*) **-ντ** indicates 3d plu., *they*, cf. Latin *ama*-**nt**; (*c*) **-νται** indicates 3d plu. passive, cf. Lat. *ama*-**ntur**.

5. **Παῖδ-ἕς**, *children, sons*: (*a*) no new letters in this word; *αι*, a diphthong as in *καὶ*, N. 2, = *i* in p*i*ne.

(*b*) ἕ = *e* in met; **-ἕς**, = *es* in y*es*, is a case-ending like -ŏς in *Παρυσάτιδ-ος*, but **-ἕς** indicates the nom. plu., cf. Lat. *honor*-**es**, Eng. box-**es** (remember that ἕς does not have the sound *ez*).

(*c*) Associate the gen. sing. ending -ŏς with the nom. plu. ending -ἕς as belonging to the same declension, whereas -*ου*, cf. *Δᾱρεί-ου*, indicates the gen. sing. of another declension.

(*d*) The accent (῀) over the penult of this word is called the *circumflex* accent, and like the *acute* and *grave* indicates where the stress of voice is to be placed. All syllables over which the circumflex accent is placed are long in quantity; cf. *Δᾱρείου*, and note that either the *acute* or *circumflex* accent may stand over the penult; and that when a diphthong is accented, the accent is placed over the second vowel.

6. **δῠ́ŏ**, *two*, Latin *duo* (Int. 27); cf. *Δᾱρείου*, and note that the *acute* accent stands over either *long* or *short* syllables, since *υ* in δῠ́ŏ is short, and *ει* in *Δᾱρείου* is a diphthong, and diphthongs are always long in quantity.

[1] I.e., has the sound of.

3. OBSERVATIONS.[1]

1. The vowels found in this lesson are: α, ε, ι, ο, υ; ε and ο are *always short;* α, ι, υ are short in some words, long in others (Int. 10). The diphthongs in the lesson are **αι, ει, ου**.

2. The consonants in this lesson are γ, Δ δ, κ, ν, Π π, ρ, σ ς, τ.

3. **ς** stands at the end of a word; elsewhere σ.

4. The Greek accents are acute, circumflex, and grave.

5. The acute stands over long or short syllables.

6. The circumflex stands over long syllables only.

7. The acute stands over the penult or antepenult.

8. The circumflex stands over the penult.

9. The grave accent stands over the ultima only.

10. In Greek, as in Latin, there are different declensions; the genitive singular of one declension ends in **-ου**; the genitive singular of another declension ends in **-ος**, nominative plural in **-ες**.

4. EXERCISES.

I. Transliterate: 1. δε̆σπό̆του.[2] 2. τοῦ. 3. γέ̆νο̆ς. 4. Δᾱρεῖο̆ς. 5. Κῡ́ρου. 6. νοῦς. 7. γί̆γνε̆ται. 8. Δᾱρεῖο̆ν. 9. Κῦρο̆ν. 10. δέ̆.

II. Transliterate: 1. nous. 2. gĕnei. 3. pais. 4. Dareiŏn. 5. dĕ. 6. tās. 7. sou. 8. ĕgĭgnĕtŏ. 9. Cyrou. 10. paidĕ.

5. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The Greek vowels in this lesson and their sounds. 2. The consonants in this lesson. 3. The Greek accents. 4. Place of accent for diphthongs. 5. Accent of the antepenult. 6. Accent of penult. 7. Accent of the ultima. 8. Accent for short syllables. 9. Accent for long syllables. 10. Vowels always short; doubtful. 11. Quantity of diphthongs. 12. Uses of σ and ς. 13. Sound of υ. 14. Endings:
- Gen. sing. -ου,
- Gen. sing. -ŏς, Nom. plu. -ĕς.

[1] It is expected that the pupil will verify the "Observations" from the "Text" and "Notes."

[2] Pronounce the Greek exercises aloud. Follow the same order in all subsequent lessons.

LESSON II.

1. TEXT.

[The quantity of ε, ο, is no longer marked.]

Δᾰ-ρεί-ου	καὶ	Πᾰ-ρῠ-σᾰ́-τῐ-δος	γῐ́-γνον-ται	παῖ-δες	δῠ́-ο,
Da-rei-ou	kai	Pa-ry-sa-ti-dos	gi-gnon-tai	pai-des	dy-o
Of-Darius	*and*	*of-Parysatis*	*are-born*	*sons*	*two,*

πρε-σβῠ́-τε-ρος	μὲν	Ἀρ-τᾰ-ξέρ-ξη̄ς,	νε-ώ-τε-ρος	δὲ	Κῦ-ρος.
pre-sby-te-ros	men	Ar-ta-xer-xēs,	ne-ō-te-ros	de	Ky-ros.
elder		*Artaxerxes,*	*younger*	*and*	*Cyrus.*

2. NOTES.

1. **Πρεσβύτερ-ος**, *elder*; cf. *presbyter*, *presbyterian*: (*a*) explanatory of παῖδες and in the same case, nom. sing.

(*b*) Belongs to the same declension as Δᾱρείου; **-ος** indicates the nom. sing.; hence we have the endings of two cases in this declension: nom. sing. **-ος**, gen. sing. **-ου**. What will be the nom. sing. of Δᾱρείου? Put -ος in place of -ου, and we have the form (except the accent); cf. Πᾰρῠσᾰ́τῐδ-ος, I. N. 3, *d*,[1] and note that -ος is the gen. ending in a different declension — a declension in which **-ες** indicates the nom. plu.; cf. παῖδ-ες, I. N. 5.

(*c*) The *acute* accent may stand on the *antepenult*, the third syllable from the end of the word.

2. μὲν: (*a*) a particle which is followed by δέ in a correlative clause (νεώτερος δέ); μέν . . . δέ mark a slight contrast between πρεσβύτερος and νεώτερος which may be shown in English by putting a slight emphasis upon *elder* and *younger*; they are sometimes translated *on the one hand*, . . . *on the other hand*, but more often μέν is untranslatable (except by emphasizing the proper word or words), and δέ is then to be rendered *and* or *but*; (*b*) cf. καὶ in the text, and note that the grave accent is found only upon the *ultima*.

[1] References to preceding lessons are thus indicated.

3. **Ἀρτᾰξέρξ-ῆς**: (*a*) ξ = *ks* in bar*ks* (Int. 7); (*b*) η = *e* in prey; (*c*) two *e* characters: ε = *e* in met, transliterated ĕ in Eng.; η = *e* in they, transliterated ē; (*d*) **-ῆς** indicates nom. sing. masc.; cf. a similar use of -ος in πρεσβῦτερ-ος; (*e*) the mark (ʼ) before **A** in Ἀρτᾰξέρξ-ῆς is to be written; its use will be explained later.

4. **νεώτερ-ος**, *younger*: (*a*) cf. πρεσβῦτερ-**ος**, and note that both end in **-ος**, and are in the nom. sing. masc.; both belong to the same declension as Δᾱρείου; when the nom. sing. is -ος, the gen. sing. is -ου; (*b*) ῶ = *o* in prone; (*c*) ο is short, ω is long; cf. ε and η; ε is short, and η is long; (*d*) cf. πρεσβῦτερος, γῖγνονται; note that the accent over the *antepenult* is the *acute*.

5. **δὲ**, *and, but,* (*on the other hand*): (*a*) in contrast with μὲν, cf. N. 2; (*b*) what is the length of ε? cf. N. 4, *c*; (*c*) note the *grave* accent on the ultima; cf. καὶ, μὲν.

6. **Κῦρ-ος**, *Cyrus*: (*a*) Κ = Eng. *k* or *c* in cost; (*b*) cf. πρεσβῦτερ-ος, νεώτερ-ος; note the nom. case, indicated by **-ος**. What will be the ending of the gen. sing.? Cf. Δᾱρείου; (*c*) note the *circumflex* accent over the *long penult*; cf. παῖδες; what is the length of αι in παῖδες? (*d*) the circumflex stands over a long vowel or over a diphthong.

7. **The grave accent**: cf. καὶ, μὲν, δὲ; the grave accent is used only upon the ultima and when Greek words follow in close connection; in the text, if no Greek word followed καὶ, μὲν, δὲ, the accents would all be acute, καί, μέν, δέ.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. New vowels found in this lesson are: η and ω, *always long*.

2. New consonants in this lesson are: β, Κ, μ, ξ.

3. The acute stands over one of the last three syllables of a word.[1]

4. The circumflex stands over the penult (or ultima[2]).

5. The grave stands on the ultima, and is used only when another word follows in close connection.

6. In the Greek, as in Latin, there are different declensions; masc. words whose nom. sing. ends in **-ος** have **-ου** in the gen. sing.; the other case-endings named in the notes belong to different declensions.

1 There is no instance of an acute over the ultima in this lesson; but cf. N. 7.

2 No circumflex occurs over an ultima in this lesson; but it seems convenient to state this fact in connection with the use of the circumflex over the penult.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **Ἀρτᾰξέρξης**, *Artaxerxes*.
2. **γῐ́γνονται**, *they are born*.
3. **Δᾱρείου**, *of Darius*.
4. **δέ**, *and, but, (on the other hand)*.
5. **δῠ́ο**, *two*.
6. **καί**, *and*.
7. **Κῦρος**, *Cyrus*.
8. **μέν**, *(on the one hand)*.
9. **νεώτερος**, *younger*.
10. **παῖδες**, *children, sons*.
11. **Πᾰρῠσᾰ́τῐδος**, *of Parysatis*.
12. **πρεσβῠ́τερος**, *elder*.

5. EXERCISES.

I. Transliterate: 1. *δῶρον*. 2. *μήν*. 3. *νεωτέρου*. 4. *ξένος*. 5. *βοῦς*.

II. Transliterate: 1. nĕōs. 2. nēŏs. 3. dē. 4. dĕ. 5. tēs. 6. gnōsŏmai. 7. bĭŏs. 8. dy̆nămīs.

III. Translate: 1. *Πᾰρῠσᾰ́τῐδος καὶ Δᾱρείου παῖδες δῠ́ο γίγνονται*. 2. *καὶ Κῦρος* [is] *νεώτερος*. 3. *Ἀρτᾰξέρξης δὲ πρεσβῠ́τερος*. 4. *δῠ́ο παῖδες γῐ́γνονται*.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Vowels which are always long. 2. Vowels which are always short. 3. Doubtful vowels. 4. Use of the grave accent. 5. Kind of syllable upon which the circumflex stands. 6. Kind of syllables upon which the acute stands. 7. Accent of diphthongs. 8. Accent of the ultima. 9. Use of *μέν* and *δέ*. 10. Diphthongs. 11. Endings: { nom. sing. -ος, gen. sing. -ου, } { gen. sing. -ος, nom. plu. -ες, } { nom. sing. -ης.

LESSON III.

1. TEXT.

[The quantity of *η*, *ω*, is no longer marked.]

Δᾱρείου καὶ Πᾰρῠσᾰ́τῐδος γῐ́γνονται παῖδες δῠ́ο, πρεσβῠ́τερος μὲν Ἀρτᾰξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. **ἐ-πεὶ δὲ**
e-pei de
When and

ἠ-σθέ-νει Δᾱρεῖος
ē-sthe-nei Dareios
was-ill Darius

2. NOTES.

1. **ἐπεί**, *when:* (*a*) for the accent cf. καί, μέν, δέ; see II. N. 7; (*b*) what sound has the diphthong ει? cf. I. N. 1; cf. also αι in καί, I. N. 2; (*c*) the mark over ἐ is to be written, cf. Ἀρτᾰξέρξης, II. N. 3.

2. **δέ**, *and, but:* (*a*) cf. ἐπεί for accent; (*b*) note that δέ does not stand first in its clause: the Greek is ἐπεὶ δέ; Eng., *and when;* cf. Latin *cum autem, but when;* (*c*) cf. πρεσβῠ́τερος μέν . . . νεώτερος δέ, and note that μέν also does not stand first in its clause.

3. **ἠ-σθέν-ει**, (*he*) *was ill:* (*a*) note the mark over ἠ, cf. ἐπεί; (*b*) $\theta = th$ in *th*in; (*c*) from ἄσθενέ-ω, *I am ill;* (*d*) ᾰ of ἀσθενέω has been lengthened or *augmented* to η; (*e*) this lengthening increases the *time*[1] required for pronouncing the syllable, and hence such augment is called *temporal* augment; (*f*) the augment is a sign of past time, cf. Eng. *love-d* for the *past* of *love;* the Greek has augmented the beginning of the word; the Eng., the end; but both processes are for the same purpose, to express *past time* (Int. 32, 33).

4. **Δᾱρεῖ-ος**, *Darius:* (*a*) cf. Κῦρος, II. N. 6, and note that **-ος** indicates the nom. case. What is the gen. sing. of the word? (*b*) for the accent cf. παῖδες, Κῦρος; note that when the circumflex stands over the penult the ultima is short.

5. Breathings: cf. Ἀρτᾰξέρξης, ἐπεί, and ἠσθένει; a mark (') will be seen over the initial vowels. It is called a breathing. When the concave side of this mark turns to the left, or away from the word, the breathing is called *smooth;* this breathing has no effect upon the pronunciation of the Greek word, but it must be written over initial vowels.

6. Second Declension: (*a*) If the student will examine the text which has been studied, several nominatives in **-ος** will be found, viz.: **Πρεσβῠ́τερος, νεώτερος, Κῦρος, Δᾱρεῖος.**

(*b*) If one looks again, the genitive case of one of these words will be found: **Δᾱρείου.** Hence the declension of Δᾱρεῖος is partially known, viz.: nom. Δᾱρεῖος, gen. Δᾱρείου. Other nominatives in -ος will be declined in like manner. Hence we may decline: nom.

[1] This distinction should be observed in reading Greek; the long vowels should be given a greater phonetic value, i.e., should be more prolonged in utterance than their corresponding short vowels.

Κῦρος, gen. Κύρου (for accent cf. Δᾱρείου); nom. πρεσβῠ́τερος, gen. πρεσβῠτέρου (for accent cf. Ἀρτᾰξέρξης); nom. νεώτερος, gen. νεωτέρου.

(*c*) The student will note also that **ο** is the characteristic vowel in the endings of these forms, i.e., the nom. ends in **-ος**, and the gen. in **-ου**; in other words, the stem of the word ends in **ο**, and from this fact the declension to which the words belong is called the *O-* or *Second Declension;* cf. N. 4 (Int. 21).

7. **Third Declension**: Let the student compare Πᾰρῠσᾰ́τῐδ-**ος** with παῖδ-**ες**, and read again the notes upon these words in Lesson I. It will be seen that the endings **-ος** and **-ες** are added to stems ending in consonants. Hence the declension to which such words belong is called the *Consonant Declension* or *Third Declension.*

8. **First Declension**: Note that Ἀρτᾰξέρξης belongs to a declension different from that of the other words in the text, cf. II. N. 3.

9. **The three declensions** in Greek correspond respectively to the first three declensions in Latin, and in each language they may be called the *A-*, *O-*, and *Consonant Declensions* (Int. 21).

10. **Accent**: (*a*) If the student will examine the words of more than three syllables in the text, it will be seen that no accent is ever found on any syllable before the third from the end of the word, — the *antepenult.*

(*b*) Cf. Πᾰρῠσᾰ́τῐδος, πρεσβῠ́τερος, νεώτερος, Δᾱρείου, ἠσθένει; note that when the *ultima* of a word is *short*, the acute can stand on the *antepenult*, but *cannot* do so when the *ultima* is *long.* Hence in γῐ́γνονται the final αι must have the effect of a short vowel upon the accent.

(*c*) Cf. Δᾱρείου, παῖδες, Κῦρος, Δᾱρεῖος; note that the *penults* are *all long*, and that the length of the *ultima* determines whether the acute or circumflex stands over the *long* penult (Int. 11): if the *ultima* is *short*, the *circumflex* may stand on the *penult*, but *not*, if the *ultima* is *long.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. One new consonant, θ.
2. A breathing is placed over every initial vowel or diphthong.
3. The smooth breathing has no effect upon the pronunciation of a word.
4. Only one of the last three syllables of a word is accented.

5. If the ultima is long, the acute cannot stand on the antepenult nor the circumflex on the penult.

6. Final -*αι* is treated as short so far as regards accent.

7. There are three declensions of Greek nouns.

8. In the *O*- or *Second Declension* the stem ends in **ο**, and the nom. sing. masc. in **-ος**, the case-ending being **-ς**.

9. The three Greek declensions correspond (nearly) to the first three in Latin, each to each.

10. Augment is a sign of past time.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀσθενέ-ω,** *I am ill.*
2. **Δᾱρεῖος,** *Darius.*
3. **ἐπεί,** *when.*
4. **ἠσθένει,** *he was ill.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Accent as far from the ultima as the principles of accent will allow: *ἀνθρωπος, ἀνθρωπου, ἀνθρωπον, ἀνθρωπε, ἀνθρωπω, ἀνθρωπων, ἀνθρωπους, γῐγνεται, Ἀρτᾰξερξου, πρεσβῠτερον, νεωτερων, Κῡρον, Κῡρου, Δᾱρειου, Δᾱρειω.*

II. Translate: 1. *καὶ Ἀρτᾰξέρξης* [is] *πρεσβῠ́τερος.* 2. *Ἀρτᾰξέρξης δὲ καὶ Κῦρος γῐ́γνονται.* 3. *δῠ́ο δὲ παῖδες Πᾰρῠσᾰ́τῐδος γῐ́γνονται.* 4. *Ἀρτᾰξέρξης μὲν πρεσβῠ́τερος, Κῦρος δὲ νεώτερος.* 5. *καὶ ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἠσθένει.*

III. Translate: 1. But when Artaxerxes was ill. 2. Two children are born. 3. Two boys are born of Cyrus. 4. Boys are born. 5. But Cyrus, (the) younger, and Artaxerxes, (the) older, are born of Parysatis.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The smooth breathing. 2. The Greek declensions and their stems. 3. Endings of the *o*-declension. 4. Place of the accent upon diphthongs. 5. Use of the grave accent for the acute. 6. Accent of the antepenult; of the penult. 7. Length of the syllable over which the circumflex stands. 8. Quantity of syllables upon which the acute stands. 9. The effect of the length of the ultima upon the accent of the penult and antepenult. 10. Final -*αι* has what effect upon the accent of the penult and antepenult? 11. Sounds of *υ, ει, αι.* 12. Use of *μέν* and *δέ.* 13. Uses of *σ* and *ς.* 14. Long and short *e*- and *o*-sounds. 15. Use of the augment.

LESSON IV.

1. TEXT.

[Hereafter α, ι, υ are marked when *long*, except when the circumflex stands over them; otherwise α, ι, υ are short.]

Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠσθένει Δᾱρεῖος **καὶ ὑπ-ώ-πτευ-ε τε-λευ-τὴν τοῦ βί-ου,**

kai hyp-ō-pteu-e te-leu-tēn tou bi-ou,

and suspected (an)-end of the (of)-life,

2. NOTES.

1. **ὑπ-ώπτευ-ε,** *(he)-was-suspecting*[1]*:* (*a*) observe the mark (ʽ) over ὑ; cf. it with the mark over the initial letters of ἐπεί, ἠσθένει, Ἀρταξέρξης; note that over ὑ the concave side of the mark turns to the right, or toward the word; this is called the *rough* breathing, while the other is called the *smooth* breathing; the rough breathing indicates that the letter *h* is to be pronounced before the vowel, so that ὑ = *hy*; what Eng. letter will ὑ represent? (App. 3, Rem.)

(*b*) ευ = *eu* in f*eu*d, a new diphthong; what two vowels stand last in the diphthongs which have occurred in the text?

(*c*) A compound verb; ὑπ is shortened from ὑπό, *hypo*, *under*, a preposition; cf. *sub* in *suspicio*, *I look under*, *suspect;* from ὑπ-οπτεύ-ω, *I suspect.*

(*d*) The ο of ὑπ-οπτεύ-ω has been *augmented* to **ω** to indicate past time, cf. ἠσθένει from ἀσθενέω; the lengthening of a vowel increases the *time* required to pronounce it, and so it is called *temporal augment* (cf. III. n. 3, Int. 33).

2. **τελευτή-ν,** *end:* (*a*) nom. τελευτή; (*b*) λ = *l*; (*c*) ending **-ν** indicates acc. sing., cf. -**m** in Lat. *mensa*-**m**; (*d*) belongs to the same declension as Ἀρταξέρξη-ς, but the latter is a masc. noun and has a

[1] This tense expresses continued action in past time and may often be translated by the Eng. progressive past tense; cf. the Latin imperfect (Int. 31, 53).

case-ending -ς, while τελευτή, which is fem., has none in the nom. sing. Both words belong to the first declension; the stem ends in ᾱ, hence the first declension is called the *a*-declension; the stems of second declension nouns end in what letter? What is meant by the consonant declension (III. N. 7, Int. 21)?

3. **τοῦ**, *of the:* (*a*) a form of the definite article; the Greek has no indefinite article; belongs to the following word, *βίου, life; τοῦ βίου = of the life;* (*b*) cf. Δᾱρεί-ου and note the gen. sing. ending **-ου** of the *o*-declension; the Greek definite article is declined.

4. **βίου**, *of life;* cf. *bio-graphy, bio-logy;* (*a*) to what declension does it belong? cf. Δᾱρείου. (*b*) What will be the nom. sing.?

5. **The Singular of the O-Declension** (masc. and fem.):

(*a*) **Stem:** We have seen that the stem ends in **ο**, e.g., the stem of Δᾱρεῖο-ς is (Δᾱρειο-).

(*b*) **The nominative singular:** This is made by adding a case-ending **-ς**.

(*c*) **The genitive singular:** In the gen. sing. the stem-ending *-ο* takes the form **-ου**, e.g., Δᾱρείου.

(*d*) **The dative singular:** In the dat. sing., judging from the Latin dat. sing. *Gallō* (cf. App. 38, 39), we may expect to find ω as the termination, and so it is, with the addition of ι *written under,* ι *subscript,* -ῳ; ῳ is a combination of two vowels in one syllable, but the ι is not sounded; hence such a diphthong is called an *improper diphthong;* ῳ has the sound of ω.

(*e*) **The accusative singular:** The case-ending of the acc. sing. of the vowel declension is *-ν*; cf. τελευτή-ν, N. 2; this ending in the *o*-declension is added to the stem; what, then, is the acc. sing. of Κῦρος?

(*f*) **The vocative singular:** In *Gallus* it is *Galle, o* of the stem has become *e*; the voc. sing. of Κῦρος is formed in a similar manner; **ο** will become what?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. One new consonant, λ; a new diphthong, ευ; an improper diphthong, ῳ.

2. A breathing, smooth or rough, is placed over every initial vowel or diphthong; the rough breathing gives the sound of *h* before the vowel or diphthong; the smooth breathing has no effect upon the pronunciation.

3. The Greek has no indefinite article; the definite article is declined.

4. The augment belongs to verbs, and indicates past time.

5. In verbs compounded with a preposition, the augment comes between the preposition and the verb.

6. **ι** *subscript* is not sounded.

7. The terminations of the cases in the second declension, masculine and feminine, in the singular number are: nom. **-ος**, gen. **-ου**, dat. **-ῳ**, acc. **-ον**, voc. **-ε**.

8. The nominative singular of masculine and feminine nouns of the second declension is formed from the stem by adding the case-ending **-ς**; the accusative singular, by adding the case-ending **-ν**; in the vocative singular, the final **ο** of the stem becomes **ε**.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **βίος**, *life*.
2. **βίου**, *of life*.
3. **τελευτή**, *end*.
4. **τοῦ**, *of the* (gen. sing. masc.).
5. **ὑπό**, *under*.
6. **ὑπ-οπτεύω**, *I suspect*.
7. **ὑπ-ώπτευε**, *he suspected*.

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *βίος*, *Δᾱρεῖος*, Κῦρος, in the singular.

II. Translate: 1. *ὑποπτεύω τελευτὴν βίου*. 2. *καὶ ἐπεὶ* Κῦρος *ὑπώπτευε βίου τελευτήν*. 3. *ἐπεὶ δὲ* Ἀρταξέρξης *ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου*. 4. *ἐπεὶ Δᾱρεῖος ἠσθένει*, Κῦρος *ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου*.

III. Translate: 1. When Darius suspected death. 2. When Darius was ill. 3. I suspect an end of life. 4. An end (nom.) of life. 5. Life (nom.) of Cyrus.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The breathings. 2. Use of augment. 3. Place of augment in simple and compound verbs. 4. Augment of *α*, *ο*. 5. Ending of second declension, singular number. 6. Improper diphthongs. 7. Meaning of *oxytone*, *paroxytone*, *proparoxytone*, *perispomenon*, *properispomenon* (App. 17). 8. Sounds of the Greek diphthongs. 9. Sounds of *υ*, *ὐ*, *ὑ*, *εὐ*. 10. Stem and case-endings of the second declension.

LESSON V.

1. TEXT.

Δᾱρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ᾐσθένει Δᾱρεῖος καὶ ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, **ἐ-βού-λε-το τὼ παῖ-δε ἀμ-φο-τέ-ρω παρ-εῖ-ναι.**

ἐ-βού-λε-το	τὼ	παῖ-δε	ἀμ-φο-τέ-ρω	παρ-εῖ-ναι.
e-bou-le-to	tō	pai-de	am-pho-te-rō	par-ei-nai.
he-wished	*the-two*	(*two*)*-sons*	*both*	*to-be-present.*

2. NOTES.

1. ἐ-βούλ-ετο, (*he*)*-was-wishing*[1]: (*a*) from **βούλ-ομαι,** *I wish*; (*b*) *βούλομαι* has been increased or augmented by prefixing a syllable, **ἐ-**; this augment is called the *syllabic augment.* With what kind of a letter does *βούλομαι* begin — a vowel or consonant? What kind of verbs, then, have the *syllabic augment?* To what kind of verbs does the *temporal augment* belong? Why is it called the temporal augment? For what is augment used?

2. τώ, *the two:* (*a*) another form of the article, cf. *τοῦ*; it belongs to *παῖδε*; (*b*) account for the accent on *τὼ* in the text.

3. παῖδ-ε, *two boys:* (*a*) cf. *δύο παῖδ-ες*, and note that a new expression is used here with the same meaning as *δύο παῖδ-ες*; (*b*) *παῖδ-ες* is plu.; *παῖδ-ε* is *a new number*, called the *dual* number, and used of two persons or things, but the dual is not the only way of expressing two (Int. 18); for, cf. *δύο παῖδες*; (*c*) the article, like the adj., must agree in number with the word to which it belongs: hence *τώ* (N. 2) is also *dual number;* (*d*) explain the accent of *παῖδε*.

4. ἀμφοτέρ-ω, *both:* (*a*) $\phi = ph$; (*b*) cf. *πρεσβύτερος, νεώτερος*, and give the nom. sing. masc.; (*c*) as *ἀμφοτέρω* agrees in number with *παῖδε*, what number is it? (*d*) *-ω* is another ending of the *o*-declen-

[1] Cf. footnote *ὑπώπτευε* IV. N. 1.

sion; cf. -ος, -ου; (*e*) in the acc. case and subject of the following infinitive, like the Latin subject-accusative (Int. 51).

5. παρ-εῖναι, *to be beside (one), to be present:* (*a*) παρ, shortened from παρά (cf. ὑπ for ὑπό in ὑπ-ώπτευε), a preposition, *beside;* cf. *parallel*; (*b*) εἶναι, *to be*, an infin.; (*c*) for the accent, the final αι having the effect of a short vowel upon the accent of the penult, cf. γίγνονται.

6. The Dual of the O-Declension: (*a*) **The accusative** dual ending is known, cf. τώ, ἀμφοτέρ-ω; the nom., acc., and voc. dual are alike (cf. App. 33); with the stem ἀνθρωπο- form the nom., acc., and voc. dual.

(*b*) **The genitive and dative dual,** which are rare forms in Attic prose, are also alike; they are made by adding **-ιν** to the stem, ο-ι producing the diphthong οι (pronounced like *oi* in b*oi*l), so that the termination is **-οιν**.

7. The Plural of the O-Declension (masc. and fem.): (*a*) **The nominative and vocative plural** of *Gallus*[1] is *Gallī* [for *Gallo-i*], *o-i* being contracted to *ī*; the nom. and voc. plur. are alike in Greek, and masc. and fem. nouns in the *o*-declension form the nom. and voc. plur. like the Latin uncontracted *Gallo-i*, but ο-ι form the diphthong **-οι** instead of undergoing contraction, which occurs in the Latin *Gallī* [for *Gallo-i*]; what will be the nom. and voc. plur. of ἄνθρωπος?

(*b*) **Genitive plural**: In *Gallōrum* the stem vowel appears as *ō*; in like manner in the gen. plur. of *o*-declension Greek nouns, **ο** appears as ω in the termination **-ων**, representing an original [ο-ων], **ο** of the stem having disappeared; what will be the gen. plur. of ἄνθρωπος?

(*c*) **Dative plural**: In *Gallīs* -*īs* is for *o-is*, i.e., -*is* was added to the stem to form the case, and *o-i* contracted to *ī*; the dat. plur. of *o*-declension Greek nouns adds the corresponding Greek letters **-ις** to the stem, producing the termination **-οις**; give the dat. plur. of ἄνθρωπος.

(*d*) **Accusative plural**: In the Lat. acc. plur. *Gallōs* the stem vowel has been lengthened, *o* has become *ō*; a somewhat similar change occurs in the acc. plur. of *o*-declension masc. and fem. Greek nouns, **-ονς** becomes **-ους** by dropping ν and lengthening **ο** to ου in compensation for the omitted consonant; what is the acc. plur. of ἄνθρωπος?

[1] The teacher will do well to put some word like *Gallus* on the board, and to explain the comparisons suggested by this paragraph before permitting the student to read this Note.

8. Declension of ἄνθρωπος: Let the student now take the stem (ἀνθρωπο-) *man*, cf. *anthropo*-logy, and form[1] the declension of the word from the preceding statements; the different cases are all to be accented as far as possible from the end of the word; in the nom. plur. final οι, like final αι (cf. γίγνονται), has the effect of a short vowel upon the accent of the penult and antepenult.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A new consonant, φ = *ph*.

2. The augment belongs to verbs, and indicates past time; there are two kinds, temporal and syllabic; the temporal belongs to verbs beginning with a vowel or diphthong; the syllabic, to verbs beginning with a consonant.

3. The Greek has a dual number, used of two only.

4. The terminations of the cases in the second declension dual number are: nom., acc., and voc., **-ω**; gen. and dat., **-οιν**.

5. The terminations of the cases in the second declension, masculine and feminine, plural number, are: nom. and voc. **-οι**, gen. **-ων**, dat. **-οις**, acc. **-ους**.

6. The definite article and adjectives agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns to which they belong; cf. the Latin rule.

7. Final αι and οι have the effect of short vowels upon the accent of the penult and antepenult.

8. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄνθρωπος,** *man*, cf. phil-*anthropic*, *anthropo*-logy.
2. **ἀμφοτέρω,** (dual), *both.*
3. **βούλομαι,** *I wish.*
4. **ἐβούλετο,** (*he*) *was wishing.*
5. **παῖδε,** *two sons.*
6. **παρά,** *beside.*
7. **παρ-εῖναι,** *to be beside, to be present.*
8. **τώ** (nom., acc., and voc. dual), *the* (*two*).

[1] The pupils should be provided with note-books in which to write out for future reference the declension of words which will serve as paradigms. These words should also be written on the board by different pupils until the forms, their accents, and the reason for the accents are understood perfectly. It is well to give the pupils other *o*-stems, whose declension shall be formed by them and put on the board. In this way they will familiarize themselves with the terminations of the cases. Paradigms should be memorized, and recited orally to insure correctness of pronunciation. Those teachers who desire printed paradigms can refer their classes to the Appendix.

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *βίος*.

II. Translate: 1. *παῖδες δὲ δύο γίγνονται.* 2. *τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου ὑποπτεύω.* 3. *καὶ ἐβούλετο Κῦρον παρεῖναι.* 4. *παρεῖναι βούλομαι.* 5. *ἄνθρωπον παρεῖναι ὑπώπτευε.* 6. *βίων, βίῳ,*[1] *βίοις.*

III. Translate: 1. But Darius was wishing to be present. 2. And Cyrus was suspecting [the] end of the life of Darius to be near (= present). 3. I wish the two boys to be present. 4. Cyrus was wishing men to be present, when Artaxerxes was ill. 5. Of men, to men, of the man, two men[2] (nom.).

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Augment, temporal and syllabic. 2. Number. 3. Endings of the 2d declension. 4. Improper diphthongs. 5. Effect of final *αι* and *οι* on accent. 6. Ending of the stems in the Greek declensions. 7. The subject of the infinitive. 8. Agreement of the definite article and the adj. with their nouns. 9. Case-endings and terminations of masc. and fem. nouns of the *o*-declension. 10. Use of the imperfect tense.

LESSON VI.

1. TEXT.

[Easy words are no longer divided into syllables.]

ὁ	*μὲν*	οὖν	*πρεσβύτερος*	παρ-ὼν	ἐ-τύγ-χα-νε·
ho	men	oun	presbyteros	par-ōn	e-tyng-cha-ne;
The		*now*	*elder*	*being-present*	*happened;*

2. NOTES.

1. ὁ, *the:* (*a*) note the rough breathing; ὁ is transliterated *ho;* (*b*) nom. sing. masc. of the definite article and belongs to *πρεσβύτερος*; what is the gen. sing. masc.? cf. *τοῦ βίου*? (*c*) ὁ has no

[1] Use the Eng. *to* or *for* in translating a dat. case standing alone.
[2] Write in two ways.

accent; it is read as if a part of πρεσβύτερος, so closely connected in thought are the two words (Int. 12, App. 22).

2. **μέν**: (*a*) untranslatable, cf. II. N. 2; there is a contrast between ὁ . . . πρεσβύτερος and Κῦρον of the following sentence, which μέν helps to intensify; its force may be shown in translation by putting greater emphasis upon *elder;* sometimes very unsatisfactorily rendered *on the one hand;* usually it is not best to attempt to translate it, but the contrast which it helps to show should always be carefully observed; (*b*) usually points forward to a corresponding δέ, cf. II. N. 5; (*c*) does not stand first in its phrase or clause, cf. πρεσβύτερος μέν, II.

3. **οὖν**, *now, accordingly* (transitional or logical, not temporal): (*a*) refers to what precedes: "Darius wished both his sons to be present"; "*now* the *elder* chanced to be present"; (*b*) note the position of the circumflex accent, *over* the breathing, when both stand upon the same syllable; (*c*) the circumflex may stand upon a long ultima (or penult).

4. **πρεσβύτερος**: (*a*) cf. II. N. 1; (*b*) takes the gender, number, and case of παῖς, *son*, understood; "Darius wished both sons to be present; now the *elder* (one)," i.e., *son*, etc.; (*c*) observe the acute accent upon the antepenult; cf. other words thus accented, and state the length of the ultima when the acute stands on the antepenult.

5. **παρ-ών**, *being present:* (*a*) παρ for παρά, preposition, *by the side of;* cf. παρ-εῖναι, V. N. 5; (*b*) ὤν, *being:* participle of εἶναι, *to be;* cf. παρ-εῖναι, V. N. 5, *to be present;* (*c*) παρών, when used with ἐτύγχανε, is best translated as if it were the infin., *to be present:* the Greek idiom is "*happened being present*"; Eng. "*happened to be present.*"

6. **ἐ-τύγχαν-ε**, (*he*) *happened, chanced:* (*a*) from τυγχάνω, *I happen;* (*b*) **ἐ-**, syllabic augment, to indicate past time; cf. ἐ-βούλετο, ἠσθένει; (*c*) χ = *ch* in the German ma*ch*en; (*d*) γ before χ has a nasal sound — the sound of *n* in a*n*chor (cf. App. 10); (*e*) -ε indicates the 3d sing. act. of a past tense; cf. ὑπ-ώπτευ-ε.

7. **Accent of Nouns and Adjectives:**

(*a*) **Place and kind of accent on the nominative singular:** cf. νεώτερος, τελευτή, Κῦρος; note that the *place* of the accent in the nom. sing. must be learned by observation; the *kind* of accent, whether acute

or circumflex, is determined by the general laws for accent: e.g., *ἄνθρωπος* is accented upon the antepenult and must, therefore, take the acute; if it were accented upon the penult, it would be *ἀνθρῶπος*; if accented upon the ultima, it would be *ἀνθρωπός*; but the fact that the antepenult is to be accented must be noted, and the kind of accent determined accordingly.

(*b*) **Accent of other cases**: cf. *ἀνθρώπου, ἀνθρώπῳ, ἄνθρωποι*; note that the accent stands on the same syllable as in the nom. sing. (*ἄνθρωπος*), or as near to that syllable as the laws for accent will allow, i.e., upon the antepenult if possible; but if not, upon the penult.

(*c*) **An accented ultima**: cf. *τοῦ, τώ*, forms of the article, which has the accent of nouns and adjectives except in certain forms called *proclitics* (cf. ὁ); *τοῦ* is a gen. case, *τώ* nom. and acc.; the dat. follows the gen. in accent, and the voc. (generally) follows the nom. and acc.; hence the principle that *an accented ultima generally takes the acute, but in the genitive and dative a long ultima, if accented, takes the circumflex.*

8. **The accent of many words** must be determined by observation, e.g., *καί, ἐπεί, οὖν*, ὁ; *μεν* and *δε* must be accented how? Why?

9. **Declension of the Masculine of the Article**: cf. *τοῦ, τώ*; note that the terminations are those of the *o*-declension, cf. IV. N. 5, V. N. 6 and 7; we should expect the other masc. forms of the article to be declined according to the *o*-declension; they are thus declined except ὁ (cf. N. 1) and *οἱ*, the nom. plu., which are proclitics and have the stem ὁ-; the other forms employ the stem *το*- and are accented like nouns. Let the student now decline the article in the masc. gender. No voc. case is used.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A new consonant, χ, before which γ has the sound of *n* in a*n*chor.

2. The circumflex accent stands over the breathing when breathing and accent occur upon the same syllable.

3. **ὁ** and **οἱ**, masc. forms of the article, are not accented; they lean forward on following words (hence called *proclitics*) and have no separate accent (Int. 12).

4. The participle with *τυγχάνω* has the force of an Eng. infinitive.

5. **μέν, δέ,** and **οὖν** do not stand first in their clause or sentence.

6. The acute accent stands over the antepenult only when the ultima is short.

7. In nouns and adjectives, and words declined like them, an accented ultima generally takes the acute, but in the gen. and dat. a *long* ultima, if accented, takes the circumflex.

8. The accent of many words must be determined by observation.

9. The article in the masc. gender (stem *το-*) is declined nearly like a masc. noun of the *o*-declension, but ὁ and *οἱ* are from the stem ὁ- and are proclitics.

10. -ε indicates the 3d sing. act. of a past tense.

11. In nouns and adjectives the accent stands upon the same syllable as in the nom. sing., or as near to it as the laws for accent will permit.

4. VOCABULARY A.

1. **ὁ** (nom. masc. sing.), *the.*
2. **οὖν,** *accordingly, now.*
3. **παρά,** *by the side of.*
4. **παρών,** *being present.*
5. **τυγχάνω,** *I happen.*

VOCABULARY B.

1. Masculine nouns of the Second Declension (declined like *ἄνθρωπος*): *Δᾱρεῖος, βίος,* Κῦρος.

2. Adjectives (declined in the masc. like *ἄνθρωπος*): *πρεσβύτερος, νεώτερος.*

3. The masc. of the article (stem *το-*), declined like *ἄνθρωπος*, except the forms ὁ and *οἱ*.

5. EXERCISES.

I. Write the declension of *Δᾱρεῖος* (sing.), Κῦρος (sing.), *βίος, πρεσβύτερος* (masc.), *νεώτερος* (masc.), *ὁδός, way, road, street,* a fem. noun of the *o*-declension declined like *ἄνθρωπος*, but accented on the ultima; cf. the article.

II. Translate: 1. *τυγχάνω ὤν.* 2. *τυγχάνω οὖν παρών.* 3. *ἐτύγχανε δὲ παρών.* 4. *Δᾱρεῖος ἐβούλετο παρεῖναι.* 5. *βούλομαι* Κῦρον *παρεῖναι.*

III. Translate: 1. Being. 2. To be. 3. Being present. 4. To be present. 5. But I happen to be present. 6. Now the younger chanced to be present.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Accent of ὁ. 2. Position of *μέν*, *δέ*, *οὖν*, in their clauses. 3. Position of the circumflex accent and breathing when both stand over the same syllable. 4. Endings of the 2d declension. 5. Rule for an accented ultima in nouns and adjectives; in other words. 6. General rule for the position of the accent in nouns and adjectives. 7. Gender of 2d declension nouns. 8. Gender of stems in *ᾱ*. 9. Participle with *τυγχάνω*. 10. Pronunciation of χ, γ before χ. 11. Meaning of the augment; tenses which have it. 12. Meaning of the ending -ε in verbs. 13. Stems of the article.

LESSON VII.

1. TEXT.

Κῦρον	δὲ	με-τα-πέμ-πε-ται	ἀπὸ	τῆς	ἀρχῆς	ἧς
Kyron	de	me-ta-pem-pe-tai	apo	tēs	archēs	hēs
Cyrus	*but*	*he-sends-after*	*from*	*the*	*province*	*of-which*

αὐτὸν	σα-τρά-πην	ἐ-ποίη-σε.
auton	sa-tra-pēn	e-poiē-se.
him	*satrap*	*he-(had)-made.*

2. NOTES.

1. Κῦρο-ν, *Cyrus:* (*a*) for the nom., cf. II.; what is the stem, and to what decl. does the word belong? (*b*) -ν, case-end. of the acc. sing. of the 1st (cf. *τελευτή-ν*) and 2d decl.; (*c*) what is the length of *υ* in *Κῦρον*? If *υ* were short, what would the accent over it be?

2. μετα-πέμπ-εται, (*he*) *sends after:* (*a*) *μετα-*, a preposition, *after*; *πέμπομαι*, *I send*; (*b*) 3d sing. pres., cf. *ἐ-βούλ-ετο*, *he was wishing*; what will *μετ-ε-πέμπ-ετο* mean? What kind of augment will *μετα-πέμπομαι* take? (*c*) for the accent cf. *γίγνονται*; final *αι* has what effect upon the accent of the antepenult?

3. **ἀπό**, *from, away from*: (*a*) a preposition governing the gen. case; in meaning, cf. Latin *ab*; (*b*) the thought of the sentence is, "*he sends for Cyrus* (*to come*) *away from*," etc.

4. **τῆ-ς**, *the*: (*a*) the gen. sing. fem. of the definite article; for the masc., cf. *τοῦ βίου*; (*b*) belongs to the following word, *ἀρχῆς*.

5. **ἀρχῆ-ς**, *province, government*: (*a*) from *ἀρχή*, and belongs to the same declension as *τελευτή-ν* IV. N. 2; what will the acc. sing. of *ἀρχή* be? (*b*) for the accent of the noun and also that of its article *τῆς*, cf. *ὁδός*; note that *τοῦ* is accented like *τῆς*; (*c*) governed by *ἀπό*; (*d*) **-ς**, case-ending of the gen. sing. fem. of the 1st decl.; cf. the article *τῆ*-**ς**; (*e*) cf. Eng. an-*archy*, mon-*archy*.

6. **ἧ-ς**, *of which*: (*a*) fem. gen. sing. of the relative pronoun, and refers to *ἀρχῆς* for its antecedent; the relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; (*b*) **-ς**, case-ending, as in *τῆ-ς* and *ἀρχῆ-ς*; (*c*) for the accent cf. *τῆς, τοῦ, ἀρχῆς*; (*d*) from the form *ἧς*, and the ending of **τοῦ**, *βίου*, *Δᾱρείου*, can you tell what the form *οὗ* would be?

7. **αὐτό-ν**, *him*: cf. Κῦρο-ν, *τελευτή-ν*; note the acc. sing. case-ending, **-ν**; *αὐτή-ν* will mean *her*.

8. **σατράπη-ν**, *satrap, governor, viceroy*; a governor of a province under the Persian king: (*a*) cf. *αὐτό-ν, τελευτή-ν*; note the case-ending of the acc. sing., **-ν**; (*b*) nom. sing. *σατράπη-ς*, cf. Ἀρταξέρξη-ς II., a masc. noun of the 1st decl.; how do the masc. nouns differ from the fem. in the nom. sing. of the 1st decl.? Cf. IV. N. 2, *d*.

9. **ἐ-ποίη-σ-ε**, *he* (*had*) *made*: (*a*) *οι* as in *ἄνθρωποι* = *oi* in *oil*; (*b*) from *ποιέω*, *I make*, cf. Eng. *poem, poet*; (*c*) note the augment *ε-*, the ending *-ε* (the 3d sing. act. of a past tense), cf. *ἐ-τύγχαν-ε* VI.; (*d*) the verb-stem *ποιε-* of the present has become *ποιη* and *σ* has been inserted as the *sign of a past tense* different from *ἐ-τύγχαν-ε*, *ὑπ-ώπτευ-ε*, etc.

10. **Feminine Nouns of the 1st or A-Declension**:

(*a*) **The stem** ends in *ᾱ* (Int. 21, App. 29).

(*b*) **A changed to η**: *ᾱ* of the stem becomes *η* in the sing. of some nouns, cf. *τελευτή*, *ἀρχῆς* (also in some masc. nouns, cf. *σατράπη-ν*).

(*c*) **The Singular**: This *η* appears in all of the cases of the sing. number: the dat. has *ι subscript* like the *o*-declension, and the voc. is like the nom. (cf. the voc. of *lingua*).

(*d*) **The dual and plural**: Here the ᾱ of the stem is retained and the same case-endings as in the *o*-declension are added.

(*e*) **A retained in the singular**: Other nouns, as *χώρᾱ*, *country*, keep the ᾱ in the sing., and take the same endings as nouns which have *η* in the sing.

(*f*) **Declension of ἀρχή and χώρᾱ**: Let the student take the stems *ἀρχᾱ-* (nom. *ἀρχή*) and *χωρᾱ-* (nom. *χώρᾱ*) and form[1] the declension from the foregoing remarks, remembering that ᾱ is to be put in the dual and plural where the 2d decl. has *ω*, *ο*, or *ου* (lengthened from ο), thus: **ἀρχή, ἀρχῆ-ς, ἀρχῇ, ἀρχή-ν, ἀρχή; ἀρχᾱ́, ἀρχα-ῖν; ἀρχα-ί** (*ἀρχά-ων* contracted to) **ἀρχῶν, ἀρχα-ῖς, ἀρχᾱ́-ς**; in like manner form the declension of *χώρᾱ*, accenting the penult when possible.

(*g*) **Genitive plural**: Note that the gen. plu. of all 1st decl. nouns contracts *-ά-ων* to *-ῶν*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The relative pronoun is declined, and agrees with its antecedent in gender and number.

2. Many prepositions, e.g., *μετά*, *παρά*, *ὑπό*, are found compounded with verbs.

3. Nouns whose stem ends in **ᾱ** (nominative in ᾱ or *η*) belong to the 1st or *a*-declension and are feminine; the masculine nouns of the 1st declension take a case-ending **-ς** in the nominative singular.

4. The case-endings[2] of the 1st and 2d declensions are alike except the nominative and genitive singular; masc. nouns of both declensions take the case-ending **-ς** in the nominative singular.

5. The genitive plural of all 1st declension nouns ends in **-ῶν**, contracted from *-ά-ων*; a contract ultima generally takes the circumflex.

6. Final *αι* has the effect of a short vowel upon the accent of the penult and antepenult.

7. Some feminine nouns of the 1st declension change the **ᾱ** of the stem to **η** in the singular number.

[1] The teacher should put the substance of Note 10 on the board, and illustrate it before permitting the student to read the Note. The terminations of Latin first declension nouns (see App.) may also be compared with those of the Greek. The student should write out the declension of *ἀρχή* and *χώρᾱ* in a note-book for convenient reference.

[2] Let the student write out a list of these endings.

8. The terminations of the cases in the first declension are:

sing., { -ᾱ, -ᾱς, -ᾳ, -ᾱν, -ᾱ / -η, -ης, -ῃ, -ην, -η }; dual, **-ᾱ, -αιν**; plu., **-αι, -ῶν, -αις, -ᾱς**.

9. A past tense different from the imperfect is formed by the insertion of *σ* before the endings, e.g., *ἐ-ποίη-σ-ε*; cf. *ἐ-τύγχαν-ε*.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀπό**, *from.*
2. **ἀρχή**, *government, province.*
3. **αὐτόν**, *him.*
4. **ἧς** (fem. sing.), *of which.*
5. **μετά**, *after.*
6. **πέμπω**, *I send.*
7. **μετα-πέμπομαι**, *I send after.*
8. **οὗ**, (masc. sing.) *of which* or *whom.*
9. **σατράπης**, *satrap.*
10. **τῆς** (fem. sing.), *of the.*
11. **τοῦ** (masc. sing.), *of the.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *τελευτή*.

II. Translate: 1. *ἐβούλετο δὲ τὸν σατράπην παρεῖναι.* 2. *καὶ ἐβούλετο Δᾱρεῖον παρεῖναι, οὗ Κῦρος καὶ Ἀρταξέρξης γίγνονται.* 3. *ὁ σατράχης τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐτύγχανε παρών.* 4. *ἡ τελευτὴ τοῦ βίου.* 5. *Δᾱρεῖος τῆς χώρᾱς τὸν σατράπην μετεπέμπετο.*

III. Translate: 1. Darius was sending for Artaxerxes and Cyrus. 2. Now Cyrus happened to be a satrap. 3. But Darius was sending for Cyrus from the country of which he chanced to be satrap. 4. The satrap of countries. 5. The end of the[1] street (cf. VI. Exercise I.).

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Agreement of the relative with its antecedent; of the adjective and article with their nouns. 2. Endings of the 1st and 2d declensions. 3. Gender of stems in *ᾱ* and *ο*. 4. Gen. plu. of 1st declension nouns. 5. *ᾱ* of the stem retained in the sing. when? 6. The effect of final *-αι* and *-οι* on accent. 7. The difference between the nom. sing. of masc. and fem. nouns of the 1st declension. 8. The cases of the 1st and 2d declensions which have the same case-endings; cases which have no case-endings added to the stem. 9. The accent of the ultima in the gen. and dat. 10. The accent of all gen. plurals in the 1st declension.

[1] ὁδός is fem., and must have the fem. article.

LESSON VIII.

1. TEXT.[1]

[Only difficult words will be divided into syllables or transliterated.]

καὶ	στρατηγὸν	δὲ	αὐτὸν	ἀπ-έ-δει-ξε	πάντων,
	stratēgon			ap-e-dei-xe	
also	*general*	*and*	*him*	*he-(had)-appointed*	*of-all,*

2. NOTES.

1. **καί**, *also*: cf. I. Δᾱρείου καί, etc., IV. καὶ ὑπώπτευε; note that the most common meaning of καί is *and*; cf. Latin *et*, *and*, *also*.

2. **στρατηγόν**, *general*: (*a*) stem στρατηγο-, cf. Eng. *strat*-egy; in what declension, case, and gender is the word? (*b*) one of the objects of ἀπέδειξε, *he appointed him general*, cf. VII. αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε.

3. **δέ**, *and*: cf. νεώτερος δέ II.; ἐπεὶ δέ III.; note the two meanings of δέ, *but* (adversative), *and* (connective).

4. **ἀπ-έ-δειξ-ε**, *he appointed*: (*a*) from ἀπο-δείκ-νῡμι; (*b*) ἀπ for ἀπό, cf. VII. ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς; cf. παρ for παρά in παρ-εῖναι, ὑπ for ὑπό in ὑπ-ώπτευε; (*c*) -ε- like ε- in ἐ-βούλετο; what is this ε called, and for what is it used? cf. ἐ-τύγχανε; (*d*) ξ not only pronounced **ks** but actually composed of κ and ς; for, cf. the present ἀπο-δείκ-νῡμι and note the verb-stem, **δεικ**; cf. again ἐ-ποίη-σ-ε VII., and note **σ** which is used for a certain past tense; adding σ to δεικ we have for the verb, ἀπ-έ-δεικ-σ-ε; but instead of writing κσ separately, the Greek has the character ξ for κσ; ξ is for this reason called a double consonant; cf. Latin *vox* for *voc-s*; (*e*) -ε[2] after ξ, as in ὑπώπτευ-ε, ἐτύγχαν-ε, ἐποίησ-ε, indicates the 3d sing. act. of a past tense.

5. **πάντ-ων**, *of all*: from πᾶς, gen. plu. masc.; **-ων** indicates the gen. plu., cf. ἀνθρώπ-ων, χωρ-ῶν, etc.

6. **Theme or Verb-stem**: cf. N. 4 and observe the part of the

[1] It is desirable to pronounce the text aloud each day from the beginning, or, when this becomes impossible, from a point as far back as the time will permit.

[2] Strictly speaking, -σε in ἐποίη-σε and in ἀπ-έδει(κ + σ = ξ) ε should *together* be considered a form of the tense-suffix, -σα-.

verb which is common to ἀπο-δείκ-νῡμι and ἀπ-έ-δεικ-σε (κσ = ξ), δεικ; in like manner βούλ-ομαι and ἐ-βούλ-ετο V., have a common basis, βουλ, upon which the forms are built up by the addition of prefixes and suffixes or both; cf. ποιέ-ω and ἐ-ποίη-σε (ε lengthened to η); that part which is common to all parts of the verb is called the *theme* or *verb-stem*.

7. Formation and Meaning of the Imperfect: cf. III. ἠσθένει (contracted from ἠσθένε-ε from ἀσθενέ-ω), IV. ὑπ-ώπτευ-ε (from ὑπ-οπτεύ-ω), ἐ-βούλ-ετο (from βούλ-ομαι), ἐ-τύγχαν-ε (from τυγχάν-ω):

(*a*) The augment shows that all these express past action; (*b*) their translation, *was ill, was suspecting, was wishing, was happening*,[1] shows that the action is represented as continued or progressive; (*c*) they have the themes or verb-stems of the corresponding presents; (*d*) the tense formed from the stem of the present and expressing *continued past action* is called the Imperfect.

8. Formation and Meaning of the First Aorist: cf. VII. ἐ-ποίη-σε (from ποιέ-ω, ε before σ changed to η), ἀπ-έ-δεικ-σε (κσ = ξ, from ἀπο-δείκ-νῡμι):

(*a*) The augment shows that these tenses express past action.

(*b*) The tense-suffix -σε (-σα-) after the themes shows that the action is represented not as in progress, but simply as accomplished in past time; the action is regarded as an *event* or *single fact* in past time, without any reference to the time required to perform it; such a tense, when formed by the use of -σε (-σα-) is called the *First Aorist*.

(*c*) The way in which an action is represented, whether as *progressive* or *indefinite*, constitutes the *difference in meaning* between the imperfect and aorist tenses; e.g., ἐ-ποί-ει (imperf. of ποιέ-ω, cf. ἠσθένει) = *he was making*; ἐ-ποίη-σε (1st aor. of ποιέ-ω) = *he made*; the imperfect 3d sing. act. of ἀποδείκνῡμι = *he was appointing*, while the 1st aor., ἀπ-έ-δειξε, = *he appointed.*

9. Masculine Nouns of the First Declension: (*a*) cf. II. N. 3 Ἀρταξέρξη-ς (stem Ἀρταξερξᾱ-), VII. N. 8 σατράπη-ν (nom. σατράπη-ς); note that the masc. nouns take a case-ending -ς in the nom. sing.; (*b*) the gen. sing. irregularly ends in -ου, like 2d decl. nouns (cf. App. 35);

[1] Other meanings of the imperfect will be shown hereafter; the progressive form seems best for the purpose of illustration.

(*c*) in all other forms the masculines are exactly like the feminines in the 1st decl.

10. **The Article:** cf. ὁ, τοῦ, τῷ, τῆς, and VI. N. 9; (*a*) **Masculine:** note that the article is declined in the masc. like[1] masc. nouns of the 2d declension, except the nom. sing.; cf. Latin adjectives of the vowel-declension (Int. 24).

(*b*) **Feminine:** from the gen. sing. fem. τῆς, (cf. ἀρχῆς, ἧς, and the fem. of Latin adjectives of the vowel-declension), we should expect to find the fem. of the article declined like fem. nouns of the 1st declension, and such is the fact except that the dual is like the masc.; the nom. sing. and plu. (ἡ and αἱ) are formed from a shorter stem (cf. ὁ and οἱ), and are proclitics. Let the student form the declension of the fem. in accordance with these facts.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ξ**, a double consonant, = **κς**.

2. **καί** = (1) *and*, (2) *also*; **δέ** = *but*, or *and*.

3. Verbs meaning to *appoint*, *make*, take a *double object*; one of the objects may be considered a predicate-accusative. Cf. Int. 39.

4. The theme or verb-stem is that part of the verb which is common to all forms of it.

5. The imperfect tense is formed from the present stem and represents a past action as in progress.

6. The aorist tense expresses action as brought to pass, without reference to the time required to perform it; the first aorist has a tense-suffix **-σα-** (appearing sometimes as **-σε**). Cf. Int. 31.

7. Masculine nouns of the 1st declension differ from feminines, (*a*) in taking a case-ending **-ς** in the nom. sing., (*b*) in having the gen. sing. end in **-ου** like the 2d declension.

8. The masc. of the article is declined nearly like masc. nouns of the 2d declen.; the fem., nearly like fem. nouns of the 1st declen.

9. The article is accented like nouns which are accented on the ultima, except ὁ, ἡ, οἱ, αἱ.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀπο-δείκνῡμι,** *I appoint.*

2. **ἀπ-έ-δειξε,** *he appointed.*

3. **πᾶς** (gen. plu. πάντων), *all.*

4. **στρατηγός,** *general.*

[1] I.e., with the endings of.

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: Ἀρταξέρξης (sing.), σατράπης, στρατηγός.

II. Translate: 1. ὑπώπτευε τὴν τελευτὴν τῶν βίων πάντων τῶν στρατηγῶν. 2. οἱ σατράπαι τῶν χωρῶν. 3. Κῦρον καὶ Ἀρταξέρξην σατράπᾱς ἐποίησε. 4. οἱ στρατηγοὶ γίγνονται. 5. τῶν ἀρχῶν τοὺς σατράπᾱς ἀπέδειξε.

III. Translate: 1. From the country of which he happened to be satrap and general. 2. The generals (nom.) of Artaxerxes. 3. Darius appointed the younger Cyrus satrap of the country of Artaxerxes. 4. And he also made him general of all. 5. I wish the satraps to be present. 6. The land (nom.) of the satraps. 7. Cyrus wished two satraps to be present.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The letter *ξ*. 2. Meaning of *καί* and *δέ*. 3. Verbs which take a double object, or object and predicate-accusative. 4. Theme, or verb-stem. 5. Differences between the imperfect and aorist tenses. 6. *σα* (sometimes *σε*) in the 1st aorist. 7. Differences between the masc. and fem. nouns of the 1st decl. 8. Declension of the masc. and fem. of the article. 9. Accent of the article. 10. Proclitics. 11. Position of the breathing over a diphthong.

LESSON IX.

1. TEXT.

ὅσοι	**εἰς**	**Κασ-τω-λοῦ**	**πεδίον**	**ἀ-θροί-ζον-ται.**	
hosoi		Kas-tō-lou		a-throi-zon-tai.	
as-many-as	*into*	*of-Castolus*	*plain*	*collect-themselves.*	
ἀνα-βαί-νει	οὖν	ὁ Κῦρος	**λαβὼν**	**Τισ-σα-φέρ-νην**	**ὡς**
ana-bai-nei				Tis-sa-pher-nēn	hōs
(He)-goes-up	*accordingly*	*the Cyrus*	*taking*	*Tissaphernes*	*as*
φίλον,					
philon,					
(a)-friend,					

2. NOTES.

1. **ὅσοι,** *as many as*, freely *who*: (*a*) pronominal adj. from ὅσος, refers to πάντων as its antecedent; the masc. is declined like masculines of the 2d decl.; in what case is ὅσοι? what is its construction[1]? (*b*) note the position of the acute accent after the breathing; cf. οὖν for the position of the circumflex, when accent and breathing are written over the same vowel.

2. **εἰς,** *into*: (*a*) a preposition governing the acc. case; (*b*) like ὁ, ἡ, οἱ, αἱ, it has no accent, but leans forward upon a following word; what are such words called?

3. **Καστωλοῦ**: a proper noun, stem ends in **ο**: to what declension does it belong? Dat. and acc. sing.?

4. **πεδίο-ν,** *plain*: (*a*) **-ν** is the ending of what case? governed by εἰς, cf. N. 2; to what declension does it belong? what is the stem? if masc. or fem., what would the nom. sing. be? (*b*) from **πεδίον,** a neuter noun of the 2d decl.; note that the nom., acc., and voc. of neuters are alike (cf. Int. 22); in the 2d decl. in the sing. they end in **-ν**, in the plu. in **-ᾰ**; the other cases are like the masculines of the 2d decl., cf. Latin 2d decl. neuters. Let the student decline πεδίον.

5. **ἀθροίζ-ο-νται,** (*they*) *collect themselves*: (*a*) $\zeta = z$, or more strictly *ds* in avoi*ds*, as it is a double consonant; (*b*) from ἀθροίζω, *I collect*; (*c*) **-νται** indicates 3d plu. as in γίγνο-νται I., *they are born*; in ἀθροίζονται the subject acts *upon itself, they collect themselves*; cf. V. ἐβούλετο, VII. μετα-πέμπεται Κῦρον, in which the subject acts *for itself*; i.e., ἐβούλετο = *he was wishing* (*for himself*), μετα-πέμπεται = *he sends after* [Cyrus] (*for himself*); (*d*) note that the Greek has three voices: (1) *active*, (2) *passive*, and (3) a voice which expresses reflexive action called *middle* (Int. 29).

6. **ἀνα-βαίν-ει,** *he goes up*: (*a*) from ἀνα-βαίνω, *I go up*; ἀνά, *up*, a preposition, cf. ὑπό, παρά; hence *Ana-basis, the going up* toward Babylon; (*b*) **-ει** indicates the pres. ind. act. 3d sing.; what will ὑπ-οπτεύει, τυγχάνει mean? (*c*) cf. γίγνονται I., μετα-πέμπεται VII., and note that the present tense may denote a time historically past; it is then called the *historical present*.

[1] I.e., relation to other words in the sentence, government; is it subject, object, or what?

7. **λαβών,** *taking:* (*a*) a partc. from *λαμβάνω, I take,* cf. *παρ-ών* VI., nom. sing. masc., and agrees with Κῦρος; (*b*) expresses an act as simply accomplished, not as in progress, cf. VIII. N. 8; *λαμβάν-ων,* formed from the present stem, = *taking,* i.e., continued action; (*c*) the thought may be expressed: "Cyrus *took*, etc., and went up," or "Cyrus went up *with* Tissaphernes," etc.

8. **Τισσαφέρνη-ν,** from *Τισσαφέρνης*; what case? obj. of *λαβών.*

9. **ὡς φίλον,** *as a friend;* cf. *phil*-anthropy: (*a*) for the accent of *ὡς*, cf. *εἰς* N. 2; (*b*) *φίλον,* from *φίλος*; what is the stem? gender? in what case? in apposition with *Τισσαφέρνην.*

10. **The Neuter of the Article:** (*a*) **Nearly like a neuter noun:** As the masculine of the article is declined nearly like masc. nouns of the 2d declension, it is perfectly natural to suppose that the neuter of the article is declined nearly like neuter nouns of the 2d declension. Cf. the declension of Latin adjectives of the vowel-declension; how are the masc. and neuter of such adjectives declined?

(*b*) **The stem of the article** in the masc. is *το-*; the neuter has the same stem, and is declined like *πεδίον,* cf. N. 4, except that the case-ending **-ν** in the nom. and acc. sing. is dropped; thus these cases have the mere stem. What is the rule for the accent of the article?

(*c*) **Declension:** Let the student write out the declension of the masc., fem., and neut. of the article, omitting the voc. case, thus *ὁ, ἡ, τό,* etc. The article should be memorized from left to right, thus: *ὁ, ἡ, τό; τοῦ, τῆς, τοῦ,* etc. How many and what cases of the article are alike in both masc. and neut. genders?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ζ = z** or **ds** in avoi**ds**, a double consonant, cf. *ξ*.

2. When accent and breathing are over the same syllable, the acute or grave stands to the right of, the circumflex over, the breathing.

3. **-ν,** the case-ending of nom., acc., voc., sing. neut. of the 2d decl.; the same cases of the plur. end in **-ᾰ**.

4. The Greek verb has three voices: active, passive, middle (in which the subject acts for or upon itself).

5. Two more proclitics, **ὡς, εἰς,** i.e., unaccented words which lean upon following words.

6. The neuter of the article is declined like the masculine, except in the nom. and acc., and like a neuter noun of the 2d declension, except in the nom. and acc. sing., where the case-ending **-ν** is omitted.

7. The article with proper names is not generally translated, cf. ὁ Κῦρος.

8. The ending **-ει** indicates pres. ind. act. 3d sing., cf. *ἀναβαίνει.*[1]

9. All genitives and datives of the 1st and 2d declensions when accented upon the ultima take the circumflex.

10. Appositives agree in case with their substantives.

11. The present tense, when used in vivid narration to describe an event historically past, is called the *historical present.*

4. VOCABULARY A.

1. **ἀθροίζω,** *I collect.*
2. **ἀνα-βαίνω,** *I go up.*
3. **εἰς,** with acc., *into.*
4. **λαμβάνω,** *I take.*
5. **ὅσος,** *quantus,* plur., *as many as.*
6. **πεδίον,** *plain.*
7. **φίλος,** *friend.*
8. **ὡς,** *as.*

VOCABULARY B.

[Read carefully, noting the endings.]

PRESENT.

Act.	*ἀσθενέ-***ω**, *I am ill.*[2]	*ἀνα-βαίν-***ει**, *he goes up.*
	*ἀνα-βαίν-***ω**, *I go*[3] *up.*	*ἀθροίζ-***ει**, *he collects.*
	*ἀθροίζ-***ω**, *I collect.*	*λαμβάν-***ει**, *he takes.*
	*λαμβάν-***ω**, *I take.*	*τυγχάν-***ει**, *he happens.*
	*ποιέ-***ω**, *I make.*	*ὑποπτεύ-***ει**, *he suspects*
	*τυγχάν-***ω**, *I happen.*	
	*ὑποπτεύ-***ω**, *I suspect.*	

Pass.[4]	*γίγνο-***μαι**, *I am born.*	*γίγνε-***ται**, *he is born.*	*γίγνο-***νται**, *they are born.*
Mid.	*βούλο-***μαι**, *I wish.*	*βούλε-***ται**, *he wishes.*	*βούλο-***νται**, *they wish.*
	*μετα-πέμπο-***μαι**, *I send after.*	*μετα-πέμπε-***ται**, *he sends after.*	*μετα-πέμπο-***νται**, *they send after.*

[1] ει in ἠσθένει III. results from contraction of ἠσθένε-ε.

[2] Intransitive in meaning.

[3] All presents may be translated by the progressive form: e.g., *I am going up*, or *I go up*.

[4] Strictly the forms of γίγνομαι here given are intransitive, but as translated they serve to illustrate the passive voice.

IMPERFECT.

	Singular	Plural
Act.	ἀν-έ-βαιν-ε, *he was going up.*	
	ἠ-σθέν(ε-ε=)ει, *he was ill.*	
	ἤ-θροιζ-ε, *he was collecting.*	
	ἐ-λάμβαν-ε, *he was taking.*	
	ἐ-ποί(ε-ε=)ει, *he was making.*	
	ἐ-τύγχαν-ε, *he was happening.*	
	ὑπ-ώ-πτευ-ε, *he was suspecting.*	
Pass.	ἐ-γίγνε-το, *he was born.*	ἐ-γίγνο-ντο, *they were born.*
Mid.	ἐ-βούλε-το, *he was wishing.*	ἐ-βούλο-ντο, *they were wishing.*
	μετ-ε-πέμπε-το, *he was sending for.*	μετ-ε-πέμπο-ντο, *they were sending for.*

FIRST AORIST.

Act. ἐ-ποίη-σε, *he made.*
ἀπ-έ-δειξ(=κσ)ε, *he appointed.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline πεδίον, φίλος, δῶρον (like πεδίον).

II. Translate: 1. ἀποδείκνῡμι Κῦρον στρατηγὸν πάντων ὅσοι γίγνονται. 2. εἰς τὸ πεδίον ἀνέβαινε. 3. Κῦρον τὸν σατράπην ἀπὸ τοῦ πεδίου μετεπέμπετο. 4. Κῦρος Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον λαμβάνει. 5. Δᾱρεῖος οὖν τοὺς φίλους εἰς τὸ πεδίον ἤθροιζε. 6. Κῦρον τὸν στρατηγὸν ὑποπτεύει. 7. λαβών, λαμβάνων, ὑποπτεύων, τυγχάνων, ἀθροίζων, ἀναβαίνων.

III. Translate: 1. They are sending for, were sending for, him from the plains. 2. The general was going up into the plain. 3. The generals assemble (collect themselves) from the plains. 4. I go up with (= taking) my (= the) friends, with the friends of Cyrus. 5. He is collecting the satraps from the lands of Darius. 6. Accordingly Tissaphernes, the friend of Cyrus, was collecting the friends of Artaxerxes. 7. He happens, was happening. 8. I am taking, am sending for. 9. They were wishing, were sending for.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Meaning of the aorist tense. 2. The middle voice. 3. -ων in participles. 4. Endings of the 2d declension, masc., fem., and neut.

5. Position of accents and breathings when both are upon the same syllable. 6. Nom., acc., and voc., of neuter nouns. 7. Formation of the 1st aorist. 8. Verb endings: *-ει* (pres.), *-ω*, *-ων*, *-ε*, *-μαι*, *-ται*, *-νται*, *-το*, *-ντο*. 9. Difference between *λαβών* and *λαμβάνων*. 10. Accent of end. *-ων* in the 1st decl. 11. Appositives. 12. Historical present. 13. Review the rules for accent. 14. Declension of the article.

LESSON X.

1. TEXT.

καὶ	τῶν	Ἑλ-λή-νων	ἔ-χων	ὁπ-λῑ́-τᾱς
		Hel-lē-nōn	e-chōn	hop-lī-tās
also	*of-the*	*Greeks*	*having*	*heavy-armed-soldiers*

ἀν-έβη	τρι-ᾱ-κο-σί-ους,	ἄρ-χον-τα	δὲ	αὐτῶν
an-ebē	tri-ā-ko-si-ous,	ar-chon-ta		
he-went-up	*three-hundred,*	*commander*	*and*	*of-them*

Ξε-νί-ᾱν	Παρ-ρά-σι-ον.
Xe-ni-ān.	
Xenias	*a-Parrhasian.*

2. NOTES.

1. **τῶν Ἑλλήν-ων**: gen. plural, cf. *πάντων* VIII. N. 5 and gen. plural of all 1st and 2d decl. nouns.

2. **ἔχ-ων**, *having*: (*a*) from *ἔχω*, *I have*; (*b*) for the use of the ending **-ων** in the participle, cf. *λαβών* IX.; (*c*) what other use is there of the end *-ων*? (*d*) may be rendered, *with*; cf. *λαβών*, *with*.

3. **ὁπλῑτᾱ-ς**, *heavy-armed-soldiers*; cf. Eng. *pan-oply*, *full* (lit. *all*) *armor*: (*a*) from *ὁπλίτης*, gen. sing. *ὁπλίτου*; (*b*) to what declension does it belong? gender, case? decline in the dual and plural; what are the dat. and acc. sing.? cf. *σατράπην* VII.; (*c*) the voc. sing. of nouns which end in *-της* takes **-ᾰ** instead of *η* as one would expect, e.g., *ὁπλῖτᾰ*, voc. of *ὁπλίτης*.

4. **ἀν-έ-βη**, *he went up*: (*a*) from *ἀνα-βαίνω*, *I go up*; (*b*) *ἀν* for *ἀνά*, cf. *ἀν-έ-βαινε* IX. (vocab. B.); what is **-ε-** after *ἀν-*? (*c*) an aorist

tense, *but not 1st aorist*, though it has the same meaning, cf. ἐ-ποίη-σε, λαβών.

5. **τριᾱκοσί-ους**, *three hundred:* **-ους** indicates what case? what does the word limit? gender?

6. **ἄρχο-ντ-α**, *commander, ruler:* (*a*) nom. sing. **ἄρχων**, partc. from ἄρχω, *I rule;* formed like **ἔχων**, **λαβών**, but used here as a noun, in the acc. sing. masc.; (*b*) **-ντ-** act. partc. suffix, cf. Lat. *ama*-**nt**-*em;* **-ᾰ** end of acc. sing. 3d decl.

7. **αὐτῶν**, *of them:* (*a*) cf. **αὐτόν** VII. N. 7; **-ων** shows the word to be in what case? (*b*) antecedent? gender?

8. **Ξενίᾱ-ν**, *Xenias:* (*a*) nom. sing. **Ξενίᾱς**; stem? gen. sing.? declension? gender? (*b*) capital ξ.

9. **Adjectives of the Vowel-Declension** (1st and 2d declension): (*a*) **Masculine**: cf. *πρεσβύτερος, νεώτερος* II., *ἀμφοτέρω* V., *ὅσοι* IX., *τριᾱκοσίους, Παρράσιον*; note that the masc. of these adjectives is declined like masc. nouns of the 2d decl.

(*b*) **Neuter**: in like manner the neuter forms of the adj. follow the neuter nouns of the 2d decl.

(*c*) **The feminine** follow the fem. nouns of the 1st decl., except the accent of the nom. and gen. plu., which follows the masc.; cf. the Greek article, and the Latin *bonus, bona, bonum;* decline the adj. from left to right, like the article. Let the student write[1] out the declension of *ἀγαθός, good*, or *σοφός, wise.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. One new character, Ξ.

2. All 1st decl. nouns have **-ᾱ-ς** in the acc. plu.; and some masc. nouns have **-ᾱ-ς** in the nom. sing.

3. **-ᾰ,** ending of acc. sing. 3d decl.; also nom., acc., and voc. plu. of neuter nouns of the 2d decl.

4. **-ων,** ending of gen. plu. of all 1st and 2d decl. words; the nom. sing. masc. act. participle also ends in **-ων**, cf. ἔχων, λαβών.

5. **-ντ,-** suffix of act. participles.

6. Appositives agree with their substantives in case.

7. In the vowel-declension of adjectives, the masc. follows the

[1] Decline orally also.

masc. 2d decl.; the fem., the fem. 1st decl., except the accent of the nom. and gen. plu. (which is like the masc.); the neut., the neut. of the 2d decl.

8. The voc. sing. of masc. nouns in *-της* of the 1st decl. ends in **-ᾰ**.

9. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀν-έβη,** *he went up.*
2. **ἄρχων** (acc. sing. *ἄρχοντα*), *commander, ruler.*
3. **Ἕλληνες,** *Greeks.*
4. **ἔχω,** *I have.*
5. **ὁπλίτης,** *heavy-armed-soldier.*
6. **τριᾱκόσιοι,** *three hundred.*
7. **ἀγαθός -ή -όν,** *good.*
8. **σοφός -ή -όν,** *wise.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *ὁπλίτης, τριᾱκόσιοι* (plu.), *Ξενίᾱς* (sing.).

II. Translate: 1. *ὁ ἄρχων λαμβάνει, ἐλάμβανε, τριᾱκοσίους φίλους.* 2. *Κῦρος τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν ὁπλῑτῶν ἐλάμβανε.* 3. *ἀναβαίνω ἔχων τοὺς σατράπᾱς τοῦ Κύρου καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς αὐτῶν.* 4. *καὶ Δᾱρεῖος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄρχοντα αὐτὸν ἐποίησε.* 5. *ὁ Κῦρος ἀνέβη, ἀνέβαινε, ὑποπτεύων τελευτὴν τοῦ Δᾱρείου βίου.* 6. *ἄρχω, ἄρχων, ἄρχει.*

III. Translate: 1. But when he went up, he took the general as a friend. 2. Cyrus went up into the plain of Castolus, with (in two ways) 300 friends and Xenias as their commander. 3. I have, he has, good friends. 4. The good man was going up into a plain, with (= having) his (= the) friends. 5. Cyrus, the younger, went up into the land of Xenias. 6. Darius rules (fr. *ἄρχω*). 7. Having, he went up, he was going up, he made, he was ill, he was making.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Partc. suffix *-ντ-*. 2. Analysis[1] of *ἄρχοντα, ἐτύγχανε, ἐποίησε.* 3. Adjectives of the vowel-declension. 4. Improper diphthongs. 5. Iota subscript; how pronounced? found in what case? 6. Accented ultima in nouns, adjectives, and article. 7. Proclitics: name those which have occurred in the text. 8. Voc. sing. of nouns in

[1] I.e., separate into elements: augment, tense-suffix, ending, etc.

-τῆς, 1st decl. 9. Stems in the three genders of adjs. of vowel-decl. 10. Accent of the nom. and gen. fem. plu. of adjs. of the vowel-decl. 11. -ῶν in the gen. plu., 1st decl. 12. Use of augment. 13. Aorist and imperfect. 14. Verb endings, -ω, -ει, -ων; -μαι, -ται, -νται; -το, -ντο; -ε, -σε.

LESSON XI.

REVIEW.

[This lesson is a review of all that has preceded it. Nothing is so necessary in the acquisition of a language as constant and thorough review. It is especially so in this volume because the plan is to pass from the known to the unknown; all that follows depends upon what precedes. The preceding lessons contain fundamental principles of the Greek language, and further progress is impossible without accurate knowledge of them. It is understood that the student will not proceed to Lesson XII. until this lesson and all that have preceded it have been mastered absolutely. Let no student suppose that the review lessons which the Primer contains are all that are required; many excellent teachers have their students review all of the lessons of a term's work from six to a dozen times, keeping up constantly "advance lessons," "immediate-review" lessons, and "back-review" lessons; as often as the "back-review" lessons overtake the "immediate-review" lessons, their classes start again from the beginning of the Primer with longer lessons.]

1. TEXT.

Anabasis I. i. 1–2.

In reviewing the text, the following order of work is suggested: —

1. Read the Greek text aloud repeatedly; this may be done in concert as a part of the recitation.

2. With only the Greek text before the eye, pronounce a clause of it and give rapidly the Eng. translation; proceed in like manner with the remainder of the text.

3. With only the Eng. parallel before the eye, give orally or write out the Greek; compare with the text and correct mistakes; continue this till the Greek can be exactly reproduced.

4. Write the declension, with the proper accents, of all 1st and 2d declension nouns, adjs. of the vowel-decl., and the article; be very certain that the rules for accent, to which reference has

been made, are known absolutely, and can be applied accurately and rapidly.

5. Classify under proper headings: (1) 1st decl. fem. and masc. nouns; (2) 2d decl. masc. and neuter nouns; (3) verb-forms: presents, imperfects, aorists; act., mid., and pass. forms, etc.; let the student make other lists which may suggest themselves; the teacher will vary the work, and perhaps assign special work to each student. These directions are not intended to be exhaustive, but merely suggestive.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

[The Roman numerals refer to "Lessons"; the grammatical points are generally found under "Observations," but fuller statements are usually found under "Notes."]

1. **Letters and Sounds.** — The vowels: long, short, doubtful; their sounds I., II.; diphthongs: improper diphthongs; their sounds I., IV.; breathings III., IV., IX.; gamma nasal VI.; double consonants VIII., IX., X.

2. **Syllables and Quantity** I.

3. **Accent.** — Kinds of accents I.; accent as affected by quantity I.; acute accent I., VI.; circumflex accent I., VI., VII., IX.; grave accent II.; syllables which may be accented III.; accent of words with a short ultima III., VI.; accent of words with a long ultima III.; effect of final *οι* and *αι* on accent III., V.; proclitics VI., VIII., IX.; accent of nouns VI.

4. **Gender, Number, Case** IV., V.

5. **Inflection and Stems** III., VII.

6. **Declensions** I., III.

7. **First Declension.** — Stem-ending, case-endings, gender of 1st decl. nouns VII., VIII., X.; declension of *χώρᾱ*, *ἀρχή*, *νεᾱνίᾱς* (*young man*), *ὁπλίτης* VII., VIII., X.; voc. sing. of nouns like *ὁπλίτης* X.; -*ῶν* in the 1st declension VII.

8. **Second Declension.** — Stem-ending, case-endings, gender of 2d decl. nouns III., IV., V., IX.; declension of *ἄνθρωπος*, *ὁδός*, *δῶρον* V., IX.

9. **Vowel-declension of Adjectives.** — *ἀγαθός* or *σοφός* X.

10. The Definite Article IV., V., VIII., IX.

11. Verbs. — Voice: active, middle, passive IX.; tenses VIII., IX.; theme or verb-stem VIII.; verb endings VI., IX.; augment: syllabic, temporal III., V.; suffix of the active participle X.

12. Subject of Verb. — Finite mode, and infinitive V.

13. Agreement. — Verb with its subject, cf. Latin rule, Int. 38; adjective and article with noun V., X.; appositive IX., X.; relative pronoun VII.

14. Accusative. — Case of the direct object IV. Obj. and predicate accusative VIII.

15. Participle with *τυγχάνω* VI.

3. VOCABULARY.

[The pupil is expected to know the various forms of the words here given which have occurred in the text.]

VERBS.

1. *ἀθροίζω.*
2. *ἀνα-βαίνω.*
3. *ἀπο-δείκνῡμι.*
4. *ἄρχω.*
5. *ἀσθενέω.*
6. *βούλομαι.*
7. *γίγνομαι.*
8. *εἶναι.*
9. *ἔχω.*
10. *λαμβάνω.*
11. *μετα-πέμπομαι.*
12. *παρ-εῖναι.*
13. *ποιέω.*
14. *τυγχάνω.*
15. *ὑπ-οπτεύω.*

NOUNS.

1. *ὁ ἄνθρωπος.*
2. *ἡ ἀρχή.*
3. *ὁ ἄρχων* (partc.).
4. *ὁ βίος.*
5. *οἱ Ἕλληνες.*
6. *ἡ ὁδός.*
7. *ὁ ὁπλίτης.*
8. *ὁ παῖς.*
9. *τὸ πεδίον.*
10. *ὁ σατράπης.*
11. *ὁ στρατηγός.*
12. *ἡ τελευτή.*
13. *ὁ φίλος.*
14. *ἡ χώρᾱ.*

PREPOSITIONS.

1. *ἀνά.*
2. *ἀπό.*
3. *εἰς.*
4. *μετά.*
5. *παρά.*
6. *ὑπό.*

ADJECTIVES.

1. *ἀγαθός.*
2. *ἀμφοτέρω.*
3. *νεώτερος.*
4. *πάντες.*
5. *πρεσβύτερος.*
6. *σοφός.*

PRONOUNS.

1. *αὐτός.*
2. *ὅσος.*

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. *δέ, καί.*
2. *ἐπεί.*
3. *ὡς.*

ARTICLE.

ὁ, ἡ, τό.

ADV. PARTICLES.

1. *μέν.*
2. *οὖν.*

4. EXERCISES.

I. Translate: 1. The good man was wishing Cyrus to be present. 2. Cyrus accordingly went up, was going up. 3. Now Tissaphernes happened to be present. 4. Darius made Tissaphernes the satrap of a good land. 5. Xenias, the friend of Cyrus, goes up. 6. The generals are assembling in (= into) the plains. 7. The heavy-armed-soldier went up with (= taking) both the (two) generals. 8. The brave (= good) generals are born of the satraps. 9. Of the governments; from the satrap; into the street. 10. The friends of Cyrus assemble in a good land.

LESSON XII.

1. TEXT.

ἐπεὶ δὲ **ἐτελεύτησε** Δᾱρεῖος καὶ **κατ-έστη** εἰς τὴν **βασιλείᾱν** Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης **δια-βάλλει** τὸν Κῦρον **πρὸς** τὸν **ἀδελφὸν** ὡς **ἐπι-βουλεύοι** αὐτῷ.

[A word for word Eng. parallel and free translation will be found on pp. 337–342. Hereafter words will be divided, not to show the syllables, but the elements of which they are composed.]

2. NOTES.

1. ἐπεὶ δέ: cf. ἐπεὶ δέ III.; δέ may be well rendered *now* in this passage.

2. ἐ-τελεύτη-σε, cf. τελευτή IV., *end;* on the form, cf. ἐ-ποίη-σε VII.; what do **ἐ-** (at the beginning) and **-σε** show?

(*a*) 1st aor. ind. act. 3d sing. of τελευτά-ω, *I end; he ended* (sc. τὸν *βίον, his life*), i.e., *died.*

(*b*) On the translation of the tense cf. ἐποίησε, *he-(had)-made* VII., ἀπέδειξε *he-(had)-appointed* VIII., i.e., the aorist is often used where Eng. usage requires the pluperfect.

(*c*) τελευτα (present stem) becomes τελευτη in the aor. before σ, cf. ποιε of ποιέω changed to ποιη in ἐ-ποίη-σε.

(*d*) The position of ἐτελεύτησε before its subject makes this the emphatic word of the clause.

3. **κατ-έ-στη**, (*he*)-*became-established*: (*a*) from *καθ-ίστημι* = *κατά* + *ἵστημι*; **α** of **κατά** has been elided, and **τ** has been changed to *θ* before the rough breathing; (*b*) *κατ* for *κατά*, *down*, cf. *ὑπ* for *ὑπό*, *παρ* for *παρά*; *ἔ-στη*, *he stood*, i.e., took a standing position, *took his stand*; (*c*) cf. *λαβών* IX., *ἀνέβη* X., *κατέστη*, all aorists without the suffix -*σα*-, equivalent in meaning to the 1st aor., but called *Second Aorists*; (*d*) theme *στα*, *stand*; *καθ-ίστημι* transitive, *I cause to stand down*, i.e., *put*, *place down*; *κατ-έστη*, intransitive.

4. **εἰς τὴν βασιλείāν**, lit. *into the kingdom*; translate *in*, etc.; *became established in the kingdom*, = *became king*: (*a*) for **εἰς** cf. IX. N. 2; what case does it govern? (*b*) *ἡ βασιλείᾱ* declined like *χώρᾱ*.

5. **δια-βάλλ-ει**, (*he*)-*slanders*, cf. Eng. *diabolical* from *διάβολος* = *slanderer*, *accuser*, *devil*: (*a*) historical present, cf. **ἀναβαίνει** IX.; (*b*) *διά*, *through*, preposition.

6. **τὸν Κῦρον**: article not translated in English.

7. **πρὸς τόν**: *to his* — "speaks slanderously about Cyrus *to his* brother": (*a*) *πρός*, with the acc., *to*, *towards*; (*b*) the article is used for a weak possessive pronoun.

8. **ἀδελφόν**, *brother*; cf. *Phil-adelph-ia*, brotherly love; stem? gender? declension? nominative singular?

9. **ὡς ἐπι-βουλεύ-οι**, (saying) *that he* (Cyrus) *was plotting against* (him); Tissaphernes' *direct* words were: "he (Cyrus) is plotting against you," **Κῦρος** *ἐπιβουλεύει*, etc. Xenophon quoting this *indirectly* after an historical tense uses a different mode of the verb, *ἐπιβουλεύοι*, called the *Optative*. This use of the Optative is called the *Optative in Indirect Discourse*.

(*a*) **ἐπί**, *upon*, *against*; *βουλεύω*, *plot*, *plan*, *form designs*.

(*b*) **-οι**, ending of the pres. opt. act. 3d sing.

(*c*) Note the accent; *οι in the optative mode* does *not* have the effect of a short vowel on the accent of penult and antepenult.

10. **αὐτῷ**, *him*, cf. *αὐτόν* VII., VIII., *αὐτῶν* X.: (*a*) nom. sing., *αὐτός*,[1] *αὐτή*, *αὐτό*; declined like *ἀγαθός*, except in the nom., acc., and voc. of the neut. sing., where the case-ending -*ν* is lost, cf. the neut. of the article; (*b*) dat. governed by *ἐπι*- in **ἐπι**-*βουλεύοι*.

[1] The nominatives of *αὐτός* are *not* used as personal pronouns of the third person.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Final *α* and *ε* of the theme become *η* before **-σα-**.

2. The 1st aorist has a tense-suffix **-σα-**; the 2d aorist has no tense-suffix, but a shorter form than the present.

3. The 1st and 2d aorists differ only in form, not in signification.

4. The aorist is sometimes used where English usage requires the pluperfect.

5. In compound words a preposition ending in a vowel loses it before an initial vowel of the verb.

6. Before a rough breathing **τ** is roughened to *θ*.

7. The article is often used in Greek for a weak possessive pronoun.

8. The indicative of a direct statement may become optative in an indirect statement after an historical tense.

9. The preposition **εἰς** always governs the accusative case.

10. **ἐπί** in composition may govern the dative case.

11. Final **οι** in the optative mode does not have the effect of a short vowel on accent.

12. **αὐτός** omits the case-ending **-ν** in the neuter singular.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ὁ ἀδελφός**, *brother.*
2. **αὐτῷ**, *to* (or *for*) *him.*
3. **ἡ βασιλείᾱ**, *kingdom.*
4. **διά**, *through.*
5. **δια-βάλλω**, *I lander.*
6. **ἐπί**, *upon.*
7. **ἐπι-βουλεύω**, *I plot against.*
8. **κατά**, *down.*
9. **καθ-ίστημι**, *I cause to stand down = set down.*
10. **κατ-έστη**, *he stood down, was placed down = became established.*
11. **πρός** (with acc.), *to, towards.*
12. **τελευτά-ω**, *I end, finish.*
13. **ὡς**, *that: on the ground that, as, as if* (with partc.).

5. EXERCISES.

I. Translate and analyze *ἐποίησε, ἐτελεύτησε, ἀπέδειξε, ἐπεβούλευσε, ὑπώπτευσε, ἠσθένησε* (for translation cf. *κατέστη*).

II. Decline *βασιλείᾱ, ἀδελφός.*[1]

[1] The accent of the vocative singular is irregularly upon the antepenult.

III. Translate: 1. ἐπιβουλεύει οὖν τῷ ἀδελφῷ. 2. Ἀρταξέρξης τὸν ἀδελφὸν διέβαλλε. 3. ὑπώπτευε Κῦρον ὡς διαβάλλοι τὸν ἀδελφόν. 4. ἐπεβούλευε, ἐπιβουλεύων.

IV. Translate: 1. He is plotting against the kingdom. 2. Artaxerxes was suspecting that Cyrus was plotting against the government. 3. Cyrus slanders Artaxerxes to his (= the) friends. 4. The brother of Cyrus was slandering the friend of the Greeks. 5. Now (οὖν) Darius died, and the brother of Cyrus became established in the government.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Comparison in formation between 1st and 2d aorists. 2. Difference in meaning between the aorist and imperfect. 3. Aorist used for pluperfect. 4. Historical present. 5. Optative mode in indirect discourse. 6. Greek modes (Int. 30). 7. Kind of action expressed by the different Greek tenses (Int. 31). 8. Time expressed by the different Greek tenses (Int. 31). 9. Case with εἰς. 10. Proclitics. 11. Elision in compounds. 12. ἐπί in compounds. 13. Article used for the possessive pronoun. 14. Final -οι in the optative. 15. αὐτός in the neuter singular. 16. Verb endings -ει and -οι. 17. Name and form of the first twelve letters of the Greek alphabet (App. 1). 18. Theme, root, stem (App. 72).

LESSON XIII.

1. TEXT.

ὁ δὲ **πείθεται** καὶ **συλ-λαμβάνει** Κῦρον ὡς **ἀπο-κτενῶν**· ἡ δὲ **μήτηρ ἐξ-αιτησαμένη** αὐτὸν **ἀπο-πέμπει πάλιν** ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν.

2. NOTES.

1. ὁ δέ, *but he*, i.e., Artaxerxes: (*a*) δέ adversative; ὁ δέ generally marks a change of subject from that of the preceding sentence, as here; (*b*) a form of the article without its substantive (Ἀρταξέρξης), used as a weak demonstrative pronoun; the thought of the passage

will illustrate: Tissaphernes made false representations about Cyrus to Artaxerxes; but *this* one, *he, Artaxerxes,* etc.

2. **πείθ-ε-ται**, *is persuaded, believes:* (*a*) from πείθω, *I persuade;* (*b*) the ending **-ται** indicates pres. ind. pass. 3d sing., cf. **-νται** 3d plu.; (*c*) historical present, cf. ἀναβαίνει IX., διαβάλλει XII.

3. **συλ-λαμβάνει**, (*he*) *arrests:* (*a*) from συλ-λαμβάνω, *I arrest;* (*b*) συλ for συν, preposition, *with, together;* cf. *syl-lable, syn-od;* λαμβάνω, cf. λαβών IX.; (*c*) ν of συν becomes λ before λ; this change is called *assimilation*, but note συν-ε-λάμβαν-ε; what part of the verb is συλ-λαμβάν-οι? cf. ἐπι-βουλεύ-οι XII.

4. **ἀπο-κτεν-ῶν**, *about to kill, interfecturus:* (*a*) from **ἀπο-κτείνω**, *I kill;* ἀπό, cf. VII.; **κτείνω**, *I kill;* the compound, strengthened form of the verb is generally used; (*b*) the ending **-ῶν** is contracted from έ-ων (cf. χωρά-ων, χωρῶν, gen. plur. 1st decl.), cf. λαβ-ών IX., ἔχ-ων X.; **-ων**, nom. sing. masc. ending of the act. partc.; (*c*) **κτεν**, short form of the stem, cf. λαβ instead of λαμβαν, but not 2d aorist like λαβών; the 2d aor. partc. ending **-ων** has the acute accent; (*d*) *sc.* αὐτόν (i.e. Κῦρον) as the object.

5. **ἡ δὲ μήτηρ**, *but his mother:* (*a*) ἡ has the force of an unemphatic possessive, cf. τὸν ἀδελφόν XII.; (*b*) μήτηρ, stem μητερ, Lat. *mater*, nom. sing.; cf. *a* and *o* stems, and note that this word belongs to the 3d or consonant declension.

6. **ἐξ-αιτη-σα-μένη**, *having begged* (*him*) *off* (*for herself*)*:*

(*a*) From ἐξ-αιτέ-ω, *I beg off;* ἐξ, *from, out of,* Lat. *ex*, a preposition in composition; it has here a strengthening force, which may be represented by *off.*

(*b*) **-αιτη-** has η lengthened from ε of the present **αιτε**, cf. **ποιέω**, ἐ-ποίη-σε VII.

(*c*) **-σα-**, tense-suffix of the 1st aor., which appears as **-σε** in ἐποίη-σε.

(*d*) **-μενη** (stem in -μενᾱ-), participial suffix of the mid. voice; masc. and neut. stem ends in -μενο-; the middle partc. is inflected like ἀγαθός, except accent; **ἐξαιτησάμενος, ἐξαιτησαμένη, ἐξαιτησάμενον.**

(*e*) Agrees with μήτηρ in gender, number, and case, like adjs.

(*f*) Note the middle signification: *to beg off for one's self, to rescue by one's entreaties.*

7. **ἐπί**, *upon, to, towards,* cf. *epi-taph*, words *upon a tomb;* of place,

after verbs of motion towards a place it takes the acc. case; cf. εἰς with the acc. IX.

8. Voice: Let the student observe the verbs which have occurred in the text and lessons, with a view to investigating voice,— especially how to determine the voice of a Greek verb. Compare the *endings*: —

	ACTIVE VOICE.		MIDDLE OR PASSIVE VOICE.
Pres.	ἀναβαίν-ει διαβάλλ-ει	Pres.	γίγνο-μαι πείθε-ται γίγνο-νται ἀθροίζο-νται
Imperf.	ὑπώπτευ-ε ἐτύγχαν-ε ἠσθένε-ε (ε-ε contracted to -ει)	Imperf.	ἐβούλε-το ἐγίγνο-ντο
Aorist.	ἐποίη-σε ἀπέδει($\xi = \kappa + \sigma$)ε ἐτελεύτη-σε		

(*a*) It will be noticed that the endings of the active voice are quite different from those of the passive and middle. Hence one way of distinguishing voice is by means of the endings.

(*b*) But let us compare **μεταπέμπε-ται**, *he sends for* (for himself), ἀθροίζο-**νται**, *they collect themselves*, and ἐβούλε-**το**, *he was wishing*, with the passive forms before given. These latter have the same endings that the corresponding passive forms have. *In form*, they are like passives, but *in meaning*, they are more like the active voice. Such verbs are said to be in the middle voice; cf. deponent verbs in Latin.

(*c*) Note also that participles in the active voice have a different suffix from that of the middle and passive; cf. ἄρχο-**ντ**-α, ἐξαιτησά-**μενο**-ς.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The article without its substantive is occasionally used as a weak demonstrative pronoun. The article may also have the force of a possessive: **ὁ δέ**, *but he;* **ἡ δέ**, *but she;* **τὴν** ἀρχήν = *the* (*his*,[1] or *her*, or *their*) *province.*

2. The proclitics **ὁ**, **ἡ**, **ὡς**, like **εἰς**, are without accents.

3. **ν** when followed in the same word by λ is assimilated to λ.

[1] The connection will determine which of these possessives must be used in translation.

4. **μήτηρ** (stem *μητερ*) belongs to the 3d or consonant declension.

5. The augment (in past tenses) does not belong to the participles, but to the indicative mode only.

6. **-μενο-** (fem. **-μενα-**) is the mid. part. suffix; the nominatives of mid. partc. end in *-μεν-***ος**, *-μεν-***η**, *-μεν-***ον**, Lat. **-us, -a, -um.**

7. **πείθεται, συλλαμβάνει,** present tenses referring to past time, are called *historical presents.*

8. The endings of the middle (passive) voice differ from those of the active and constitute one means of determining voice.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **αἰτέω,** *I beg.*
2. **ἐξ,** *from, out of.*
3. **ἐξ-αιτέω,** *I beg off.*
4. **ἀπο-κτείνω,** *I kill, destroy.*
5. **ἐπί** (with acc.), *to.*
6. **ἀπο-πέμπω,** *I send off, away.*
7. **κτείνω,** *I kill.*
8. **ἡ μήτηρ,** *mother.*
9. **πάλιν,** *back, again.*
10. **πείθω,** *I persuade.*
11. **πείθομαι,** *I am persuaded, believe.*
12. **σύν,** *with.*
13. **συλ-λαμβάνω,** *I seize, arrest.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Inflect *ἐξαιτησάμενος* (in all genders).

II. Translate: 1. Κῦρος *πάλιν εἰς τὴν ἀρχὴν κατέστη.* 2. *ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς συνελάμβανε αὐτὸν, ὡς διαβάλλοντα Δᾱρεῖον.* 3. *ἡ δὲ μήτηρ τοῦ* Κύρου *αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει εἰς τὴν βασιλείᾱν.* 4. *ἐξαιτησάμενος, γιγνόμενος, ὑποπτεύων, βουλομένη.* 5. *συλλαμβάνων, συλλαμβανόμενος.* 6. *πείθων, πειθόμενος.* 7. *πέμπων, πεμπομένη.*

III. Translate: 1. But she was persuaded and was sending after Cyrus. 2. Accordingly the mother of Cyrus, being persuaded, was seizing her (= the) elder brother. 3. But Cyrus, having rescued his brother by his entreaties, was sending him back into the plain of Castolus. 4. Seizing, being seized (fem.). 5. Persuading, being persuaded (masc., fem., and neut.). 6. Sending away, being sent away (masc., fem., and neut.).

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Article as demonstrative; possessive. 2. Proclitics. 3. *ν* before λ. 4. Formation of participles. 5. Classification of nouns

according to their stems. 6. Greek voices; how distinguished? Meaning of the middle? 7. Mode to which the augment belongs. 8. Historical present. 9. Suffixes of act. and mid. participles. 10. Augment: kinds, place, effect on a prep. in composition. 11. Gender in the first two declensions. 12. Quantity of each final syllable in the cases of the 1st and 2d declensions. 13. Accent in declension. 14. Letters of the Greek alphabet (App. 1). 15. Division of consonants (App. 8, 9, 10, 11).

LESSON XIV.

1. TEXT.

ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπ-ῆλθε κινδῡνεύσᾱς καὶ ἀτῑμασθείς,

2. NOTES.

1. ὁ δ', for ὁ δέ, cf. ὁ δέ XIII., *but he:* the apostrophe shows the *elision* of a short vowel, here ε, before the following initial vowel of ὡς.

2. ὡς, temporal conjunction, *when, as;* cf. different uses of ὡς XII., XIII.

3. ἀπ-ῆλθε, *he went away, had gone:* (*a*) an irregular 2d aorist from ἀπέρχομαι, *I go away;* (*b*) ἀπ = ἀπό, cf. ἀπ-έδειξε VIII., *from, away;* (*c*) theme ἐλθ, ε augmented to η; what kind of augment is this called? (*d*) the present ἔρχομαι is from the theme ἐρχ.

4. κινδῡνεύ-σᾱ-ς, (*after*) *incurring danger:* (*a*) from κινδῡνεύω, *I incur danger;* (*b*) theme κινδῡνευ; (*c*) -σα- tense-suffix of the 1st aor. tense, cf. ἐξαιτη-σα-μένη XIII., ἐποίησε VII.; (*d*) σᾱ-ς, standing for σα-(ντ)-ς, like Latin *amāns* for *ama(nt)s*, indicates 1st aor. partc. act.: the suffix of the act. partc., -ντ-, cf. ἀρχο-ντ-α X., has been lost; (*e*) -ς, case-ending of the nom. sing. masc., cf. Δᾱρεῖο-ς, σατράπη-ς. Lat. *amāns.*

5. ἀ-τῑμασ-θεί-ς, (*after*) *being dishonored:* (*a*) ἀ- negatives what follows as *dis-* does in *dis*-honor; (*b*) from ἀτῑμάζω, theme ἀτῑμαδ; (*c*) ζ contains a δ sound which is brought out in pronouncing it like **ds** in avoids; (*d*) δ before -θεις has been changed to σ; (*e*) τ, δ, θ,

sounded with the aid of the *tongue*, are called *lingual* mutes; (*f*) **-θεις** for **-θε-ντ-ς** indicates 1st aor. partc. pass.; (*g*) **-θε-** 1st pass. suffix; on **-ντ-** and **-ς** cf. *κινδῡνεύσᾱς* for *κινδῡνεύ-σα-ντ-ς*.

6. Personal Endings. — Cf. Lesson XIII. N. 8 and other verbs in the text. The endings, besides showing voice, also indicate person: e.g., in *γίγνο-μαι*, **-μαι** = *I*; in *πείθε-ται*, **-ται** = *he*, *she*, or *it*; in *γίγνο-νται*, **-νται** = *they*; in *ἀναβαίν-ει*, **-ει** = *he*, *she*, or *it*; in *ἐποίησ-ε*, *ὑπώπτευ-ε*, **-ε** = *he*, *she*, or *it*; in *ἐβούλε-το*, **-το** = *he*, *she*, or *it*; in *ἐγίγνο-ντο*, **-ντο** = *they*. Hence it appears that there are (*a*) two sets of personal endings, one for the active voice and another for the passive (middle), and (*b*) that the endings of the present tenses differ from those of the past tenses.

7. Verb Formation. — Consider the root λῡ, meaning *loose*. If we compare *ἔχ-ω*, *βάλλ-ω*, *πέμπ-ω*, *I have*, *throw*, *send*, we know that λῡ́-**ω** means, *I loose*. In the same way, cf. *δια-βάλλ-***ει**, *ἀπο-πέμπ-***ει**: what will λῡ́-**ει** mean? Cf. *ἔχ-***ων**, *λαβ-***ών**, *παρ-***ών**: what will λῡ́-**ων** mean? If we prefix **ε** to **λῡ** (**ἐ-λῡ-**), what effect does the prefixing of **ε** have on the meaning? Then if we add the suffix **-ε**, **ἔλῡ-ε** (cf. *ὑπώπτευ-***ε**), what does the form mean? Suppose we still consider ἐλῡ- but add -ε-**το** (cf. *ἐγίγν-***ε-το**), what will ἐλύε**το** mean? Still considering ἐλῡ-, let us add **-σα-**, thus ἐλῡ-**σα-**; how does the added **-σα-** change the meaning? cf. *ἐποίη-***σε**, *ἐτελεύτη-***σε**. What do ἔλῡ-**σε**, λῡ́-*σᾱς* (for *λῡ-σα-ντ-ς*, cf. *κινδῡνεύ-σᾱς*), *λῡ-σά-***μενο***-ς*, *λῡ-σα-μένη* (cf. *ἐξαιτη-σα-μένη*) mean?

Let us add to **λυ** the ending **-θεις** (cf. *ἀτῑμασθείς*), **λυ-θείς**: what does this mean? Remembering that **-θε-** is a passive suffix (cf. N. 5), suppose that we prefix **ε** to the passive stem, **λυθε**, thus **ἐ-λυθε-**; what effect does the prefixed **ε** have?

8. Tense-suffix of Present and Imperfect. — Cf. the following: —

*μεταπέμπ-***ε***-ται* *πείθ-***ε***-ται* **ἐ-βούλ-ε**-*το*	with	*γίγν-***ο-**ν*ται* **βούλ-ο-**μαι *ἀθροίζ-***ο-ν***ται.*

Note that (*a*) the present and imperfect are from the same theme; (*b*) that between the theme and the personal endings there is a vowel, **ε** or **ο**, called a tense-suffix; (*c*) **ο** is the tense-suffix before **μ** and **ν**, **ε** before other letters.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A final short vowel may be elided before the initial vowel of a following word.

2. **ὡς** is used both as a conjunction and as an adverb.

3. **ἐ** is augmented to ἠ; e.g., ἀπῆλθε from theme ἀπ-ελθ.

4. The augment in compound verbs comes after the preposition.

5. **τ**, **δ**, or **θ** before another τ, δ, or θ (in the same word) become **σ**.

6. **-σᾱς**, end. of the 1st aor. act. partc., standing for σα-ντ-ς.

7. **-θεις**, end. of the 1st aor. pass. partc., standing for θε-ντ-ς.

8. Only the indicative mode has the augment.

9. There are two ways of telling the voice of verbs: (*a*) by the personal endings, (*b*) the passive tense-suffix, **-θε-** (cf. ἀτῑμασ-θείς for ἀτῑμασ-θε-ντ-ς).

10. The present and imperfect are formed from the same theme, cf. **πέμπ-ε-ται, ἐ-πέμπ-ε-το.**

11. The tense-suffix of the present and imperfect is **ο** or **ε**, written for convenience, -ο/ε-; **ο** before **μ** or **ν**, elsewhere **ε**.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἔρχομαι**, *I come, go.*
2. **ἀπ-έρχομαι**, *I go away.*
3. **ἀπ-ῆλθε**, *he went away.*
4. **ἀτῑμάζω**, *I dishonor.*
5. **κινδῡνεύω**, *I incur danger.*
6. **λύ̄ω**, *I loose.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Translate: 1. ἔχων, κινδῡνεύων, κινδῡνεύσᾱς, ἐξαιτησάμενος, αἰτησαμένη, τελευτηθείς. 2. ποιήσᾱς, ποιησάμενος, ποιηθείς. 3. γίγνομαι, γίγνεται, βούλεται. 4. ἐποίει, ἐποιεῖτο, ἐποίησε. 5. πείθω, πείθει, πείθεται, πεισθείς, πείθων. 6. λύ̄ω, λύ̄ων, λῡόμενος, λῡσαμένη, λύ̄σᾱς, λυθείς, λύ̄ει, ἔλῡε, λύ̄ομαι, ἐλύ̄ετο, λύ̄εται, ἐλύ̄οντο.

II. From the theme *βασιλευ* form: 1. Pres. ind. act. 3d sing. 2. Imperf. ind. act. 3d sing. 3. Imperf. ind. mid. 3d sing. 4. Pres. ind. mid. 1st sing. 5. Pres. ind. mid. 3d sing. 6. Pres. act. partc. 7. 1st aor. act. partc. 8. 1st aor. pass. partc. 9. 1st aor. ind. act. 3d sing.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Elision. 2. Participial suffixes. 3. Indirect discourse. 4. Tense-suffixes. 5. Verb-theme. 6. Analysis of *λῦσᾱς, λυθείς.* 7. Lingual mute before another lingual mute. 8. Accent in declension. 9. *τ* before a rough breathing. 10. Tenses which denote continued action. 11. Tense-suffixes of the present, 1st aor., and 1st passive systems. 12. The personal endings. 13. -%- in the present system. 14. The declension of partc. of the mid. voice. 15. Voice. 16. Three classes of mutes (App. 8). 17. Tense in participles (Int. 55). 18. The pres., 1st aor., and 1st pass. systems (App. 71).

LESSON XV.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. I. 4, *βουλεύεται . . . ἀντ᾽ ἐκείνου.*

[The text with numbers referring to the Lessons will be found on pp. 301–336.]

2. NOTES.

1. **βουλεύεται**, *he takes counsel, plans* (for himself): indirect middle.

2. **ὅπως**, *how, that, in order that:* introduces *ἔσται* and *βασιλεύσει* following; he plans *how . . . he shall be*, etc., or *that . . . he may be*, etc.

3. **ἔσ-ται**, *he shall be:* (*a*) fut. of the verb *to be;* theme **ἐσ**, Lat. *es-se;* pres. infin. *εἶναι*, cf. *παρ-εῖναι*; pres. part. *ὤν*, cf. *παρ-ών*. (*b*) **-ται** end. of the 3d sing. mid. or pass., cf. *μεταπέμπεται* VII.

4. **ἐπί**, *upon*, here *in the power of;* followed by the dat.; used also with the acc., cf. *ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν* XIII.

5. **ἢν δύνηται**, *if he be able, if he can:* (*a*) *ἤν* = *εἰ*, *if*, + *ἄν* (untranslatable); (*b*) *δύν-η-ται* from *δύνα-μαι*, *I am able;* (*c*) **-η-**, vowel of the subjunctive (cf. **-ε-** in *βούλ-ε-ται*), but **ω** is the mode vowel in the 1st person (cf. **ο** in *βούλ-ο-μαι*); (*d*) **-ται**, end. of the 3d sing. mid. (passive); *δύνηται* pres. subj. mid. 3d sing.; where will *δύν-ω-μαι* be found?

6. **βασιλεύ-σ-ει**, *he shall be king, rule;* cf. *βασιλείᾱ* XII., *kingdom;*

(*a*) from βασιλεύω, *I am king;* meaning of βασιλεύει? (*b*) -σ°/ε- the tense-suffix of the future, as -σα- is of the 1st aor.

7. **ἀντ᾽** for ἀντί, *instead of:* (*a*) for the loss of ι cf. ὁ δ᾽ XIV.; (*b*) preposition governing the gen. case.

8. **ἐκείνου,** *of that one;* from ἐκεῖνος, declined like αὐτός. How does it differ in declension from ἀγαθός?

9. **The Present System of λύω:** Taking the theme λῡ, *loose,* and comparing the verbs of the text and lessons, we may form a partial paradigm of the present system: —

Present System.

		ACTIVE. PRESENT.	ACTIVE. IMPERFECT.	MIDDLE (PASSIVE). PRESENT.	MIDDLE (PASSIVE). IMPERFECT.
Ind.	Sing.	1. λύω	1. ——	1. λῡ́-ο-μαι	1. ——
		2. ——	2. ——	2. ——	2. ——
		3. λύει	3. ἔ-λῡ-ε	3. λῡ́-ε-ται	3. ἐ-λῡ́-ε-το
	Plu.			1. ——	1. ——
				2. ——	2. ——
				3. λῡ́-ο-νται	3. ἐ-λῡ́-ο-ντο

	ACTIVE. PRESENT.	MIDDLE (PASSIVE). PRESENT. Sing.	MIDDLE (PASSIVE). PRESENT. Plu.
Subjunc.	Sing.	1. λῡ́-ω-μαι	1. ——
		2. ——	2. ——
		3. λῡ́-η-ται	3. λῡ́-ω-νται

	ACTIVE.	MIDDLE (PASSIVE).
Optative.	Sing. 1. ——	
	2. ——	
	3. λύοι	
Participle.	λύων	λῡόμενος, -ομένη, -όμενον.

10. **Endings of the Verb:** If we compare the endings of the active voice (N. 9) with those of the middle (passive), it will be observed (*a*) that there are two series of endings, one for the active, and one for the middle (passive) voice; (*b*) that the endings of the present tense, in both active and mid. (pass.) voices, differ from those of the imperfect tense. How is it in Latin? (Cf. Int. 33, 35; App. 73.)

(*c*) **Personal Endings:** In the finite modes these endings are called personal endings, because they show whether the subject of the action is in the 1st, 2d, or 3d person; to illustrate, e.g., in Latin in *am*-(**o**), *amā*-**s**, *ama*-**t**, *amā*-**mus**, *amā*-**tis**, *ama*-**nt**, the suffixes in dark type are personal endings; cf. Eng. a-**m**, ar-**t**, is, ar-e, ar-e, ar-e, with Latin *s*-*u***m**, *es*, *es*-**t**, *su*-**mus**, *es*-**tis**, *s*-*u***nt**.

(*d*) **Present Indicative Active of λύω**: With the theme λῡ, *loose*, the present indicative active is formed thus: Sing. λῡ́-ω, λῡ́-εις, λῡ́-ει; Dual. λῡ́-ε-τον, λῡ́-ε-τον; Plu. λῡ́-ο-μεν, λῡ́-ε-τε, λῡ́-ουσι.

(*e*) **The Endings of the Active Voice, Principal Tenses**: Cf. Int. 31. These endings are: -μι, -ς, -σι; -τον, -τον; -μεν, -τε, -νσι; in λῡ́-ω and λῡ́-ει, -μι and -σι are not used; λῡ́-εις is of peculiar formation, not easily explained; λῡ́-ουσι is for [λῡ-ο-νσι]; ν has been dropped and ο lengthened to ου, cf. ἀνθρώπους for [ἀνθρωπο-(ν)ς], in which ο has become ου, a process called *compensative lengthening*. Note the close relationship between the Latin and Greek personal endings, cf. *c*.

11. Mode-suffix in the Subjunctive: Cf. βούλ-ο-μαι, βούλ-ε-ται, βούλ-ο-νται, all indicatives, with δύν-ω-μαι, δύν-η-ται (N. 5), δύν-ω-νται (N. 9), subjunctives, and note that ω occurs in the subj. in place of ο in the indic., and η in the place of ε in the indic. These vowels $-\omega/_{\eta}-$ may be called mode-suffixes, or signs of the subjunctive mode. What vowel will be used to make a subjunctive out of βούλ-ο-νται?

12. The Future Indicative Active: Let us compare the presents ἀναβαίν-ει, διαβάλλ-ει, ἀποπέμπ-ει, etc., with the future βασιλεύ-σ-ει. The only difference between the 3d sing. of the present and the 3d sing. of the future is that the future has the tense-suffix $-\sigma^{o}/_{\epsilon}-$ instead of $^{-o}/_{\epsilon-}$ as in the present.

13. The Future Indicative of λύ-ω: This may now be written in part:—

		ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.
Indicative.	Sing.	1. λῡ́-σ-ω	1. λῡ́-σ-ο-μαι
		2. ——	2. ——
		3. λῡ́-σ-ει	3. λῡ́-σ-ε-ται
	Plu.		1. ——
			2. ——
			3. λῡ́-σ-ο-νται
Optative.	Sing.	1. ——	
		2. ——	
		3. λῡ́-σ-οι	
Participle.		λῡ́-σ-ων	λῡ-σ-ό-μενος, -η, -ον.

There is no danger of confusing the future tense-suffix with that of the 1st aor., because the future is $-\sigma^{o}/_{\epsilon-}$, and the 1st aor. -σα- (-σε in 3d sing.).

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ε-ται** indicates the pres. ind. mid. or pass. 3d sing.; **η-ται** the pres. subjunc. mid. or pass. 3d sing.

2. **-ων**, end. of the active partc. in pres., 2d aor., and fut.

3. The verb-stem is made future by adding **-σ^o/ε-**,[1] e.g., *ποιή-σο-μαι, ποιή-σε-ται.*

4. Second aorist forms (e.g., *ἀπ-ῆλθε*) are formed from the theme without a tense-suffix.

5. The mode-suffix of the subjunctive is **-ω/η-**; ω before μ and ν, elsewhere **η**.

6. Future indicatives, optatives, and participles are inflected like those of the present, but the futures have the tense-suffix **-σ^o/ε-**, cf. N. 12.

7. The tense-suffix of the present system of ω-verbs (cf. λύω) is **ο/ε**, i.e., **ο** before μ or ν, elsewhere **ε**.

8. The endings of the principal tenses, active voice, are **-μι, -ς, -σι; -τον, -τον; -μεν, -τε, -νσι.**

9. A different series of endings is used in the mid. (pass.) voice.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀλλά**, *but.*
2. **ἀντί**, *instead of.*
3. **βουλεύω**,[2] *I advise, plan.*
4. **δύναμαι**, *I am able.*
5. **ἐκεῖνος**, *that one, he.*
6. **ἐπί** (with dat.), *upon, in the power of.*
7. **ἔσται**, (*he*) *shall* or *will be.*
8. **ἔτι**, *yet, again.*
9. **ἤν** (εἰ + ἄν), *if*, used with the subj.
10. **μή-ποτε**, *not ever, never.*
11. **ὅπως**, *that, in order that, how* (with the indic.).

5. EXERCISES.

I. Inflect: pres. ind. act. of *βουλεύω, κινδῡνεύω, πέμπω, ἔχω, βάλλω.*

II. Translate:[3] 1. *πέμπεις, βασιλεύεις, κινδῡνεύεις, βάλλεις, ἔχεις, βουλεύεις.* 2. *πέμπομεν, βουλεύομεν, βάλλομεν, κινδῡνεύομεν, βασιλεύομεν,*

[1] This means that an o-vowel follows σ in the 1st sing. and plu., and 3d plu., and that ε follows elsewhere.

[2] Very frequent as an indirect middle, *I deliberate.*

[3] Always pronounce the Greek exercises aloud.

ἔχομεν. 3. ἔχουσι, βάλλουσι, βασιλεύουσι, κινδῡνεύουσι, πέμπουσι, βουλεύουσι. 4. πέμπετε, ἔχετε, βασιλεύετε, βουλεύετε, κινδῡνεύετε.

III. Translate: 1. After begging, about to beg, after being begged. 2. Cyrus is-begged-off (partc. aor. pass.) [and] sent away to the province of which Darius had made him satrap. 3. He plans (for himself) that he may again be able (δυνή-σε-ται) to be general of all the Greeks who (as many as) assemble in (= into) the plain.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Future of εἶναι. 2. Purpose. 3. Meaning of -σ%ε-. 4. Meaning of -ω/η-, ⁻%ε-, -σα-, -θε-. 5. Personal endings of the act., principal (primary) tenses. 6. -μι, -σι, -νσι in λύω. 7. -ουσι in 3d plu. 8. ἐπί with the dat.; with the acc. 9. ἀντ᾽.

LESSON XVI.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. i. 4, Παρύσατις . . . Ἀρταξέρξην.

2. NOTES.

1. **Παρύσατις**, cf. I.: what is the gen. sing.? to what declension does it belong?

2. **μέν**, cf. VI. and VII.; it points forward to ὅστις δ᾽ (Anab. I. i. 5) and contrasts the mother of Cyrus with others who favored him.

3. **ἡ μήτηρ**: in apposition with Παρύσατις; in what case must an appositive be?

4. **δή**, *now, accordingly;* gives emphasis, vivacity, or familiarity to the thought.

5. **ὑπ-ῆρχ-ε**, *supported, was a foundation* (ὑπό) or *beginning* (ἀρχή) *for:* (*a*) from ὑπάρχω (ὑπό + ἄρχω), cf. ὑπ-ώπτευε IV.; (*b*) α augmented to η, cf. ἠσθένει III.; (*c*) what does final -ε show? cf. IV.; (*d*) cf. ἀπ-ῆλθε XIV., and note the accent on the temporal augment.

6. **Κύρῳ**: indirect object after the intransitive verb ὑπῆρχε, a verb of *aiding*.

7. **φιλοῦσα**, *loving*, i.e., *because she loved:* (*a*) partc. from φιλέω, nom. fem.; (*b*) φιλέ-ων, nom. masc., and φιλέ-ουσα, nom. fem., become φιλῶν and φιλοῦσα in contraction; the ε has been absorbed and lost in ου and ω; (*c*) cf. κινδῡνεύσᾱς XIV., and note that φιλοῦσα does not add a circumstance of *time* but of *cause;* (*d*) note the circumflex accent on φιλῶν, φιλοῦσα, φιλῶ, as a result of the contraction, cf. ἀποκτενῶν (-ῶν for -έων), χωρῶν (for χωρά-ων).

8. **τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην**, *the ruling Artaxerxes,* or *Artaxerxes who was king:* (*a*) βασιλεύο-ντ-**α** from βασιλεύω, cf. βασιλεύσει XV.; (*b*) on **-ντ-** and **-α** cf. ἄρχοντα X.; -α is the case-ending of the acc. sing., 3d decl.; so μητέρ-**α**, nom. μήτηρ, stem μητερ; we can now write three cases of Παρύσατις, viz.: nom. Παρύσατις, gen. Παρυσάτιδ-**ος** I., acc. Παρυσάτιδ-α; (*c*) case of Ἀρταξέρξην? construction? declension?

9. **The Future:** Compare βασιλεύσει XV., N. 6, 12, Obs. 6, 8, and write out on paper the conjugation of the fut. ind. act. of λύω. What is the difference between the pres. and fut. of this verb? Form futures of βουλεύω, κινδῡνεύω. What do ποιήσω (cf. ποιέω) and φιλήσω (cf. φιλέω) mean? Remembering what -σ%- means, what would you expect λῡ-σό-μενος, λῡ́-σο-μαι, λῡ́-σε-ται, λῡ́-σο-νται to mean? What can you now infer about the conjugation of the fut. mid. (pass.) as compared with the pres. mid. (pass.)? How does the pres. act. differ from the fut. act. in verbs like λύω? Cf. ἀποκτενῶν XIII. and note that there are futures formed without -σ-. These will be considered later.

10. **The Imperfect Active:** Cf. ἔ-λῡ-ε, ὑπ-ώπτευ-ε, etc.; the augment is used to signify past time; then come the theme, tense-suffix of the present system (of which the imperfect is a part), **-ο/ε-**, and finally the personal endings; these endings in historical or past tenses differ but slightly from the endings of the principal tenses; in the active, the endings of past tenses are: **-ν, -ς, –; -τον, -την; -μεν, -τε, -ν** or **-σαν.** Cf. these with the endings of the principal tenses; what endings are alike? In the imperfect of λύω, the 1st sing. and 3d plu. are alike, both taking the ending **-ν**. Let the student now write[1] out the conjugation of the imperfect active of λύω, observing that -ε in the 3d sing. is really a tense-suffix, *not* a personal ending.

[1] The teacher should explain the formation of the imperfect on the board before the pupil is permitted to read this Note.

11. Relation Expressed by Participles: The relation may be one of time, cf. *ἐξαιτησαμένη* XIII., *κινδῡνεύσᾱς*, *ἀτῑμασθείς* XIV. Consider, however, *φιλοῦσα*; why did Parysatis favor Cyrus? *because she loved him more*, etc. Participles may express *cause* as well as time.

12. Case-endings of the Third Declension, Masc. and Fem.: —

Sing.	Nom. **-ς** (Παρύσατι-**ς**)	Dual.	Nom., acc., voc. **-ε** (παῖδ-**ε**)
	Gen. **-ος** (Παρυσάτιδ-**ος**)		Gen. and Dat. ——
	Dat. ——	Plu.	Nom. and voc. **-ες** (παῖδ-**ες**)
	Acc. **-α** (ἄρχοντ-**α**)		Gen. **-ων** (πάντ-**ων**)
	Voc. ——		

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The accent of compound verbs never goes back of the augment.

2. Verbs of *aiding* take the dat. of indirect object.

3. Participles in **-ων** have the fem. in **-ουσᾰ**.

4. In contraction ε is absorbed by a following ω or ου, and the contracted syllable, if a penult or antepenult, is accented according to the general rules for accent; a contracted ultima receives the circumflex except when the ultima had the acute before contraction, cf. *φιλέ-ουσᾰ*, *φιλοῦσᾰ*; *φιλέ-ων*, *φιλῶν*.

5. The future of λύω differs from the present by the insertion of -σ- after the theme; this applies to act. and mid.

6. The future of some verbs is formed without **-σ°/ε-**.

7. The imperfect is formed from the present stem, and belongs to the present system.

8. The personal endings of past tenses in the active voice are: **ν, ς, —; -τον, -την; -μεν, -τε, -ν** or **-σαν**.

9. Participles express both temporal and causal relations.

10. Appositives agree in case with their substantives.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **βασιλεύω**, *I rule, I am king.*
2. **δή**, *accordingly, now.*
3. **ἤ**, *than.*
4. **μᾶλλον**, *more, rather.*
5. **ὑπό**, *under, sub.*
6. **ὑπ-άρχω**, *I support, favor.*
7. **φιλέω**, **φιλῶ**, *I love.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Conjugate: ἐλάμβανον, ἔπεμπον, ἐβασίλευον, κινδῡνεύσω, ποιήσω.

II. Translate: 1. Ἀρταξέρξης ἐβασίλευε. 2. ἡ δὴ μήτηρ αὐτὸν ἔλῡε. 3. λύεις, ἔλῡες, λύω, ἔλῡον, λύουσι. 4. ὑπῆρχον τῷ στρατηγῷ. 5. Κῦρος ἐβασίλευε. 6. βασιλεύσω, κινδῡνεύσομεν, βουλεύσετε, λύσουσι. 7. ὑπώπτευον, ἐτύγχανες, ἀνεβαίνομεν, διεβάλλετε, ἀπέπεμπε.

III. Translate: 1. I am ruling, I shall rule, I was ruling. 2. Accordingly Parysatis sent Cyrus back to his (= the) province. 3. The generals favored Cyrus. 4. We were supporting, we shall rule, we shall love (fr. φιλήσω). 5. You were supporting, thou wast supporting, they were slandering, they will rule, they are ruling. 6. Thou art loosing, thou wast loosing, thou wilt loose, you will make (from fut. of ποιέω), we shall make, they will love.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Accent of ὑπῆρχε. 2. Endings in the 3d decl. 3. Analysis of βασιλεύοντα. 4. Augment of α, ε, and ο. 5. Elision and augment in compound verbs. 6. Classification of the consonants according to (*a*) formation, (*b*) order (App. 8). 7. Time indicated by the tenses of the participle. 8. Endings of the active voice, historical (secondary) tenses. 9. Endings of the future active compared with the present active. 10. Number in the Greek verb. 11. Endings of the imperfect active. 12. Contraction. 13. Accent of contract syllables.

LESSON XVII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. i. 5, Ὅστις . . . βασιλεῖ.

2. NOTES.

1. ὅστις δ' ἀφικνοῖτο . . . ἀπεπέμπετο, *and whoever came . . . he used to send back:* (*a*) ὅστις, indefinite rel. pro.; *whoever came = if any one came;* (*b*) ἀφικνοῖτο, from ἀφ-ικνέομαι (ἀπό + ἱκνέομαι), contracted from ἀφ-ικνέ-οι-το, ε being absorbed in -οι- as in φιλῶ (for φιλέ-ω) and in φιλοῦσα (for φιλέ-ουσα) ε has been absorbed in -ω and -ου; note

the circumflex accent, cf. φιλοῦσα XVI.; (*c*) for **-οι-το** cf. **ἐπιβουλεύ-οι** XII., what mode? (*d*) ἀφ (for ἀπ') = ἀπό, cf. καθ-ίστημι XII.; (*e*) note the force of ἀπ-ε-πέμπετο, *sent back* (from time to time), *kept sending back, used to send back* — a customary or repeated past action; how does the imperfect differ in meaning from the aorist?

2. **τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως**: (*a*) lit., *of the* (= *those*) *from the king*, a condensed expression = *whoever of those* (who were) *beside the king came from the king to him* (Cyrus); (*b*) παρά with the gen. = *from beside*, with the dat. = *beside*, cf. παρ-ών VI.; (*c*) βασιλέως: note the omission of the article because the king[1] of Persia is referred to.

3. **βασιλέ-ως**, *of* (*the*) *king*: (*a*) nom. βασιλεύς, cf. βασιλεύοντα and βασιλεύσει; (*b*) **-ως** for **-ος**, cf. Παρυσάτιδ-ος I., case-ending of the gen. sing., 3d decl., cf. **-is** in Lat. 3d decl., e.g., *honor*-**is**, *of honor;* (*c*) so ἄρχοντ-**ος**, βασιλεύοντ-**ος**, παιδ-**ός**, μητρ-**ός** (Lat. *matr*-**is**).

4. **πάντ-ας**, *all;* acc. plu. masc.; gen. plu. πάντ-ων VIII.; so βασιλέ-**ᾱς** *kings*, ἄρχοντ-**ας** *commanders*, παῖδ-**ας** *boys;* **-ας** case-ending of the acc. plu. masc. and fem. in the 3d decl., becoming **-ᾱς** in βασιλέ-**ᾱς**.

5. **οὕτω . . . ὥστε**, *so . . . that* or *as, in such a manner . . . that.*

6. **δια-τιθ-είς**, *dis-posing*, "affecting the minds of all," etc.: (*a*) from δια-τίθη-**μι**, *I arrange* (*set apart*, διά like Lat. *dis*), *dispose;* theme θε, present stem τιθε; note the ending **-μι** = *I;* (*b*) pres. act. partc. nom. sing. masc.; δια-τιθ-είς = δια-τιθε-ντ-ς; ντ has been dropped and ε changed to ει, cf. ἀτῑμασθείς XIV., also κινδῡνεύσᾱς for κινδῡνευσα-ντ-ς, in which -α-(ντ)-ς becomes -ᾱς; cf. also λῡ-ου-σι = λῡ-ο-(ν)-σι. What is this lengthening called?

7. **φίλους**: pred. acc. to agree with the sub. of εἶναι, which is understood from πάντας.

8. **βασιλε-ῖ**: (*a*) dat. sing. of βασιλεύς; **-ι**, case-end. of the dat. sing. 3d decl., cf. ι subscript in 1st and 2d decl. and Lat. *reg*-**i**; (*b*) applying the endings met with, cf. XVI. N. 12, we have: nom. βασιλεύ-**ς**, gen. βασιλέ-**ως**, dat. βασιλε-**ῖ**, acc. βασιλέ-**ᾱ**; nom., acc., and voc. dual βασιλέ-**ε**; nom. plu. (βασιλέ-**ες**)[2] βασιλεῖς, gen. βασιλέ-**ων**, acc. βασιλέ-**ᾱς**. The other cases are: voc. sing. βασιλεῦ; gen. and dat. dual βασιλέ-**οιν**; dat. plu. βασιλεῦ-**σι**. The acc. sing. and plu. of βασιλεύς have **-ᾱ** and **-ᾱς** instead of the usual endings **-α** and **-ας**.

[1] βασιλεύς is used of the king of Persia almost as if it were a proper name; proper names generally omit the article, cf. the use of *Pharaoh* in the O. T.

[2] -έ-ες contracts to -εῖς, cf. (ᾐσθένε-ε) ᾐσθέν-ει.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Sentences introduced by indefinite relative pronouns have the force of conditional sentences.

2. Before a rough breathing **π** becomes **φ**, as **τ** becomes **θ**.

3. **ε** before **οι** is absorbed, as before **ω** and **ου**.

4. The partc. suffix **-ντ-** is lost before **-ς** and a preceding vowel is lengthened in compensation; **α** becomes **ᾱ**; **ε** becomes **ει**; **ο** becomes **ου**.

5. Masc. and fem. endings of the 3d decl. are **-ς, -ος, -ι, -α**; **-ε, -οιν**; **-ες, -ων, -σι, -ας**; *βασιλεύς* has **-ως, -ᾱ, -ᾱς**.

6. With the gen. of a person *παρά* denotes separation, *from the side of, from.*

7. Verbs which use the ending **-μι** in the present system are called **μι**-verbs; verbs in **-ω** are called **ω**-verbs; cf. *διατίθη-μι* and *λῡ́-ω*.

8. Middle participles belong to the vowel-declension, but active participles are partially of the consonant-declension.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀφ-ικνέο-μαι**, *I arrive.*
2. **ὁ βασιλεύς**, *king.*
3. **δια-τίθη-μι**, *I arrange, dispose.*
4. **ὅστις**, *whoever.*
5. **οὕτω**, *so, thus; ita.*
6. **πάντες**, *all.*
7. **παρά** with gen., *from beside, from.*
8. **ὁ φίλος**, *friend.*
9. **ὥστε**, *so as, so that.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Inflect the present and imperfect active of *πέμπω.*

II. Translate: 1. *βασιλεύων, βασιλέων, βασιλεύοντα, βασιλέᾱ, λῡ́σων, λῡ́σουσα.* 2. *ἡ δὴ μήτηρ αὐτὸν ἐφίλει, ὥστε αὐτῇ μᾶλλον φίλον* (sc. *αὐτὸν*) *εἶναι ἢ τῷ βασιλεῖ.* 3. *ὅστις οὖν ἀφικνοῖτο παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην, φίλον ἀπεπέμπετο.* 4. *ἀλλ᾽ ἢν δύνηται βασιλεὺς εἶναι, ποιήσει τὸν ἀδελφὸν στρατηγόν.* 5. *ἡ μήτηρ οὖν ἀνέβαινε πρὸς τὸν Ἀρταξέρξην ὡς ἐξαιτησομένη τὸν Κῦρον.* 6. *ὁ δὲ ἀτῑμασθεὶς ἐτελεύτησε τὸν βίον.*

III. Translate: 1. He happens to be friendly (= a friend) to the king. 2. But when the younger happened to be absent, Tissaphernes slandered (hist. pres.) him to the reigning Artaxerxes. 3. But his mother, loving Cyrus rather than the older brother, persuades the king and sends Cyrus back again to his province.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. ὅπως and ὥστε. 2. Analysis of partc. end. -ᾱς, -είς. 3. φ in ἀφικνέομαι. 4. Endings in the 3d decl. 5. Agreement of adjectives and relatives. 6. Verb endings -οι, -οιτο. 7. Conditional relatives. 8. Article as a demonstrative. 9. Time indicated by the tenses of the participle. 10. ε before οι, ω, ου. 11. Accent in contraction. 12. Stems in the 3d decl. 13. Declension of βασιλεύς.

LESSON XVIII.—REVIEW.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. i. 3–5.

[Pursue the same order of work as that given with Lesson XI.]

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Letters.** — Alphabet App. 1; classification of consonants App. 8, 9, 10, 11; three classes and three orders of mutes App. 8.

2. **Vowel Changes.** — Compensative lengthening (α, ε,) XIV., XVII.; contraction of ε with ε, ω, οι, ου XVI., XVII.; elision XII., XIV.; final α and ε before σα in the 1st aorist XII.

3. **Consonant Changes.** — Assimilation XIII.; linguals before linguals XIV.; smooth mute before rough breathing XII., XVII.

4. **Accent.** — As affected by contraction XVI.; as affected by final οι in the optative XII.; as affected by augment XVI.; proclitics XIII.

5. **Declension.** — Third declension stems and case-endings XIII., XVI.; βασιλεύς XVII.; αὐτός XII.; ἐκεῖνος XV.; mid. (pass.) participles XIII., XVII.

6. **Elements of Verb.** — Root, theme, stem App. 72, 73; augment: belongs to indicative XIII., of ε XIV., in compounds XIV.; tense-suffix of pres. and imperfect XIV., XVI.; tense-suffix, formation, and inflection of future XV., XVI.; tense-suffix of 1st aor. XII.; tense-suffix of 1st pass. system XIV.; formation of 2d aor. XII., XV.; mode-suffix of subjunctive XV.; endings of principal and historical tenses XIII., XV., XVI.; suffixes of participles XIII., XIV., XV., XVI.; signs of voice XIII., XIV., XV.

7. μι- and ω- verbs XVII.; pres., 1st aor., and 1st pass. systems App. 71.

8. **Conjugation** of λύω, ἔλῡον, λύσω in the indicative active.

9. **Syntax of Nouns.** — Appositives XVI.; after εἰς XII.; after ἀντί XV.; gen. with παρά XVII.; after ἐπί in composition XII.; after verbs of aiding XVI.

10. **The Article.** — As possessive XII.; demonstrative XIII.

11. **Syntax of Verbs.** — Historical present XIII.; aorist for pluperfect XII.; ὅπως with future indicative XV.; optative in indirect discourse XII.; conditional relative sentences XVII.; tense in participles Int. 55; temporal and causal relations expressed by the participle XVI.

3. VOCABULARY.

VERBS.

1. αἰτέω.
2. ἀπ-έρχομαι.
3. ἀπ-ῆλθε.
4. ἀπο-πέμπω.
5. ἀπο-κτείνω.
6. ἀτῑμάζω.
7. ἀφ-ικνέομαι.
8. βασιλεύω.
9. βουλεύω.
10. δια-βάλλω.
11. δια-τίθημι.
12. δύναμαι.
13. ἐξ-αιτέω.
14. ἐπι-βουλεύω.
15. καθ-ίστημι.
16. κινδῡνεύω.
17. λῡ́ω.
18. πείθω.
19. συλ-λαμβάνω.
20. τελευτάω.
21. ὑπ-άρχω.
22. φιλέω.

NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἀδελφός.
2. ἡ βασιλείᾱ.
3. ὁ βασιλεύς.
4. ἡ μήτηρ.

PRONOUNS.

1. ἐκεῖνος.
2. ὅστις.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. ἀλλά.
2. ἤ.
3. ἤν.
4. ὅπως.
5. ὥστε.

PREPOSITIONS.

1. ἀντί.
2. διά.
3. ἐξ.
4. ἐπί.
5. κατά.
6. πρός.
7. σύν.

ADV. PARTICLES.

1. δή.
2. ἔτι.
3. μᾶλλον.
4. μήποτε.
5. οὕτω.
6. πάλιν.
7. ὡς.

4. EXERCISES.

I. Inflect: *πέμψω* (fut. ind. of *πέμπω*), *ἤθροιζον* (imperf. of *ἀθροίζω*), *βουλευόμενος* (partc. of *βουλεύω*).

II. Translate: 1. *ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Δᾱρεῖος ἐτελεύτησε.* 2. *ὁ στρατηγὸς διέβαλλε Κῦρον ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι τῷ πρεσβυτέρῳ ἀδελφῷ.* 3. *ἣν δύνωνται, βασιλεύσουσι.* 4. *οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἐπεβούλευον.* 5. *διέβαλλον τοὺς φίλους.* 6. *Παρύσατις ὑπάρχει Κύρῳ.*

III. Translate: 1. The elder brother became established in the kingdom. 2. But his mother wished Cyrus to be king instead of him. 3. Accordingly Parysatis supports the younger (son). 4. And Cyrus also deliberates how he shall be king. 5. He used-to-send (imperfect) all (men) away as friends.

5. TEST QUESTIONS.

1. How many declensions are there in Greek?
2. Describe the stem of the nouns of each declension.
3. How is the article declined in the masc.? fem.? neuter?
4. The adjectives which you have studied are how declined? the participles? pronouns?
5. What is a deponent verb?
6. What are proclitics? Name those which have occurred in the text.
7. What is the difference in meaning between the imperfect and the aorist?
8. How can you form the future from the present[1]?
9. From the stem of what tense is the imperfect formed?
10. What endings of the present are alike? of the imperfect?
11. What forms of the pres., fut., and imperf., indic. act. really have no personal endings?
12. For what is augment used? Where is its position in a compound verb?
13. How does the aorist differ from the future in the indic.?
14. What tense- and mode-suffixes have you studied?

[1] Not true for all verbs, as will be seen hereafter.

LESSON XIX.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. I. 5, 6, *καί . . . βασιλέᾱ.*

2. NOTES.

1. **τῶν** belongs with *βαρβάρων*: note that *παρ᾽ ἑαυτῷ* is between the article and its noun, i.e., in the attributive position, to show that the phrase modifies *βαρβάρων* just as if it were an attrib. adj.; e.g., **τῶν ἀγαθῶν** *βαρβάρων.*

2. **παρ᾽** for *παρά*, cf. *ἀντ᾽* XV.: with the dat. = *by the side of;* with the gen. what does it mean? cf. XVII.

3. **ἑαυτῷ**, reflexive pronoun, *himself*, Lat. *sibi.*

4. **ἐπ-ε-μελεῖ-το**, *he cared for*: (*a*) from *ἐπιμελέομαι*, deponent; (*b*) contracted from *ἐπ-ε-μελέ-ε-το*, ε-ε contracts to ει, cf. *ἠσθένει* III., *βασιλέ-ες*, *βασιλεῖς* XVII. N. 8; (*c*) governs the gen. case, *τῶν βαρβάρων*, like many verbs expressing an *action of the mind.*

5. **πολεμεῖν**, contr. from *πολεμέ-ειν*, *to wage war, to fight*: (*a*) pres. act. infin. from *πολεμέω*, cf. Eng. *polemic;* (*b*) **-ειν** end. of act. infin.; another ending is **-ναι**, cf. *παρεῖ-ναι* V.; (*c*) what will be the meaning of **λύ-ειν, πέμπ-ειν, ἔχ-ειν**?

6. **τε** for **τέ**, *both*, correlative with the following *καί*, *and*: the accent has been lost because *τε leans on the preceding word*, and is to be read as a part of it, cf. Lat. *hóminésque;* such words are called *enclitics*, because they *lean on* preceding words; contrast *enclitics* with *proclitics*, *εἰς*, *ὡς*, etc., which have no accent, but are read with the following word.

7. **ὡς . . . ε-ἴη-σαν**, *ut essent, that they might* (or *should*) *be*: (*a*) from *εἰμί*, *I am;* cf. *ὤν*, *being;* *εἶναι*, *to be;* *ἔσται*, (*he*) *will be;* (*b*) pres. opt. act. 3d plu., in a clause of purpose after a past (secondary) tense; (*c*) **-ιη-** is a mode-suffix of the optative; **-ι-** is also a mode-suffix of the optative, cf. *ἐπιβουλεύ-***ο-ι** XII.; observe that the variable vowel (˚%ε-) appears as **-ο-** before **-ι-**; (*d*) cf. *ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι* XII. for the opt. used in indir. disc. instead of the indic. of the dir. disc.; (*e*) cf. *ὅστις* **ἀφικνοῖτο** XVII. for the opt. in cond. rel. sentences.

8. **εὐνοϊκ-ῶς ἔχ-ο-ιε-ν**, and that *they might* (or *should*) *be friendly*: (*a*) the diaeresis marks show that **ο** and **ι** do not constitute a diphthong, but are to be pronounced separately; (*b*) **-ῶς**, ending of the adverb; (*c*) ἔχω with an adverb = εἰμί with the corresponding adjective; lit. *have* (*themselves*) *in a friendly manner*; (*d*) **ἔχ-ο-ιε-ν**, pres. opt. act. 3d plu.; on **-ο-** cf. N. 7; **-ιε-**, mode-suffix of the opt. before **-ν** in the 3d plu.; for the 3d sing. end., **-οι**, cf. ἐπιβουλεύ-**οι** XII. and N. 7; **-σαν**, like **-ν**, is the end. of the opt. act. 3d plu., cf. ε-ἵη-**σαν** N. 7; (*e*) opt. of purpose with ὡς, like εἴησαν.

9. **δύναμι-ν**, *force*: (*a*) from δύναμις, cf. Eng. *dynamite*, δύνηται XV.; (*b*) **-ν**, as well as **-α**, indicates acc. sing. 3d decl., cf. Τισσαφέρνη-ν IX.

10. **ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο**, *quam maxime poterat, as well as he could*: ἐ-δύνα-το from δύναμαι, cf. δύνηται XV., deponent, imperf. 3d sing., cf. ἐ-βούλε-το, ἐπ-ε-μελεῖ-το.

11. **ἐπι-κρυπτ-ό-μενο-ς**, *hiding* (*for himself*): (*a*) from ἐπι-κρύπτω, cf. Eng. *crypt*; (*b*) on the partc. suffix and the voice cf. ἐξαιτησαμένη XIII.; (*c*) taking it with the preceding word we may translate, *as secretly as he could*.

12. **ὅπως**, *ut, in order that*: (*a*) like **ὡς**, N. 7, followed by the opt. to express purpose after a past (secondary) tense; (*b*) for a different use of ὅπως after verbs of *striving*, cf. ὅπως ἔσται XV.

13. **ὅτι ἀπαρασκευό-τατο-ν**, *as unprepared as possible*: (*a*) ὅτι, like ὡς in ὡς μάλιστα N. 10, strengthens the superlative; (*b*) from the positive ἀπαράσκευος; (*c*) the superlative is formed by adding **-τατο-** to the stem of the positive ἀπαρασκευο-, and is then declined regularly like ἀγαθός; (*d*) for the comp. suffix cf. πρεσβύ-**τερο-ς** II.; (*e*) the comparison will then be: ἀπαράσκευος, ἀπαρασκευό-**τερο-ς**, ἀπαρασκευό-**τατο-ς**.

14. **The Third Declension**: (*a*) **The stems** end in consonants (cf. παῖδ-ες I., ἄρχοντ-α X., μήτηρ, stem μητερ-, XIII.) and close vowels (cf. βασιλεύ-ς XVII., δύναμι-ν N. 9).

(*b*) **The nom. sing. of masc. and fem. nouns** adds a case-ending **-ς** (cf. βασιλεύ-ς), but many words reject this case-ending and lengthen a preceding **ε** to η (cf. μήτηρ, stem μητερ-) and **ο** to ω (cf. ἄρχοντ-α, stem ἀρχοντ-, of which the nom. becomes ἄρχων, final **τ** of the stem having disappeared).

(*c*) **The acc. sing. of masc. and fem nouns** adds **-ν** or **-α** to the stem, **-ν** after vowel-stems (except stems in *ευ-*, cf. *βασιλέ-ᾱ*), **-α** after consonants.

(*d*) **The voc. sing. of masc. and fem. nouns** is regularly the mere stem (cf. *βασιλεῦ*, also *δύναμι*), but many words have the voc. sing. like the nom.; these words will be noticed later.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **παρά** with the dat. = *beside;* with the gen., *from beside.*

2. A preposition and its object may stand between an article and its noun and have the value of an attributive adjective.

3. Verbs of *mental action*, e.g., *ἐπιμελέομαι*, often govern the gen.

4. **ὡς** and **ὅπως** indicate purpose; *ὥστε*, result.

5. **-ειν** and **-ναι** are infin. endings; *έ-ειν* contracts to *-εῖν*.

6. **τέ**, *an enclitic*, loses its own accent, and is read as a part of the preceding word.

7. A clause of purpose may have its verb in the optative after a past (secondary) tense.

8. **Ἔχω** with an adverb has the sense of the Eng. *to be* with a predicate adjective.

9. **-ιε-ν** and **-ιη-ν** indicate the optative 3d plural.

10. The optative has two mode-suffixes: **-ι-**, **-ιη-** (*-ιε-*).

11. **ὡς** and **ὅτι** strengthen a superlative like *quam* in Latin.

12. Adverbs are formed from adjectives by the end. **-ως**, e.g., *εὐνοϊκ-ῶς* from *εὐνοϊκ-ός*.

13. Most adjectives are compared by adding **-τερο-** for the comp. and **-τατο-** for the superl. to the masc. stem of the positive; the comp. and superl. are declined like adjectives of the vowel-declension.

14. Third decl. stems end in consonants and close vowels.

15. The nom. sing. of masc. and fem. nouns of the 3d decl. adds **-ς** to the stem, but many words reject -ς and lengthen a preceding **ε** to **η**, **ο** to **ω**; e.g., stems in *ρ-* and *οντ-*.

16. The acc. sing. of masc. and fem. nouns of the 3d decl. takes the case-ending **-ν** after vowels, **-α** after consonants.

17. The voc. sing. of masc. and fem. nouns of the 3d decl. is regularly the mere stem, but many words make it like the nom.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀπαράσκευος**, *unprepared.*
2. **ὁ βάρβαρος**, *barbarian.*
3. **ἡ δύναμις**, *force.*
4. **ἑαυτῷ**, *to himself.*
5. **εἴησαν**, opt. 3d plu. of verb *to be.*
6. **Ἑλληνικός**, *Greek.*
7. **ἐπικρύπτω**, *I hide.*
8. **ἐπιμελέομαι** (w. gen.), *I care for.*
9. **εὐνοϊκός**, *well-disposed, friendly.*
10. **εὐνοϊκῶς**, *in a friendly way.*
11. **ἱκανός**, *able.*
12. **μάλιστα**, *most, especially.*
13. **ὅτι, ὡς** (w. superl.), intensify the superlative.
14. **παρά** (w. dat.), *by the side of.*
15. **πολεμέω**, *I fight, make war.*
16. **τέ . . . καί**, *both . . . and.*
17. **ὡς** (conj.), *in order that, that.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *δύναμις, ἀπαράσκευος* (sing.), *ἱκανός* (plu.).

II. Translate: 1. *οἱ παρ' ἑαυτῷ βάρβαροι βούλονται εἶναι ἱκανοὶ πολεμεῖν.* 2. *ὁ μὲν Κῦρος ἀνέβη καὶ ἔσται παρὰ τῷ ἀδελφῷ.* 3. *ἐβούλοντο δὴ αὐτὸν ἔχειν ὅτι ἱκανώτατον ἄρχοντα.* 4. *ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠσθένει ὁ βασιλεύς, ἐπεμελεῖτο αὐτοῦ ἡ Παρύσατις.* 5. *ἐπεκρύπτετο τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο.*

III. Translate: 1. But whoever arrived (opt.) from beside Cyrus slandered the king as secretly (= hiding) as possible. 2. But Cyrus was plotting that he might reign.[1] 3. The satrap accordingly went up when the king happened to be (= being) most unprepared. 4. He will be a friend of the king if he is able (subj.) to hold (= have) the city. 5. The city will be as unprepared as possible.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Elision. 2. Contr. of *ε-ε, έ-ε, έ-ει, έ-ου, έ-ω.* 3. Deponents. 4. Verb ending *-ειν.* 5. Different uses of the opt. 6. Accent of *τέ.* 7. Theme and pres. stem of *λαμβάνω.* 8. End. *-ιε-ν, ιη-σαν.* 9. *ἔχω* with an adv. 10. *ὅπως* with fut. ind. 11. Cases with *παρά.* 12. Attributive position. 13. Position of *μέν*; of *δέ.* 14. Augment. 15. Participial suffixes. 16. Comparison of *ἱκανός.* 17. Endings of the 3d decl. 18. Nom. sing. of masc. and fem. 3d decl. nouns; acc. sing.; voc. sing. 19. Declension of *πόλις* (like *δύναμις*), App. 48. 20. Open and close vowels, App. 4. 21. Accent of gen. sing. and plu. of *πόλις*, App. 48, N. c.

[1] Opt. of *βασιλεύω*; for the form cf. *ἐπιβουλεύ-***οι** XII.

LESSON XX.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. I. 6, ὧδε . . . πόλεσι.

2. NOTES.

1. **ὧδε**: an adv. not formed with the ending -ως as in εὐνοϊκῶς XIX.; refers to what follows.

2. **ὁπόσᾱς**: indef. rel. of quantity or number; nom. masc. ὁπόσος, inflected like ἀγαθός; for the meaning, cf. ὅσοι IX.

3. **εἶχε**: (*a*) imperf. ind. act. 3d sing. from ἔχω; (*b*) contracted from ἔ-εχε, ε- the syllabic augment before an initial vowel; what is the general rule? (*c*) what will be the first sing. imperf.?

4. **ἐν**, *in, among*, Lat. *in*: (*a*) a proclitic like εἰς, ὡς, etc.; (*b*) always followed by the dat.

5. **πόλε-σι**: (*a*) dat. plu. of πόλις, stem πόλι-; (*b*) final ι of the stem changed to ε; in what cases is ι retained? (*c*) πόλις is found in English *metro-polis* and many proper names of places; (*d*) the 3d decl. includes stems in close vowels as well as consonants.

6. **παρ-ήγγειλ-ε**, *sent word, commanded*: (*a*) from παρ-αγγέλλω,[1] cf. Eng. *angel*;[2] (*b*) on γγ = *ng*, cf. γχ in τυγχάνω VI.; (*c*) ἤγγελλε is the imperfect; ἤγγειλε is the 1st aor.; (*d*) note -λλ- in the imperf., but a single λ in the 1st aor.; -σ of the tense-suffix -σε (in the 3d sing.) is not employed, but ε of the theme is lengthened to ει; such aorists are called *liquid aorists*, because they belong to themes ending in *liquids*, λ, μ, ν, ρ.

7. **λαμβάν-ειν**, cf. πολεμ-εῖν XIX.; -ειν is the ending of what part of the verb? For the theme λαβ cf. λαβών IX.

8. **ἄνδρ-ας**: (*a*) nom. sing. ἀνήρ, stem ἀνερ-, cf. μήτηρ, stem μητερ-; (*b*) ἀνερ- becomes ἀνδρ- in declension in most of the cases of the noun; (*c*) -ας, end. of acc. plu.

9. **πλείστους**, *most*: (*a*) nom. sing. πλεῖστος; superl. of πολύς;

[1] It means to pass the word along by several persons.

[2] Greek ἄγγελος, *a messenger*.

βελτίστους, *best*, nom. sing. *βέλτιστος*, superl. of *ἀγαθός*; (*b*) the adjectives *πολύς* and *ἀγαθός* are irregularly compared.

10. **ὡς**, *saying that, on the ground that:* (*a*) introduces the following two gen., which, taken together, make a construction equivalent to the Lat. abl. abs., but called the *genitive absolute;* (*b*) *ὡς*, with a participle, represents its action sometimes as *seeming* or *pretended*, but oftener merely as *thought* or *asserted* by some *other person* than the speaker or writer; (*c*) render the gen. abs. here by a clause with the verb in the imperf. ind., *was plotting*.

11. **Τισσαφέρνους**: (*a*) gen. sing. of *Τισσαφέρνης*, acc. *Τισσαφέρνην* IX.; (*b*) the stem, *Τισσαφερνες-*, loses *σ* in the gen. sing., *Τισσαφερνε(σ)-ος*, between two vowels, and **ε-ο** contract to *ου*.

12. **ταῖς πόλεσι**: cf. *αὐτῷ* XII.

13. **Subjunctive**: Cf. XV. N. 5, *δύν-ω-μαι, δύν-η-ται*: the theme is *δυνα*, but here the *α* is dropped; **ω** or **η** (written -ω/η-) the mode-suffix; **-μαι** and **-ται** are personal endings. The student will naturally infer that the subjunctive of the act. voice will be formed in the same way, except that the active endings will be used. Suppose now that we write out the conjugation of *λύω* in the pres. ind. act.: *λύ-ω, λύ-εις, λύ-ει; λύ-ε-τον, λύ-ε-τον; λύ-ο-μεν, λύ-ε-τε, λύ-ου-σι.* If now instead of **-ο/ε-**, we put the mode-suffix **-ω/η-**, what shall we have? What mode will the forms be? Cf. *δύν-ω-μαι, δύν-η-ται.* Hence the subj. act. of **λύω** will be: —

S. 1. **λύ-ω** (the same as the indic. here).
2. **λύ-ῃ-ς** (for iota-subscript cf. **ει-** for **ε** in **λύεις**).
3. **λύ-ῃ** (for iota-subscript cf. **ει** for **ε** in **λυει**).
D. 2. **λύ-η-τον.**
3. **λύ-η-τον.**
P. 1. **λύ-ω-μεν.**
2. **λύ-η-τε.**
3. **λύ-ω-σι.**

Have the endings of the principal (primary) or past (secondary) tenses been used? In like manner form the subj. of *λαμβάνω, ἔχω, βουλεύω.*

14. **Optative**: Cf. *ἐπι-βουλεύ-ο-ι* XII., *ἀφ-ικν-ο-ῖ-το* XVII., *ἔχ-ο-ιε-ν* XIX. Note, (*a*) that the variable vowel **-ο/ε-** of the indic.

appears constantly in the opt. as -ο-; (*b*) after -ο-, -ι- appears before the ending (cf. ἀφικνοῖτο): this -ι- is called the mode-suffix of the opt.; (*c*) instead of -ι- in the 3d plu. (cf. ἔχο-ιε-ν) -ιε- occurs; (*d*) the ending of the 3d plu. is -ν or -σαν (cf. ἔχοιε-ν, εἴη-σαν XIX.): the endings are those of the past (secondary) tenses except in the 1st sing. act., where -μι is used after -ι-. Hence the pres. opt. act. of λύω will be:—

	SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
1.	λῡ́-ο-ι-μι		λῡ́-ο-ι-μεν
2.	λῡ́-ο-ι-ς	λῡ́-ο-ι-τον	λῡ́-ο-ι-τε
3.	λῡ́-ο-ι	λῡ-ο-ί-την	λῡ́-ο-ιε-ν

Remember that οι is a diphthong and has the sound of *oi* in b*oi*l. What effect does final οι have upon accent in the opt.? How is it in the declensions?

15. Accent of the Verb: (*a*) Cf. the verbs in the text and note that as a general rule the accent stands as far as possible from the end of the form, i.e., it is *recessive;* (*b*) but the accent cannot go back of the augment (cf. ἀπῆλθε XIV.); (*c*) the participle presents exceptions, e.g., the 2d aor. partc. λαβών IX., ἀτῑμασθείς XIV., παρών VI.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ε regularly augments to η (temporal augment), but in εἶχε, ε in the augmented form appears as ει (syllabic augment contracted with following ε, thus ἐ-ε- = εἰ).

2. The preposition ἐν is a proclitic and always governs the dat. case.

3. Verbs whose present stem ends in λλ (cf. ἀγγέλλω) have only one λ in the 1st aor. and do not use σ of the tense-suffix -σα-, but lengthen the theme vowel, ε becoming ει, cf. ἀτῑμασθείς for ἀτῑμασθε-(ντ)-ς.

4. The 3d decl. includes stems ending in consonants and close vowels.

5. The theme λαβ becomes λαμβαν in the present system.

6. The stem of ἀνήρ, ἀνερ-, appears in declension as ἀνδρ-, except in the nom. and voc. sing.

7. **πολύς** and **ἀγαθός** are irregularly compared.

8. The Greek gen. abs. corresponds to the Lat. abl. abs.

9. -ω/η- is the mode-suffix of the subjunctive.

10. The subjunctive takes the endings of the principal (primary) tenses.

11. Iota subscript occurs in the 2d and 3d sing. of the subjunctive active.

12. -ι- is a mode-suffix of the optative; **ο** is the vowel before it.

13. The endings of the opt. are those of the past (secondary) tenses, except that the 1st sing. has **-μι** after **-ι-**.

14. The 3d plu. opt. act. ends in **-ν** or **-σαν**; before **-ν**, **-ιε-** is the mode-suffix.

15. The accent of the verb is *recessive*, but it cannot go back of the augment; the participle presents exceptions.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀγγέλλω**, *I report, announce.*
2. **παρ-αγγέλλω**,[1] *I send word, command.*
3. **ὁ ἀνήρ**, *man.*
4. **βέλτιστος**, *best.*
5. **ἕκαστος**, *each;* plu. *several.*
6. **ἐν**, *in.*
7. **ὁπόσος**, *quantus; as much as,* plu. *as many as.*
8. **ἡ πόλις**, *city.*
9. **πολύς, πλεῖστος**, *much, most.*
10. **ἡ συλλογή**, *levy.*
11. **ὁ φρούραρχος**, *captain of the guard.*
12. **ἡ φυλακή**, *garrison.*
13. **ὧδε**, *thus, as follows.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *ὁ βέλτιστος βασιλεύς; ἑκάστη πόλις; συλλογή.*

II. Conjugate: 1. *εἶχον, ἔχοιμι, ἔχω* (subj.). 2. *λαμβάνω, ἐλάμβανον, λαμβάνω* (subj.), *λαμβάνοιμι.*

III. Translate: 1. And the city makes the levy as follows. 2. As many generals as he has in the city. 3. Cyrus sends word to each general to take a garrison. 4. If Cyrus takes[2] (subj., cf. *δύνηται* XV.) the cities, he will be king. 5. The captains of the guard were taking good men in order that they might hold (= have) the city. 6. He is plotting against the city. 7. They were plotting against Cyrus in order that they might take as many cities as possible. 8. I will make Darius general on-the-ground-that (*ὡς*) Cyrus (gen. abs.) wishes (it).

[1] Lit. *pass the word along, report to one after another.*

[2] Refers to *fut. time;* in old Eng. it would be *shall take,* or the subjunctive *take.*

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Comparison. 2. Vowel contraction. 3. Open and close vowels. 4. Adv. ending. 5. Different meanings of ὡς. 6. Optative in final clauses. 7. Peculiarities in decl. of πόλις. 8. Peculiarities of παρήγγειλε. 9. Voice and accent of ἐποιεῖτο. 10. Construction of πόλεσι (after Τισσαφέρνους). 11. -ους in Τισσαφέρνους. 12. Formation of the opt. and subj. act. of λύω. 13. -⁰⁄ε-, -ω/η-; ο and ι in the opt. 14. Endings in subj. and opt. 15. Uses of the subj. and opt. 16. Accent in verbs. 17. Effect of final -οι on accent in the opt. 18. The genitive absolute.

LESSON XXI.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. i. 6, 7, καί . . . δ' ἐξέβαλεν.

2. NOTES.

1. **καὶ γάρ** = Lat. *et enim, and* (this was reasonable) *for:* may be rendered "*for in fact,*" or καί may be omitted and γάρ rendered simply *for.*

2. **ἦσαν**, *they were*, Lat. *erant:* (*a*) imperf. indic. act. 3d plu. from εἰμί, *I am;* (*b*) on -σαν, cf. εἴη-σαν XIX.; (*c*) cf. εἶ-ναι, *to be*, ὤν, *being*, ἔσ-ται, *will be*, εἴη-σαν, opt. 3d plu.

3. **ἦσαν Τισσαφέρνους**, (*had*) *belonged to Tissaphernes*, lit. *were of Tissaphernes*, pred. gen. of possession.

4. **τὸ ἀρχαῖον**, *originally;* cf. Eng. *archaic;* acc. sing. neut., with the force of an adv., called *adverbial acc.*

5. **ἐκ**, *from, out of, by* (the) king: (*a*) cf. ἐξαιτησαμένη XIII., ἐξ = ἐκ; (*b*) ἐκ used before consonants, ἐξ before vowels; (*c*) note the absence of the accent: why? cf. εἰς, ὡς.

6. **δε-δο-μέν-αι**, *having been given:* (*a*) perf. partc. pass. (or mid.) of δί-δω-μι, *I give;* (*b*) theme δο, cf. Lat. *do, dare;* (*c*) the perf. stem is formed by means of a prefixed reduplication, consisting of the initial consonant (here δ) with ε, cf. Lat. *de-di, pe-pendi, te-tendi;* (*d*) partc. suffix is -μενο/α-, cf. ἐπι-κρυπτό-μενο-ς XIX.; (*e*) agrees with πόλεις.

7. **ἀφ-ει-στή-κε-σαν**, *had revolted:* (*a*) plup. ind. act. 3d plu. from ἀφ-ίστημι, theme στα, Lat. *stare;* (*b*) on ἀφ- for ἀπ-, cf. ἀφ-ικνοῖτο XVII., καθ-ίστημι XII.; (*c*) on -σαν, cf. εἴη-σαν XIX., ἦ-σαν N. 2.

8. **πᾶσαι**, *all:* (*a*) nom. plu. fem. from πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν; (*b*) stem of the fem., **πᾶσα-**; (*c*) for the masc. stem, cf. **πάντ-ων** VIII.

9. **προ-αισθό-μενο-ς**, *perceiving beforehand:* (*a*) from προ-αισθάν-ο-μαι, *I perceive beforehand;* (*b*) προ, *before*, Lat. *pro;* (*c*) pres. stem **αισθαν**; (*d*) theme **αισθ**, cf. λαμβάν-ω, λαβ-ών IX.; (*e*) like λαβ-ών, a 2d aor. partc.; what voice?

10. **τὰ αὐτά**, *the same* (*things*); τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα, *these same* (*things*): (*a*) note that when αὐτός is in the *attributive position* it means *same;* (*b*) cf. αὐτόν VIII., αὐτῶν X., αὐτῷ XII., and note that **αὐτός** is also used as the pers. pron. of the 3d pers. (but not in the nom.); (*c*) **ταῦτα**, neut. plu. acc. (or nom.) of **οὗτος**, *αὕτη*, **τοῦτο**, *this, that;* (*d*) note that **ταῦτα** is in the *predicate position.*

11. **βουλευομένους**, (*that persons* in Miletus) *were plotting* these same things, *were forming this same plan*, cf. ἐπι-βουλεύοι XII.: (*a*) agrees with some word understood, which may be represented in Eng. by *persons;* the partc. and its noun together are equal to a clause in Eng.; cf. the translation preceding; (*b*) analyze the partc.; how declined?

12. **ἀπο-στῆ-ναι**, *to revolt*, lit., *stand away:* (*a*) cf. **ἀφ-ειστήκεσαν** N. 7; (*b*) cf. εἶ-ναι V.; -ναι is the ending of what? (*c*) cf. κατ-έστη XII. and note that the same theme στα (lengthened to στη) appears in both; they are 2d aor.; what does κατα-στῆ-ναι mean? cf. κατ-έστη XII.; (*d*) explanatory of the *plan*, i.e., *to revolt*, etc., cf. N. 11.

13. **τοὺς μέν . . . τοὺς δέ**, *some . . . others:* on ὁ as a demonstrative, cf. ὁ δέ XIII., XIV.

14. **ἀπ-έ-κτειν-ε**: (*a*) cf. ἀπο-κτενῶν XIII. for the theme **κτεν** and meaning; (*b*) cf. παρ-ήγγειλ-ε XX. for the tense; (*c*) note that stems in ν, like those in λ, i.e., *liquid* stems, form the 1st aor. by dropping σ of the tense-suffix -σα- and lengthening the theme vowel; ε becomes ει.

15. **ἐξ-έ-βαλ-ε-ν**: *he cast out, banished:* (*a*) from ἐκ-βάλλω, *I cast out;* (*b*) imperf. ἐξ-έ-βαλλε = *he was casting out;* (*c*) ἐξ-έ-βαλ-ε, *he cast out*, 2d aor., theme βαλ; (*d*) ν is often added after final ε in the 3d sing. of verbs before an initial vowel; it is called ν *movable.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ἐκ** before consonants, ἐξ before vowels, is followed by the gen.; **ἐν** by the dat.

2. **-σαν** indicates the 3d plu. in some forms of the verb.

3. The acc. sing. neut. of the adj. may be used adverbially, and when so used is called the *adverbial accusative.*

4. The perf. stem is formed by reduplication, which prefixes the initial consonant with **ε**.

5. **πᾶς** has two stems: **παντ-** (masc. and neut.), **πᾶσα-** (fem.).

6. **αὐτός** in the attributive position means *same;* without the article, it may be a pers. pron. of the 3d person (but not in the nom.).

7. Middle (passive) participles in *-μενος* are declined like *ἀγαθός*.

8. **-ειν, -ναι** are infin. endings.

9. The 2d aor. has a shorter stem than the pres. and commonly shows the theme: *αἰσθάν-ομαι*, theme *αισθ* (shown in *αἰσθ-ό-μενος*); *λαμβάν-ω*, theme *λαβ* (cf. *λαβ-ών*); *βάλλω*, theme *βαλ* (cf. *ἐξέ-βαλ-εν*).

10. Themes of *ἵστημι* and *κτείνω* are *στα, κτεν*.

11. Verbs whose themes end in λ or ν (liquids) form the 1st aor. without -σ-, but lengthen the theme vowel.

12. **ὁ μέν . . . ὁ δέ**, *one . . . another*, plu. *some . . . others*, denote contrasted objects.

13. **ν** movable may be used after ε in the 3d sing. of verbs before an initial vowel.

14. Some 2d aorists (e.g., *ἐξ-έ-βαλον, ἔ-λαβον*) are conjugated like imperfects.

15. **οὗτος** takes the predicate position.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **αἰσθάνομαι**, *I perceive.*
2. **ἀρχαῖος**, *ancient, original.*
3. **τὸ ἀρχαῖον**, *formerly.*
4. **ἀφ-ίστημι**, *I remove (cause to stand off)*, intrans. *revolt.*
5. **βάλλω**, *I throw.*
6. **γάρ**, *for.*
7. **δίδωμι**, *I give.*
8. **ἐκ-βάλλω**, *I eject, banish.*
9. **ἦσαν**, *erant, they were.*
10. **ὁ αὐτός**, *idem, the same.*
11. **ὁ μέν . . . ὁ δέ**, *the one . . . the other*, plu. *some . . . others.*
12. **πᾶς**, *every, all.*
13. **πλήν**, *except.*
14. **προ-αισθάνομαι**, *I perceive beforehand.*
15. **τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα**, *haec eadem, these same.*
16. **τότε**, *then.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *ἡ αὐτὴ ἀρχή*; *ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεύς*; *τὸ αὐτὸ πεδίον*; inflect *ἐξέβαλον* (like *ἔλῡον*).

II. Translate: 1. *ὁ δ' ἀθροίζει τὴν βελτίστην δύναμιν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ ἑαυτῷ.* 2. *οἱ μὲν πείθονται, οἱ δὲ ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως λάβοιεν βασιλέᾱ.* 3. *οὕτως ἐπεμελεῖτο τῶν βαρβάρων, ὡς πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν.* 4. *οὗτοι οἱ στρατηγοὶ τὴν αὐτὴν πόλιν ἐλάμβανον.* 5. *Κῦρος τοῦτο τὸ αὐτὸ ἔχει.* 6. *Τισσαφέρνης τᾱ̀ς μὲν πόλεις ἐλάμβανε, τοὺς δὲ στρατηγοὺς ἐξέβαλεν.*

III. Translate: 1. The generals perceiving the same things — this same thing — in Miletus, all revolted to the king. 2. The kings of the cities were in Miletus. 3. Those kings had garrisons. 4. Cyrus is taking some, and others he wishes to take. 5. In order that Tissaphernes might have as large a force as possible, he was sending for the garrisons. 6. The same city (nom.); the same men (nom.). 7. If the same man takes (cf. XX. Exercises) (subj.) this city, he will reign over (it). 8. This same city formerly belonged to the king. 9. If Cyrus takes the Ionian cities, he will reign over (them). 10. Some were planning to revolt to Cyrus, others to put him to death. 11. Therefore Cyrus was collecting his forces.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Stems of *πᾶς*. 2. Decl. of participles in *-μενος*. 3. *ἐξ* and *ἐκ*. 4. Reduplication. 5. *τὸ ἀρχαῖον*, *formerly, at first*. 6. Enclitics. 7. Declension of *οὗτος*, App. 64. 8. Attributive and predicate position. 9. First aor. of liquid verbs. 10. *ν* movable. 11. Inflection of 2d aorists like *ἔλαβον*. 12. Meanings of *αὐτός*. 13. Position of *οὗτος*. 14. Conjugation of *βάλλω* in the pres. indic. act., imperf. ind. act., pres. subj. act., pres. opt. act. 15. Nom. sing. of masc. and fem. nouns of the 3d decl.; acc. sing.; voc. sing. 16. Mode-suffixes. 17. Accent of the verb. 18. *τοὺς μέν . . . τοὺς δέ*. 19. *ἔβαλλον* and *ἔβαλον*. 20. Explanation of the use of *καὶ γάρ*. 21. Forms of the verb *to be* which have occurred in the lessons. 22. Use of the genitive in the predicate.

LESSON XXII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. i. 7, ὃ . . . στράτευμα.

2. NOTES.

1. ὑπο-λαβών, *taking under* (his protection), *receiving*: (*a*) on ὑπό, cf. ὑπ-ώπτευε IV.; (*b*) on λαβών, cf. IX.

2. τοὺς φεύγ-ο-ντ-ας, *the fleeing* (ones), *those who were fleeing*, *the fugitives*, *exiles*: (*a*) note the absence of a substantive with the partc., cf. Eng. "None but *the brave* deserves *the fair*"; (*b*) from φεύγω, Lat. *fugio*, *I flee*, cf. ἄρχ-ο-ντ-α X. for the form.

3. συλ-λέξ-ᾱς (for συν-λέγ-σα-ντ-ς) . . . ἐ-πολιόρκ-ει (ει = ε-ε), *having collected he besieged*, translate: *he collected and besieged*: (*a*) on συλ = συν, cf. συλ-λαμβάνω XIII.; (*b*) on γ-σ = ξ, cf. κ-σ = ξ in ἀπ-έδειξε VIII.; (*c*) on -σᾱς for -σα-ντ-ς, cf. κινδῡνεύσᾱς XIV.; (*d*) on ἐπολιόρκει, cf. ᾐσθένει III.

4. καί . . . γῆν . . . καί: (*a*) καί . . . καί, *both . . . and*, cf. τέ . . . καί XIX.; (*b*) γῆ-ν, a contract acc. fem. sing. of 1st decl., from γῆ.

5. στράτευμα, acc. sing., *army*: (*a*) 3d decl. neut., nom. στράτευμα, stem στρατευματ-; (*b*) final τ of the stem has been dropped and there is no case-ending; (*c*) the case-ending of the nom., acc., and voc. plu. is -ᾰ. Let the student decline the word.

6. ἐ-πειρᾶτο (for ἐ-πειρά-ε-το), *was trying*: (*a*) from πειράομαι; (*b*) what tense is it? cf. ἐ-βούλ-ε-το V.

7. κατ-άγειν, *to lead down* or *back*, *to restore*: -ειν is the ending of what mode? from κατ-άγω, Lat. *ago*.

8. τοὺς ἐκ-πε-πτω-κ-ότ-ας, *those who had fallen out*, *those who had been cast out*, = τοὺς φεύγοντας, *the exiles*; equivalent to the passive of ἐκβάλλω, cf. ἐξέβαλεν XXI.: (*a*) πε, reduplication of the perf., cf. δε-δομέναι XXI.; (*b*) perf. act. partc. from ἐκ-πῑ́πτω; nom. ἐκ-πε-πτω-κώς, -κως for -κοτ-ς; partc. stem ἐκ-πε-πτω-κ-οτ-; -ας acc. plu. end.; (*c*) note -κ-, representing -κα-, the perf. act. tense-suffix, as -σα- is for the 1st aor.

9. **καί**, translate *and so*, with inferential force.

10. **αὕτη**, *this:* (*a*) refers to what precedes, the war with Tissaphernes, but is attracted into the fem. gender by the pred. noun *πρόφασις*; we should expect the neut. *τοῦτο*; from *οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο*; (*b*) the subj. of *ἦν*.

11. **ἄλλη**, *other, another:* from *ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλο*, declined like *αὐτός, ἐκεῖνος*.

12. **πρόφασις**, *pretext:* declension and gender like *πόλις* XX.

13. **ἦν**, *was:* 3d sing.; *ἦ-σαν* 3d plu. XXI.

14. **αὐτῷ**, *to him; was to him = he had;* dat. of possessor (possession).

15. **τοῦ ἀθροίζ-ειν**, *of the to-collect = of collecting:* (*a*) infin. with the neut. art., used as a substantive in the gen. case; (*b*) governs the acc. *στράτευμα*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The participle without a substantive may be used as a noun.

2. **κ** and **γ** with **σ** produce **ξ**.

3. Neut. stems in *τ* drop the *τ* in the nom., acc., and voc. sing., and have no case-ending; in the plu. the case-ending is -ᾰ.

4. **α-ε** contract to **ᾱ**.

5. **ἄλλος** is declined like **αὐτός**.

6. **εἰμί**, *I am*, is conjugated irregularly; cf. Eng. *am, was, been; I am, thou art, he is.*

7. The Greek, like the Lat., has a dat. of possessor.

8. The infinitive with the neut. article may be used to represent a noun in any case.

9. **οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο**, *this, that*, follows the art. in regard to the rough breathing or *τ* at the beginning; in the penult, it has *αυ*, when the final syllable has an *a*-sound (*α, η*), but *ου* when the final syllable ends in an *o*-sound (*ο, ω, ου*).

10. Demonstrative pronouns agree with their antecedents in gend. and num.; but a pronoun which would naturally be neuter may agree in gend. with a masc. or fem. predicate noun.

11. **γῆ** is a contract noun of the first declension and has the circumflex on every case.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄγω**, *I lead.*
2. **κατ-άγω**, *I lead down* or *back.*
3. **ἄλλος**, *another;* **ὁ ἄλλος**, *the other.*
4. **αὖ**, *again.*
5. **ἡ γῆ**,[1] *earth, land.*
6. **ὁ ἐκπεπτωκώς**, *exile.*
7. **ἦν**, *erat, was.*
8. **ἡ θάλαττα**, *sea.*
9. **καί . . . καί**, *both . . . and.*
10. **κατά**, *down;* **κατὰ γῆν**, *by land.*
11. **οὗτος**, *this, that.*
12. **πειράομαι**, *I attempt.*
13. **πίπτω**, *I fall.*
14. **πολιορκέω**, *I besiege.*
15. **ἡ πρόφασις**, *pretext.*
16. **τὸ στράτευμα**, *army.*
17. **συλ-λέγω**, *I collect.*
18. **ὑπο-λαμβάνω**, *I take under, receive.*
19. **φεύγω**, *I flee;* **ὁ φεύγων**, *the fugitive.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Inflect the pres. and imperf. indic., the subj., opt., act. of *φεύγω, πίπτω, ἄγω*; decline *θάλαττα, πρόφασις.*

II. Translate: 1. *ὁ ἀνὴρ τὸ στράτευμα συνέλεγεν ὡς λάβοι τὴν πόλιν.* 2. *ἄγομεν, ἤγομεν, συνελέγομεν, συλλέγομεν, φεύγομεν, ἐφεύγομεν.* 3. *ἢν ὁ φεύγων στράτευμα ἀθροίζῃ, Κῦρος στρατηγὸν αὐτὸν ποιήσει.* 4. *ἡ ἄλλη πρόφασις αὕτη Κύρῳ ἦν. ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν.* 5. *Κῦρος ἐπιβουλεύει τῷ ἀδελφῷ.*

III. Translate: 1. The army of Cyrus was besieging the king by land. 2. In the sea; out of the sea; into the sea. 3. The men were leading the armies into Miletus. 4. The other pretext (nom.); this pretext; the same pretext; this same pretext. 5. I am plotting against the king.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Time denoted by the tenses of the participle. 2. Reduplication. 3. Analysis of *ἐπολιόρκει, ἐπειρᾶτο.* 4. The formation of the nom. of *ἐκπεπτωκότας.* 5. The liquids. 6. Formation of the 1st aor. of verbs with stems ending in a liquid. 7. Attributive and predicate positions. 8. Noun accent. 9. Accent in the 1st decl. 10. Nom. of participles whose stems end in *-οτ-, -αντ-, -οντ-, -εντ-.* 11. Time denoted by the tenses of the indicative. 12. Decl. of *θάλαττα*, App. 32. 13. Accent of *γῆ*, App. 36. 14. Neut. stems in *τ*, App. 44, II. 15. Mutes before *σ*. 16. Dat. of possessor. 17. Decl. of *οὗτος*. 18. The infin. used as a substantive. 19. Contraction in *γῆ*, App. 36.

[1] Cf. Eng. *ge*-ography.

LESSON XXIII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. i. 8, πρός . . . ᾐσθάνετο.

2. NOTES.

1. ἠξίου, *kept demanding* (as a right): (*a*) from ἀξιόω; (*b*) imperf. 3d sing. for ἠξίο-ε, cf. ᾐσθένει for ᾐσθένε-ε; ο-ε contr. to ου.

2. ἀδελφός, pred. nom.

3. ὤν, causal, *because he was;* cf. φιλοῦσα XVI.

4. δο-θῆ-ναι, *to be given:* (*a*) on the theme δο, cf. δε-δο-μέναι XXI.; (*b*) θη, long form of -θε-, 1st pass. suffix, cf. ἀτῑμασθείς = ἀτῑμασ-θε-ντς XIV.; (*c*) -ναι, infin. ending in aor. pass.; -ναι is also used as the ending with other infinitives, cf. ἀπο-στῆ-ναι XXI., εἶ-ναι V.

5. οἷ, *to himself* = ἑαυτῷ XIX.

6. ταύτᾱς, cf. τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα XXI.; note that οὗτος takes the pred. position.

7. Τισσαφέρνην, subj. of infin.

8. αὐτῶν, governed by ἄρχειν, a verb of *ruling;* note the continued action expressed by the pres. infin., *to be ruling;* translate, rather than that Tissaphernes *continue to rule them.*

9. συν-έπρᾱττ-ε-ν, *did these things with him,* trans., *coöperated with him in this:* imperf. of συμ-πράττω, συμ- for συν before π.

10. αὐτῷ, governed by συν in composition, cf. ἐπι-βουλεύοι αὐτῷ XII.

11. ταῦτα, *these* (things), is often used where the Eng. idiom requires *this.*

12. βασιλεύς, why no article?

13. πρὸς ἑαυτόν, *towards, against himself;* attributive to ἐπιβουλήν as their position shows, cf. παρ' ἑαυτῷ XIX.

14. ᾐσθάν-ε-το, *did* (*not*) *perceive:* cf. προ-αισθόμενος XXI.; αι augments to η; what tense, voice, person, number?

15. Second Aorists: cf. ἀπῆλθε XIV., λάβοι XIX., ἐξέβαλε(ν) XXI. with ἔλῡε, λύοι, and observe: (*a*) that the indic. of these 2d aorists is inflected like the imperf.: i.e., ἦλθον, ἦλθες, etc.; ἔλαβον, ἔλαβες, etc.; (*b*) the optatives are inflected like the pres. opt. of λύω, e.g., ἔλθοιμι, ἔλθοις, ἔλθοι, etc.: λάβοιμι, λάβοις, etc.; (*c*) the student will

naturally infer that the subj. of these 2d aorists is inflected like the pres. subj. of λύω, which is the fact; hence ἔλθω, ἔλθῃς, ἔλθῃ, etc.

16. Synopsis: We can now write partial synopses of the pres., fut., and 2d aor. systems: —

Voice.	Mode.	Present System.	Future.	2d Aorist.
Active	Indic.	λύω (Pres.) ἔλυον (Imp.)	λύσω	ἔλαβον
	Subj.	λύω	——[1]	λάβω
	Opt.	λύοιμι	λύσοιμι	λάβοιμι
	Impv.	——	——[1]	——
	Infin.	λύειν	λύσειν	λαβεῖν[2]
	Partc.	λύων	λύσων	λαβών[2] (XXII.)

17. Kind of Action Represented by the Present, Imperfect, and the Aorist:

(*a*) The present and imperfect in all their forms represent an action as *in progress* or as *repeated;* the aorists express *indefinite* action, i.e., as *brought to pass.* This difference extends through all modes.

(*b*) The imperfect and aorist indicative both denote past time, but the former represents the action as *in progress* or as *repeated,* the latter as *indefinite.*

(*c*) ἐλάμβανον = *I was taking,* ἔλαβον = *I took;* ἤν λαμβάνῃ = *if he (shall) be taking,* ἤν λάβῃ = *if he (shall) take;* ὅπως λαμβάνοι = *that he might be taking,* ὅπως λάβοι = *that he might take;* λαμβάνειν = *to be taking,* λαβεῖν = *to take.*

18. Declension of Present Active Participles like πέμπων: (*a*) For the stem and formation of the nom. sing. masc. cf. XIX. N. 14, *b*; (*b*) the voc. sing. is like the nom.; (*c*) the dat. plu. has -ουσι for -οντ-σι; -ντ- is dropped and ο lengthened to ου, cf. λύουσι pres. ind. act. 3d plu. (for λῡ-ο-νσι); (*d*) all other cases of the masc. are formed regularly from the stem by adding the usual endings; (*e*) the neuter is like the masc. except nom., acc., and voc. sing., where the mere stem is found with final τ lost, cf. στράτευμα from στρατευματ-;

[1] The fut. has no subj. or imperative.
[2] Note that the accent is on the ultima, unlike the present.

(*f*) the fem. is declined like θάλαττα XXII. Let the student now write out the declension; decline from left to right as in adjectives.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **-θε-**, 1st passive suffix.

2. **ἄρχειν**, a verb of *ruling*, governs the gen. case.

3. **σύν**, *with*, in composition with a verb governs the dat. case.

4. A prepositional phrase may take the attributive position.

5. **αι** augments to η.

6. **οὗτος** does not stand between a noun and its article, i.e., it takes the predicate position, e.g., οὗτος ὁ ἀνήρ.

7. Many 2d aorists are conjugated like ω-verbs in the present system, except the accent of the infin. and partc.

8. All forms belonging to the present system express *continued* or *repeated* action; aorists express *indefinite* action.

9. The 2d aor. does not differ from the 1st aor. in time or kind of action expressed.

10. The future has no subjunctive or imperative.

11. **ο-ε** contract to ου; ν before π becomes μ.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **αἰσθάνομαι**, *I perceive.*
2. **ἀξιόω**, *I claim, ask as a right.*
3. **ἄρχω**, *I rule.*
4. **ἡ ἐπιβουλή**, *conspiracy, plot.*
5. **οἷ**, *sibi, to himself.*
6. **οὐκ**, *not*, before consonants **οὐ**.
7. **πέμπω**, *I send.*
8. **πράττω**, *I do, effect, accomplish.*
9. **συμ-πράττω**, *I do with, coöperate.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: πρόφασις, αὐτός, στράτευμα, βασιλεύς, ἐπιβουλή.

II. Write: (*a*) synopses pres. system act. (cf. N. 16) of ἄρχω, πράττω; (*b*) conjugation of ἔλαβον, λάβω, λάβοιμι.

III. Translate: 1. οὗτοι οἱ ἄνδρες αὐτοὺς ταῦτα ἐν τῇ πόλει βουλευομένους ᾐσθάνοντο. 2. Κῦρος τῶν πόλεων τούτων ἦρχεν. 3. ἐλαμβάνετε, ἐλάβετε, ἐπράττετε. 4. ἢν οἱ Κύρου ἀδελφοὶ τὴν πόλιν λάβωσι, Κῦρος αὐτῶν βασιλεὺς ἔσται. 5. ὁ βασιλεὺς ἦλθε ὅπως ταύτην τὴν πόλιν λάβοι.

IV. Translate: 1. Cyrus (dat. of possess.) had this pretext for collecting the army. 2. Accordingly (οὖν) he-kept-sending to the

king who was (= being) (his) brother. 3. And he also demanded that a city be given to him. 4. The friends of Cyrus coöperated with him in this. 5. Tissaphernes ruled this city.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The tense-suffixes, 1st pass. suffix. 2. The mutes, the three classes and three orders. 3. Open and close vowels. 4. Formation of λῡ́ων from its stem. 5. Conj. of the pres. and 2d aor. systems act. 6. Accent in the 2d aor., App. 84. 7. Time and kind of action of imperf. and aor. 8. 1st and 2d aor. — how alike? How do they differ? 9. Translation of the subjunctive in conditional sentences. 10. Verbs of ruling govern what case? 11. Attributive and predicate position. 12. Position of οὗτος. 13. Use and meaning of ὅπως, ὥστε. 14. οὐ and οὐκ, when each form is used. 15. Accent in verbs; effect of final -οι on accent in verbs. 16. Augment of αι, ε, ο, α. 17. Tense-suffixes, -σα-, -κα-. 18. Mode-suffixes of subj., opt. 19. Infin. endings. 20. Suffixes of act. and mid. participles. 21. Conjugation of the 2d aor. active ἔλιπον, App. 84.

LESSON XXIV.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. i. 8, 9, Τισσαφέρνει . . . φυγὰς ἦν.

2. NOTES.

1. **Τισσαφέρνει** (Τισσαφερνεσ-ι),[1] *with* or *against Tissaphernes*: (*a*) dat. of *association* or *opposition* with πολεμοῦντα; (*b*) nom. Τισσαφέρνης XII., gen. Τισσαφέρνους XXI., dat. Τισσαφέρνει, acc. Τισσαφέρνην XXIII., stem Τισσαφερνεσ-, σ dropped between two vowels in the gen. and dat.

2. **ἐ-νόμιζ-ε**, pres. stem νομιζ; where is the form found?

3. **πολεμοῦ-ντ-α** (πολεμε-ο-ντ-α), cf. πολεμεῖν XIX., ἄρχ-ο-ντ-α X.: (*a*) what suffix is -ντ-? (*b*) agrees with αὐτόν, *he thought* (*that*) *he while waging war with Tissaphernes*, etc.

[1] Uncontracted forms in parenthesis.

4. **ἀμφί**, *about*, translate *upon* here: (*a*) prep. gov. τὰ στρατεύματ-α; (*b*) number and case of στρατεύματα? cf. στράτευμα XXII.; (*c*) -ᾰ, end. of nom., acc., voc., plu. neut., cf. *a* in Latin *regn-a, cornu-a.*

5. **δαπανᾶν** (-ᾶν for -ά-ειν), *was expending,* lit. *to be expending:* from δαπανά-ω; note the infin. end.

6. **οὐδέν**, *in respect to nothing, not at all:* adv. acc. from οὐδείς, *no one;* οὐδέν, *nothing;* cf. ἀρχαῖον XXI.

7. **ἤχθ-ε-το**, *was angry, displeased:* (*a*) from ἄχθομαι, dep.; (*b*) account for η; what tense?

8. **αὐτῶν πολεμού-ντ-ων**, was not at all angry at *their* (lit. *them*) *waging war* or *because they were waging war:* αὐτῶν may be regarded as the gen. of *cause* with ἤχθετο, a verb of *feeling,* or gen. abs. with the partc., expressing cause.

9. **καὶ γάρ**, cf. XXI.

10. **ἀπ-έ-πεμπ-ε**, *was forwarding, continued to forward;* tense?

11. **γιγνομένους**, *accruing* (lit. *becoming, arising*): note the attributive position, cf. βασιλεύοντα XVI.

12. **δασμούς**: gender?

13. **ὧν**, *which:* what part of speech? cf. ἧς VII.; (*a*) antecedent πόλεων; (*b*) for ἅς, acc. fem., obj. of ἔχων; attracted from the accusative to the case of its antecedent; (*c*) nom. ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, declined like αὐτός except that the fem. dual is generally like the masc. and neut.

14. **Τισσαφέρνους**, *of* (*belonging to*) *Tissaphernes.*

15. **ἐτύγχανε-ν ἔχων**, cf. παρὼν ἐτύγχανε VI.; how translate ἔχων?

16. **Χερρονήσῳ**, *Cherronēsus,* a peninsula on the Thracian side of the Hellespont; dat. fem., 2d decl.

17. **τῇ . . . Ἀβύδου**, attributive to Χερρονήσῳ as the article τῇ shows; note the two ways of writing attributive modifiers, e.g., ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἀνήρ = ὁ ἀνὴρ ὁ ἀγαθός = *the good man.*

18. **κατ᾽ ἀντιπέρᾱς**, *over against, opposite,* an adv. phrase often written καταντιπέρᾱς, gov. the gen. Ἀβύδου.

19. **τόνδε τὸν τρόπον**, *in the following manner, thus, as follows* = ὧδε XX.: (*a*) adv. acc., cf. οὐδέν N. 6; (*b*) nom. ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, declined like the article with -δε added, but note the accents of ὅδε, ἥδε, οἵδε, αἵδε; (*c*) takes the predicate position like οὗτος.

20. **φυγάς** (for φυγαδ-ς), *fugitive, exile:* (*a*) stem φυγαδ- loses δ before -ς, cf. Latin *virtus* for *virtut-s;* (*b*) dat. plu. φυγά-σι (for

φυγαδ-σι); (c) gen. φυγάδ-ος, dat. φυγάδ-ι, etc.; complete the declension; the voc. sing. is like the nom.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Verbs of *association* or *opposition* take the dat. case to express the person or thing *with* or *against* which something is or is done, called the *dat. of association.*

2. **ε-ο** contract to *ου*.

3. Nom., acc. and voc. plu. neut. end in **-ᾰ**.

4. **ά-ειν** contract to *ᾶν*.

5. The acc. is used adverbially.

6. An expression is in the attributive position (1) if it is between the article and its substantive or (2) after the substantive, provided that the article of the substantive is repeated before the attributive expression: e.g., (1) ὁ **ἀγαθὸς** *ἀνήρ*, (2) ὁ[1] *ἀνὴρ* ὁ **ἀγαθός**.

7. Participles and phrases, like adjectives, may take the attributive position.

8. Adverbs of place may govern the gen. case.

9. **τ**, **δ**, and **θ** are dropped before **ς**.

10. Stems in *εσ*-, 3d decl., lose *σ* between vowels.

11. Verb-themes ending in *ε* or *α*, contract *ε* or *α* with a following vowel.

12. The relative may be attracted into the case of its antecedent, especially from the acc. to the gen. or dat.

13. The subj. of an infin. is in the acc. case.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀμφί**, *about.*
2. **ἀντιπέρᾱς**, *directly opposite.*
3. **ἄχθομαι**, *I am vexed, annoyed.*
4. **δαπανάω**, *I spend (waste) money.*
5. **ὁ δασμός**, *revenue.*
6. **νομίζω**, *puto, I think.*
7. **ὅδε**, *this, the following.*
8. **οὐδείς, οὐδέν**, *nobody, nothing.*
9. **ὁ τρόπος**, *manner.*
10. **ὁ φυγάς**, *fugitive, exile.*

[1] *Χερρονήσῳ* in the text omits the first article, because it is a proper name, and proper names generally require no article.

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: φυγάς (φυγαδ-ς), ὅδε, δασμός.

II. Translate: 1. οἱ φυγάδες οὐδὲν ἤχθοντο. 2. οὐδεὶς βασιλεύσει. 3. Οἱ δασμοὶ οἱ βασιλέως ἐν Μῑλήτῳ συνελέγοντο. 4. ἐνόμιζον, νομίζουσι, τυγχάνεις, ἀπέπεμπες. 5. ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεῖ πολεμήσει.

III. Translate: 1. He thinks that Tissaphernes is spending money upon the army. 2. The satraps used-to-forward the revenues from the cities which they happened to have. 3. In order that the king might receive (= take) the revenues of the province, he (had) appointed Cyrus satrap. 4. To be thinking; thinking. 5. The mother of Cyrus happens to have an army opposite Miletus.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Adverbial accusative. 2. Accent in contraction. 3. Case with verbs of *fighting*. 4. Contraction of ά-ειν. 5. Effect of long ultima on accent of πόλεως, App. 48, N. *c*. 6. Agreement of the relative. 7. Mutes before ς. 8. Construction with verbs of *ruling*. 9. The sub. of the infin. 10. Attributive positions. 11. Formation and declension of ὅδε. 12. Accent of monosyllabic stems, 3d decl. 13. Decl. of the rel. pro. 14. Lingual stems in nom. sing.: (1) masc. and fem., (2) neut. 15. Nom. sing. of stems in -οντ-; voc. sing.; dat. plu. 16. Attraction of rel. pro. 17. ν before μ.

LESSON XXV.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. I. 9, τούτῳ συγγενόμενος . . . ἑκοῦσαι.

2. NOTES.

1. **τούτῳ**, *with this* (*man*): dat. of association, or governed by συν in the compound συγ-γενόμενος.

2. **συγ-γεν-ό-μενο-ς** (συν + γεν-ό-μενο-ς), *having associated with* this (man); taking it with the following verb, we may translate, *Cyrus associated with this man and came to admire:* (*a*) ν before γ becomes

γ-nasal; (*b*) from συγ-γίγνομαι cf. γίγνονται I., 2d aor. partc.; voice? force of -μενο-? how declined?

3. ἠγάσθη τε, *he both came to admire, admired:* (*a*) from ἄγα-μαι; (*b*) *passive deponent:* deponent verbs which have the passive form of the aorist are called passive deponents; other deponents are called middle deponents; on the suffix θη lengthened from -θε-, cf. δο-θῆ-ναι XXIII.; (*c*) τέ, enclitic; τέ . . . καί, *both . . . and*, cf. καί . . . καί XXII.

4. δί-δω-σι-(ν), (*he*) *gives*, hist. pres.: (*a*) pres. ind. act. 3d sing. from δί-δω-μι; (*b*) note the personal endings **-μι, -σι** for **-ω, -ει** of λῡ́ω; cf. ἀπο-δείκνῡ-μι VIII.; verbs of this formation are called **μι**-verbs in distinction from verbs like λῡ́-ω, which are called **ω**-verbs; (*c*) note ν movable after σι as after ε in the 3d sing.

5. ὁ δέ, demons., cf. XIII.; on λαβών cf. IX.

6. συν-έ-λεξε-(ν) (συν-έ-λεγ-σε), *he collected*, cf. συλ-λέξᾱς XXII., συλ-λογή XX.: (*a*) γ-ς and κ-ς = ξ, cf. ἀπέδειξεν VIII., συλλέξᾱς XXII.; (*b*) from συλλέγω; συλ for συν, cf. συλ-λαμβάνω XIII.

7. ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτ-ων: (*a*) ἀπό, *from*, as the starting-point; Eng. idiom would say *with*, as means or instrument; (*b*) what position does οὗτος require? (*c*) χρημάτ-ων, decl. like στράτευμα.

8. ὁρμώ-μενο-ς (ὁρμα-ό-μενο-ς), *rushing* or *setting out* from Chersonesus: (*a*) from ὁρμάω, *I start*, cf. δαπανάω XXIV.

9. τοῖς Θρᾳξί . . . οἰκοῦσι, *waged war with the Thracians who dwelt beyond the Hellespont:* (*a*) note the attrib. position of τοῖς . . . οἰκοῦσι, cf. Χερρονήσῳ . . . Ἀβύδου XXIV.; (*b*) nom. Θρᾷξ (Θρᾴκ-ς), gen. Θρᾳκ-ός, dat. plu. Θρᾳξί (Θρᾳκ-σί); construction? cf. Τισσαφέρνει XXIV.; (*c*) οἰκοῦσι (for οἰκέ-ο-ντ-σι); ε-ο contr. to ου, cf. (πολεμέ-ο-ντ-α) πολεμοῦντα XXIV.; ντ lost before σ, cf. ἀτῑμασθείς XIV., (λῡ́ο-ντ-σι) λῡ́ουσι XXIII. N. 18.

10. ὠφέλει (ὠφέλε-ε, cf. (ἠσθένε-ε) ἠσθένει III.), *he aided:* (*a*) from ὠφελέ-ω; (*b*) ω remains unchanged by augment.

11. καί, *also.*

12. συν-ε-βάλλ-ο-ντο, *contributed* means, lit. *cast together* (from their resources or for themselves): note the force of the mid.

13. τῶν στρατιωτῶν, *of his soldiers:* (*a*) nom. στρατιώτης, gen. -ου, 1st decl. masc., cf. ὁπλίτης, ὁπλῖτᾱς X.; (*b*) note the accent of the gen. plu. — why circumflex? voc. sing.?

14. **ἑκοῦσαι**, *willing*, Eng. *willingly* as if adv.; from **ἑκών**, fem. *ἑκοῦσα*, cf. *φιλοῦσα* XVI.; nom. fem. plu. agreeing with *πόλεις*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The dat. is governed by the force of prepositions in composition, e.g., *σύν*, *ἐπί*.

2. **ν** before *γ* becomes *γ*-nasal = *ng*.

3. Deponents have their act. meanings even in pass. forms.

4. **-μι** and **-σι**, personal endings of **μι**-verbs, = **-ω** and **-ει** of **ω**-verbs.

5. **ν** movable is added before initial vowels after **ε** in the 3d sing., and after *σι*.

6. **νλ** becomes *λλ*; *νπ* and *νβ* become *μπ* and *μβ*, cf. *συμ-βάλλω* Vocabulary, *συμ-πράττω* XXIII.

7. A palatal mute (*κ*, *γ*, *χ*) before **ς** forms with it *ξ*.

8. **α-ο**, **α-ω** contract to *ω*, cf. *ὁρμώ(α-ό)μενος*, *ὁρμῶ(ά-ω)*.

9. **ντ** is dropped before *σ* and the preceding vowel is lengthened.

10. **ω** does not change by augment.

11. The gen. plu. of the 1st decl. ends in *-ῶν* for *ά-ων*.

12. Adjectives and participles in *-ων* have the fem. in **-ουσᾰ**.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄγαμαι**, *I admire.*
2. **ὁ δᾱρεικός**,[1] *a daric.*
3. **ἑκών, ἑκοῦσα**, *willing.*
4. **μῡ́ριοι**, 10,000.
5. **οἰκέω**, *I live, dwell in.*
6. **ὁρμάω**, *I start.*
7. **ὁ στρατιώτης**, *soldier.*
8. **συγ-γίγνομαι**, *come into intercourse with, associate with.*
9. **συμ-βάλλω**, *I contribute.*
10. **ἡ τροφή**, *support.*
11. **ὑπέρ**,[2] *beyond, above.*
12. **τὸ χρῆμα**, *thing;* **τὰ χρήματα**, *means.*
13. **τὸ χρῡσίον**, *money.*
14. **ὠφελέω**, *I aid.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Translate: 1. *οὗτος ὁ Θρᾷξ δᾱρεικοὺς δύο συμβάλλεται.* 2. **ἑκὼν** *ὠφελήσω τὸν αὐτὸν στρατιώτην.* 3. *οἰκῶ ὑπὲρ πόλιν τὴν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.* 4. *πολεμήσει στρατιώταις μῡρίοις.* 5. **ἑκὼν** *δίδωμι τὰ χρήματα εἰς τροφὴν*

[1] A Persian gold coin worth about $5.40.

[2] Lat. *super*, Eng. OVER.

τῶν στρατιωτῶν τοῦ βασιλεύοντος. 6. πολεμήσομεν τούτοις τοῖς στρατιώταις, τοῖς αὐτοῖς στρατιώταις, τοῖς στρατιώταις τούτοις.

II. Translate: 1. These Thracians were contributing money for the support of the guards. 2. But the guards in that city were plotting against the king. 3. There (no Greek word for *there*) were 10,000 soldiers in Miletus. 4. I do not wish to live (οἰκέ-ειν = οἰκεῖν) in the kingdom of that king. 5. Cyrus gives money to his soldiers. 6. The guards were collecting armies for the king.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Prepositions in comp. which govern the dat. 2. Gamma-nasal. 3. ν before consonants. 4. Mutes before ς. 5. Decl. of χρῡσίον, χρῆμα. 6. Case with ἀπό. 7. Position of οὗτος. 8. Formation of 1st aor. stem; formation of imperfect. 9. Mid. voice. 10. Verbs of *fighting* govern what case? 11. Attributive position. 12. ντ before ς. 13. Accent of στρατιωτῶν. 14. Accent of monosyllabic stems of the 3d decl., cf. Θρᾳξί, App. 43. 15. μι- and ω-verbs. 16. Difference in meaning between the imp. and aor. 17. Declension of Θρᾷξ, φύλαξ App. 41, φλέψ App. 42.

LESSON XXVI.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. i. 9, 10, τοῦτο δ᾽ αὖ . . . ἀντιστασιωτῶν.

2. NOTES.

1. τοῦτο, made emphatic by separation from its noun στράτευμα, *this* army, as well as the preceding.

2. τρεφό-μενο-ν, *being supported:* agrees with the subj. στράτευμα, but is in the predicate; from τρέφω, cf. τροφή XXV.

3. οὕτω, *thus, as precedes;* ὧδε, *thus, as follows.*

4. ἐ-λάνθαν-ε(ν), *escaped notice* being supported, *was secretly supported:* from λανθάνω; tense? stem λανθαν, theme λαθ, cf. λαμβάν-ω, λαβ-ών.

5. ξένος, *guest-friend, friend.*

6. ὤν, with ἐτύγχανεν, cf. παρών VI

7. **ὑπό . . . ἀντιστασιωτῶν,** lit. by his at-home-adversaries, *by his adversaries at home:* (*a*) ὑπό with the gen., *by*, = Lat. *ab* with abl.; (*b*) οἴκοι, adv. in attributive position with the force of an adj., cf. παρ' ἑαυτῷ XIX., κατ' ἀντιπέρᾱς Ἀβΰδου XXIV.; on the meaning, cf. οἰκέω, *I dwell* XXV.; note the accent, cf. the optative; (*c*) ἀντιστασιωτῶν, cf. στρατιωτῶν XXV., what decl.? nom. sing.?

8. **ἔρχεται,** cf. ἀπ-ῆλθε XIV.

9. **αἰτεῖ** (αἰτέ-ει), *asks, demands:* (*a*) from αἰτέω, cf. ἐξ-αιτη-σα-μένη XIII.; (*b*) ε-ει contr. to ει, cf. πολεμέ-ειν, -εῖν XIX.

10. **αὐτόν,** the person asked; ξένους, μίσθον, the things asked; asked *him for mercenaries* and *pay;* note the hist. pres.

11. **εἰς,** *into, about* (with numerals), *about* 2,000 *mercenaries.*

12. **ξένους,** cf. ξένος N. 5, *hired soldiers, mercenaries;* note the two different meanings of ξένος. Mercenaries were called ξένοι, *guest-friends,* by a polite fiction, to avoid the uncomplimentary term "*hirelings,*" μισθωτοί.

13. **τριῶν,** *three:* nom. τρεῖς, Lat. *tres.*

14. **μην-ῶν,** *months:* (*a*) nom. sing. μήν, gen. μην-ός; (*b*) on nom. sing. without case-ending -ς, cf. μήτηρ XIII., ἀνήρ XX.

15. **ὡς,** *on-the-ground-that, saying that,* with the partc., cf. ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος XX.

16. **οὕτω,** *thus,* i.e., if he received help from Cyrus.

17. **περι-γεν-ό-μενο-ς,** ff.: *he would thus become superior to, overcome, his opponents:* (*a*) cf. συγ-γεν-ό-μενο-ς XXV.; περι-γεν-ό-μενο-ς, *getting* or *becoming beyond* or *over*, i.e., *overcoming;* (*b*) ἄν belongs with the partc., giving it the potential force, *would;* (*c*) note the gen. case after a verb of *superiority*, cf. ἄρχω XXIII.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **τυγχάνω** has the partc. with it where the infin. might be expected; this is called the *supplementary partc.*, because it supplements the meaning of the verb on which it depends.

2. **ξένος** has two different meanings, (1) *guest-friend,* (2) *hired soldier, mercenary.*

3. **ὑπό** with the gen. of a person expresses agency.

4. Adverbs, like participles and phrases, in the attributive position, have the value of attributive adjectives.

5. Verbs of *asking, demanding*, take two objects, one of the *person* and another of the *thing*.

6. **εἰς,** with numerals = *about*.

7. Stems in ν and ρ, 3d decl., do not take the case-ending **-ς** in the nom. sing.

8. Verbs of *superiority, ruling*, take the gen. case.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **αἰτέω,** *I beg, demand.*
2. **ἄν,** with the opt. or partc. gives a potential force, *might, would.*
3. **ὁ ἀντιστασιώτης,** *adversary.*
4. **δισχίλιοι,** 2,000.
5. **ἔρχομαι,** *I come.*
6. **λανθάνω,** *I escape notice.*
7. **ὁ μήν,** *month.*
8. **ὁ μισθός,** *pay.*
9. **ὁ ξένος,** *guest-friend, mercenary.*
10. **οἴκοι,** *at home.*
11. **περί,** *around.*
12. **περι-γίγνομαι,** *I become superior, overcome.*
13. **πιέζω,** *I press,* pass. *am hard pressed.*
14. **τρεῖς,** *three.*
15. **τρέφω,** *I support.*
16. **ὑπό,**[1] *under, by.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *μήν, ἀντιστασιώτης, μισθός.*

II. Translate: 1. *αὕτη δ᾽ οὖν οὕτω τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐπιβουλεύουσα λανθάνει ἡ πόλις.* 2. *Ξενίᾱς δ᾽ ὁ Παρράσιος φίλος ὢν ἐτύγχανε τῷ σατράπῃ, καὶ ἀτῑμασθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει οἰκούντων ἀνέβη πρὸς βασιλέᾱ.* 3. *Κῦρος ᾔτει τὸν βασιλέᾱ τὸν αὐτὸν μισθόν.* 4. *στρατιῶται πρὸς τοὺς ξένους ἦλθον ὅπως χρῡσίον λάβοιεν.* 5. *ἢν βασιλεὺς μῡρίους στρατιώτᾱς λάβῃ, τῷ ἀδελφῷ* **Κῡ́ρῳ πολεμήσει.**

III. Translate: 1. These armies were secretly supported. 2. The mother of the king happened to be supported by Cyrus. 3. The guards at home were secretly supported. 4. The soldiers were secretly supported at home. 5. The soldiers ask (*αἰτοῦσι*) Cyrus for a month's pay.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Supplementary participles, — how translated. 2. Constructions after *αἰτέω*. 3. Construction with verbs of *fighting*, verbs of

[1] *ὑπό* = *by* only with the gen. in expressions of agency.

superiority, compounds with σύν and ἐπί. 4. ὑπό with the gen. 5. παρά with the gen. 6. Use of οἴκοι in Anab. I. i. 10. 7. Circumstantial participles. 8. ὡς with participles. 9. ἄν with participles. 10. Decl. of ἀντιστασιώτης. 11. ν before consonants. 12. Nom. sing. of 3d decl. nouns. 13. Feminines of the 1st decl. 14. Declension of liquid stems, App. 45. 15. ν and ντ before σι in the dat. plu. 16. Accent of οἴκοι, cf. final οι in the opt.

LESSON XXVII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. i. 10, ὁ δὲ Κῦρος . . . στράτευμα.

2. NOTES.

1. **δίδωσι(ν)**, cf. XXV.

2. **δεῖται** for δέ-ε-ται, from δέω, mid. δέ-ο-μαι, *want, ask, beg of.*

3. **μὴ κατα-λῦ-σαι**, *not to loosen down, to discontinue, end* (*the war*, τὸν πόλεμον to be understood): (*a*) μή, *not*, corresponding to the Lat. *ne* in many of its uses, is the regular negative with the infin.; (*b*) λῡ, the theme; -σαι, end. of the 1st aor. act. infin.; it contains -σα-, the 1st aor. tense-suffix, but is irregular in formation; what is the pres. act. infin. end.? 2d aor.?

4. **πρόσθεν . . . πρίν**, translate the two words together *until.*

5. **συμ-βουλεύ-σ-η-ται**, *shall have consulted with him* or *should consult with him:* (*a*) αὐτῷ is governed by συν in composition; why συμ- here? (*b*) συμ-βουλεύω, *I advise;* mid. *I advise with one for myself*, i.e., *consult with;* (*c*) -σ- for -σ(α)-, aor. tense-suffix; (*d*) -η-, cf. δύν-η-ται XV., mode-suffix of the subjunctive; hence the verb is 1st aor. subj. mid. 3d sing.; (*e*) ἄν, untranslatable, belongs to πρίν, cf. ἤν (= εἰ + ἄν) δύνηται XV.; cf. Lat. *antequam consuluerit.*

6. **τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ**, attrib. of στράτευμα, *the army in Thessaly.*

7. **First Aorist**: (*a*) Let the student compare ἐποίησε VII., ἐτελεύτησε XII., κινδῡνεύσᾱς XIV., συλλέξᾱς XXII., κατα-λῦσαι N. 3, συμβουλεύσηται N. 5. With the theme λῡ, remembering that -σα- is the tense-suffix of the 1st aor., we may form the tense-stem of the 1st aor. of λύω, λῡσα-; prefixing the augment will give ἔλῡσα, the 1st per. sing.

of the 1st aor. indic. act., as the personal ending -ν is omitted here; the 3d sing. (cf. ἐποίησε VII.) will be ἔλῡσε; the other persons will be formed regularly by adding the personal endings of the past tenses to ἔλῡσα-; the ending of the 3d plu. is that of the imp. and 2d aor., -ν. Hence we shall have: —

Indic.
- ἔλῡσα, *I loosed.*
- ἔλῡσα-ς
- ἔλῡσε
- ἐλῡ́σα-τον
- ἐλῡσά-την
- ἐλῡ́σα-μεν
- ἐλῡ́σα-τε
- ἔλῡσα-ν

(*b*) If we compare δύν-η-ται XV. (pres.) with συμ-βουλεύ-σ-η-ται (aor.) N. 5, it will be seen that the difference between the two subjunctives is -σ-, a part of the tense-suffix -σα- in the aor.; hence the 1st aor. subj. of λύω may be formed from that of the pres. by inserting -σ- after the theme and before the mode-suffix: —

PRES. SUBJ.			AOR. SUBJ.		
λῡ́ω		λῡ́ωμεν	λῡ́-σ-ω		λῡ́-σ-ωμεν
λῡ́ῃς	λῡ́ητον	λῡ́ητε	λῡ́-σ-ῃς	λῡ́-σ-ητον	λῡ́-σ-ητε
λῡ́ῃ	λῡ́ητον	λῡ́ωσι	λῡ́-σ-ῃ	λῡ́-σ-ητον	λῡ́-σ-ωσι

(*c*) Remembering the analysis of λῡ́-ο-ι-μι, the pres. opt., and given the tense-stem λῡσα-, we may expect the aor. opt. to be λῡ́σα-ι-μι, formed by adding the mode-suffix -ι- and the personal ending. Hence we may write: —

λῡ́σαι-μι		λῡ́σαι-μεν
λῡ́σαι-ς, λῡ́σειας[1]	λῡ́σαι-τον	λῡ́σαι-τε
λῡ́σαι, λῡ́σειε[1]	λῡσαί-την	λῡ́σαιε-ν, λῡ́σειαν[1]

(*d*) Infin.: λῦσαι (cf. κατα-λῦσαι N. 3).

(*e*) Partc.: λῡ́σᾱς (cf. κινδῡνεύσᾱς XIV.).

(*f*) For the difference in meaning between the modes of the pres. and aor., cf. XXIII. N. 17. Is there any difference in meaning between the 1st and 2d aorist?

[1] Irregular, but more common forms.

PARTIAL SYNOPSIS OF λύω; 2D AOR. OF λαμβάνω.

VOICE.	MODE.	PRES. SYSTEM.	FUTURE.	1ST AORIST.	2D AORIST.
	Indic.	{ λύω ἔλῡον	λύσω	ἔλῡσα	ἔλαβον
	Subj.	λύω		λύσω	λάβω
Active	Opt.	λύοιμι	λύσοιμι	λύσαιμι	λάβοιμι
	Imv.	——		——	——
	Infin.	λύειν	λύσειν	λῦσαι	λαβεῖν
	Partc.	λύων	λύσων	λύσᾱς	λαβών

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ν movable is added to the ending -σι before words beginning with a vowel.

2. δέομαι is followed by the gen. of the person of whom a request is made.

3. μή corresponds in many of its uses to the Lat. *ne;* it is the regular neg. with the infin.

4. The 1st aor. inf. act. ends in -σαι.

5. πρόσθεν . . . πρίν, *until.*

6. πρίν meaning *until*, when it implies expectation, may take ἄν and the subjunctive, usually when dependent on a negative sentence.

7. -ω/η- is the mode-suffix of the subjunctive.

8. The dative is used after compounds with σύν.

9. The 1st aor. subj. differs from the pres. subj. in having a tense-suffix -σ- before the mode-suffix.

10. The 1st aor. does not differ from the 2d aor. in meaning; some verbs have a 1st aor. and other verbs a 2d aor.; a very few verbs have both, with a difference of meaning.

11. All the modes of the pres. express *continued* or *repeated action;* those of the aorists, action *brought to pass*, i.e., *indefinite.*

12. Final αι, like final οι, in the opt., has the effect of a long vowel on the accent of the penult and antepenult; also final οι in οἴκοι.

13. The 1st aor. act. infin. and partc. always accent the penult.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **δέομαι**, *I want, ask, beg of.*
2. **ἕξ**, *six.*
3. **κατα-λύω**, *I loosen down, come to agreement.*
4. **μή**, *not.*
5. **πρίν**, *before, until.*
6. **πρόσθεν**, *before.*
7. **συμ-βουλεύω**, *I advise.*
8. **συμ-βουλεύομαι**, *I confer with, ask advice of.*
9. **τετρακισχίλιοι**, 4,000.

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *λαβών, λαβοῦσα, λαβόν*; conjugate *ἐποίησα* in the 1st aor. ind., subj., and opt.

II. Translate: *Κῦρος τοὺς ὁπλῖτᾱς ἔλῡσεν.* 2. *οἱ ἄνθρωποι τὴν συλλογὴν κατέλῡσαν.* 3. *ἢν οἱ στρατιῶται τοὺς φύλακας λῡ́σωσι, Κῦρος αὐτοῖς συμβουλεύσει.* 4. *ἤλθετε ὅπως τὸν βασιλέᾱ χρῡσίον αἰτήσαιτε.* 5. *ὁ βασιλεὺς ἔρχεται ὅπως λῡ́ῃ, λῡ́σῃ, τοὺς φίλους.* 6. *λῡ́ειν, λῦσαι.*

III. Translate: 1. Cyrus escapes notice (in) collecting his armies. 2. Being hard pressed by the soldiers, they assembled in (= into) the cities. 3. The king thinks that Cyrus will ask (*αἰτήσειν*, cf. *ἐνόμιζε δαπανᾶν* XXIV.) his opponent for a month's pay. 4. The fugitives will ask the army for support. 5. The armies in Miletus were secretly supported for the generals. 6. To be dissolving (loosing down); to dissolve.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Declension of *αὐτός*; of *πᾶς*, App. 55, N. c. 2. Comparison. 3. Formation of the future. 4. *ὅτι, ὡς* with superlatives. 5. *εἰς* with numerals. 6. Some uses of the opt.; of the subj. 7. Kind of action expressed by the modes of the pres.; of the aor. 8. Make a classification of feminines in 1st decl. 9. *ν* and *ντ* before *σ*. 10. Nom. of stems in *οντ-, εντ-, αντ-*. 11. Formation and meaning of the modes of the 1st aor. 12. The fut. ind. and aor. subj. of *λύω*; how do the forms differ? in what are they alike? 13. The accent of *λαβών, λῦσαι* (infin.), *λύσαι* (opt.). 14. The general rule for the accent of the verb. 15. Accent of monosyllables of the 3d decl. 16. Declension of *λύσᾱς* (cf. *πᾶς*).

LESSON XXVIII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. i. 11, Πρόξενον . . . οὗτοι.

2. NOTES.

1. ξένον ὄντα αὐτῷ, *being a guest-friend to him, since he was his guest-friend*: (*a*) ὄντα, acc. sing. masc. of ὤν, οὖσα, ὄν; (*b*) αὐτῷ, cf. ἦν αὐτῷ XXII.; (*c*) ὄντ-α, cf. λαβόντ-α following; nom. ὤν is formed by dropping the τ and lengthening ο to ω in compensation; case end. -ς not used; declined like λύων.

2. λαβόντα . . . παρα-γεν-έ-σθαι, *having taken . . . to become beside*, translate: *to take*, or *get*, *as many men as possible* [*and*] *to come*: (*a*) ὅτι πλείστους, *quam plurimos*, cf. XX.; (*b*) παρα-γεν-έ-σθαι: **-σθαι,** end. of the mid. infin.; theme γεν; (*c*) περι-γεν-έ-σθαι means what? συγ-γενέσθαι? tense? present?

3. ὡς, with the partc. βουλόμενος, *asserting that he wished*, cf. ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος XX.

4. στρατεύ-ε-σθαι, *to make an expedition* (for himself).

5. εἰς, *into* (the country of) *the Pisidians*, or *against the Pisidians*.

6. ὡς, *on the ground that*, with the gen. abs.

7. πράγματ-α παρ-εχόντ-ων, *were causing trouble*.

8. τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ, lit. *to the country of himself, to his own country*: (*a*) note the position of ἑαυτοῦ, the reflexive pronoun; (*b*) cf. ἑαυτῷ XIX., ἑαυτόν XXIII.: how is the reflexive of the 3d per. declined in the sing.?

9. καὶ τούτους, *these also*.

10. ἐλθ-εῖν, cf. ἦλθε XIV., ἔρχεται XXVI.; what tense? cf. λαβεῖν.

11. ὡς, cf. ὡς ἀποκτενῶν XIII.

12. σύν, *in company with, with the help of*; note the difference between πολεμεῖν ἀνδρί, and πολεμεῖν σὺν ἀνδρί.

13. φυγάσι, cf. φυγάς XXIV., for φυγά(δ)σι; gen. sing.?

14. τοῖς Μιλησίων, cf. τοῖς οἰκοῦσι XXV.; note the attrib. position.

15. ἐποίουν οὕτως, *did thus* or *so* (as precedes): (*a*) ἐ-ποίου-ν for ἐ-ποίε-ο-ν, from ποιέω, cf. ἔ-λῡ-ο-ν; (*b*) ε-ο contr. to ου, cf. πολεμοῦντα XXIV.; (*c*) tense?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Stems in **-οντ-** form the nominative in *-ων*.

2. The dative used with the verb *to be* may indicate possession.

3. **-σθαι** is the ending of the infin. mid. voice.

4. **ὡς** with the participle marks something as merely alleged, which may or may not be true.

5. The possessive *ἑαυτοῦ* stands in the attrib. position when it limits a noun.

6. **ε** augments to *η*, but in *εἶχε*, **ε** appears as *ει*.

7. The pres., 2d aor., and fut. act. infinitives end in **-ειν**.

8. **ἦλθε**, *he came*, has an irregular present *ἔρχομαι*.

9. **ὡς** with the fut. partic. indicates an intention as stated, whether assumed or real.

10. Participles, prepositional phrases, adverbs, and genitives are found in the attrib. position.

11. A participle and a verb are often used in Greek where we should use two coördinate verbs.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἑαυτοῦ**, *of himself.*
2. **ἦλθε(ν)**, *he came.*
3. **κελεύω**, *I order.*
4. **παρα-γίγνομαι**, *I arrive.*
5. **παρ-έχω**, *I furnish, cause.*
6. **τὸ πρᾶγμα**, *affair*, plur. *trouble.*
7. **στρατεύομαι**, *I march, make an expedition.*
8. **ἡ χώρᾱ**, *country.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Inflect *κελεύω* in the present and imperfect indic., subj., opt., and in the 1st aorist indic., subj., opt.

II. Translate: 1. *φυγάδας ὅτι πλείστους λαβόντας τὰ χρῡσία ἐκέλευσαν ἐν τῇ ἑαυτῶν πόλει παραγενέσθαι.* 2. *οἱ Μῑλήσιοι τοὺς ξένους ἐλθεῖν ἐκέλευον.* 3. *Κῦρος τοῖς Πῑσίδαις πολεμήσει.* 4. *Οἱ φύλακες σὺν Σοφαινέτῳ ἐπολέμουν.* 5. *Πρόξενος Κύρῳ ξένος ἦν.*

III. Translate: 1. The Pisidians were causing trouble to the king's land. 2. I wish to make-a-campaign against the Milesians. 3. The men came with (fr. *λαβών*) their own mercenaries. 4. Cyrus with the help of these mercenaries will wage war against the Pisidians. 5. Sophaenetus and Socrates came with men.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Appositives. 2. ὡς with participles. 3. The infin. endings. 4. Position of the reflexive pro. ἑαυτοῦ. 5. Position of οὗτος. 6. The partc. and infin. = two Eng. infins. with *and*. 7. Constructions after δέομαι, verbs of ruling, αἰτεῖν, verbs of fighting. 8. Gen. abs.; how may it often be translated? 9. φ in ἀφικνοῖτο. 10. Accent of monosyllables of the 3d decl. 11. Accent of the 1st aor. act. infin. 12. Endings of gen. and dat. sing., 1st decl. 13. Declension of stems in τ. 14. Accent of the gen. plu. of φίλιος (three genders). 15. Accent of the gen. plu., 1st decl. 16. Some uses of the acc. Declension of ἑαυτοῦ (sing.), App. 62; of φιλῶν, φιλοῦσα, φιλοῦν, cf. φιλοῦσα XVI. and App. 57.

LESSON XXIX.—REVIEW.

[In preparing this Review Lesson follow closely the directions given with previous Review Lessons.]

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. I. 5, καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ, through Chapter I.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. (*a*) Open and close vowels, App. 4; (*b*) contraction of vowels XXIII., XXIV., XXV.; (*c*) mutes before σ XXIV., XXV.; (*d*) ν and σ before other consonants XXV.; (*e*) σ between vowels XXIV.; (*f*) ν movable XXI., XXV.; (*g*) enclitics XIX.; (*h*) γ-nasal XXV.

2. **First Declension.** — (*a*) Classification of feminines in the sing.; (*b*) declension of γῆ, θάλαττα XXII.

3. **Third Declension.** — (*a*) Stems XIX., XX.; (*b*) case-endings XIX.; (*c*) formation of cases XIX., XXIV., XXVI., XXVIII.; (*d*) special rule for accent, App. 43; (*e*) declension of φύλαξ, φλέψ, ἐλπίς, λέων, πρᾶγμα, ποιμήν, δαίμων, ἡγεμών, πόλις.

4. **Adjectives and Participles.** — (*a*) Declension of πᾶς, λύσᾱς, λύων, φιλῶν; (*b*) comparison XIX.

5. **Pronouns.** — (*a*) αὐτός XXI.; (*b*) ἑαυτοῦ XXVIII.; (*c*) ἄλλος XXII.; (*d*) οὗτος, ὅδε XXII., XXIV.; (*e*) the relative.

6. **Verbs.** — (*a*) Tense systems, App. 71; (*b*) the *μι*-form XXV.; (*c*) endings of the optative XX.; (*d*) infin. endings XIX., XXIV., XXVII., XXVIII.; (*e*) accent of the verb XX., XXVII.; (*f*) accent of the 1st aor. infin. XXVII.; (*g*) accent of the 2d aor. XX., XXIII.; (*h*) mode-suffixes XX., XXVII.; (*i*) formation of the perf. stem XXI.; (*j*) liquid aorists XX.; (*k*) conjugation of λύω in the pres. and imperf. indic., subj., opt., and 1st aor. indic., subj., opt., act. XX., XXVII.; (*l*) conjug. of the 2d aor. indic., subj., opt., act. (ἔλιπον) XXIII.

7. (*a*) Adjectives used alone XXII.; (*b*) ὁ as a demonstrative XXI.; (*c*) the article with attributives XIX., XXVI.; (*d*) the article with pronouns XXI., XXIII., XXVIII.; (*e*) relative attracted XXIV.; (*f*) attributive and predicate position XXIV.

8. **Accusative.** — (*a*) Adverbial XXI.; (*b*) double object XXVI.

9. **Genitive.** — (*a*) With verbs of mental action XIX.; (*b*) of ruling XXVI.; (*c*) with δέομαι XXVII.; (*d*) with adverbs XXIV.; (*e*) gen. abs. XX.

10. **Dative.** — (*a*) Of association XXIV.; (*b*) with compounds XXIII., XXV.; (*c*) of possessor XXII., XXVIII.

11. **Verbs.** — (*a*) Passive deponents XXV.; (*b*) subject of infin. XXIV.; (*c*) infin. as noun XXII.; (*d*) purpose and result XIX.; (*e*) attributive participles XXIV., XXVIII.; (*f*) circumstantial participles XXVIII.; (*g*) supplementary participles XXVI.

3. VOCABULARY.

VERBS.

1. *ἄγαμαι.*
2. *ἀγγέλλω.*
3. *ἄγω.*
4. *αἰσθάνομαι.*
5. *αἰτέω.*
6. *ἀξιόω.*
7. *ἄρχω.*
8. *ἀφ-ίστημι.*
9. *ἄχθομαι.*
10. *βάλλω.*
11. *ἐκ-βάλλω.*
12. *δαπανάω.*
13. *δέομαι.*
14. *δίδωμι.*
15. *εἴησαν, ἦν, ἦσαν.*
16. *ἐκ-πίπτω.*
17. *ἐπι-κρύπτω.*
18. *ἐπι-μελέομαι.*
19. *ἔρχομαι, ἦλθε(ν).*
20. *κατ-άγω.*
21. *κατα-λύω.*
22. *κελεύω.*
23. *λανθάνω.*
24. *νομίζω.*
25. *οἰκέω.*
26. *ὁρμάω.*
27. *παρ-αγγέλλω.*
28. *παρα-γίγνομαι.*
29. *παρ-έχω.*
30. *πειράομα*
31. *περι-γίγνομαι.*
32. *πιέζω.*
33. *πολεμέω.*
34. *πολιορκέω.*
35. *πράττω.*
36. *προ-αισθάνομαι.*
37. *στρατεύομαι.*
38. *συγ-γίγνομαι.*
39. *συλ-λέγω.*
40. *συμ-βάλλω.*
41. *συμ-βουλεύω.*
42. *συμ-πράττω.*
43. *τρέφω.*
44. *φεύγω.*
45. *ὠφελέω.*

NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἀνήρ.
2. ὁ ἀντιστασιώτης.
3. ὁ βάρβαρος.
4. ἡ γῆ.
5. ὁ δᾱρεικός.
6. ὁ δασμός.
7. ἡ δύναμις.
8. ἡ ἐπιβουλή.
9. ἡ θάλασσα.
10. ὁ μήν.
11. ὁ μισθός.
12. ὁ ξένος.
13. ἡ πόλις.
14. τὸ πρᾶγμα.
15. ἡ πρόφασις.
16. τὸ στράτευμα.
17. ὁ στρατιώτης.
18. ἡ συλλογή.
19. ὁ τρόπος.
20. ἡ τροφή.
21. ὁ φεύγων.
22. ὁ φυγάς.
23. ὁ φρούραρχος.
24. ἡ φυλακή.
25. τὸ χρῆμα.
26. τὸ χρῡσίον.
27. ἡ χώρᾱ.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄλλος.
2. ἀπαράσκευος.
3. βέλτιστος.
4. δισχί̄λιοι, τετρακισχί̄λιοι.
5. ἕκαστος.
6. ἑκών.
7. ἕξ, τρεῖς.
8. ἱκανός.
9. μῡ́ριοι.
10. ὁπόσος.
11. οὐδείς, οὐδέν.
12. πᾶς.
13. πλεῖστος.

ADVERBS.

1. αὖ.
2. εὐνοϊκῶς.
3. ἀντιπέρᾱς.
4. μή, οὐ, οὐκ.
5. οἴκοι.
6. πρόσθεν.
7. τὸ ἀρχαῖον.
8. τότε.
9. ὧδε.
10. ὡς.

PRONOUNS.

1. ἑαυτοῦ.
2. ὁ, ἡ, τό.
3. ὅδε.
4. οἷ.
5. ουτος.

PREPOSITIONS.

1. ἀμφί.
2. ἐν.
3. περί.
4. πλήν.
5. ὑπέρ.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. πρίν.
2. τέ.
3. ὡς, ὅτι.

4. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation:[1] 1. Cyrus collects his Greek force in (= into) the city. 2. The king took the exiles as unprepared as possible. 3. The city Miletus formerly belonged to the soldiers of Cyrus. 4. The force of the king was plotting against Tissa-

[1] Many teachers may prefer to have these sentences written on paper by their classes and corrected, and then given orally as a review lesson. This plan should be followed with the exercises "For Written Translation."

phernes. 5. The guards thought (that) Tissaphernes was-waging-war against Cyrus. 6. I continued-to-forward (= was forwarding) the revenues to my (= the) friends. 7. The fugitives were Lacedaemonians. 8. The guest-friends of Cyrus came to the king. 9. Thus the guards were secretly supported for Cyrus. 10. You ordered men to get (= take) soldiers and to come.

II. For Written Translation: 1. They will wage war against the king, setting out from Miletus. 2. In company with these men you (plu.) were collecting the Greek force. 3. In company with the same men the fugitives were taking as many cities as possible. 4. These cities belonged to Clearchus. 5. The men had (cf. XXII.) other pretexts for taking the soldiers. 6. We ordered our (= the) opponents to ask the king for a month's wages. 7. Mercenaries in Thessaly were secretly supported. 8. We were taking; we took; we were having; to be taking; to take to order. 9. If the king (shall) order (subj.), I will wage war against Cyrus. 10. The generals released (= loosed) the guards in order that they might collect the soldiers.

LESSON XXX.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 1, Ἐπεί . . . *στράτευμα.*

2. NOTES.

[With the aid of the vocabulary in the latter part of the book, the pupil will master the meaning of some words not given in the Notes of this and subsequent Lessons.]

1. ἐ-δόκει, *it seemed best:* (*a*) from δοκέω, imp. for ἐ-δόκε-ε, cf. ἠσθέ-νει III.; (*b*) although translated impersonally, its subject is πορεύε-σθαι, *to proceed.*

2. πορεύε-σθαι, cf. παρα-γενέ-σθαι XXVIII., from πορεύ-ο-μαι, dep.; pres. infin. mid.

3. μέν, without the corresponding δέ here, so that only the *pretext* of Cyrus is given and his *real reasons* are omitted.

4. ἐ-ποιεῖ-το (ἐ-ποιέ-ε-το) from ποιέω, *I make,* imp. mid., *made* (*for himself*).

5. **ὡς βουλόμενος**, *saying that he wished*, on ὡς cf. XXVIII.

6. **ἐκ-βαλ-εῖν**, from ἐκ-βάλλω, cf. ἐξ-έ-βαλ-ε(ν) XXI.; what tense? cf. λαβεῖν, λιπεῖν; what suffix is -ειν? ἐκ-βάλλ-ειν is what? difference in meaning between this and ἐκβαλεῖν?

7. **παντάπᾱσιν**, adv. (πάντα + πᾶσι(ν), *all-in-all*, cf. πᾶς; neut. acc. and dat. plu., πάντα, πᾶσι), *wholly, entirely.*

8. **τό τε βαρβαρικόν**, sc. στράτευμα: note that the accent on τό does not change to the grave because an enclitic follows and is read as if a part of τό.

9. **ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα**, obj. of λαβόντι, lit. *taking how much army was to him, taking what army he had, with the army which*, etc., or *to take . . . and come;* αὐτῷ, dat. of possessor, cf. αὐτῷ XXII.

10. **συν-αλλαγ-έ-ντ-ι πρός**, *to come to an agreement with . . . and:* (*a*) 2d aor. pass. partc. dat. sing. masc., from nom. συν-αλλαγ-είς, cf. ἀτῑμασ-θείς XIV.; (*b*) theme αλλαγ, pres. συν-αλλάττω; (*c*) note that the 2d aor. pass. has -εις for -ε-ντ-ς, where the 1st aor. has -θεις for -θε-ντ-ς; the 1st passive suffix is -θε-; the 2d passive suffix is -ε-.

11. **πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι**, *toward, with the (opponents) at home*, the substantive omitted; what part of speech is οἴκοι? cf. XXVI.

12. **ἀπο-πέμψαι** (ἀπο-πέμπ-σαι), cf. κατα-λῦ-σαι XXVII.; 1st aor. infin. act.; πσ = ψ.

13. **ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα** = τὸ στράτευμα ὃ εἶχε: ὅ, *which*, from the nom. ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, acc. neut. sing., obj. of εἶχε. How is the rel. pron. declined?

14. **αὐτῷ**, *for him.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The mid. infin. end. is **-σθαι.**

2. **ὡς** with the participle represents the action (1) as pretended or (2) asserted on the authority of another than the speaker.

3. The infin. may be the subject.

4. In Greek, as in English, a relative clause may be the subject or object of a verb.

5. **ἐκ** before consonants; **ἐξ** before vowels.

6. An oxytone word followed by an enclitic does not change the accent to the grave.

7. **-θε-** is the 1st pass. suffix, **-ε-** the 2d pass. suffix.

8. Substantives in Greek, as in English, are often omitted, when they can easily be supplied from the context.

9. π with ς forms ψ.
10. The rel. pron. is declined like αὐτός.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of λυθείς,[1] App. 56.
2. Synopsis of λύω in the pres. system, act., App. 74, I.
3. Endings of the act. imv., App. 76.
4. Declension of the relative pronoun, App. 65.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄνω** (cf. **ἀνά**, *up*), *upward.*
2. **βαρβαρικός**,[2] *barbarian.*
3. **δοκεῖ**, *it seems.*
4. **Ἑλληνικός**, *Greek.*
5. **ἐνταῦθα**, *there.*
6. **ἤδη**, *now, at length, at last.*
7. **ἥκω**, *I have come.*
8. **ὅσος**, *quantus, how great.*
9. **παντάπᾱσιν**, *wholly.*
10. **πορεύομαι**, *I advance.*
11. **συν-αλλάττω**, *I reconcile.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline συναλλαγέντι, τούτους, πρόφασιν.

II. Write a synopsis of λέγω in the pres. system active.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. He was wishing to banish the Pisidians wholly from Miletus. 2. But he did not have a pretext for banishing (= of banishing) them. 3. Cyrus sends the army which he has back to the king. 4. They sent orders to the generals to come with their armies.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. At length they resolved (= it seemed best to them) to collect an army. 2. Therefore they ordered Aristippus and Xenias to come with (from λαβών; sing. or plu.?) all the army which they had. 3. And Clearchus also sends the army which he has. 4. The generals were collecting the soldiers at home.

[1] The instructor should explain on the board the formation and inflection of words assigned as a grammar lesson before the pupil is asked to learn the paradigm. Let this practice be adopted not only with λυθείς, but with all other paradigms referred to in this book.

[2] *τὸ βαρβαρικόν* (sc. *στράτευμα*), *the barbarian (army).*

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Elision. 2. Enclitics. 3. Grave accent before an enclitic. 4. First and second passive suffixes. 5. ὡς with the participle. 6. Uses of the aorist participle. 7. Words in the attributive position. 8. Present system. 9. Act. imv. endings. 10. Decl. of the relative pronoun. 11. Stem and analysis of λυθείς.

LESSON XXXI

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 1, 2, καὶ Ξενίᾳ . . . οἴκαδε.

2. NOTES.

1. προ-ει-στή-κει, *praefuerat, was commanding,* cf. ἀφεστήκεσαν XXI., plup. indic. act. 3d sing.; ει, augmented reduplication; στη, for στα, theme; -κει-, suffix of 1st pluperfect, cf. ἐκ-πεπτω-κ-ότ-ας XXII.; pres. προΐστημι, cf. κατέστη XII.

2. τοῦ . . . ξενικοῦ, gen. governed by the verb of *commanding;* cf. ἄρχειν XXIII.; sc. στρατεύματος, cf. βαρβαρικόν, Ἑλληνικόν XXX.; why does ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι stand between τοῦ and ξενικοῦ?

3. ἥκειν = ἐλθεῖν.

4. λαβόντα, for λαβόντι to agree with Ξενίᾳ, attracted to the acc. case as if agreeing with the subject of the infin.

5. τοὺς ἄλλους πλήν, *the* or *his others except,* i.e., *all except.*

6. φυλάττ-ειν, cf. λύ-ειν, φύλαξ (= φύλακ-ς), φυλακ-ή XX.; what does the verb mean?

7. ἐ-κάλε-σε, cf. ἐ-ποίη-σε, ἔ-λῡ-σε; where found? from καλέ-ω, *I call;* ε of the theme καλε does not lengthen to η as in ἐ-ποίη-σε.

8. ἐ-κέλευ-σε: pres.? fut.? perf. κε-κέλευ-κα: the pres. (λύω), fut. (λύσω), aor. (ἔλῡσα), perf. (λέλυκα) are the principal parts of the verb in the active voice.

9. ὑπο-σχ-ό-μενο-ς, *promising:* from ὑπ-ισχνέ-ο-μαι, dep., 2d aor. partc.; agrees with what?

10. **εἰ καλῶς . . . οἴκαδε,** indirect discourse; stated in the words of Cyrus it would be: ἢν (cf. ἢν δύνηται XV.) καλῶς καταπράξω (subj.) (sc. ταῦτα) ἐφ' ἃ στρατεύομαι, οὐ πρόσθεν παύσομαι πρὶν ἂν ὑμᾶς καταγάγω (subj.) οἴκαδε; on πρὶν ἄν cf. XXVII.:

(*a*) **καλ-ῶς,** adv., *well;* cf. εὐνοϊκ-ῶς XIX.

(*b*) **κατα-πράξ-ειε(ν)** = κατα-πράγσ-ειε(ν), cf. ἀπ-έ-δειξ-ε VIII., λύ-σ-ειε; aor. opt. act. 3d sing. from κατα-πράττω, *should succeed.*

(*c*) **τὰ πράγματα** or ταῦτα, the antecedent of ἅ, *in the things,* or *in those* (*things*) *for which,* etc.

(*d*) **μή,** the regular neg. with the infin.

(*e*) **παύ-σε-σθαι,** fut. infin. mid. of παύω, cf. στρατεύ-ε-σθαι, pres. infin. mid.; note the tense-suffix -σο/ε- of the fut.; παύω, *I stop;* mid. *I stop myself, cease.*

(*f*) **κατ-αγάγ-οι,** from κατ-άγω, *I lead down* or *back, restore;* 2d aor. opt. act. 3d sing.; note that the theme (αγ) is doubled in the 2d aor. of ἄγω.

(*g*) **οἴκαδε,** *homeward,* cf. οἴκοι, *at home,* place at which; οἴκα-δε, place toward or to which.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **-κα-** the 1st perfect suffix becomes **-κει-** in the pluperfect.

2. **καλέω** does not change ε to η before consonants.

3. The pres., fut., aor., and perf. act. are four of the principal parts of the verb.

4. The substantive is sometimes omitted after words which modify it attributively.

5. The Greek, like the Latin, may change the mode of a verb in indirect discourse.

6. A vivid future condition ("with probability") is expressed by ἐάν with the subjunctive in the condition, and the future indicative in the conclusion.

7. **κ, γ,** and **χ** unite with -σα-, 1st aor. suffix, forming ξα.

8. **-ειε(ν)** marks the 1st aor. opt. act. 3d sing.

9. Smooth mutes (π, τ, κ) brought by elision before a rough breathing are changed to the cognate rough mutes, π becoming φ; τ, θ; κ, χ.

10. The negative with the infinitive is usually μή.

11. **ἄγω** has a reduplicated theme in the 2d aor.

12. **γάρ**, like the Latin *enim*, does not stand first in its sentence.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of the pres. and 1st aor. act. imv. of λύω, and the 2d aor. imv. of ἔλιπον, App. 76, 84.

2. The 1st perf. system: reduplication, tense-suffixes, personal endings, App. 71, 5; 80.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἡ ἀκρόπολις**, *citadel.*
2. **καλέω**, *I call.*
3. **καλός**, *beautiful.*
4. **καλῶς**, *beautifully, well.*
5. **κατ-άγω**, *I lead down* or *back, restore.*
6. **κατα-πράττω**, *I accomplish, succeed.*
7. **ξενικός**, *mercenary (force).*
8. **οἴκαδε**, *homeward.*
9. **παύω**, *I cause to cease;* mid., *I cease.*
10. **προ-ίστημι**, *I set before.*
11. **ὑπ-ισχνέομαι**, *I promise.*
12. **φυλάττω**, *I guard.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline ἀκρόπολις, φυγάδας, ἄλλος.

II. Analyze: ἐκάλεσε, πολιορκοῦντας, φυγάδας, καταπράξειεν, παύσεσθαι, ἐπίστευον.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. These men were guarding the Greek (force) in the city. 2. Xenias was able to take the citadel. 3. And we also called Xenias the fugitive. 4. We were ordering the men to stop the guards. 5. They ordered the hoplites to make the expedition with them.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. All men were friends to Cyrus, except as many as were in the king's army. 2. If the generals succeed well, they will release (= loose) the fugitives. 3. Xenias commanded the mercenary force in the city for Cyrus. 4. If I succeed, I will restore (*κατ-άξω*) the exiles to their homes.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Formation of the perfect stem. 2. The genitive after *προ-ίστημι*. 3. Attributes used substantively. 4. Principal parts of

the verb. 5. Active infinitives and participles of λύω. 6. First and second pass. suffix. 7. Principal parts (act.) of κελεύω, ποιέω. 8. Augment and reduplication of αι. 9. ἐάν with the subjunctive may be changed to what in indirect discourse after secondary tenses?

LESSON XXXII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 2, 3, οἱ δὲ ἡδέως . . . στρατευομένων.

2. NOTES.

1. **οἱ δέ**, cf. ὁ δέ XIV.

2. **ἡδέ-ως**, adv., cf. καλῶς XXXI.

3. **ἐ-πείθ-ο-ντο**, *obeyed, were persuaded,* cf. πείθεται XIII.

4. **ἐ-πίστευ-ο-ν**, takes the dat., indirect obj.; Eng. would have acc.

5. **παρ-ῆσαν**, cf. παρ-εῖναι V., ἦσαν XXI.; for accent cf. ἀπ-ῆλθε XIV.

6. **εἰς** instead of ἐν, because παρ-ῆσαν implies previous motion.

7. **Σάρδεις**, declined like the plu. of πόλις.

8. **τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων**, *the (soldiers) from the cities:* the substantive omitted and ἐκ τῶν πόλεων attributive; ἐκ for ἐν because of separation implied in λαβών; cf. παρὰ βασιλέως XVII.; the thought is: *he took the men (in the cities) out of the cities and arrived.*

9. **ὁπλίτᾱς εἰς τετρακισ-χῑλίους**, *about* 4,000 *hoplites,* lit. *to the number of,* etc.

10. **γυμνῆτ-ας**, nom. γυμνής, stem γυμνητ-, cf. App. 44.

11. **ὡς πεντακοσίους**: ὡς like εἰς with numerals, except that ὡς is an abverb, and εἰς a prep. governing the accusative.

12. **ἦν δὲ καί**: ἦν agrees with the subject nearest to it; Eng. requires the plu. number; δέ, *and;* καί . . . καί, *both . . . and.*

13. **τῶν . . . στρατευ-ο-μέν-ων**, *of those who were engaged in military operations about,* etc.

14. **Formation of Adverbs**: cf. εὐνοϊκῶς XIX., καλῶς XXXI., ἡδέως. Note that many adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding **-ως** to the stem, the stem taking the same form as before -ων in the genitive plural. The adverb has the accent of the genitive plural, and is contracted when the gen. plu. is contracted.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adverbs in **-ως** are formed from adjectives, following the gen. plu. in form of stem, accent, and contraction.

2. The ending **-δε** in adverbs (cf. *οἴκα-δε* XXXI.) denotes place *whither.*

3. **πιστεύω**, *I trust*, is followed by the dative case, called dative of indirect object.

4. The accent of a verb does not precede the augment or reduplication.

5. The preposition **εἰς** and adverb **ὡς** with numerals equal *about.*

6. **καί . . . καί**, *both . . . and.*

7. The partitive genitive exists in Greek as well as in Latin.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of the 1st perf. system (perf. and plup. act.) of *λέλυκα*, App. 80.

2. "Principal parts," App. 75.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ὁ γυμνής**, *light-armed soldier.*
2. **ἡδέως**, *gladly.*
3. **τὰ ὅπλα**, *arms.*
4. **πάρ-ειμι**, *I arrive, am present.*
5. **ὁ πελταστής**, *targeteer, peltast* (see Vocabulary).
6. **πεντακόσιοι**, 500.
7. **πιστεύω**, *I trust.*
8. **τριᾱκόσιοι**, 300.
9. **χίλιοι**, 1,000.
10. **τετρακισ-χίλιοι**, 4,000.
11. **ὡς** (with numerals), *circa, about.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *γυμνής, πελταστής, τὸ ὅπλον.*

II. Write a synopsis of *πιστεύω* in the present and future systems active.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. The army trusted Cyrus. 2. The hoplites took their arms. 3. Four thousand heavy-armed-men from the cities came (= were present) with (= *σύν*) Xenias. 4. The light-armed-soldiers arrived in the city with their arms. 5. And Socrates was (one) of those who were fighting against the king.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. Both Pasion and Socrates were among (= of) the commanders. 2. And the exiles also were present with their arms. 3. The generals ordered the guards not to take (pres.) their arms until the king called (opt.). 4. "Guards, do not (μή) take your arms until the king calls" (πρὶν ἂν with the subj.).

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The adverbial ending. 2. The local ending -δε. 3. The accent of παρῆν. 4. Declension of ὁπλῖτης, πελταστής. 5. Declension of θής, γυμνής. 6. Position of γάρ. 7. Case with πιστεύω. 8. καί . . . καί. 9. The present subj. and opt. differ how *in formation* from the same modes of the perfect? *in meaning?* 10. Declension of Σάρδεις. 11. ὡς and εἰς with numerals.

LESSON XXXIII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 4, 5, οὗτοι . . . πλοίοις.

2. NOTES.

1. **οὗτοι μέν,** contrasted with Τισσαφέρνης δέ.

2. **αὐτῷ,** lit. *for him, at his request.*

3. **ἀφ-ίκ-ο-ντο** (ἀπ + ἵκοντο), 2d aor. mid. from ἀφ-ικνέ-ο-μαι, cf. ἀφ-ικνοῖτο XVII.; ι augments to ῑ.

4. **κατα-νοή-σᾱς,** *when he perceived,* cf. κινδῡνεύσᾱς XIV., λύ-σᾱς; from κατα-νοέ-ω, -νοήσω, κατ-ε-νόη-σα, κατα-νε-νόη-κα; circumstantial partc.; tense?

5. **ταῦτα,** lit. *these* (things), Eng. *this.*

6. **μείζον-α,** *greater:* from μείζων, irregular comparative of μέγας, *great;* acc. sing. fem. agreeing with παρασκευήν.

7. **ἡγη-σά-μενο-ς,** (*and*) *because he thought* (*the preparation to be greater*); from ἡγέ-ο-μαι, dep., *I lead, think;* fut. ἡγή-σο-μαι, aor. ἡγη-σά-μην; η, like ω, is unchanged by the augment, cf. ὠφέλει XXV.

8. **ἢ ὡς**, *than as* (*against the Pisidians*), i.e., *greater than would be needed against*, etc.

9. **ὡς βασιλέᾱ**, *to* (*the*) *king;* ὡς as a preposition is used only with the acc. case of persons.

10. **ᾗ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα**, *in what* (*way*) *he could most quickly, as quickly as he could:* cf. ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο XIX.; ᾗ, originally the rel. pro. fem. sing. agreeing with ὁδῷ, *way*, understood, is an adv. of *manner.*

11. **ἱππέᾱς**, declined like βασιλεύς.

12. **ἤκου-σε**, from ἀκούω, ἀκού-σομαι, ἤκουσα, *I hear*, cf. Eng. *acoustics;* tense?

13. **Τισσαφέρνους**, *from Tissaphernes*, gen. of source.

14. **ἀντι-παρ-ε-σκευάζ-ε-το**, cf. παρασκευή; ἀντι-, *against, in opposition;* tense?

15. **οὓς εἴ-ρη-κα**, *whom I have said, mentioned;* εἴρηκα, a perfect, as -κα- shows, but it has no regular present; classed, however, as belonging to φημί, *I say;* note ει, the reduplication.

16. **ὡρμᾶτο**, *was setting out*, cf. ὁρμώμενος XXV., from ὁρμάω, mid. ὁρμάομαι; imperfect, cf. ἐπειρᾶτο XXII.; ᾱ contracted from α-ε (ὡρμάετο); note the augment.

17. **Σάρδεων**, nominative? how declined?

18. **ἐξ-ελαύνει** (lit. *drives forth*, sc. στράτευμα), *marches;* tense?

19. **σταθμούς**, *stages, day's journeys*, acc. used to express *measure of distance.*

20. **παρασάγγᾱς**, same construction as σταθμούς; case? nom. sing.? decl.? γγ how pronounced?

21. **τὸ εὖρος**, sub. of ἦν understood, neut. noun of the 3d decl., stem εὐρεσ-.

22. **γέφῡρα**, *bridge*, sub. of ἐπ-ῆν, *was upon* or *over:* note the accent of γέφῡρα; words in -ρα preceded by ῡ have -ᾰ in the nom. and acc. and voc. sing.; declension?

23. **ἐ-ζευγ-μένη πλοίοις**, *joined by means of boats, made of boats:* (*a*) from ζεύγ-νῡ-μι, *I join*, perf. mid. partc.; (*b*) note that the reduplication consists of ε because the verb begins with the double consonant ζ (= ds); (*c*) the perf. mid. does not have the suffix -κα-, e.g., λέ--λυ-μαι from λύω, cf. δεδομέναι XXI.; (*d*) πλοίοις, dat. of *means.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ι augments to ῑ, α to η, ο to ω, η and ω are unchanged.
2. **ταῦτα** (plu.) is often used in Greek where Eng. requires *this.*
3. **μέγας**, *great*, is not compared with -*τερο*-, but has the comparative *μείζ-ων* (for *μεγ-ῑων*).
4. **-μην**, end of the 1st person, mid. past (secondary) tenses; **-το** and *-ντο*, of the 3d person sing. and plu.
5. **ὡς** as a preposition is used with the *acc. case of persons.*
6. The person from whom one hears is expressed by the gen. case, called the *gen. of source.*
7. **εἴρηκα** is used as a perfect of *φημί.*
8. Measure of distance is expressed by the accusative.
9. The verb *to be* is often omitted when easily supplied from the context.
10. Some nouns in -*ος* are neuters of the 3d declension; most are masc. and fem. of the 2d declension.
11. Nouns of the 1st decl. in -*ῡρα* have -*ᾰ* in the nom., acc., and voc. sing.
12. Verbs beginning with two consonants or a double consonant reduplicate by omitting the consonant and prefixing *ε* only.
13. **-κα-**, the perf. suffix, does not appear in the mid. voice.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of *δαίμων, εὖρος*, App. 45, 47.
2. Declension of *ἡδίων*, App. 54.
3. Synopsis of λύω in the act. voice, App. 74.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀκούω**, *I hear.*
2. **η γέφῡρα**, *bridge.*
3. **διά** (with gen.), *through.*
4. **εἴκοσι(ν)**, *twenty.*
5. **εἴρηκα** (*φημί*), *have said, mentioned.*
6. **ἐξ-ελαύνω**, *I march.*[1]
7. **ἔπ-ειμι, ἐπ-εῖναι**, *am upon.*
8. **ἑπτά**, *septem, seven.*
9. **τὸ εὖρος**, *breadth, width.*
10. **ζεύγνῡμι**, *I join.*
11. **ἡγέομαι**, *I lead, think.*
12. **ὁ ἱππεύς**, *horseman.*
13. **κατα-νοέω**, *I observe.*

[1] Used with reference to the general, not the soldier.

14. **μέγας, μείζων**, *great, greater.*
15. **ὁ παρασάγγης**,[1] *league.*
16. **παρα-σκευάζω**,[2] *I prepare.*
17. **ἡ παρασκευή**,[2] *preparation.*
18. **τὸ πλέθρον**,[3] *plethron.*
19. **τὸ πλοῖον**, *boat, vessel.*
20. **ὁ ποταμός**,[4] *river.*
21. **ὁ σταθμός**, *stopping-place, day's journey.*
22. **ὁ στόλος**, *equipment, expedition.*
23. **ταχέως, τάχιστα**, *quickly, most quickly.*
24. **ὡς**, *as, in order that, to* (preposition).

Principal parts of **λύω**: *λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι*,[5] *ἐλύθην*.[6]

6. EXERCISES.

I. Analyze *ἀφίκοντο, κατανοήσας, ἤκουσε, ὡρμᾶτο.*

II. For Oral Translation: 1. The width of the river was three plethra. 2. The generals were marching through Sardis. 3. The soldiers kept hearing from Cyrus (about) the greater equipment of the king. 4. Cyrus was marching two stages. 5. This river was (the) Meander. 6. The Pisidians had seven boats. 7. The soldiers were proceeding (fr. *πορεύομαι*, cf. *ἀφίκ*-**οντο**) to larger rivers.

III. For Written Translation: 1. These men were proceeding to Sardis, but Tissaphernes was marching to the king. 2. Cyrus's horsemen were about 500. 3. The king hears (of) the preparation of the generals from the guards. 4. The generals were marching two stages to a river whose width (= of which the width, etc.) was a plethron. 5. There were seven bridges in Lydia. 6. Five hundred men came (arrived) by means of boats.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts of the verb. 2. *ὡς* as a preposition. 3. *ᾗ* in *ᾗ ἐδύνατο.* 4. Meaning of *διά* with the gen.? 5. Extent of space how expressed? 6. Formation of the perf. stem, act.; mid. 7. Uses of the dative. 8. The final vowel in 1st decl. nouns. 9. Reduplication of verbs beginning with two consonants or a double consonant. 10. Gender and declension of nouns in **-ος**.

[1] Equal to about 5½ kilometers (3 Eng. miles).
[2] Cf. *ἀπαρασκευότατον* XIX.
[3] About 30.8 meters (101 ft.).
[4] Cf. the English *hippo-potamus*, "river-horse."
[5] Cf. Note 23, *c*.
[6] Aor. ind. pass. 1st sing.; cf. *ἠγάσ-θη* XXV.

11. Comparative of *μέγας*. 12. The gen. of source. 13. Nom. sing. of liquid nouns in the 3d decl. 14. Augment of verbs beginning with a vowel. 15. Synopsis of verbs in the act. voice.

LESSON XXXIV.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 6, 7, *τοῦτον . . . πόλεως*.

2. NOTES.

1. τοῦτον, why masc.?

2. δια-βᾱ́ς, (*after*) *going across* (lit. *through*), (*after*) *crossing*: (*a*) 2d aor. partc. from *δια-βαίνω*, cf. *ἀν-έ-βη* X.; (*b*) theme *βα*, -*βᾱς* for -*βά-ντ-ς*, cf. *λῡ́-σᾱ-ς* for *λῡ́-σα-ντ-ς*; (*c*) on decl. cf. *πᾶς* XXI., *λῡ́σᾱς*.

3. ἕν-α, from nom. *εἷς* (for *ἕν-ς*), *one*; case?

4. Κολοσσᾱ́ς, declension? case?

5. οἰκουμένην, for *οἰκε-ο-μένη-ν*, cf. *οἰκοῦσι* XXV., *inhabited*.

6. εὐδαίμον-α καὶ μεγάλην, *prosperous and large*, acc. to agree with *πόλιν*: (*a*) nom. *εὐδαίμων*, stem *εὐδαιμον-*; (*b*) nom. masc. *μέγας*[1] cf. Vocab. XXXIII., fem. *μεγάλη*.

7. ἔ-μειν-ε(ν), 1st aor. act. from *μένω*; pers. and number? on 1st aor. of liquid verbs cf. *παρ-ήγγειλε* XX.

8. ἡμέρᾱς, acc. plu.; duration of time (as well as extent of space) is expressed by the acc.

9. Κύρῳ, dat. of poss., cf. *αὐτῷ* XXII.

10. βασίλεια, *royal buildings, a palace*; 2d decl., neut. plu., subj. of *ἦν*; note the *sing.* verb *ἦν* with the neut. plu. subj.

11. θηρίων, gen. depending on *πλήρης*, a word expressing *plenty*, or *fullness*, *full of wild animals*.

12. πλήρης, nom. masc. agreeing with *παράδεισος*.

13. ἐ-θήρευ-ε(ν), tense?

14. ἀπὸ ἵππου, lit. *from a horse*; translate, *on horseback*; *ἀπὸ ἵππων*

[1] The stem *μεγα-* occurs in the following cases: nom., acc., voc. sing. masc. and neuter: masc. *μέγας, μέγαν, μέγα*; neut. *μέγα* in all three cases; otherwise the word is declined regularly with the stems *μεγαλο-, μεγαλα-*, thus gen. *μεγάλου, -ης, -ου*, etc.

with a plu. subject; ἀπὸ shows the position *from* which the huntsman struck or shot.

15. **γυμνά-σαι βούλ-οιτο**, *whenever he wished to exercise:* (*a*) 1st aor. infin. act. from γυμνάζω, cf. Eng. *gymnasium;* (*b*) βούλοιτο opt. as in ἀφικνοῖτο XVII.; -οι-το end. of the mid. opt. as -οι of the act.

16. **διὰ μέσου**, *through the middle of the park*, note μέσου in the pred. position; διὰ τοῦ μέσου παραδείσου = *through the middle park.*

17. **ῥεῖ**, from ῥέ-ω for ῥέ-ει; note the rough breathing over the initial ρ.

18. **εἰσι(ν)**, *sunt, are;* an enclitic, throwing its accent (εἰσίν) on the preceding word.

19. **ἐκ**, lit. *from;* Eng. idiom *in* or *within.*

20. **βασιλείων**, cf. βασίλεια N. 10, not from βασιλείᾱ, "kingdom"; gen. plu. of the word for "kingdom"?

21. **Κελαινῶν**: in attrib. apposition to πόλεως, *city Celænæ;* such an appositive has the force of an attributive and may be placed between the article and its substantive.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **βαίνω**, theme βα; βᾱς, for βά-ντ-ς, is declined like **λύσᾱς**.
2. **εἷς** (for ἕν-ς), *one;* εἰς, *into.*
3. Liquid stems in -ον lengthen ο to ω in the nom. sing. and reject the case end. -ς.
4. In the 1st aor. of liquid verbs, ε of the theme is lengthened to ει.
5. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the acc.
6. Verbs beginning with a long vowel do not change the vowel when augmented, except ᾱ becomes η.
7. A neut. plu. sub. takes its verb in the singular.
8. **μέσος** in the predicate position means *middle of.*
9. **εἰσί(ν)** is an enclitic.
10. A final circumflex is not affected by an enclitic following.
11. **ρ** at the beginning of a word has the rough breathing.
12. Words of plenty govern the gen. case.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of εὐδαίμων, App. 53.
2. Declension of μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, Note 6, footnote.
3. Declension of λύσας, App. 55.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄγριος**,[1] *wild.*
2. **τὰ βασίλεια**,[2] *royal abode.*
3. **δια-βαίνω**, *I go through* or *over, cross.*
4. **εἷς**, *one.*
5. **εἰσί(ν)**, *sunt, (they) are.*
6. **εὐδαίμων**,[3] *prosperous.*
7. **ἡ ἡμέρα**,[4] *day.*
8. **θηρεύω**, *I hunt.*
9. **τὸ θηρίον**, *wild beast.*
10. **ὁ ἵππος**,[5] *horse.*
11. **μένω**, *I remain.*
12. **μέσος**,[6] *middle;* **τὸ μέσον**, *the center.*
13. **οἰκούμενος**,[7] *populous, inhabited.*
14. **ὀκτώ**, *octo, eight.*
15. **ὁ παράδεισος**,[8] *park.*
16. **ἡ πηγή**, *source.*
17. **πλήρης**, *full.*
18. **ῥέω**, *flow.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: ἡμέρα, μέσος, πηγή.

II. Conjugate: 1st aor. system of μένω.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. After crossing these rivers they kept-on-marching (imp.) through Colossæ. 2. Thence we were marching twenty days into prosperous cities. 3. In a large park we used-to-hunt (= were hunting) wild animals. 4. There are large rivers in the middle of the park. 5. The source of this large river is within the park. 6. The large park was full of wild horses.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. The men crossed (partc.) the river, (and) arrived at (= into) Colossæ. 2. There they remained two days. 3. Thence the generals march into the large park in Celænæ. 4. In this large park were (ἦν; why sing.?) wild animals which men used-to-hunt on horseback. 5. Through the middle of the large city a river flows. 6. Through the middle city a river flows.

[1] Cf. Lat. *agr-estis*, wild.
[2] Cf. βασιλεύς, βασιλεία, βασιλεύω.
[3] *Having a kindly genius* or *presiding spirit:* εὖ, *well;* δαίμων (Eng. *demon*), *spirit, deity*
[4] Cf. Eng. eph-*emeral.*
[5] Cf. Eng. *hippo*-drome.
[6] Cf. *Meso*-potamia, between rivers
[7] Cf. οἴκοι, at home; οἰκέω.
[8] Cf. Eng. *Paradise.*

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Review the conjugation of the act. voice of λύω. 2. Principal parts of λύω, κελεύω (act.), αἰτέω. 3. Uses of the pres., imperf., aorist. 4. Position of μέσος. 5. Enclitics. 6. Formation of the nom. of stems in -αντ-, -εντ-. 7. Comparative of μέγας. 8. Formation of the nom. sing. of liquid stems. 9. 1st aor. of liquid verbs. 10. Duration of time and extent of space in Greek. 11. Agreement of verb with a neut. plu. subject. 12. Words beginning with ρ. 13. Words of plenty govern what case? 14. Augment of verbs beginning with a long vowel. 15. Reduplication of verbs beginning with a vowel; with a double consonant.

LESSON XXXV.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. II. 8, Ἔστι . . . Μαρσύᾱς.

2. NOTES.

1. **ἔστι,** (for ἐστί), *there is:* ἐστί, like εἰσί, is an enclitic, but at the beginning of a sentence retains its accent, throwing it back to the first syllable.

2. **βασίλεια,** subject; number?

3. **ὑπὸ,** *under, at the foot of,* Lat. *sub,* with the dat.; with the gen. ὑπό expresses agency, *by,* cf. XXVI.

4. **ἐμ-βάλλει,** for ἐν-βάλλει (sc. ἑαυτόν), *casts (itself) in, empties;* on ἐμ- for ἐν- cf. συμβουλεύσηται XXVII.

5. **ἐστιν,** *is,* cf. N. 1; note the accent on the ultima of εὐρός, showing that ἐστιν is an enclitic.

6. **ποδῶν,** (*the width is*) *of twenty-five feet:* (*a*) the gen. of measure, cf. the Latin usage; (*b*) nom. πούς (for ποδ-ς) irregular in formation; (*c*) cf. Lat. *pes, pedis.*

7. **ἐκ-δεῖραι,** *to flay, skin:* (*a*) the Greek idiom often uses the personal construction where Eng. prefers the impersonal, e.g., *Apollo is said to have flayed,* where Eng. prefers, *it is said that Apollo flayed;* (*b*) 1st aor. act. infin. from ἐκδέρω; how are the 1st aorists of liquid verbs formed?

8. **νῑκήσᾱς**, *when he had conquered* (*him*), *on conquering* (*him*), from *νῑκάω*; where found? agreement?

9. **ἐρίζ-ο-ντ-ά**, *striving:* from *ἐρίζ-ω*; agrees with *αὐτόν* (referring to *Μαρσύᾱν*) understood as the object of *νῑκήσᾱς*; note the second accent on the ultima showing that the following word is an enclitic.

10. **οἱ**, *himself:* an *indirect* reflexive pronoun, i.e., standing in a dependent clause (or its equivalent here), but referring to the subject of the principal verb (here Apollo); cf. *δοθῆναι οἷ* XXIII. where *οἷ* keeps its accent for emphasis, as other enclitics may do; *ἑαυτῷ* is the corresponding *direct* reflexive.

11. **σοφίᾱς**, gen., *wisdom;* here, *musical skill.*

12. **δέρ-μα**, cf. *ἐκ-δέρ-ω.*

13. **κρεμάσαι**, from *κρεμά-ννῡμι*, cf. *δείκ-νῡμι*, *to hang* (*up*), 1st aor. act. infin. coördinate with *ἐκ-δεῖραι.*

14. **ὅ-θεν** = **ἐξ οὗ**; the suffix *-θεν* shows the place *from which, source.*

15. **αἱ πηγαί**, **εἰσι(ν)** understood.

16. **διά**, with acc., *on account of;* with gen., *through.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ἔστι** for *ἐστι* at the beginning of sentences.
2. **ἐστί** and *εἰσί* are enclitics.
3. A word before an enclitic, if proparoxytone or properispomenon, takes an acute on the ultima.
4. Enclitics retain their accents when emphatic.
5. **ὑπό** with the dat. denotes place *under which*, as *ἐν* denotes place *in which.*
6. **ν** becomes *μ* before labial mutes.
7. The genitive of measure is used to express extent, duration, or value.
8. Linguals are dropped before ς.
9. **διά** with acc., *on account of;* with the gen., *through.*
10. **-θεν** denotes place *whence*, e.g., *ὅ-θεν*, *ἐντεῦ-θεν.*

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Enclitics, App. 23.
2. Declension of *πούς*, Note 6.
3. Declension of *νεᾱνίᾱς*, App. 35.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **τὸ ἄντρον**, *cave.*
2. **τὸ δέρμα**, *hide, skin.*
3. **ἐκ-δέρω**, *I flay, skin.*
4. **ἐμ-βάλλω**, *flow into, empty.*
5. **ἐρίζω**, *I contend.*
6. **ἐρυμνός**, *fortified.*
7. **ἐστί**, *est, is.*
8. **κρεμάννῡμι**, *I hang.*
9. **λέγω**, *I say.*
10. **νῑκάω**, *I conquer.*
11. **ὅθεν**, *whence.*
12. **περί**, *about, concerning.*
13. **ὁ πούς**, *foot.*
14. **ἡ σοφίᾱ**, *wisdom, musical skill.*
15. **ὑπό** (with dat.), *under.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *πηγή, σοφίᾱ, δέρμα.*

II. Write a synopsis of *ἐμβάλλω* in the present system active.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. At (= upon) the source of the rivers there is a city. 2. Apollo strives with Marsyas about his (= the) wisdom. 3. And for this reason they call (*καλοῦσι*) the river Marsyas. 4. This river flows through a city. 5. This city is called Celænæ. 6. The great king (dat. of poss.) had a palace and a park in Celænæ.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. There were within this palace the sources of a river. 2. The river was twenty-five feet in width (acc.). 3. Through the park; on account of the river; about the hide. 4. There is a river in Celænæ which is called Marsyas. 5. And there is also a citadel in this city. 6. The park in Celænæ is said to be full of wild beasts.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. *Διά* with the accusative; with the genitive. 2. Enclitics. 3. The accent of enclitics. 4. Accent of words before enclitics. 5. Enclitics and proclitics contrasted. 6. *ὑπό* with the genitive; with the dative. 7. Genitive of *measure.* 8. Declension of *εὖρος.* 9. *-θεν* in *ὅθεν.* 10. *ν* before other consonants. 11. Agreement of verb with neuter plural subject. 12. Declension of *Μαρσύᾱς.* 13. Breathing on *ῥεῖ.* 14. Stem, nominative singular, and declension of *ποδῶν.* 15. Formation of the nominative singular of words declined like *δέρμα.* 16. Formation of the 1st aorist of liquid verbs.

LESSON XXXVI.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 8, 9, *ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης . . . δισχῑλίους.*

2. NOTES.

1. **ὅτε**, *when:* ὅτε introduces an event presumably known to the reader, and uses it to fix the time of the main act; cf. *cum* with the indic. in Latin.

2. **ἡττη-θείς**, cf. *λυ-θείς*, from *ἡττάομαι*, *I am defeated;* where found?

3. **τῇ μάχῃ**, *in the* (well-known) *battle:* note that the article is used to refer to something well known or famous — the battle of Salamis.

4. **ἀπ-ε-χώρ(ει = ε-ε)**, tense?

5. **οἰκο-δομῆ-σαι**, cf. *κρεμάσαι*, *ἐκ-δεῖραι* XXXV.

6. **τε . . . καί**, *both . . . and;* cf. *καί . . . καί.*

7. **ἐξέτασιν**, nom. *ἐξέτασις*; declension?

8. **ἀριθμόν**, cf. *arithmetic.*

9. **ἐ-γέν-ο-ντο**, *became;* with numbers, *amounted to;* tense?

10. **σύμ-παντες** (*σύν* + *πᾶς*), note the position, *the hoplites all together* amounted to.

11. **ἀμφί**, with numerals like *εἰς*; cf. the adv. *ὡς* with numerals.

12. **τούς**: the article may be used with round numbers, and need not be translated.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The article may be used with approximate *round numbers.*

2. The Greek often uses the personal construction where English prefers the impersonal.

3. The article may be used to refer to something well known or famous.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of stems in -ες : *εὖρος*, *Σωκράτης*, *εὐγενής*, App. 47, 52.

2. Endings of the middle voice, App. 77.

3. Synopsis of the pres. and future systems mid. of *λύω*, App. 74, II.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀπο-χωρέω**, *I retreat.*
2. **ὁ ἀριθμός**, *number.*
3. **ἡ Ἑλλάς**, *Greece.*
4. **ἡ ἐξέτασις**, *examination, review.*
5. **ἡττάομαι**, *I am defeated.*
6. **ἡ μάχη**, *battle.*
7. **οἰκοδομέω**, *I build.*
8. **ὀκτακόσιοι**, *eight hundred.*
9. **ὅτε, ἐπεί**, *when.*
10. **σύμπᾱς**, *all together, cunctus.*
11. **ὁ τοξότης**, *bowman.*
12. **τριάκοντα**, *thirty.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline ἡττηθείς, Θρᾷξ, φυγάς, Τισσαφέρνης, cf. XXIV., XXXIII.

II. Write a synopsis of λέγω in the present system active and middle; fut. act. λέξω (for λέγ-σω) and middle λέξομαι.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. It is said (use λέγονται) that they built a palace. 2. Fugitives were present with hoplites. 3. The hoplites amounted to a thousand. 4. There they remained thirty days. 5. The generals came with heavy-armed men. 6. Three generals arrived with hoplites. 7. The targeteers all together amounted to 2,000. 8. Clearchus had 200 bowmen.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. Altogether there were 2,000 peltasts. 2. The Marsyas river empties into a larger river. 3. They made an enumeration of the hoplites and targeteers in the park. 4. Xerxes built a palace here. 5. Lacedæmonian exiles arrived. 6. The number of the Greek hoplites in the army amounted to 11,000. 7. The soldiers of Sosis amounted to 300.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. ὅτε, ἐπεί. 2. Lingual mutes before ς. 3. The ending -θεις. 4. Duration of time is how expressed? 5. Stem of Θρᾷξ. 6. Declension of Ξέρξης, Ἀρκάς. 7. Endings of the middle voice. 8. Gen. sing. ending -ους. 9. Local endings -δε, -θεν. 10. Accusative sing. of Τισσαφέρνης. 11. When do stems in -ες drop the final ς? 12. τῇ with μάχῃ. 13. The article with numerals. 14. ἀμφί, εἰς, ὡς with numerals. 15. Principal parts of νῑκάω. 16. Declension of Σῶσις. 17. Declension of ἐξέτασιν. 18. Vocative singular of τοξότης.

LESSON XXXVII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. II. 10, Ἐντεῦθεν . . . χώρᾳ.

2. NOTES.

1. **ἐν αἷς**, sc. ἡμέραις, *in which* (*days*), translate: *and during these days.*

2. **τὰ Λύκαια**, *the Lycæan* (*sacrifices*), attributive with substantive omitted.

3. **ἔ-θη-κε**, *placed, established:* (*a*) from τί-θη-μι, theme θε lengthened to θη; (*b*) 1st aor. ind. act. 3d sing., κ taking the place of σ (cf. ἔ-λῡ-σε).

4. **ἦσαν**, plu. though the sub. is *neut. plu.*; the verb here takes the number of the predicate.

5. **χρῡσαῖ**, *golden*, agrees with στλεγγίδες; from χρῡσοῦς, -ῆ, -οῦν; contracted from χρῡ́σε-ος, -έ-ᾱ, -ε-ον.

6. **ἐ-θεώρει** for ἐ-θεώρε-ε, from θεωρέω, cf. Eng. *theory*; tense?

7. **πρός**, *towards, in the direction of.*

8. **Κεράμων ἀγοράν**, *Ceramon Agora*, "*Tile-market*," name of a place.

9. **Μῡσίᾳ**, adj., *Mysian.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ἐν** is followed by the dative.

2. **τίθημι** has κ instead of σ in the 1st aor. act.

3. The verb with a *neut. plu.* subject sometimes agrees with a predicate noun in number when near to it or when the predicate word is very important.

4. **τί-θη-μι** has a reduplication with ι in the present system; cf. γί-γνο-μαι for γι-γέν-ο-μαι.

5. Contract adjectives in -ε-ος, -οῦς, have the circumflex on the ultima except in the nom. dual, masc. and neut., which are oxytone.

6. **πρός** is used with the dative as well as with the accusative.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of contract adjective in -οῦς, App. 50.
2. Conjugation of the pres. mid. (pass.) system of λύω, App. 77.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἡ ἀγορά,** *market, market-place.*
2. **ὁ ἀγών,**[1] *game, contest.*
3. **τὸ ἆθλον,**[2] *prize.*
4. **θεωρέω,**[3] *I view, behold.*
5. **θύω,** *I sacrifice.*
6. **ἡ στλεγγίς,** *comb, tiara.*
7. **τίθημι,** *I place.*
8. **χρῦσοῦς,** *golden.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Analyze: *ἔθῦσε, στλεγγίδες, ἐθεώρει.*

II. Principal parts of *θύω, λύω, κελεύω* in the active voice.

III. Inflect *θύω* in the present middle system.

IV. For Oral Translation: 1. They remained (= were remaining) in the city three days. 2. In these days they were offering sacrifice. 3. Thence they march into inhabited cities. 4. There is an inhabited city Peltæ. 5. The generals are released (= loosed). 6. If the generals are released (subj.), they will offer sacrifice.

V. For Written Translation: 1. There was an inhabited city in the plain. 2. Thence they march into another city, large and prosperous. 3. They marched during three days. 4. The prizes in the contest were golden. 5. Ceramon Agora was towards (*πρός*) the Mysian land.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Rule for appositives. 2. Tense of *ἔμεινεν*? 3. Declension of *στλεγγίς, ἀγών, ἀγορά.* 4. Agreement of verb with its subject. 5. Formation of the 1st aorist of *τίθημι*; present. 6. Vowel contraction. 7. Accent of contract adjectives in -οῦς. 8. Formation of the present of *τίθημι, γίγνομαι.* 9. Conjugation of the present system of *γίγνομαι.*

[1] Cf. Eng. *agony.* [2] Cf. Eng. *athletic.* [3] Cf. Eng. *theory.*

LESSON XXXVIII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. II. 11, Ἐντεῦθεν . . . *ἀποδιδόναι.*

2. NOTES.

1. **Καΰστρου πεδίον**, "*Caÿster-plain,*" cf. *Spring-field.*

2. **πλέον**, used as an indeclinable adj. in the gen. plu. agreeing with *μηνῶν* understood.

3. **ἰ-ό-ντ-ες**, *e-u-nt-es, going:* pres. partc. from *εἶμι, I go,* theme *ι*, nom. sing. *ἰών, ἰοῦσα, ἰόν.*

4. **ἀπ-ῄτου-ν**, from *ἀπ-αιτέω, I ask back, ask what is due, demand;* *αι* augments to *η*, cf. *ᾐσθάνετο* XXIII.; *-ουν* for *-ε-ο-ν*; where found?

5. **δι-ῆγ-ε**, from *δι-άγω, I lead through, continue;* note the augment and the accent; why not *δί-ηγε*? with *λέγων, continued to express hopes,* cf. *παρὼν ἐτύγχανε* VI.

6. **δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος**, *was evident being troubled, was evidently troubled; ἀνῑώμενος* for *ἀνῑα-ό-μενος.*

7. **πρός**, *according to,* with the gen. *τρόπου.*

8. **τοῦ** belongs to *τρόπου*; note the attrib. position of **Κύρου.**

9. **ἔχοντα**, *having* (*means*), *if he had* (*means*), in the acc. to agree with the omitted subject of the infin.

10. **μή** with the infin.; cf. *μὴ καταλῦσαι* XXVII.

11. **ἀπο-δι-δό-ναι**, *to give back* or *over,* i.e., *pay what was due;* pres. act. infin. from *ἀπο-δίδωμι*: (*a*) note a reduplication with *ι* in the present; theme *δο*; (*b*) *-ναι*, infin. end. of the act., unlike *λύ-ειν*, belongs to *μι*-verbs; (*c*) used as the subject of *ἦν.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **εἶμι**, theme *ι*, *I am going; εἰμί,* theme *εσ*, *I am.*

2. **μή**, instead of *οὐ*, is the negative generally used with the infin.

3. Verbs in *-μι* have the pres. act. infin. in *-ναι.*

4. The gen. which limits a substantive may be put in the attributive position.

5. **πρός** is used with the gen., dat., and acc.

6. **τίθημι, δίδωμι,** and **γίγνομαι** have a reduplication with ι in the present system.

7. The infin. may be used as subject of a verb.

8. Circumstantial participles may express *condition.*

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of stems ending in a lingual mute (masc. and fem.), App. 44.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀνῑάω,** *I trouble.*
2. **ἀπ-αιτέω,** *I ask as my due, demand.*
3. **ἀπο-δίδωμι,** *I give over* or *back, pay.*
4. **δῆλος,** *evident.*
5. **δι-άγω,** *I continue.*
6. **εἶμι,** *I go;* **ἰέναι,**[1] *to go.*
7. **ἡ ἐλπίς,** *hope.*
8. **ἔσχατος,** *remotest, last.*
9. **ἡ θύρᾱ,**[2] *door.*
10. **ὀφείλω,** *I owe.*
11. **πλέον,**[3] *more.*
12. **πολλάκις,** *often.*
13. **πολύς,**[4] *much.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *ἰών* (cf. *λαβών*), *μήν.*

II. Conjugate *ὀφείλομαι* in the present mid. system.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. They continued to express great hopes. 2. The generals were evidently troubled. 3. Three months' pay is due to the soldier. 4. The man went often to the door and demanded his wages. 5. They were plainly troubled.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. And the soldiers kept-going (partc.) to Cyrus [and] demanding their pay. 2. For five days' pay was due the men, and they were plainly troubled. 3. But the generals continued to express hopes of paying (*τοῦ* with infin.) what was due. 4. If we are (= be) released (loosed), we will-offer-sacrifice. 5. Let (imperative) the guards be released.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Accent of *διῆγε.* 2. Declension of *ἐλπίς, μήν, θύρᾱ.* 3. *πρός.* 4. The negative which is used with the infin. 5. Accent of the

[1] Cf. Lat. *i-re.*
[2] Cf. Lat. *fores,* Eng. *door,* Ger. *thür.*
[3] Cf. Eng *pleon-asm.*
[4] Cf. Eng. *poly-syllabic.*

infin. in *-ναι*. 6. Augment of *αι*. 7. Use of the circumstantial partc. 8. Greek for "*he continued to say*"; "*he was evidently saying.*" 9. Reduplication in the pres. of *τίθημι*, *δίδωμι*. 10. The supplementary participle.

LESSON XXXIX.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. II. 12, 13, *Ἐνταῦθα . . . οἰκουμένην.*

2. NOTES.

1. **ἀφικνεῖται** (*ἀφ-ικ-νέ-ε-ται*).

2. **Συεννέσιος**, gen. of *Συέννεσις* (*-ιος* for *-εως*); note the attributive position.

3. **τοῦ . . . βασιλέως**, in apposition with *Συεννέσιος*; note the attributive position of *Κιλίκων*.

4. **παρά**, with acc. *to a place beside;* with the gen. *from beside*, cf. *παρὰ βασιλέως* XVII.; with the dat. *beside*, cf. *παρ' ἑαυτῷ* XIX.

5. **ἐλέγετο**, lit. *she was said to have given, it was said that she gave*, personal for the impersonal construction.

6. **δοῦ-ναι**, 2d aor. act. infin. of *δίδωμι*; cf. *ἀπο-στῆ-ναι* XXI.; pres. *διδό-ναι*, cf. XXXVIII.; note that the pres. and 2d aor. act. infinitives of *μι*-verbs end in *-ναι*.

7. **πολλὰ χρήματα**, *πολλά* from *πολύς*, *πολλή*, *πολύ*, — *much money.*

8. **δ' οὖν**, *but at any rate.*

9. **ἀπ-έ-δω-κε**, cf. *ἔ-θη-κε* XXXVII., another 1st aor. with *κ* instead of *σ*, from *δίδωμι*, fut. *δώσω*.

10. **μηνῶν**, gen. of measure.

11. **Κίλισσα**, the substantive omitted, sc. *γυνή*.

12. **αὑτήν**, contracted form for *ἑαυτήν*, from *ἑαυτοῦ* the reflexive, *not* from *αὐτός*.

13. **ἐλέγετο** has the infin. for its sub.; but translate impersonally, *it was said.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The present and 2d aor. act. infinitives of verbs in *-μι* end in *-ναι*.

2. Infinitives in *-ναι* accent the penult.

3. **πολύς** is declined irregularly in some of its cases.

4. **δίδωμι**, like *τίθημι*, has its 1st aor. in *κ*.

5. **ἑαυτοῦ** may contract to *αὑτοῦ*.

6. The indirect object is put in the dative.

7. The dative is governed by prepositions in composition, e.g., *σύν, ἐπί*.

8. Limiting genitives are often put in the attributive position.

9. The personal construction is of frequent occurrence in Greek where English uses the impersonal construction.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of *πολύς*.[1]
2. Conjugation of the aor. mid. of **λείπω**, App. 84.
3. Accent of the verb, App. 87.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἡ γυνή**, *woman, wife.*
2. **ἡ στρατιά**, *army.*
3. **συγ-γίγνομαι**, *have intercourse, acquaintance with.*
4. **τέτταρες**, *four.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Conjugate *λέγομαι* in the present system middle.

II. Decline *στρατιά, χρῆμα.*

III. For Oral Translation: 1. The woman gave much money to Cyrus. 2. They will pay (from *ἀποδώσω*) a month's wages to their armies. 3. Cyrus used-to-have (imperf.) a garrison about him(self). 4. They call (*καλοῦσι*) the city Thymbrium.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. In this place a woman gave the commander much money. 2. But at any rate more than four months' pay was given (*ἐδόθη*) to the soldiers. 3. The woman comes from the king of the Cilicians to Cyrus. 4. And Cyrus also associated with the Cilician woman.

[1] Cf. *μέγας*: there are two stems, *πολυ-* and *πολλο-*, and they are used like the two stems in *μέγας*; the dual number is not used.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Infinitives in -ναι. 2. Accent of infinitives in -ναι. 3. Stem and decl. of πολύς. 4. κ for σ in the 1st aor. 5. Uses of the dat. 6. The attributive position. 7. Personal for impersonal construction in Greek. 8. Accent of verb in the 2d aorist active and middle.

LESSON XL.—REVIEW.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 1–12.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.[1]

1. (*a*) Breathing on ρ. (*b*) Mutes before σ. (*c*) Aspiration after elision. (*d*) Enclitics. (*e*) ν before a labial.

2. Declension. — (*a*) γέφῡρα. (*b*) νεᾱνίᾱς. (*c*) ὁδός. (*d*) ποῦς. (*e*) Stems ending in a lingual mute (masc. and fem.). (*f*) εὖρος. (*g*) Adjectives: Contr. in -οῦς. (*h*) εὐγενής. (*i*) εὐδαίμων. (*j*) μείζων. (*k*) λυθείς. (*l*) λΰσᾱς. (*m*) μέγας, πολύς. (*n*) The Relative. (*o*) Formation of adverbs. (*p*) Local ending -δε.

3. Conjugation. — (*a*) Tense systems. (*b*) Principal parts in active voice. (*c*) Synopsis of λΰω act., pres. and fut. mid. (*d*) λΰω, act., mid. and pres. (*e*) λείπω, 2d aor. act. and mid. (*f*) Augment. (*g*) Reduplication. (*h*) Accent. (*i*) Fut. stem. (*j*) 1st perf. stem. (*k*) Tense-suffixes and endings of the 1st perf. system. (*l*) 1st aorists in κ. (*m*) Endings of the act. imv. (*n*) Endings of the mid. voice. (*o*) Formation of the perf. mid. system. (*p*) Tense-suffixes of the 1st and 2d pass. systems.

4. Syntax. — (*a*) Extent of time and space. (*b*) Gen. of fullness. (*c*) Gen. of measure. (*d*) Partitive gen. (*e*) Gen. of source. (*f*) Dat. with πιστεύω. (*g*) παρά, πρός. (*h*) Imperfect. (*i*) Fut. cond. more vivid. (*j*) Negative with infinitive. (*k*) ὡς with participles. (*l*) Agreement of verb with neut. plural subject.

[1] Only topics are here indicated; let the pupil classify his knowledge under them.

3. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

1. ἡ ἀγορᾱ́.
2. ὁ ἀγών.
3. τὸ ἆθλον.
4. ἡ ἀκρόπολις.
5. τὸ ἄντρον.
6. ὁ ἀριθμός.
7. τὰ βασίλεια.
8. ἡ γέφῡρα.
9. ὁ γυμνής.
10. ἡ γυνή.
11. τὸ δέρμα.
12. ἡ Ἑλλάς.
13. ἡ ἐλπίς.
14. ἡ ἐξέτασις.
15. τὸ εὖρος.
16. ἡ ἡμέρᾱ.
17. τὸ θηρίον.
18. ἡ θύρᾱ
19. ὁ ἱππεύς.
20. ὁ ἵππος.
21. ἡ μάχη.
22. ἡ ὁδός.
23. τὰ ὅπλα.
24. ὁ παράδεισος.
25. ὁ παρασάγγης.
26. ἡ παρασκευή.
27. ὁ πελταστής.
28. ἡ πηγή.
29. τὸ πλέθρον.
30. τὸ πλοῖον.
31. ὁ ποταμός.
32. ὁ πούς.
33. ἡ σοφίᾱ.
34. ὁ σταθμός.
35. ἡ στλεγγίς.
36. ἡ στρατιᾱ́.
37. ὁ στόλος.
38. ὁ τοξότης.
39. ὁ φόβος.

VERBS.

1. ἀκούω.
2. ἀνῑάω.
3. ἀπ-αιτέω.
4. ἀπο-δίδωμι.
5. ἀπο-χωρέω.
6. δια-βαίνω.
7. δι-άγω.
8. δοκεῖ.
9. εἰμί.
10. εἶμι.
11. ἐκ-δέρω.
12. ἐμ-βάλλω.
13. ἐξ-ελαύνω.
14. ἔπ-ειμι.
15. ἐρίζω.
16. ζεύγνῡμι.
17. ἡγέομαι.
18. ἥκω.
19. ἡττάομαι.
20. θεωρέω.
21. θηρεύω.
22. θύω.
23. καλέω.
24. κατ-άγω.
25. κατα-νοέω.
26. κρεμάννῡμι.
27. λέγω.
28. μένω.
29. νῑκάω.
30. οἰκοδομέω.
31. ὀφείλω.
32. παρα-σκευάζω.
33. πάρ-ειμι.
34. παύω.
35. πιστεύω.
36. πορεύομαι.
37. προ-ίστημι.
38. ῥέω.
39. συγ-γίγνομαι.
40. συν-αλλάττω.
41. τίθημι.
42. ὑπ-ισχνέομαι.
43. φυλάττω.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄγριος.
2. βαρβαρικός.
3. δῆλος.
4. Ἑλληνικός.
5. ἐρυμνός.
6. ἔσχατος.
7. εὐδαίμων.
8. καλός.
9. μέγας.
10. μείζων.
11. μέσος.
12. ξενικός.
13. ὅσος.
14. πλήρης.
15. πολύς.
16. σύμπᾱς.
17. χρῡσοῦς.

ADVERBS.

1. ἄνω.
2. ἐνταῦθα.
3. ἡδέως.
4. ἤδη.
5. καλῶς.
6. ὅθεν.
7. παντάπᾱσιν.
8. πλέον.
9. πολλάκις.
10. ταχέως.
11. τάχιστα.

NUMERALS.

1. εἷς.
2. τέσσαρες.
3. ἑπτά.
4. ὀκτώ.
5. εἴκοσι(ν).
6. τριᾱ́κοντα.
7. τριᾱκόσιοι.
8. πεντακόσιοι.
9. ὀκτακόσιοι.
10. χῑ́λιοι.
11. δισχῑ́λιοι.
12. τετρακισχῑ́λιοι.
13. μῡ́ριοι.

PREPOSITIONS.

1. περί.
2. ὑπό (dat.).
3. διά (gen.).
4. ὡς.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. ὅτε, ἐπεί.
2. πρίν.

LESSON XLI.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. II. 13, 14, *ἐνταῦθα ἦν . . . βαρβάρων.*

2. NOTES.

1. παρά, with acc., *along, beside;* acc. perhaps because of implied motion required to reach the spring which was by the side of the road.

2. ἡ . . . καλουμένη, *the called (spring) of Midas, the spring which was called the spring of Midas,* note the attrib. position of both καλουμένη and Μίδου.

3. ἐφ᾽ ᾗ, for ἐπὶ ᾗ, *upon which, at which.*

4. λέγεται Μίδᾱς, personal construction for impersonal.

5. τὸν Σάτυρον, *the (well-known) satyr, Silēnus;* cf. τῇ μάχῃ XXXVI.

6. οἴνῳ . . . αὐτήν, lit. *by mingling it (the spring) with wine, by mixing wine in it;* οἴνῳ, dat. of association, or means, cf. πλοίοις XXXIII., τῇ μάχῃ XXXVI.; κερά-σᾱς 1st aor. partc. from κεράννῡμι.

7. **δεη-θῆ-ναι,** *that the Cilician (queen) asked Cyrus;* dep. from *δέομαι,* cf. *δεῖται* XXVII.; on form cf. *δο-θῆναι* XXIII.; takes the gen. case, cf. *αὐτοῦ* XXVII.

8. **ἐπι-δεῖξαι,** *to exhibit,* aor. act. infin. from *ἐπι-δείκνῡμι,* obj. of *δεηθῆναι*; with the 2d *ἐπιδεῖξαι* sc. *αὐτό,* or *τὸ στράτευμα.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **παρά** is followed by the gen., dat., or acc., with different significations.

2. **δέομαι** takes the gen. of the person from whom something is asked.

3. The infin. may be used as object as well as subject.

4. The dative denotes *means, manner;* it is also used with verbs which express association.

5. The 1st aorist active infinitive accents the penult.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of the fut. mid. of *λύω,* App. 78.

2. Numerals 1–10, App. 59.

3. Declension of *τρεῖς, τέσσαρες,* App. 59.

4. Synopsis of the 1st aor. mid. of *λύω,* App. 74, II.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἐπι-δείκνῡμι,** *I show, exhibit.*

2. **κεράννῡμι,** *I mix.*

3. **ἡ κρήνη,** *spring (of water).*

4. **ὁ οἶνος,**[1] *wine.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *κεράσᾱς.*

II. Conjugate *δώσομαι,* the fut. mid. of *δίδωμι.*

III. Write a synopsis of *συνεγενόμην,* 2d aor. mid.

IV. For Oral Translation: 1. Here Midas caught a satyr. 2. The king of Phrygia is called Midas. 3. Cyrus showed his large army to the Cilician (woman). 4. They wish to make the reviews on the plains. 5. It was said (personal constr.) that the soldiers exhibited

[1] Cf. Lat. *vinum,* Eng. *wine.*

much money to the Cilician (woman). 6. To ask money of the king.

V. For Written Translation: 1. The king of the Phrygians caught a satyr. 2. He mixed wine in the fountain called that (= the) of Midas. 3. The soldiers showed money to the fugitives. 4. He was making the review of his armies on the plain of Phrygia. 5. It is said (personal constr.) that a satyr was caught (from *θηρεύω*, cf. *δεη-θῆναι*) at the spring. 6. The soldiers were said to be on the plains.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. *παρά* with the gen., dat., acc. 2. Declension of *Μίδᾱς*. 3. The fut. mid. differs how from the present mid.? 4. The infin. as subj. and obj. 5. Construction with *δέομαι*. 6. Dative of *means, manner.* 7. Other uses of the dative. 8. Declension of the numerals *τρεῖς*, *τέσσαρες*.

LESSON XLII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. II. 15, 16, ἐκέλευσε . . . ἐκκεκαλυμμένας.

2. NOTES.

1. **ὡς νόμος ἦν αὐτοῖς** (sc. *τάττεσθαι*) **εἰς μάχην**, *as was* (*the*) *custom for them to be arranged for* (lit. *into*) *battle*, *αὐτοῖς* dat. of interest, perhaps here with the special force of *possessor*, cf. *Κύρῳ* XXXIV.

2. **ταχ-θῆ-ναι καὶ στῆ-ναι**, *to be arranged and to take their stand:* (*a*) from *τάττω*, theme *ταγ*; *ταχ-θῆναι* for *ταγ-θῆναι*, i.e., before the rough mute, *θ*, *γ* becomes rough, *χ*; (*b*) on *στῆ-ναι*, cf. *ἀπο-στῆναι* XXI., *δοῦναι* XXXIX., 2d aor. infin. act.; note the infinitives of *μι*-verbs end in *-ναι* in the pres. and 2d. aor. act.

3. **συν-τάξαι**, 1st aor. act. infin. of *συν-τάττω*.

4. **ἕκαστον**, sc. *στρατηγόν*, *each general*, subj. of infin.

5. **τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ**, sc. *στρατιώτᾱς*, *his own* (*soldiers*).

6. **ἐ-τάχ-θη-σαν**, cf. N. 2, *were arranged*, 1st aor. pass. indic. 3d plu.

7. **ἐπὶ τεττάρων**, sc. *ἀνδρῶν*, *upon*, or *by fours; four deep.*

8. **εἶχε**, sing. to agree with the nearest subject, *Μένων*.

9. **τὸ μὲν δεξιόν**, sc. κέρας, *horn*, (of an army) *wing*.

10. **οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ**, *the with-him* (*men*), *his men*.

11. **οἱ ἐκείνου**, *the* (*men*) *of that one, his men;* note how readily the substantive is omitted when it can be supplied from the context.

12. **πρῶτον μέν**, contrasted with εἶτα δέ, *first . . . then*, or *secondly*.

13. **τε-ταγ-μένοι**, perf. pass. (mid.) partc. of τάττω, fut. τάξω, aor. ἔταξα, perf. pass. τέ-ταγ-μαι, aor. pass. ἐ-τάχ-θη-ν.

14. **κατὰ ἴλᾱς**, *by squadrons* (of cavalry).

15. **τάξεις**, (*by*) *companies* (of infantry); nom. sing.?

16. **τοὺς Ἕλληνας**, sc. ἐθεώρει from above.

17. **πάντες**, sc. οἱ Ἕλληνες.

18. **κράνη**, nom. sing.? how declined?

19. **χαλκᾶ**, **-ᾶ = ε-α**, from χαλκοῦς contr. like χρῡσοῦς.

20. **ἐκ-κε-καλυμ-μένας**, perf. pass. partc. from ἐκ-καλύπτω, cf. τε-ταγ-μένοι N. 13; theme καλυβ; a π-mute becomes μ before μ.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The dat. of possessor is used with the verb *to be*.

2. γ before θ becomes χ.

3. τάττω, theme ταγ.

4. Both substantives and verbs may be omitted when easily understood from the context.

5. Infinitives in -ναι accent the penult.

6. A verb with two or more subjects may agree in number with one of the subjects, either the most important one or the nearest one.

7. The article with δέ often has the force of a demonstrative.

8. μέν points forward to a corresponding δέ in a contrasted expression.

9. A π-mute before μ becomes μ.

10. The perf. mid. (pass.) attaches the personal and participial endings directly to the reduplicated theme.

11. Contract adjectives like χαλκοῦς take the circumflex on the ultima in all cases except the nom. dual, masc. and neut., which are oxytone.

12. Most nouns in -ος of the 2d decl. are masc.; those in -ος of the 3d decl. are neuter.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The tense systems, App. 71.
2. Principal parts, App. 75.
3. Conjugation of the 1st aor. system middle of λύω, App. 79.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **τὸ ἅρμα**, *chariot.*
2. **ἡ ἁρμάμαξα**, *carriage.*
3. **ἡ ἀσπίς**, *shield.*
4. **δεξιός, -ά, -όν**, *dexter, right.*
5. **εἶτα**, *then, thereupon.*
6. **ἕκαστος, -η, -ον**, *each.*
7. **ἐκ-καλύπτω**,[1] *I uncover.*
8. **ἐπί**, *upon;* **ἐπὶ τεττάρων**, *in fours, four deep.*
9. **εὐώνυμος, -ον**, *left.*
10. **ἡ ἴλη**, *troop, company.*
11. **ἵστημι**,[2] *I set, station.*
12. **ἡ κνημίς**,[3] *greave.*
13. **καλύπτω**, *I cover.*
14. **τὸ κράνος**, *helmet.*
15. **ὁ νόμος**, *custom.*
16. **παρ-ελαύνω**, *I march by.*
17. **πρῶτος, -η, -ον**, *first.*
18. **ἡ τάξις (ταγ-σις)**,[4] *arrangement, company.*
19. **τάττω**, *I arrange.*
20. **φοινῑκοῦς, -ῆ, οῦν**,[5] *purple.*
21. **χαλκοῦς, -ῆ, -οῦν**, *brazen, of bronze.*
22. **ὁ χιτών**, *tunic.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *τάξις, ἅρμα, κράνος, χαλκοῦς, ἀσπίς.*

II. Analyze: *ταχθῆναι, στῆναι, συντάξαι, ἐθεώρει, τεταγμένοι, ἐκκεκαλυμμένας.*

III. For Oral Translation: 1. As the generals ordered, thus the Greeks were arranged. 2. Each general arranged his own (men). 3. Menon has the right wing. 4. Clearchus and his men have the other wing. 5. The barbarians rode by in fours. 6. The Cilician (woman) first beheld Menon and the (men) with him, and then the other generals. 7. The Greeks were arranged by companies.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. The Greeks arranged their own (men), as their custom was, four deep. 2. The other generals held, some (*οἱ μέν*) the right, others (*οἱ δέ*) the left wing. 3. All the

[1] Cf. Eng. Apo-*calypse*, Revelation.
[2] In the 2d aor., perf., and plup., *I stand, station myself.*
[3] Usually metallic leggings, to protect the lower part of the leg in warfare.
[4] Cf. Eng. syn-*tax* (*συν + ταξις*).
[5] The *Phoenic*-ians are said to have discovered the *purple* dye.

generals were riding by upon their chariots. 4. Each one has a helmet,[1] tunic, and shield. 5. They ordered the Greeks to-take-their-stand (to stand). 6. Each general first reviewed his own men and then those (=the) of the others. 7. We were riding by upon our (= the) chariots.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The sub. of the infin. 2. φ in *ἐφ' ἅρματος*. 3. *κατ' ἴλᾱς*. 4. *ἐπί* with the gen. 5. Cases used with *ἐν, εἰς, σύν, πρός, διά, παρά*. 6. Classes and orders of mutes. 7. γ before θ. 8. The numerals from 1 to 10. 9. *μέν . . . δέ*. 10. Formation of perf. mid. (pass.); 1st aor. passive. 11. Agreement of the verb with subject. 12. The article with *δέ*. 13. Fut. and 1st aor. of themes in γ, κ. 14. *ὑπό* with gen.; with dat. 15. Labials before μ.

LESSON XLIII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 17, *ἐπειδή . . . σκηνᾱ́ς*.

2. NOTES.

§ 17. **παρ-ήλα-σε**: *had ridden by*, 1st aor. of *ἐλαύνω*, theme *ἐλα*; aor. where the plup. might be expected in Eng. **στή-σᾱ-ς**: 1st aor. partc. from *ἵστημι*, *causing to stand*, i.e., *stopping*; cf. *λῡ́-σᾱς*; *στῆναι* is 2d aor. infin.; what is the 1st aor. infin.? Note the two aorists of *ἵστημι*; the 1st aor. is transitive; the 2d, intransitive. **μέσης**: cf. *μέσου* § 7. **πέμψᾱς**: for *πέμπ-σᾱς*, from *πέμπω*, cf. *στήσᾱς*. **προ-βαλ-έ-σθαι**: *to throw before one's self, to present*; from *προβάλλω*, 2d aor. infin. mid.; note the accent on the penult, and contrast with *λῡ́εσθαι* the pres. infin. **ἐπι-χωρῆ-σαι**: *to advance*, from *ἐπιχωρέω*; where found? **φάλαγγα**: nom. *φάλαγξ* for *φάλαγγ-ς*, sub. of the two preceding infinitives. **οἱ**: i.e., *the generals*. **ταῦτα**: Eng. *this*. **προ-εῖπον**: *proclaimed*, lit. *spoke forth*; 2d aor. with no pres. form; may be classed with *λέγω* or *φημί*, *I say*. **ἐ-σάλπιγξ-ε**: for *ἐ-σάλπιγγ-σε*, *blew the trumpet*,

[1] Greek: a helmet and a tunic and a shield.

supply *the trumpeter* as the subject; tense? **ἐπ-ῇσαν**: *advanced*, imperf. ind. act. 3d plu. from ἔπ-ειμι (= ἐπί + εἶμι, not ἐπί + εἰμί, *to be*); note the ι subscript. **ἐκ τούτου**: *from this, hereupon.* **θᾶττον**: adv., comparative (for τάχ-ῖον, ι after a palatal forming with it σσ or ττ; a few roots beginning with τ and ending in χ, when the rough sound at the end is lost, change the initial τ to θ; this is called *transfer of aspiration*); τάχιστα superlative; ταχέως positive. **προ-ιόντων**: sc. τῶν στρατιωτῶν, gen. abs., *as they advanced faster and faster*, lit. *more quickly*; from πρό-ειμι (πρό + εἶμι), cf. ἐπῇσαν; nom. sing. προ-ιών. **ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτο-μάτου**: *from the spontaneous, spontaneously;* lit. *self-moving.* **δρόμος**: *the soldiers began to run;* δρόμος subj.; τοῖς στρατιώταις, dat. of poss. **τὰς σκηνάς**: lit. *the tents*, i.e., *camp* here.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ἵστημι** has a 1st and a 2d aor.; the 1st is transitive, the 2d intransitive.

2. **μέσος** in the predicate position = *middle of.*

3. 2d aor. mid. infinitives accent the penult.

4. A labial mute (π, β, φ) with σ forms ψ; a palatal (κ, γ, χ) with σ forms ξ.

5. The accent in compound verbs does not precede the augment.

6. **εἶμι**, *I am going*, is conjugated irregularly.

7. **ταχέως** is compared ταχέως, θᾶττον,[1] τάχιστα.[2]

8. The accusative is used adverbially; cf. θᾶττον, τάχιστα.

9. **εἶπον**, *I said*, has no regular present, but may be classed as the 2d aor. of φημί or λέγω.

10. The theme of ἐλαύνω is ἐλα (cf. aor. ἤλα-σα); of βαίνω, βα (cf. 2d aor. ἔ-βη); of βάλλω, βαλ (cf. 2d aor. ἔ-βαλ-ον).

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Mutes before mutes, XLIII. Obs. 4, XIV.

2. Declension of σάλπιγξ, App. 41.

3. Conjugation of λείπω, 2d aor. act., App. 84.

[1] The comparative of the adv. is the acc. neut. sing. of the adjective.
[2] The superlative of the adv. is the acc. neut. plu. of the adjective.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **αὐτόματος, -η, -ον,**[1] *spontaneous.*
2. **ὁ δρόμος,**[2] *a run.*
3. **εἶπον (λέγω),** *I said.*
4. **ἔπ-ειμι, ἐπιέναι,** *I advance.*
5. **ἐπι-χωρέω,** *I advance.*
6. **ὁ ἑρμηνεύς,** *interpreter.*
7. **ἡ κραυγή,** *shout.*
8. **ὅλος, -η, -ον,**[3] *whole.*
9. **προ-βάλλω,** *I throw before, present (arms).*
10. **πρό-ειμι, προ-ιέναι,** *I go forward.*
11. **σαλπίζω,** *I blow the trumpet.*
12. **ἡ σκηνή,** *tent.*
13. **ταχύς,** *quick.*
14. **ταχέως,** *quickly:* **θᾶττον,** *more* [*quickly.*
15. **ἡ φάλαγξ,** *phalanx.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *ἑρμηνεύς, φάλαγξ.*

II. Analyze: *παρήλασε, πέμψᾱς, προβαλέσθαι, ἐσάλπιγξε.*

III. For Oral Translation: 1. They drove by all the army. 2. The generals stopped their chariots. 3. The Greeks ordered all the soldiers to present arms. 4. Thereupon the soldiers kept-going-forward faster. 5. The phalanx presented arms. 6. The interpreters came to the Greeks very quickly (most quickly).

IV. For Written Translation: 1. Now when all had ridden by, the generals commanded the soldiers to sound the trumpet. 2. The phalanx as a whole advanced. 3. And as they advanced most quickly, the barbarians began to run. 4. The soldiers presented arms before the middle tents; before the midst of the tents. 5. The barbarians sent interpreters to Cyrus.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The declension of *σάλπιγξ*. 2. Time expressed by participles. 3. Uses of the imperfect. 4. The cases after *παρά*. 5. Accent of the 2d aor. act. infin. and partc. 6. Accent of the 2d aor. mid. infinitive. 7. *πᾶς* and *ὅλος* in the attrib. position; in the predicate position. 8. Comparison of adverbs. 9. *θ* in *θᾶττον*. 10. Dative *τοῖς στρατιώταις*. 11. *ψ* in *πέμψᾱς*. 12. *ξ* in *ἐσάλπιγξε*. 13. Transfer of aspiration. 14. Mutes before mutes; before *ς*; before other consonants.

[1] Cf. *automatic.* [2] Cf. hippo-*drome*, race-course. [3] Cf. *holo*-caust.

LESSON XLIV.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 18, 19, τῶν . . . οὖσαν.

2. NOTES.

§ 18. **φόβος**: sc. ἦν, *there was much fear of* (= *among*) *the barbarians.* **ἔ-φυγ-ε-ν**: from φεύγω, imperf. ἔ-φευγον, 2d aor. ἔφυγον; difference in meaning between the imperf. and aor.? **ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς**: cf. ἐκ τῶν πόλεων XXXII., *the* (*men in the market-place*) *fled from the market-place.* **κατα-λιπ-ό-ντ-ες**: from κατα-λείπω, *I leave behind;* 2d aor. partc.; theme λιπ, changed to λειπ in the pres.; cf. φυγ, φευγ in the pres. **ἰδ-οῦσα**: from εἶδον, *I saw,* used as the 2d aor. of ὁράω; theme ιδ, cf. *vid-eo;* nom. masc. ἰδών. **ἐ-θαύμα-σε**, for ἐ-θαύμαδ-σε, 1st aor. of θαυμάζω. **ἥσ-θη**: for ἥδ-θη, from ἥδ-ομαι, *was pleased to see* (ἰδών), or *pleased when he saw.* **τόν . . . φόβον**: note the attrib. phrases between τόν and φόβον, *the fear from the Greeks into the barbarians, the fear with which the Greeks inspired the barbarians.*

§ 19. **ἐπ-έ-τρεψε**: from ἐπι-τρέπω: tense?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The article may be used with a phrase, the whole being equivalent to a substantive.

2. A lingual mute (τ, δ, θ) before ς is dropped; a lingual mute before another lingual mute becomes ς.

3. **εἶδον**, *I saw,* is classed as a 2d aor. of ὁράω.

4. **φεύγω**, theme **φυγ** (cf. 2d aor. ἔ-φυγ-ον); λείπω, theme λιπ (cf. 2d aor. ἔ-λιπ-ον).

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Synopsis and conjugation of the perf. mid. (pass.) system of λύω, App. 74, II., 82.

2. Accent of perf. mid. infin. and partc., App. 81.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἁρπάζω**, *I seize.*
2. **ὁ γέλως**, *laughter.*
3. **δι-αρπάζω**, *I plunder.*
4. **εἶδον** (ὁράω), *I saw.*
5. **ἥδομαι**, *I am pleased.*
6. **θαυμάζω**, *I wonder, admire.*
7. **ἡ λαμπρότης**, *brightness, splendor.*
8. **λείπω**,[1] *I leave.*
9. **κατα-λείπω**, *I leave behind.*
10. **πολέμιος, -ίᾱ, -ιον**,[2] *hostile.*
11. **τρέπω**, *I turn.*
12. **ἐπι-τρέπω**, *I turn over to, entrust.*
13. **φεύγω**, *I flee.*
14. **ὁ φόβος**,[3] *fear.*
15. **τὰ ὤνια**, *goods for sale, wares.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *γέλως, λαμπρότης, ἰδών.*

II. Analyze: *καταλιπόντες, ἰδών, ἔφυγεν.*

III. For Oral Translation: 1. The Greeks were leaving, left; were fleeing, fled. 2. The Cilician (woman) saw the lines of the army. 3. And she was pleased to see the wares of the barbarians. 4. They (generals) are marching through this country on the ground that it is hostile. 5. The barbarians left their wares in the market-place. 6. And they also fled because of (*διά*; with what case?) fear. 7. The soldiers came to the tent of Cyrus with a shout.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. He permits the army to plunder it (country). 2. The Cilician (woman) began to run. 3. The barbarians leave (partc.) their tents (and) flee into the market-place. 4. The Greeks are pleased to see their (= the) fear. 5. They plundered the hostile city. 6. This country was hostile. 7. Of their own accord and with laughter the Greeks ran to their tents, when they had seen (aorist) the fear of the barbarians.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Reduplication. 2. Accent of the perf. pass. infin. and partc. 3. Formation of the perf. pass. subj. and opt. 4. Theme of the perf. mid. (pass.). 5. Futures and 1st aorists of themes in *τ, δ, θ*. 6. *π, β, φ* with *σ*. 7. *κ, γ, χ* with *σ*. 8. Declension of *πολύς*. 9. Stem and declension of *γέλως*. 10. *ὡς* with participles. 11. Stem and declension of *λαμπρότης*. 12. Declension and accent of participles like *ἰδών*.

[1] Cf. Eng. ec-*lip*-se. [2] Cf. πολεμέω. [3] Cf. Eng. hydro-*phobia*.

LESSON XLV.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 20, Ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος . . . αὐτῷ.

2. NOTES.

§ 20. **τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν**: *by the quickest*, i.e., *shortest, way*, adv. acc.; *ταχίστην* superl. degree, positive *ταχύς*; cf. *θᾶττον* and N. § 17. **αὐτῇ**: government? **αὐτόν**: sc. Μένωνα, *Menon himself*. **μετά**: with the gen. is the regular way of expressing accompaniment, for which Xenophon often uses *σύν* with the dative. **ἐν ᾧ**: sc. *χρόνῳ*, *time; in which time, meanwhile, in this interval.* **ἀπ-έ-κτειν-ε(ν)**: what kind of aor.? **ἕτερόν τινα**: *a certain other; τινά* is an enclitic, nom. *τίς* (for *τίν-ς*). **ὑπ-άρχων**: nom. *ὕπ-αρχος*, *subordinate officer.* **αἰ-τιᾱ-σά-μενος**: sc. *αὐτούς*; from *αἰτιάομαι*, dep.; *α* does not lengthen here to *η* before *σ*, cf. *νῑκήσᾱς* § 8. **αὐτῷ**: construe.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The accusative case may be used adverbially.

2. Accompaniment is generally expressed by *μετά* with the gen., but Xenophon often uses *σύν* with the dat.

3. **τίς**, *a certain one*, is an enclitic.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of *ὁδός*, App. 37.

2. Declension of the indefinite pronoun *τίς*, App. 66.

3. 1st aor. act. of liquid verbs, *ἔφηνα*, conjugated like *ἔλῡσα*, App. 79.

4. Declension of *εὐδαίμων*, App. 53.

5. Declension of *ἀνήρ*, App. 46.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **αἰτιάομαι**, *I accuse.*

2. **ὁ δυνάστης**,[1] *officer.*

3. **ἕτερος, -ᾱ, -ον**,[2] *other* (of two).

4. **ἡ ὁδός**, *way.*

5. **τίς**, *some one, any one.*

6. **ὁ ὕπ-αρχος**, *a subordinate officer.*

7. **ὁ φοινῑκιστής**,[3] *wearer of the purple.*

[1] Cf. *δύναμαι*. [2] Cf. Eng. *hetero*-dox, having other or wrong beliefs. [3] Cf. *φοινῑκοῦς* XLII.

6. EXERCISES.

I. Conjugate the 1st aor. act. of *μένω*.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. The Cilician (woman) is sent back by a wagon-road. 2. Menon and his men (cf. § 15) had these soldiers. 3. We are marching with other generals through Cappadocia. 4. Cyrus kills a certain one of his men. 5. He accused the man of plotting (= to be plotting) against him(self).

III. For Written Translation: 1. The Cilician (woman) was sent back by the same road. 2. Menon marched with his soldiers to Cappadocia. 3. He accuses another of plotting against him(self).

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The ending *-θεν*. 2. Comparison of *ταχέως*. 3. Construction of *αὐτῇ*. 4. *μετά* with the genitive. 5. Meanings of *αὐτός*. 6. Liquid aorists 7. Declension of *ἀνήρ*. 8. Declension and accents of *ἕτερόν*. 9. Accent of *τίς*. 10. Construction of *αὐτῷ* after *ἐπιβουλεύειν*.

LESSON XLVI.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 21, Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο . . . Κύρου.

2. NOTES.

§ 21. **ἐ-πειρῶ-ντο**: *they were attempting*, from *πειράω*, for *ἐ-πειράο-ντο*. **εἰσ-βάλλειν**: *to cast* (*themselves*) *into, to be entering*; *εἰσβαλεῖν* is where found? means what? **εἰσβολή**: *entrance, pass*, cf. *εἰσβάλλειν*. **ἁμαξιτός**: *a wagon-road . . . and impracticable for an army to enter*; *ἁμαξιτός* and *ἀμήχανος* are both fem. but in form like the masc., i.e., there are in Greek, as in Latin, adjectives of two terminations, the masc. and fem. forms being alike. **εἰσ-ελθ-εῖν**: from *εἰσ-ῆλθον*, the 2d aor. of *εἰσ-έρχομαι*; depends upon *ἀμήχανος*. **στρατεύματι**: dative of disadvantage. **εἴ**: why the accent? cf. *ἕτερόν τινα* § 20. **ἐ-κώλῡ-ε-ν**: *tried-to-hinder*, imperf. of *attempted action*. **διὸ** = δι' (for διὰ) ὅ, *on account of which, wherefore*. **τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ**: sc. *ἡμέρᾳ*; dat. of time at which.

λελοιπὼς εἴη: *that Syennesis had left*, lit. *S. was having left*, a compound form for λελοίποι the perf. opt. of λείπω; the opt. in the indirect discourse for λέλοιπε(ν) of the direct discourse; λελοιπ-ώς has the reduplication λε, theme λιπ changed to λοιπ (cf. λειπ in the present system), and the end. of the perf. act. partc., but no perf. suffix -**κ**-; such perfects are called *2d perfects;* they are conjugated exactly like the 1st perfects. **εἴσ-ω**: adv. governing the gen., *within.* **ὀρέων**: uncontracted form for ὀρῶν. **ὅτι . . . ἤκουσε**: *and because he heard that Tamos had triremes sailing around*, etc.; lit. *Tamos having:* note the partc. after ἤκουσε and cf. παρὼν ἐτύγχανε VI.; such participles, taking the place of an infin., are called *supplementary* because they supplement the meaning of the verb on which they depend, or they may be regarded as equivalent to clauses in indirect discourse. **τάς**: attrib. of τριήρεις; the triremes belonged to the *Lacedæmonians and to Cyrus himself.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The dat. denotes time *at which* or *when;* the acc. expresses duration of time.

2. 2d perfects differ from 1st perfects by omitting κ of the tense-suffix -κα-.

3. Supplementary participles may be used with verbs of *hearing* as well as with τυγχάνω.

4. **αὐτός** modifying a noun, but in the predicate position, = *self;* in the attributive position it means *same.*

5. In indirect discourse after a past (secondary) tense the opt. may take the place of the indic. in the direct discourse.

6. Many adverbs, especially those of place, govern the genitive.

7. In Greek there are adjectives of two terminations, the masc. and fem. being alike.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. 1st perf. system, active voice, App. 80.

2. Adjectives of two terminations, ἥσυχος, masc. and fem. alike, otherwise like ἀγαθός.

3. 2d perf. system, active voice, App. 85.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ὁ ἄγγελος**, *messenger.*
2. **τὸ ἄκρον**, *height, summit.*
3. **ἁμαξιτός, -όν**, *of* or *belonging to a wagon, passable for wagons.*
4. **ἀμήχανος, -ον**, *impracticable.*
5. **βάλλω**, *I throw.*
6. **εἰσ-βάλλω**, *I throw in, make an entrance.*
7. **ἡ εἰσβολή**, *entrance.*
8. **διό**, *wherefore.*
9. **εἴσω**, *within.*
10. **εἰσ-έρχομαι, εἰσ-ῆλθον**, *I enter.*
11. **ἰσχῡρός, -ά, όν**, *strong, mighty;* **-ῶς**, *strongly, exceedingly.*
12. **κωλῡ́ω**, *I prevent.*
13. **λείπω**, *I leave.*
14. **μετά** (with gen.), *with.*
15. **ὄρθιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *steep.*
16. **τὸ ὄρος**, *mountain.*
17. **ὅτι** (conjunction), *that; because.*
18. **πλέω**, *I sail;* **περι-πλέω**, *sail round.*
19. **ἡ τριήρης**, *tri-reme.*
20. **ὑστεραῖος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *next* (following in time).

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *ὄρος, τριήρης.*

II. Conjugation of the perf. act. and perf. mid. systems of *κωλῡ́ω.*

III. For Oral Translation: 1. The impracticable roads were hindering. 2. We were guarding the pass. 3. Syennesis perceived (was perceiving) that the armies were-guarding (partc.) the pass. 4. We heard that the Lacedæmonians had a trireme of (i.e., belonging to) Tamos himself.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. Here, if men hinder, the road is impracticable to enter. 2. And the barbarians were also said to be guarding the pass. 3. But the next day messengers heard that the army of Syennesis was hindering the Greeks. 4. The man said that he perceived (opt.) the armies on the heights.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Formation of the pluperf. *ἐλελύκειν.* 2. Different meanings of *αὐτός.* 3. Case following adverbs of *place.* 4. Indirect discourse. 5. Conjugation of *ἔφυγον*, 2d aor. system act. 6. The form *ἐπειρῶντο.* 7. Adjs. of two terminations. 8. Compensative lengthening, with examples. 9. Dat. of time. 10. Formation of the 2d perf. 11. Supplementary participles.

LESSON XLVII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 22, 23, Κῦρος . . . πλέθρων.

2. NOTES.

§ 22. **δ' οὖν**: *but at any rate*, cf. § 12. **ἀν-έβη ἐπί**: *went up upon*, so of mounting a horse, *to go up* to a position *upon*. **οὐδενὸς κωλῦοντος**: nom. οὐδ-είς, acc. οὐδ-ένα, cf. ἕνα § 6; gen. abs., *no one opposing*, *without any opposition*, an attendant circumstance. **εἶδε**: cf. ἰδών, ἰδοῦσα § 18. **δένδρων . . . σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων**: *covered with trees and vines*, gen. after σύμπλεων, *full of*; σύμπλεως masc. and fem.; σύμπλεων neut. **ὄρος**: subject. **αὐτό**: i.e., the plain. **πάντῃ**: adv., cf. πᾶς (for παντ-ς). **ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν**: *from sea to sea*.

§ 23. **ἤλασε**: subj.? present? **μέσου**: from τὸ μέσον, *the middle*, i.e., the adj. is used as a substantive. **ὄνομα**: *in respect to* or *by name*, acc. of specification. **εὖρος**: cf. ὄνομα. **πλέθρων**: gen. of measure, cf. ποδῶν § 8.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The gen. absolute may express time, means, cause, condition, concession, or an attendant circumstance.

2. Words of plenty govern the gen.

3. **σύμπλεως** is an adjective of two terminations.

4. The accusative may express that *in respect to which* something is true.

5. The gen. is used to express measure.

6. **μέσος** in the pred. position = *middle of*; in the attributive = *middle*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Adjectives of two endings, ἥσυχος, ἵλεως, Gram. Less. XLVI., App. 39, *Rem.*

2. Declension of numerals 1–4, App. 59.

3. Conjugation of the 1st aor. mid. of liquid verbs, ἐφηνάμην (like ἐλῡσάμην), App. 79.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἡ ἄμπελος**, *vine.*
2. **τὸ δένδρον**, *tree.*
3. **ἐπίρρυτος, -ον**, *overflowed, watered.*
4. **καλός, -ή, -όν**, *beautiful.*
5. **κατα-βαίνω**, *I go down, descend.*
6. **ὁ κέγχρος**, *millet* (rare).
7. **ἡ κρῑθή**, *barley.*
8. **ἡ μελίνη**, *panic*, a kind of (*millet*).
9. **τὸ ὄνομα**, *name.*
10. **οὗ**, *where.*
11. **οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν**, *no one.*
12. **ὀχυρός, -ά, -όν**, *strong, secure, tenable.*
13. **πάντῃ**, *on all sides.*
14. **παντοδαπός, -ή, -όν**, *of all kinds.*
15. **περι-έχω**, *surround.*
16. **ὁ πῡρός**, *wheat.*
17. **τὸ σήσαμον**, *sesame.*
18. **σύμπλεως, -ων**, *full of.*
19. **ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν**, *high.*
20. **φέρω**, *I bear.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *σύμπλεως, ὄνομα.*

II. Write a synopsis of *κωλύω* in the active voice.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. No one is hindering. 2. They saw the tent where we were guarding. 3. Thence they were going down into large and beautiful plains. 4. The tree is full of vines. 5. Lofty mountains surround the plains. 6. They descended [and] marched into a city of Cilicia, Tarsi by name. 7. Here there was a large and beautiful palace. 8. The river was a plethron in width. 9. Cyrus was hindered on the plain. 10. The mountains were hindering Cyrus.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. Since the Cilicians do not hinder, they ascend the mountain. 2. Now there were all-sorts-of trees and vines in the plain where they saw the tent. 3. The mountain itself was lofty, but it also produced wheat and barley. 4. After marching through a large plain into a beautiful city, they came to (arrived at) a river whose width was two plethra. 5. Syennesis was guarding the mountains in Cilicia.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The gen. absolute. 2. Case after adverbs of place. 3. Adjectives of two endings. 4. The accusative of specification. 5. The gen. of measure. 6. *μέσος* in the attrib. position. 7. Declension

of numerals. 8. Formation of οὐδείς. 9. Construction after words of fullness. 10. Duration of time and extent of space are how expressed? 11. Agreement of verb with neuter plu. subject.

LESSON XLVIII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. II. 24, 25, ταύτην . . . ὁπλῖται.

2. NOTES.

§ 24. **ἐξ-έλιπον**: from ἐκ-λείπω; tense? **οἱ ἐν-οικοῦντες**: *those who dwelt in, the inhabitants.* **εἰς χωρίον**: *left . . . for a stronghold.* **πλήν**: conjunction, sc. οὐκ ἐξέλιπον.

§ 25. **προτέρᾱ**: *earlier (than) Cyrus by five days, five days before Cyrus;* προ-τέρᾱ comparative, nom. masc. πρό-τερος, cf. πρεσβύτερος; Κύρου, gen. after the comparative, cf. Lat. use of the abl.; ἡμέραις dat. of degree of difference, cf. the Lat. usage. **τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον**: attrib. of ὑπερβολῇ, i.e., in passing over the mountains into the plain. **ἀπ-ώλο-ντο**: *perished,* 2d aor. mid. of ἀπ-όλλῡμι. **οἱ μέν . . . οἱ δέ**: *some . . . others.* **ἔ-φα-σαν**: *said,* imperf. 3d plu. of φη-μί. **ἁρπάζοντας**: sc. αὐτούς, the sub. of the infin. **κατα-κοπ-ῆ-ναι**: *had been cut down, cut in pieces,* 2d aor. pass. of κόπτω; pass. suffix of the 2d aor. is -ε- lengthened here to η, cf. -θε-, the 1st pass. suffix, lengthened to θη. **ὑπό**: Lat. *ab, by.* **οἱ δ'**: sc. ἔφασαν. **ὑπο-λειφ-θέ-ντ-ας**: *left behind;* for ὑπο-λειπ-θέ-ντ-ας; tense? on φ for π before θ, cf. ταχθῆναι § 15. **εὑρεῖν**: 2d aor. infin. from εὑρίσκω, perf. ηὕρηκα, Eng. *Eureka* (it ought to be *Heureka*), *I have found (it)*; depends upon δυναμένους. **τὸ ἄλλο**: *the rest of,* cf. μέσος in the pred. position; declined like αὐτός. **ἀπ-ολ-έ-σθαι**: cf. ἀπώλοντο; tense? **δ' οὖν**: cf. § 22.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The gen. is used after the comparative degree when ἤ, *than,* is omitted.

2. The dat. is used to express *degree of difference.*

3. The suffix of the 1st aor. pass. is -θε-; of the 2d aor. pass., -ε-.

4. **ὑπό** with the gen. expresses *agency.*

5. π and β become φ before θ.
6. The 2d aor. mid. infin. accents the penult.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of the 1st pass. system of λύω, App. 83.
2. Endings of the 1st pass. system, App. 83.
3. Tense-suffixes[1] of 1st pass. system, App. 83.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀπ-όλλῡμι**, *I destroy, lose;* mid., *perish, die.*
2. **ἑκατόν**, *hundred.*
3. **ἐκ-λείπω**, *I leave, abandon.*
4. **ἐλαύνω**, *I drive, ride, march.*
5. **ἐν-οικέω**, *I dwell in, inhabit.*
6. **εὑρίσκω**, *I find.*
7. **κόπτω**, *I cut;* **κατα-κόπτω**, *I cut down, destroy.*
8. **ὁ λόχος**, *company.*
9. **πλανάομαι**,[2] *I wander.*
10. **πρότερος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *earlier, prior.*
11. **ἡ ὑπερβολή**, *passage over.*
12. **ὑπο-λείπω**, *I leave, leave behind.*
13. **φημί**,[3] *I say.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Conjugation of the 1st aor. pass. and fut. pass. of κωλύω; synopsis of the pass. system of κωλύω.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. Cyrus arrived many days before Epyaxa. 2. In the passage of the mountain the army perished. 3. The army, while committing some act of plunder (while plundering something), was cut down by the king. 4. The others were plundering the palace in the city (attrib. modifier).

III. For Written Translation: 1. And in the mountains a hundred hoplites, while plundering, perished. 2. Some said that they had-been-left-behind (aor.) by Menon; but others, that they did not find the rest of the army. 3. When Cyrus arrived he was both angry and plundered the city. 4. The inhabitants abandon these cities with the Greeks.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Suffix of the 1st aor. pass.; 1st fut. pass. 2. Endings of the 1st. aor. pass.; fut. pass. 3. -θῶ- in the subjunctive. 4. -τι for -θι in

[1] Note that λυθῶ is for λυ-θέ-ω, λυθῇς for λυ-θέ-ῃς, etc.
[2] Cf. Eng. *plan*-et, wanderer among the fixed stars.
[3] Cf. Eng. eu-*phem*-ism, blas-*pheme*.

the imperative. 5. Accent of the 1st aor. pass. infin. and participles. 6. ὑπό with the gen. 7. Dat. of degree of difference. 8. Gen. after comparatives. 9. Suffix of the 2d aor. pass.

LESSON XLIX.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 26, Οἱ δ' ἄλλοι . . . ἔλαβε.

2. NOTES.

§ 26. **οἱ ἄλλοι**: sub. of ἧκον, *came*, from ἥκω. **διά**: with acc., *on account of.* **ὄλεθρον**: cf. ὄλλῡμι. **ὀργιζόμενοι**: causal. **εἰσ-ήλασαν**: *had marched into*, aor. for plup. **μετ-επέμπετο**: *kept sending for.* **πρὸς ἑαυτόν**: lit. *to himself*, i.e., *to* (*come to*) *him.* **πρότερον**: adv. **οὐδενί**: lit. *to no one*, Eng. *to any one*, translate *of any one;* a compound negative following a simple negative strengthens the negation in Greek, while in Eng. two negatives make an affirmative; *he said that he had not hitherto gone into the hands* (*power*) *of any one stronger than himself nor*, etc. **ἑαυτοῦ**: gen. after comparative. **εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν**: *to come into hands*, i.e., *to come into the power of one.* **ἰέναι**: sc. εἰς χεῖρας. **ἔπεισε**: from πείθω; tense? What has become of θ before **-σε**? **ἔλαβε**: *received*, sc. Συέννεσις.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. With εἰμί, γίγνομαι, and similar verbs, the dat. may be used to denote the possessor.
2. **-τερο-** is a comparative suffix.
3. A compound negative following a simple one strengthens the negation.
4. Before **σ** lingual mutes are dropped.
5. **κρείττων** is one of the comparatives of ἀγαθός.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of μείζων, ἡδίων, App. 54.
2. Conjugation of the 2d pass. system, ἐστάλην, σταλήσομαι, App. 86.
3. Tense-suffixes of 2d pass. system, App. 86.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἐθέλω**, *I am willing, wish.*
2. **εἰσ-ελαύνω**, *I march into.*
3. **κρείττων**, *stronger.*
4. **ὁ ὄλεθρος**,[1] *destruction.*
5. **ὀργίζομαι**, *I am angry.*
6. **οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν**, *no one.*
7. **ἡ πίστις**, *pledge.*
8. **πείθω**, *I persuade.*
9. **πώ**, *yet.*
10. **τότε**, *then.*
11. **χείρ**,[2] *hand.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Conjugate the 2d aor. *ἀφῑκόμην*; decline *κρείττων, πίστις.*

II. For Oral Translation: 1. They kept sending for Cyrus to come to them(selves). 2. On account of the destruction of the army we took a pledge. 3. The Greeks are (enclitic) stronger than the barbarians. 4. When he came he plundered the cities. 5. He was unwilling to come until some one persuaded him.

III. For Written Translation: 1. He sends for Epyaxa to come to him; but she was unwilling to go. 2. Cyrus was stronger than the king. 3. I am unwilling to go into the power of Cyrus. 4. The woman persuaded the man to take a pledge. 5. No one is stronger than the king.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Comparison of adjectives. 2. Suffixes of the aor. pass.; fut. pass. 3. Enclitics. 4. Accent of words before enclitics. 5. Declension of comparatives like *κρείττων*. 6. Declension of other comparatives. 7. Declension of superlatives. 8. Use of double negatives. 9. Construction after comparatives. 10. Analysis of *ἔπεισε*. 11. Accent of 2d aorists, act. and middle.

LESSON L.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 27, *μετά . . . ἀπολαμβάνειν.*

2. NOTES.

§ 27. **μετά**: with acc. *after.* **ἀλλήλοις**: reciprocal pron.; used in dual and plur. in gen., dat., and acc.; declined like *ἀγαθός*; construc-

[1] Cf. ὄλλῡμι.

[2] Eng. *chir*-ography.

tion? **ἔ-δω-κ-ε**: tense? **εἰς τὴν στρατιάν**: *for the army.* **Κῦρος**: sc. ἔδωκε. **νομίζεται**: pass. **παρὰ βασιλεῖ**: *by the side of the king,* i.e., *at the court of the king.* **τίμια**: pred. adj. **καί . . . χώρāν . . . ἀφ-αρπάζεσθαι**: *and that his country be no longer plundered,* obj. of ἔδωκε. **μη-κέτι**: μη, instead of οὐ, is the regular negative with the infin. **ἡρπασ-μένα**: perf. pass. partc. of ἁρπάζω, theme ἁρπαδ, δ changed to σ before μ. **ἀνδράποδα**: *slaves,* obj. of ἀπο-λαμβάνειν. **ἤν που ἐν-τυγχάν-ω-σι(ν)**: sc. Συέννεσις καὶ οἱ Κίλικες αὐτοῖς: *if they find them anywhere,* i.e., *wherever they should find them.* **ἀπο-λαμβάνειν**: obj. of ἔδωκε.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **σύν, ἐν, ἐπί,** in composition may govern the dative.
2. **παρά** takes the gen., dat., or acc. with different significations.
3. **δίδωμι** and **τίθημι** form the 1st aor. with **κ** instead of **σ**.
4. The infin. is used substantively with or without an article.
5. Before **μ** lingual mutes become **ς**.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of ἑαυτοῦ, ἀλλήλοιν, App. 62, Notes § 27.
2. Accent of infinitives and participles, App. 87.
3. Reduplication of verbs beginning with a vowel, App. 88.
4. Conjugation of the 2d aor. act. and mid. ἐλιπόμην, App. 84.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ὁ ἀκῑνάκης**, *dagger.*
2. **ἀλλήλοιν, -αιν, οιν**, *each other, one another.*
3. **τὸ ἀνδράποδον**, *slave.*
4. **τὸ δῶρον**,[1] *gift.*
5. **ἐν-τυγχάνω**, *happen upon, meet with.*
6. **πού**, *anywhere.*
7. **ἡ στολή**, *gown, robe.*
8. **ὁ στρεπτός**, *necklace.*
9. **τίμιος**,[2] **-ā, -ον**, *honorable, valuable.*
10. **χρῡσο-χάλῑνος, -ον**, *with golden-studded bridle.*
11. **τὸ ψέλιον**, *bracelet.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: χρῡσοῦς, ὅς.

II. Write a synopsis of συγ-γίγνομαι in the 2d aor.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. Money is considered a valuable gift by the king. 2. If they meet with (subj.) the slaves (dat.;

[1] Cf. Theo-*dore*, divine *gift*.

[2] Cf. ἀ-τῑμάζω, dis-*honor*.

why?) anywhere, they will take them back (from ἀπο-λήψομαι). 3. After this the wife of Cyrus said that he took much money. 4. This gift is considered valuable.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. After this Cyrus and Syennesis gave (ἔδοσαν) many gifts to the soldiers. 2. Cyrus received much money, but Syennesis a horse. 3. The country of Syennesis is no longer (οὐκέτι) plundered, and he (ὁ δέ) receives back his slaves, if he meets with them anywhere.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Accent of the verb. 2. Declension of χρῡσοῦς. 3. Formation of the perfect stem. 4. Reduplication. 5. The 2d aor. system of λείπω differs how in accent from the pres. system of λύω? 6. Infinitives as substantives. 7. Cases after παρά, εἰς, ἐν, ὑπό, μετά, σύν, πρός, περί. 8. Declension of ἑαυτοῦ, τίς, ὅς, αὐτός, ἐκεῖνος, ἄλλος. 9. Use of negatives μή and οὐ. 10. Enclitics. 11. Proclitics.

LESSON LI.—REVIEW.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. ii. 13–27.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. (*a*) Mutes before mutes. (*b*) Mutes before σ. (*c*) Mutes before linguals. (*d*) Enclitics. (*e*) Transfer of aspiration.

2. **Declension.** — (*a*) ὁδός. (*b*) σάλπιγξ. (*c*) ἀνήρ. (*d*) ἥσυχος. (*e*) εὐδαίμων. (*f*) μείζων. (*g*) ἵλεως. (*h*) τίς. (*i*) ἑαυτοῦ. (*j*) ἀλλήλοιν. (*k*) Numerals: 1–4. (*l*) Comparison of adverbs.

3. **Conjugation.** — (*a*) Tense systems. (*b*) Principal parts. (*c*) Variable vowel. (*d*) Synopsis of λύω act., mid., and pass. (*e*) λύω, act., mid., and pass. voice. (*f*) λείπω, 2d aor. act. and mid. (*g*) 2d perf. (*h*) Augment. (*i*) Reduplication. (*j*) Accent. (*k*) Fut. stem. (*l*) 1st perf. stem. (*m*) Tense-suffixes and endings of the 1st and 2d perf. systems. (*n*) Formation of the perf. mid. system. (*o*) Tense-suffixes and endings of the 1st and 2d pass. systems. (*p*) 2d pass. system. (*q*) 1st aor. system of liquid verbs.

4. **Syntax.** — (*a*) Article with πᾶς, ὅλος. (*b*) μέσος in attrib. and

pred. position. (*c*) Uses of the acc.: adv., specification. (*d*) Uses of the gen.: with verbs of *need, plenty;* with adverbs, comparatives; gen. of measure, absolute. (*e*) Uses of the dat.: poss., time, degree of difference. (*f*) Opt. in indirect discourse.

3. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἄγγελος.
2. ὁ ἀκῑνάκης.
3. τὸ ἄκρον.
4. ἡ ἄμπελος.
5. τὸ ἀνδράποδον.
6. τὸ ἅρμα.
7. ἡ ἁρμάμαξα.
8. ἡ ἀσπίς.
9. ὁ γέλως.
10. τὸ δένδρον.
11. ὁ δρόμος.
12. ὁ δυνάστης.
13. τὸ δῶρον.
14. ἡ εἰσβολή.
15. ὁ ἑρμηνεύς.
16. ἡ ἴλη.
17. ὁ κέγχρος.
18. ἡ κνημίς.
19. τὸ κράνος.
20. ἡ κραυγή.
21. ἡ κρήνη.
22. ἡ κρῑθή.
23. ἡ λαμπρότης.
24. ὁ λόχος.
25. ἡ μελίνη.
26. ὁ νόμος.
27. ἡ ὁδός.
28. ὁ οἶνος.
29. ὁ ὄλεθρος.
30. τὸ ὄνομα.
31. τὸ ὄρος.
32. ἡ πίστις.
33. ὁ πῡρός.
34. τὸ σήσαμον.
35. ἡ σκηνή.
36. ἡ στολή.
37. ὁ στρεπτός.
38. ἡ τάξις.
39. ἡ τριήρης.
40. ὁ ὕπαρχος.
41. ἡ ὑπερβολή.
42. ἡ φάλαγξ.
43. ὁ φόβος.
44. ὁ φοινῑκιστής.
45. ἡ χείρ.
46. ὁ χιτών.
47. τὸ ψέλιον.
48. τὰ ὤνια.

VERBS.

1. αἰτιάομαι.
2. ἀπ-όλλῡμι.
3. ἁρπάζω.
4. βάλλω.
5. δι-αρπάζω.
6. ἐθέλω.
7. εἶδον.
8. εἶπον.
9. εἰσ-βάλλω.
10. εἰσ-ελαύνω.
11. εἰσ-έρχομαι.
12. ἐκ-καλύπτω.
13. ἐκ-λείπω.
14. ἐλαύνω.
15. ἐν-οικέω.
16. ἐν-τυγχάνω.
17. ἔπ-ειμι.
18. ἐπι-δείκνῡμι.
19. ἐπι-τρέπω.
20. ἐπι-χωρέω.
21. εὑρίσκω.
22. ἥδομαι.
23. θαυμάζω.
24. ἵστημι.
25. καλύπτω.
26. κατα-βαίνω.
27. κατα-κόπτω.
28. κατα-λείπω.
29. κεράννῡμι.
30. κόπτω.
31. κωλῡ́ω.
32. λείπω.
33. ὁράω.
34. ὀργίζομαι.
35. παρ-ελαύνω.
36. πείθω.
37. περι-έχω.
38. πλανάομαι.
39. πλέω.
40. προ-βάλλω.
41. πρό-ειμι.
42. σαλπίζω.
43. τάττω.
44. τρέπω.
45. ὑπο-λείπω.
46. φέρω.
47. φεύγω.
48. φημί.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἁμαξιτός.
2. ἀμήχανος.
3. αὐτόματος.
4. δεξιός.
5. ἕκαστος.
6. ἐπίρρυτος.
7. ἕτερος.
8. εὐώνυμος.
9. ἰσχῡρός.
10. κρείττων.
11. ὅλος.
12. ὄρθιος.
13. οὐδείς.
14. ὀχυρός.
15. παντοδαπός.
16. πολέμιος.
17. πρότερος.
18. πρῶτος.
19. σύμπλεως.
20. ταχύς.
21. τί̄μιος.
22. ὑστεραῖος.
23. ὑψηλός.
24. φοινῑκοῦς.
25. χαλκοῦς.
26. χρῡσο-χάλῑνος.

ADVERBS.

1. διό.
2. εἶτα.
3. εἴσω.
4. ἰσχῡρῶς.
5. οὗ.
6. πάντῃ.
7. πού.
8. πώ.
9. τότε.

NUMERAL.

1. ἑκατόν.

PREPOSITIONS.

1. ἐπί (τετττάρων).
2. μετά.

CONJUNCTION.

1. ὅτι.

PRONOUNS.

1. τὶς.
2. ἑαυτοῦ.

LESSON LII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 1, Ἐνταῦθα . . . προϊέναι.

2. NOTES.

§ 1. **ἔ-μειν-ε**: from **μένω**; tense? how is the tense formed? singular to agree with the subject nearest to it and most important. **ἡμέρᾱς**: case? construction? **εἴκοσιν**: case? declension? **οὐκ ἔφασαν**: why not *οὐ*? why no accent on *οὐκ*? lit.: *said not*, i.e., *refused;* imperfect of *φημί*; note the ending -*σαν* in the imperfect of *μι*-verbs; cf. *ἔ-λῡο-ν*, *they loosed.* **ἰέναι**: infin. of *εἶμι*, *I am going;* what does *εἰμί* mean? cf. *ἰόντες* Chap. II. § 11. **τοῦ πρόσω**: *of the forward (march);* an adv. phrase, *forward;* note that adverbs may stand in the attrib. position, and that the substantive may be omitted. **ἐπί**: *against*, hostility; *πρός* used here would mean *to* or *towards;* *παρά*, *to the*

side of. **βασιλέα**: why no article? **ἰέναι**: the subject is the same as that of *ὑπώπτευον*. **μισθω-θῆ-ναι**: from *μισθόω*; voice? tense? mode? cf. *μισθός*. **οὐκ . . . ἔφασαν**: as before, *they said* (*they*) *were not* (i.e., *had not been*) *hired;* the subject of the infin. is the same as the subject of *ἔφασαν*; in expressions like this the force of the negative belongs to the infin. **ἐπὶ τούτῳ**: *for this,* i.e., to go *against* the king. **πρῶτος**: superl. of *πρότερος*, cf. Chap. II. § 24; has no positive; not "*first,*" *πρῶτον*, but *was the first* (*of the generals*) *to try to force,* etc. **αὑτοῦ**: note the attrib. position of the reflexive; meaning of *ἑαυτοῦ*? **ἐ-βιάζ-ε-το**: the imperf. generally represents an action as *in progress,* e.g., *was forcing;* it may express *repeated* action, e.g., *kept forcing;* here it expresses an *attempted* action, *tried to force.* **οἱ δέ**: note the change of subject: *but they,* i.e., the soldiers. **ἔ-βαλλ-ον**: sc. *λίθοις*, *stones; repeated* action; *they repeatedly threw at him with stones.* **ἐπεί**: *whenever.* **ἄρξαιντο**: *began,* 1st. aor. opt. mid. 3d plu. of *ἄρχω*, for *ἄρχ-σα-ι-ντο*, $\chi + \sigma = \xi$; note the opt. used in a general conditional rel. clause referring to past time, cf. **ἀφικνοῖτο** Chap. I. § 5.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A verb with two or more subjects may agree in number with the nearest or most important one.

2. Duration of time is expressed by the accusative case.

3. **οὔ φημι** = *I refuse.*

4. Adverbs may stand in the attributive position.

5. A limiting genitive of the reflexive pronoun takes the attributive position.

6. The imperfect represents an action (1) as *continued,* (2) as *repeated,* (3) as *attempted.*

7. **Κλέαρχος πρῶτος**, *Clearchus* (*was the*) *first;* Κλέαρχος *πρῶτον*, *Clearchus first* (did *this* and *afterward* did something else).

8. The present infinitive expresses continued action, the aorist an act as brought to pass.

9. **εἰμί**, *I am;* **εἶμι**, *I am going,* i.e., *shall go.*

10. Defective in comparison: positive (wanting), comparative *πρότερος*, superlative *πρῶτος*.

11. The optative is used in a general conditional relative clause referring to past time.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of the 1st aor. system (aor. act. and mid.) of liquid verbs, *ἔφηνα*, H. 327; G. 482.

2. First aorist of liquid verbs, H. 431; G. 672.

3. Position of *ἑαυτοῦ*, H. 673, b; G. 977.

4. Imperfect of attempted action, H. 832; G. 1255.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄρχω**,[1] *begin.*
2. **βάλλω**, *throw, throw at, hit.*
3. **βιάζομαι**, mid. dep., *force.*
4. **ἐπὶ τούτῳ**, *for this (purpose).*
5. **μισθόω**,[2] *hire.*
6. **οὔ φημι**, *refuse.*
7. **πρόσω**, *forward.*
8. **πρῶτος, -η, -ον**,[3] *first.*
9. **τὸ ὑποζύγιον**, *pack animal, beast of burden.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *ὑποζύγιον, στρατιώτης.*

II. Write synopses of the aor. act. and mid. of *ἔμεινε, ἔβαλλον* in the present system act. and mid.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. I refuse to go forward. 2. For I already suspect that Cyrus (case?) is going against the king. 3. We were not hired for this. 4. The soldiers kept stoning their own generals. 5. Clearchus kept stoning his own pack animals, tried to stone his own pack animals. 6. Clearchus, remain here three days.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. After remaining (aor. partc.) a day in this place, the soldiers refused to proceed. 2. For they were not hired for this (purpose). 3. Clearchus, therefore, tries-to-force them to go, but they stone both him and his beasts of burden. 4. Let the soldiers (imv.) remain many days.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. *ἐπί, πρός, παρά, ὡς, εἰς, κατά, διά, μετά,* with the acc. 2. Agreement of verb with two or more subjects; with neut. plu. subject. 3. Position of gen. of reflexive pronouns. 4. Uses of the imperfect.

[1] Cf. *arch*-aic. [2] Cf. *μισθός, wages.* [3] Cf. *proto*-type, *proto*-plasm.

5. Use of the aorist. 6. Parts of speech which may stand in the attributive position. 7. Extent of time and space is how expressed? 8. 1st aor. of liquid verbs. 9. *οὐκ* for *οὐ*. 10. Uses of the optative. 11. *τοῦ πρόσω*. 12. *οὔ φημι*. 13. Mutes before ς.

LESSON LIII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 2, 3, Κλέαρχος . . . δᾱρεικούς.

2. NOTES.

§ 2. **τότε μέν**: contrasted with **ὕστερον δ'**, *at that time . . . but afterwards.* **μῑκρόν . . . κατα-πετρω-θῆ-ναι**: lit. *escaped by a little not to be stoned-to-death; barely escaped being stoned to death; μῑκρόν*, adv. acc.; *ἐξ-έ-φυγ-ε*: why not *ἐκ*? tense? imperfect? the neg. *μή* with the infin. is redundant and is not to be translated. **ὕστερον**: cf. *μῑκρόν*. **ἔ-γνω**: *he came to know*, i.e., *became convinced;* 2d aor. of *γι-γνώ-σκ-ω*, Lat. *gno-sco*, Eng. *know;* note the absence of a personal ending, cf. *κατέστη*, *ἀνέβη*, Chap. I. §§ 2, 3. **οὐ δυνήσεται**: *he would not be able, could not;* the direct form of expression is used, but the sequence of tenses in Eng. requires *would* for *will.* **βιάσασθαι**: sc. *αὐτοὺς ἰέναι*; why not *βιάζεσθαι*? *συν-ήγ-αγ-ε-(ν)*: cf. *καταγάγοι* Chap. II. § 2. **πρῶτον μέν**: contrasted with **εἶτα δέ**, *first . . . and then, or afterwards;* note the difference between *πρῶτον* and *πρῶτος* § 1. **ἑ-στώς**: *he stood (still and) wept;* 2d perf. partc. act. from *ἵστημι*, cf. *λε-λοιπώς* Chap. II. § 21; the perf. of *ἵστημι* is intransitive (cf. *ἔστην*, the 2d aor.) and has a present meaning, *I am standing.* **οἱ δέ**: cf. § 1. **ὁρῶντες**: (for *ὁρά-ο-ντ-ες*). **ἐ-σιώπων**: (for *ἐ-σιώπα-ον*), *were silent.* **ἔ-λεξ-ε**: (for *ἔ-λεγ-σε*), *spoke.* **τοιάδε**: nom. *τοιόσδε*, *such* (words) *as these, such as follow; he spoke substantially as follows,* not exactly; *τάδε* would indicate that the exact words of the speech followed. The direct discourse makes the narrative more vivid and dramatic than the indirect.

§ 3. **Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται**: *Soldiers! ἄνδρες*, a term of respect which cannot always be translated; sometimes it is equal to Eng. "*Gentle-*

men" or "*Fellow*" in "Fellow-Citizens." **μή**: the negative used with the imperative when a negative is required; also the regular negative with the infinitive. **χαλεπῶς φέρω**: (*that*) *I bear, endure, in a difficult manner;* (*that*) *I am troubled, vexed.* **τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν**: *because of the present affairs, difficulties,* dat. of cause; nom. sing. of πράγμασιν? of παροῦσι? what is ν in πράγμασιν? **φεύγοντα**: *when an exile;* part of speech? construction? **τά τε ἄλλα**: lit. *in respect to the other things;* trans. *not only honored me in other ways, but gave me ten thousand darics;* why the accent on τά? tense of ἔδωκε? what other verb is like it?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **πρότερος** and **ὕστερος** are defective in comparison, wanting the positive.

2. The neuter accusative is used with the force of an adverb.

3. A palatal mute (κ, γ, χ) with σ forms ξ.

4. **μέν** points forward to a corresponding δέ and is used in contrasted expressions.

5. **μή** is the negative used with the infin.; it is redundant after verbs containing a negative idea.

6. Greek idiom: *standing he wept;* Eng.: *he stood and wept.*

7. **Ανδρες** in addresses is used for politeness or respect.

8. The dative with verbs of feeling expresses cause.

9. **δίδωμι** and **τίθημι** have 1st aor. forms in κ instead of ς.

10. The dative is used to express that for which something is or is done, *dative of advantage.*

11. The accusative is used to denote that *in respect to which* something is true, *accusative of specification.*

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Comparison of ὕστερος, πρότερος, H. 255; G. 363.

2. Comparison of πολύς, μῑκρός, H. 254, 5, 3; G. 361, 8, 5.

3. Declension of perfect act. partc. λελυκώς, ἑστώς, H. 244; G. 335, 342.

4. Accusative of specification, H. 718; G. 1058.

5. Adverbial accusative, H. 719; G. 1060.

6. Declension of ἐγώ, σύ, οὗ, H. 261–263; G. 389–390.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **γιγνώσκω**, *know.*[1]
2. **δακρύω**,[2] *weep.*
3. **ἡ ἐκκλησίᾱ**,[3] *assembly.*
4. **ἐκ-φεύγω**, *flee away, escape.*
5. **κατα-πετρόω**,[4] *stone down*, i.e., *to death.*
6. **μῑκρός, -ά, -όν**,[5] *small.*
7. **ὁράω**,[6] *see.*
8. **ὅτι** (conj.), *that, because.*
9. **ἡ πατρίς**, *fatherland.*
10. **σιωπάω**, *be silent.*
11. **συν-άγω**,[7] *bring together.*
12. **τῑμάω**, *honor.*
13. **ὕστερος, -ᾱ, -ον**,[8] *latter, later.*
14. **ὕστερον** (adv.),[8] *later.*
15. **φέρω**,[9] *bear.*
16. **χαλεπῶς**, *grievously.*
17. **ὁ χρόνος**,[10] *time.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *ἀνήρ, ἄλλος, πρᾶγμα.*

II. Write a synopsis of *θαυμάζω* in the present system.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. But afterwards they barely escaped being forced to go forward. 2. They know that they will not be able to force Clearchus. 3. Therefore they are standing (still) and weeping. 4. We wondered when we saw (partc.) Clearchus standing (still) a long time. 5. Do not, soldiers, be displeased at Cyrus. 6. We took the darics which Cyrus gave. 7. We did not honor the king in anything.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. But later, when the soldiers saw (*εἶδον*) Clearchus weeping, they were silent. 2. And then he speaks as follows, (substantially) as follows. 3. The soldiers stood (still and) wept. 4. The pack animals were (number of the Gr. verb?) not stoned-to-death. 5. If the soldiers remain (subjunctive) here, they will be able to escape being stoned-to-death. 6. Men, I do not wonder that you are vexed at me. 7. For while a fugitive from my fatherland I was honored in many ways.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. *μέν* and *δέ*. 2. The negatives *οὐ* and *μή*. 3. Duration of time is how expressed? 4. Palatal mutes before *σ*. 5. 1st aor. of liquid verbs. 6. Stems of participles in *-ως*. 7. Uses of the gen., dat.,

[1] Cf. a-*gno*-stic.
[2] Lat. *lacrima, tear.*
[3] Cf. *ecclesia*-stical.
[4] Cf. Lat. *petra, rock; petr-oleum, rock-oil; petri-fy.*
[5] Cf. *micro*-scope.
[6] Cf. Eng. pan-*orama.*
[7] Cf. Eng. *synagogue.*
[8] Note the comparative ending *-τερο-*.
[9] Cf. Lat. *fero*, Eng. *bear.*
[10] Cf. Eng. *chron*-ic, *chron*-icle, *chron*-ometer, ana-*chron*-ism.

acc. 8. *μετά* with the gen. 9. *ὑπό* with the gen. 10. Dat. of cause, advantage. 11. Acc. of specification, adv. accusative. 12. Comparison of adjectives. 13. Declension of personal pronouns.

LESSON LIV.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 3, 4, *οὕς . . . ἐκείνου.*

2. NOTES.

§ 3. **οὕς**: i.e., *darics: And I took them (but) did not . . . nor did I squander*, etc.; a relative at the beginning of an independent clause should often be translated by a conjunction and a demonstrative or personal pronoun. **εἰς τὸ ἴδιον**: lit. *for the private*, or *own, use for me; for my private use;* the substantive is omitted. **κατ-ε-θέ-μην**: from **κατατίθημι**; *put down, lay aside: I did not lay them aside for my own use.* **ἐμοί**: dat. of advantage, contrasted with *εἰς ὑμᾶς*, nom. *ἐγώ, I.* **καθ-ηδυπάθησα . . . ἐ-δαπάνων**, *nor did I squander* (aor. of an event which is represented simply as coming to pass) *them, but I kept expending* (imperfect of a repeated or customary past action) *them on you.*

§ 4. **πρῶτον μέν**: contrasted with *ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει.* **ἐπολέμησα**: *I commenced war*, aor. used to express the beginning of an action, called *inceptive aorist.* **ἐ-τῑμωρού-μην**: imperf. for *ἐ-τῑμωρέομην*, sc. *αὐτούς.* **μεθ'** (for *μετά*) **ὑμῶν**: *in company with you; μετά* with the acc. means what? **αὐτούς . . . βουλομένους**: by driving *them* out *because they wished.* **ἀφ-αιρεῖσθαι**: *to take away, to deprive the Greeks who dwelt therein of their land;* from *ἀπό + αἱρέω*: note the two accusatives, *Ἕλληνας, γῆν*, after the verb of *depriving;* one object of the person, the other of the thing. **ἐκάλει**: for *ἐκάλε-ε*, but when Cyrus *kept calling, summoning; at the summons of Cyrus.* **ἵνα**: = *ὅπως, ὡς, in order that;* belongs with the opt. *ὠφελοίην.* **εἴ τι δέοιτο**: *if he needed (me) for anything*, or *at all;* why the accent on *εἴ*? **τι** cognate accusative; opt. because of the indirectly expressed thought *ἵνα, ἐάν τι δέηται, ὠφελῶ αὐτόν.* **ἀνθ' ὧν . . . ὑπ' ἐκείνου**: lit. *in return for what (things) I suffered well by that one; in return for the favors I had received from him; ὧν = τούτων ἅ, those things which; ἀνθ'* gov-

erns τούτων; ἃ is the obj. of ἔπαθον, cognate acc. **ἔπαθον**: 2d aor. of πάσχω.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. An accusative which repeats the meaning of a verb in the noun is called a cognate accusative, e.g., *to suffer sufferings, to do deeds.*

2. The neuter accusative of the adj. is used adverbially.

3. **μεθ', μετά**, with the gen. is the usual way of expressing accompaniment.

4. Circumstantial participles express attendant circumstances of *time, place, manner, cause, condition,* or *concession;* they may be translated by clauses.

5. Verbs of depriving take two objects, one of the *person* and one of the *thing.*

6. Clauses of purpose are introduced by *ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως, in order that,* and may take the opt. after a past (secondary) tense.

7. **ὑπό**, *by,* with the gen. expresses *agency;* with the dat. = *under.*

8. **-ι-** and **-ιη-** are mode-suffixes of the optative; **-ν** and **-μι** are personal endings of the optative 1st singular.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Verbs of depriving, H. 724; G. 1069.

2. Purpose clauses, H. 881; G. 1365, 1369.

3. Participles, H. 968–969, 980–984; G. 1557, 1563, 1578–1587.

4. Cognate accusative, H. 725, and a; G. 1051.

5. Conjugation of the present system act. of (φιλέω) φιλῶ,[1] H. 324; G. 492.

6. Declension of φιλῶν, H. 243; G. 340.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **αἱρέω**, *take.*
2. **ἀντί** (with the gen.), *instead of.*
3. **ἀφ-αιρέω**, *take away, deprive.*
4. **δαπανάω**, *expend.*
5. **δέω**, *need, want;* **δεῖ**, *it is necessary.*
6. **ἐξ-ελαύνω**, *drive out, march.*
7. **εὖ**,[2] *well.*
8. **ἴδιος, -ᾱ, -ον**,[3] *private, peculiar, own.*
9. **καθ-ηδυπαθέω**, *waste in luxury, squander.*
10. **μετά** (with the gen.), *with.*
11. **πάσχω**,[4] *suffer;* **εὖ πάσχω**, *suffer well, receive favors.*
12. **τῑμωρέω**, *avenge;* mid. *punish.*
13. **ὑμεῖς**, *you;* sing. **σύ**, *thou.*
14. **ὑπέρ**,[5] *above, in behalf of.*

[1] Learn the contracted forms. [2] Cf. Eng. *eu*-logy. [3] Cf. Eng. *idio*-t, *idio*-syncrasy.
[4] Cf. *path*-os, *path*-etic. [5] Cf. Eng. *over;* Lat. *super.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline Ἑλλάς, ἐνοικῶν.

II. Conjugate (αἱρέω) αἱρῶ in the present system active.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. First wage war against Greece[1] in our behalf. 2. We wish to deprive you of your land. 3. We were proceeding in order that we might take you. 4. You received favors at our hands (= by us). 5. You were waging war against us.[1] 6. In order that you may be waging war. 7. Aid me, that I may aid you.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. And I received ten thousand darics which I am expending (δαπανῶ) upon my army. 2. First I shall make war upon the barbarians, and afterwards I shall drive (ἐξ-ελῶ) the inhabitants out of the land. 3. I am proceeding with you, therefore, in order that I may aid Cyrus. 4. If Cyrus needs (δέηται) me (gen.) at all (τί), I shall aid him.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Circumstantial and supplementary participles. 2. The double object. 3. Clauses of purpose. 4. The personal pronouns. 5. Endings of the opt. in contract verbs in -έω. 6. Accent of contract verbs. 7. Enclitic forms of the personal pronouns. 8. Use of οὖ; of αὐτός. 9. Some uses of the accusative, dative. 10. Case after ἀντί, ἐκ. 11. Formation of adverbs. 12. Accent of εἴ τι. 13. Declension of γῆν. 14. Mode-suffixes of the optative.

LESSON LV.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. III. 5, ἐπεί . . . εἱλόμην.

2. NOTES.

§ 5. **ἐπεί**: *since*, also means *when*. **ὑμεῖς**: personal pronouns are used as subjects-nominative only when they are emphatic, otherwise they are omitted. **ἀνάγκη**: sc. *ἐστί*, *it is necessary*. **δή**: *evidently*,

[1] The dat. of *opposition* may be used.

certainly; explain the accent. **προ-δόντα**: *to betray you* (*and*); nom. προ-δούς (for προ-δό-ντ-ς); acc. instead of the dat., agreeing with the omitted subject of χρῆσθαι instead of with μοι. **τῇ . . . φιλίᾳ**: *to use, to avail myself of the friendship of Cyrus:* χρῆσθαι governs the dat.; it meant originally *to serve one's self;* hence the dat. of *means* or *instrument.* **ψευ-σά-μενον**: instead of ψευσαμένῳ, cf. προδόντα; from ψεύδω, ψευσάμενον for ψευ(δ)-σά-μενον, a lingual mute lost before σ. **εἰ**: *whether,* introduces an indirect question. **δίκαια**: lit. *just things;* translate *right.* **οἶδα**: 2d perf. in form, present in meaning. **αἱρήσομαι**: lit. *shall take for myself,* i.e., *choose.* **δ' οὖν**: cf. Chap. II. § 12. **πείσομαι**: fut. of πάσχω. **ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ**: *whatever may be necessary;* ὅ τι is compounded of the *relative* and *indefinite* pronouns, hence called an *indefinite relative* pronoun; both parts are declined. The clause is called a *conditional relative clause* because it implies a condition and is equivalent to *if anything be necessary;* ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ = ἐάν (εἰ + ἂν) τι δέῃ; the subjunctive follows after principal (primary) tenses; the opt. *without* ἄν may be used after a past (secondary) tense. **ἐρεῖ**: used as a fut. of φημί. **οὔποτε . . . οὐδείς**: note the double negative; Eng. *no one shall ever say.* **ὡς**: = ὅτι, *that.* **ἀγαγών**: from ἄγω; tense? **εἰλόμην**: 2d aor. mid. of αἱρέω, *I chose,* cf. αἱρήσομαι; theme ἑλ, augmented like εἶχον from ἔχω.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Personal pronouns are not used as subjects-nominative except when emphatic.

2. **χράομαι** takes the dat. of *means* or *instrument.*

3. **μοῦ, μοί, μέ; σοῦ, σοί, σέ; οὗ, οἷ, ἕ,** and **σφίσι**, are enclitics.

4. Double negatives strengthen the negation if the second is compound.

5. A relative clause may have a *conditional* force, the relative word implying *if,* thus: *whatever be necessary* is nearly equivalent to *if anything be necessary;* such clauses are called *conditional relative clauses.*

6. The subjunctive with ἄν is used in conditional relative clauses after principal (primary) tenses, cf. ἤν (= εἰ + ἄν) with the subjunctive.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Enclitics (pronouns and verbs), H. 113, a–c; G. 140, 141, 1–3.

2. Conjugation of the present system mid. of *φιλῶ*, H. 324; G. 492.

3. Future condition with more probability (more vivid), H. 889–891, 898, 899; G. 1385–1387, 1403, 1405.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **αἱρέω**, *take;* mid. *choose.*
2. **ἡ ἀνάγκη**, *necessity.*
3. **δίκαιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *just, right.*
4. **ἐπεί**, *when, since.*
5. **ἐρῶ** (fut. of *φημί*), *shall say.*
6. **οἶδα**, *know.*
7. **προ-δίδωμι**, *betray.*
8. **χράομαι** (dep.), *use.*
9. **ψεύδω**[1] (com. dep. *ψεύδομαι*), *deceive.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Conjugate *ὠφελέω* in the present system act. and mid.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. It is necessary for you to go with me. 2. We must do right (= it is necessary for us to do right). 3. If it is (subj.) necessary, we will suffer. 4. They will say that we chose the friendship of the Greeks. 5. I do not know whether we shall do right, but we shall choose the Greeks.

III. For Written Translation: 1. Since the Greeks are willing (fr. *ἐθέλω*) to go with me, it is certainly necessary for me to use their friendship. 2. But, at any rate, I choose them and with them I shall endure many sufferings (= suffer many things), if necessary. 3. And they will never say that I chose the barbarians instead of (*ἀντί*) the Greeks.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Personal pronouns as subjects. 2. Forms of pronouns and verbs which are enclitics. 3. Accent of words before enclitics. 4. Double negatives. 5. Negative with the imperative; with the infinitive. 6. The subjunctive in conditional sentences; in conditional relative sentences. 7. Case after *χράομαι*. 8. Contraction.

[1] Cf. Eng. *pseud*-onym.

LESSON LVI.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. III. 6, ἀλλ' ἐπεί . . . ἔχετε.

2. NOTES.

§ 6. **ἐμοί**: with πείθεσθαι, *to obey, trust in*; cf. ἐπίστευον αὐτῷ Chap. II. § 2. **ἐμοὶ εἶναι**: dat. of poss., or advantage. **πατρίδα**: pred. acc. to agree with the sub. of the infin. **ἂν εἶναι τίμιος**: I think (that) *I should be honored* = ἂν εἴην τίμιος. **ὅπου ἂν ὦ**: cf. ὅ τι ἂν δέηται: *wherever I may be*, Eng. requires *might be*; ὦ, εἴην, subj. and opt. of εἶναι; cf. subj. and opt. of the perf. mid. of λύω for the full conjugation of the subjunctive and optative of εἶναι. **ὑμῶν ἔρημος ὤν**: *being bereft of you*, i.e., *if I should be bereft*, etc., words of *want* as well as of *plenty* take the gen. case. **ἄν**: belongs with εἶναι and is repeated for emphasis in the next line. **ὡς**: with the gen. abs.: *therefore make up your minds that I shall go wherever you* (*may go*, sc. ἴητε), or *be assured that*, etc.; lit. *have your opinion thus that*, etc., cf. ὡς παρεχόντων Chap. I. § 11.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **πείθομαι**, *obey*, takes the dat. of indirect object where English requires the acc.

2. The infin. with ἄν may stand in direct discourse for the opt. with ἄν of the direct discourse.

3. Words of want take the gen.

4. A future supposition with *more probability* ("*more vivid future*") is expressed by ἐάν (= ἤν) with the subjunctive in the condition, and the fut. indic. or some equivalent form in the conclusion.

5. A relative clause with ἄν and the subjunctive may be equivalent to a future condition with more probability.

6. A phrase or participle may express a condition, e.g.: σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος, I think that I should be honored *with you*, i.e., *if I should be with you*; ἔρημος ὤν, *if I should be bereft*, etc.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of *εἰμί*, subj., opt., infin., partc., H. 478, G. 806.

2. Conditional relative clauses, H. 912, 913, 916; G. 1428, 1, 2; 1434.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀλέξω**, *ward off, protect.*
2. **ἡ γνώμη**,[1] *opinion.*
3. **ἕπομαι**, *follow.*
4. **ἔρημος, -η, -ον**,[2] *desolate, deprived of.*
5. **ὁ ἐχθρός**, *personal enemy.*
6. **οἶμαι**, *think.*
7. **πῄ**, *in some way;* **ὅπῃ**, *in whatever way.*
8. **πού**, *somewhere;* **ὅπου**, *wherever.*
9. **ὁ σύμμαχος**,[3] *ally.*
10. **τίμιος, -ᾱ, -ον**,[4] *honored.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *πατρίς, γνώμη.*

II. Analyze: *ἕπομαι, ψευσάμενον, ἰόντων.*

III. For Oral Translation: 1. It is necessary, certainly, for you either to abandon me or to prove false to Cyrus. 2. I do not know whether you choose to do right, but at any rate follow him. 3. For whatever you suffer, with him you will be honored. 4. We shall obey you. 5. We shall persuade you. 6. They are fatherland, friends, and allies to us. 7. I think that Cyrus would not be able to ward off his foes. 8. But if he is (= be) able, he will assist his friends.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. Clearchus spoke as follows: 2. "Greeks, if you choose (subj.) to follow Cyrus, you will do right; for your friends (= the friends of you) will never say that you chose the friendship of a foe. 3. But since you are unwilling (fr. *ἐθέλω*) to consider him as an ally, I do not know whether you will aid even (= *καί*) a friend. 4. For without him (= being deprived of that one) I think that you would not be able to ward off the barbarians."

[1] Cf. *γι-γνώ-σκω.*

[2] Eng. *hermit.*

[3] Cf. *σύν+μάχομαι, μάχη*

[4] Cf. *τῑμή, ἀ-τῑμάζω.*

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Case after πείθομαι, ἕπομαι, χράομαι. 2. Case after words of plenty and want. 3. Ways of expressing condition. 4. The infinitive with ἄν. 5. The opt. in indirect discourse. 6. Dat. of possessor, association, means, advantage. 7. ὡς with the gen. abs. 8. Future condition and conditional relative clause with more probability (more vivid future). 9. ἄν with the subj. 10. ἐάν, ἤν.

LESSON LVII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 7, 8, ταῦτα . . . ἰέναι.

2. NOTES.

§ 7. **εἶπεν**: 2d aor. of ἐρῶ (fut.). **οἵ τε** ff.: lit. *both those of that one himself and the rest,* partitive apposition with στρατιῶται; why the accent on οἵ? **ταῦτα**: *this,* so ταῦτα εἶπεν; plu. often used where Eng. requires sing.; explained by **ὅτι . . . πορεύεσθαι**. **οὐ φαίη**: *refused,* cf. Chap. III. § 1, οὐκ ἔφασαν; opt. of φημί, indirect discourse for οὔ φησι (indic. 3d sing.); on the form cf. εἴη, opt. of εἶναι; -ιη- is the mode-suffix. **πλείους**: nom. plu. for πλείονες, *more;* comparative of πολύς, cf. πλέον Chap. II. § 11; πολύς is compared πολύς, πλείων or πλέων, πλεῖστος. **ἤ**: *than;* comparatives with ἤ take the same case after it as before; without ἤ they take the gen. **παρά**: with the acc., *to the side of,* i.e. *to;* dat., *by the side of;* gen., *from the side of, from.*

§ 8. **τούτοις**: cf. Chap. III. § 3, πράγμασιν; neut. gend. **μετεπέμπετο**: *kept sending for.* **οὐκ ἤθελε**: *repeatedly refused.* **λάθρᾳ**: adv., *secretly,* i.e., *without the knowledge of* (the soldiers); many adverbs govern the genitive. **πέμπων . . . ἔλεγε**: *kept sending and telling;* note the continued action expressed by the present participle; what would πέμψᾱς mean? **θαρρεῖν**: *to be of good cheer.* **ὡς . . . δέον**: lit. *as these matters being about to settle themselves into the necessary thing:* translate, *on the ground that these matters* (or *this*) *would turn out right;* δέον is the pres. neut. partc. of δέω used substantively. **μεταπέμπεσθαι**: *to keep on sending for* (him). **αὐτός**: translate as if acc. sub. of εἶναι, *but he said that he himself* (for his part) *would not go.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ταῦτα** often equals the Eng. *this.*

2. After a past tense the optative may be used in indirect discourse for an indicative or subjunctive in the direct discourse.

3. **-ιη-** is a mode-suffix of the optative.

4. **παρά** is followed by the gen., dat., and acc., meaning respectively *from, near, to.*

5. Many adverbs govern the gen.: e.g., *εἴσω, λάθρᾳ.*

6. The infinitive in indirect discourse may represent the imperative of the direct.

7. The neut. partc., like the neut. adj., is used substantively.

8. **πολύς** is compared: *πολύς, πλείων* or *πλέων, πλεῖστος.*

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of *εἰμί,* H. 478; G. 806.

2. Declension of **οὗτος**, H. 272; G. 409.

3. Optative in indirect discourse, H. 932; G. 1497.

4. Genitive with adverbs, H. 756, 757; G. 1147, 1148, 1150.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀπορέω**,[1] *be perplexed.*

2. **ἐπ-αινέω**, *applaud, praise.*

3. **θαρρέω**, *be of good cheer, courageous.*

4. **λάθρᾳ**,[2] *secretly, without the knowledge of.*

5. **λῡπέω**, *grieve, be distressed.*

6. **τὰ σκευοφόρα**, *baggage carriers, beasts of burden, baggage.*

7. **στρατοπεδεύω** (com. mid.), *encamp.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Write synopses: *ἐθέλω* pres. system active, *πορεύομαι* pres. system mid.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. They hear that Cyrus is unwilling to go to[3] the king. 2. We were applauding the soldiers. 3. These men were grieved because of us. 4. They send messengers without the knowledge of Cyrus. 5. They kept sending for the messengers; but they themselves refused to go.

[1] From α-negative and *πόρος* (cf. *πορεύομαι*) *way, without a way.*

[2] From *λαθ* in *λανθάνω.*

[3] How many words can you use for "to"?

III. For Written Translation: 1. Many soldiers on hearing (partc.) this took their arms and encamped near the king. 2. Therefore Cyrus sent for him; but he was grieved at this. 3. More than two thousand took their arms. 4. They heard that Cyrus refused to go to the king. 5. They sent a messenger without the knowledge of the soldiers.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Meanings of *αὐτός*. 2. Opt. in indirect discourse. 3. The infin. in indirect discourse. 4. Declension of comparatives; of superlatives. 5. *παρά*. 6. Case with certain adverbs. 7. Imperative in indirect discourse. 8. The substantive use of the participle. 9. Some uses of the accusative. 10. Conjugation of *εἰμί*.

LESSON LVIII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. III. 9, *μετά . . . οἶδα.*

2. NOTES.

§ 9. **ταῦτα** as in § 8, *this*. **θ'**: = *τε*. **τοὺς προσελθόντας**: *those who had gone over to (him)*. **αὐτῷ**: indirect object of *προσελθόντας*. **τῶν ἄλλων**: partitive gen. with *τὸν βουλόμενον*, *the one who wished, whoever wished* (to come). **τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου**: *the affairs of Cyrus, you see* (*δή*). **δῆλον** (sc. *ἐστι*) **ὅτι**: lit. *it is evident that;* translate, *clearly, evidently; μέν* here has no corresponding *δέ*. **οὕτως ἔχει**: *are just the same* (*towards us as ours towards*), etc. *ἔχω* with adverbs = *εἰμί* with pred. adj. **τὰ ἡμέτερα**: sc. *πρᾱ́γματα*: poss. pronoun, nom. *ἡμέτερος, ἡμετέρᾱ, ἡμέτερον*, declined like *ἀγαθός*. **ἡμεῖς**: sc. *are*. **στρατιῶται**: pred. nom. **ἐκεῖνος**: sc. *ἐστί*. **ἀδικεῖσθαι**: the subject is not expressed because it is the same as the subject of *νομίζει*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **μέν** is used occasionally without a following *δέ*.

2. **ἔχω** with an adv. = *εἰμί* with pred. adj.

3. The subject of the infinitive is not expressed when it is the same as that of the main verb.

4. The aor. partc. may refer to an act previous to that of the principal verb.

5. ἤ, *than*, takes the same case after it as before it.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Indefinite relative pronoun, H. 280; G. 425.

2. Conjugation of (τῑμάω) τῑμῶ in the present system active, H. 323, 243; G. 340, 492.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **δῆλος, -η, -ον**, *evident*.
2. **δῆλον ὅτι**, *it is evident that, evidently*.
3. **ἡμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *noster, our*.
4. **μετά** (with acc.), *after*.
5. **ὁ μισθοδότης**,[1] *paymaster*.
6. **προσ-έρχομαι** (aor. -ῆλθον), *come to, go over to*.
7. **ὥσπερ**, *just as*.

6. EXERCISES.

I. Write synopses: ἔλεξα 1st aor. act.; συνέπομαι pres. mid.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. They were collecting their own (men). 2. They are not accompanying us. 3. All the soldiers were honoring Cyrus. 4. We are, were, messengers of the king. 5. More than twenty soldiers came from Clearchus.

III. For Written Translation: 1. After this Clearchus speaks to his own soldiers as follows: 2. "You are no longer soldiers of Cyrus, since he is no longer your paymaster." 3. Clearchus, we at least shall not accompany you. 4. Soldiers, be honoring your generals. 5. Our generals are brave (= good) men. 6. Let Cyrus be king of this land. 7. Cyrus will honor his soldiers, if they honor (subj.) him. 8. The generals kept sending for Cyrus in order that they might honor him.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Position of ἑαυτοῦ. 2. Declension of possessive pronouns. 3. ἔχω with adverbs. 4. Comparatives with and without ἤ. 5. Uses of the imperfect. 6. Partitive genitive. 7. Formation of ὅστις. 8. Use of Ἄνδρες in the text. 9. Construction of αὐτῷ after συνεπόμεθα. 10. Dative of possessor, of indirect object, with compounds.

[1] From μισθός and δίδωμι.

LESSON LIX.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 10, 11, ὥστε . . . ἐκ τούτων.

2. NOTES.

§ 10. **καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ**: *even though he keeps sending for; καί = even;* gen. abs. expressing concession. **τὸ μὲν μέγιστον**: adv. acc., *chiefly;* superl. of *μέγας*. **αἰσχῡνόμενος**: *because I am ashamed,* circumstantial partc. of cause. **σύνοιδα ἐμαυτῷ**: lit. *I know with myself, I am conscious;* construction of *ἐμαυτῷ*? **πάντα . . . αὐτόν**: (*of*) *having deceived him in all respects; πάντα,* acc. of specification; *ἐψευσμένος,* perf. partc., reduplicates with *ε* because it begins with a double consonant; from *ψεύδω*. **ἔπειτα**: correlative of *μέν* above. **δεδιώς**: 2d perf. partc. of *δείδω,* causal, *because I fear.* **μή**: *lest, that;* verbs of fearing are followed by *μή* with the subjunctive where in Eng. *that* with the *future* would be expected. **λαβὼν . . . ἐπιθῇ**: (*lest*) *he take me* (*and*) *inflict punishment upon* (*me*). **ὧν**: = *τούτων ἅ*; *τούτων* gen. of *cause,* or *crime; ἅ* cognate acc., or acc. of specification, with *ἠδικῆσθαι*; the antecedent of *ὧν* has been omitted and *ἅ* has been attracted into its case. **ἠδικῆσθαι**: perf.; note the reduplication.

§ 11. **οὐχ**: = *οὐκ*; *κ* made rough before the rough breathing. **καθεύδειν**: depends on *ὥρᾱ, a time to be sleeping.* **ἡμῶν αὐτῶν**: gen. after a verb of *mental* action, *ἀμελεῖν*. **βουλεύεσθαι**: sc. *δοκεῖ ὥρᾱ εἶναι*. **ποιεῖν**: subj. of *χρή*. **ἐκ τούτων**: *in these circumstances,* lit. *from,* etc. **αὐτοῦ**: adv., *here.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **καί** does not always mean *and;* often it means *even, also.*

2. The genitive absolute and all other circumstantial participles are often best translated by subordinate clauses.

3. **σύνοιδα** is followed by a supplementary participle, called the participle in indirect discourse.

4. Verbs beginning with a double consonant reduplicate with *ε*, so that the reduplication is the same as the augment; verbs be-

ginning with a vowel lengthen the vowel in reduplication like the temporal augment.

5. Verbs of *fearing* are followed by *μή* with the subjunctive; after a past tense the opt. may be used.

6. The genitive of *cause* or *crime* is used with verbs of judicial action.

7. Verbs of *caring* or *neglecting*, like many other verbs expressing action of the mind, take the genitive.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Comparison of *μέγας*, *ἀγαθός*, H. 253, 254, 1; G. 361, 1, 4.

2. Declension of *ἐμαυτοῦ*, *σεαυτοῦ*, H. 266; G. 401.

3. Verbs denoting action of the senses or mind, H. 742; G. 1102.

4. Genitive of crime, H. 745; G. 1121.

5. Circumstantial participle, H. 968, 969, 970, 978, 979; G. 1563, 1-6, 1568, 1573, 1574.

6. Supplementary participle, H. 980, 982; G. 1578, 1588.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀδικέω**,[1] *injure, wrong.*
2. **αἰσχῡ́νομαι**, *be ashamed.*
3. **ἀμελέω**,[2] *neglect.*
4. **δείδω**, *fear.*
5. **ἡ δίκη**, *justice.*
6. **ἐπι-τίθημι**, *place upon, inflict.*
7. **καθεύδω**, *sleep.*
8. **χρή**, *it is necessary.*
9. **ὥρᾱ**, *hora, season, time.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *ὥρᾱ*, *δίκη*, *οὗτος*, *πᾶς*.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. They think (that) they are wronged by Cyrus. 2. So that even though we keep sending for them they are not willing to come. 3. I am ashamed, and moreover (*ἔπειτα*) I think that I have been wronged by him. 4. We are neglecting you. 5. Be planning what it is necessary to do. 6. It is a time for you to sleep.

III. For Written Translation: 1. We consider that you are wronged by him. 2. I fear that the king will punish me for this (= these things). 3. So that it is a time for us to deliberate what

[1] ἀ-negative and *δίκη*; cf. *ἀ-τῑμασθείς*.

[2] *α* as in *ἀ-δικέω*.

we (acc.) ought to do. 4. If the king takes (subj.) us, he will punish (from *ἐπιθήσω*) us (dat.; why?). 5. Therefore do not neglect yourselves.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Gen. and dat. of cause; gen. of crime. 2. Uses of the genitive. 3. Comparison of adjectives; comparison of *ἀγαθός*, *μέγας*, *πολύς*. 4. Construction after verbs of fearing. 5. Meanings of *καί*. 6. Declension of reflexive pronouns. 7. The gen. absolute. 8. Circumstantial and supplementary participles. 9. Reduplication in the perfect; in the present of a few verbs. 10. Clauses of result. 11. Declension of *ὅστις*. 12. Verbs which take the gen.

LESSON LX.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 11, 12, *καὶ ἕως . . . εἶναι.*

2. NOTES.

§ 11. **σκεπτέον** ff.: *it seems to me it is to be considered by us* (*ἡμῖν*) *how we shall remain most securely, it seems to me that we must consider*, etc.; verbal adjectives in -**τέος** = the Lat. partc. in *-dus*. **μενοῦμεν**: fut. of *μένω*, *μενῶ* for *μενέ*(*σ*)-*ω*, conjugated like *φιλῶ*; note that *σ* does not occur in the fut. of liquid verbs, and that *ε* contracts with a following vowel. **ἀσφαλέστατα**: adv. **ἤδη**: *at once.* **ἄπιμεν**: from *ἄπειμι*, 1st plu., *we shall go away*; *εἶμι* in the pres. indic. has a fut. meaning. **ἕξομεν**: fut. of *ἔχω*; note the rough breathing. **ὄφελος**: sc. *ἐστιν.* **οὐδέν**: adv. acc.

§ 12. **ὁ ἀνήρ**: i.e., *Cyrus.* **πολλοῦ ἄξιος**: sc. *ἐστι*, lit. *is a friend worth much, a valuable friend, to whomsoever he may be a friend*; *πολλοῦ*, gen. of value after *ἄξιος*. Note the conditional rel. clauses in this section, rel. + *ἄν* and subj. nearly equal *εἰ* + *ἄν* (= *ἐάν* or *ἤν*) and subj. **ὁρῶμεν** from *ὁράω*, conjugated like *τιμάω*. **καὶ γάρ**: *and* (*we see and know*) *for.* **οὐδὲ . . . καθῆσθαι**: lit. *we seem*, i.e., *it seems to me that we are encamped not at all far from him*; personal construction where English would expect the impersonal; *αὐτοῦ*, gen. with adv. **ὥρᾱ**: sc. *ἐστί.* **ἄριστον**: superl. of *ἀγαθός*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Verbal adjectives in -τέος denote *duty* or *necessity*.

2. The superlative of adverbs is the neut. acc. plu. of the superlative of the adjective; the comparative is the neut. acc. sing. of the comparative of the adjective; both were originally *adverbial accusatives*.

3. The fut. of liquid verbs adds ε, omits σ, and contracts.

4. Words signifying *worthy* or *worth* take the genitive of value.

5. The adverbs πόρρω, εἴσω, πλήν, take the genitive.

6. The infin. may depend upon a noun like the Latin gerund.

7. The verbal in -τέος takes the *agent* of the action in the dative, called the *dative of agent*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Verbal in -τέος, H. 299, c, 475, 988–991; G. 776, 1594–1599.

2. Future system of liquid verbs (φανῶ), H. 326, 422; G. 482, 663.

3. Comparison of adverbs, H. 259; G. 369.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄνευ** (with the gen.), *without*.
2. **ἄξιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *worth, worthy*.
3. **ἄπ-ειμι** (-ἰέναι), *go away*.
4. **αὐτοῦ**, *here*.
5. **ἀσφαλής, -ές**, *safe*.
6. **ἀσφαλῶς**, *safely*.
7. **ἄριστος, -η, -ον**,[1] *best*.
8. **ἐπίσταμαι**, *know*.
9. **τὰ ἐπιτήδεια**, *provisions*.
10. **ἕως**, *while, as long as, until*.
11. **ὁ ἰδιώτης**,[2] *a private* (soldier).
12. **κάθ-ημαι**, *sit down, be encamped*.
13. **ὁμοίως**, *equally, alike*.
14. **τὸ ὄφελος**,[3] *use, benefit*.
15. **πόρρω**, adv., *far from*.
16. **σκέπτομαι**,[4] *examine, consider*.
17. **φίλιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *friendly*.
18. **χαλεπός, -ή, -όν**, *hard, violent*.

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: πολέμιος; conjugate the present system of δοκέω.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. You will remain as safely as possible if you (shall) have provisions. 2. There is no advantage in a general without soldiers. 3. The soldiers are valuable friends to

[1] Cf. *aristo*-cracy.
[2] Cf. ἴδιος; Eng. *idiot*.
[3] Cf. ὠφελέω.
[4] Cf. Eng. *skeptic*.

whomsoever they may be friends. 4. They see the force which Cyrus has. 5. It is not a time for them to be sitting still (= down).

III. For Written Translation: 1. Therefore you (dat.) must consider how you will have provisions as long as you remain here. 2. For with these you are valuable friends (to those) to whom you may be friends. 3. You all see the power which he had. 4. For you were not far from him. 5. Speak, therefore, whatever you judge (= know) to be best. 6. Say (plu.) this (plu.) [and] stop!

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Expressions of *duty, necessity.* 2. Dative of agent. 3. Position of the gen. of reflexive pronoun. 4. ἔξω. 5. Future of liquid verbs. 6. Comparison of adverbs. 7. Gen. of value. 8. Gen. with adverbs. 9. Construction after ὥρᾱ. 10. Imperative in indirect discourse. 11. Conditional relative clauses with more probability.

LESSON LXI.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 13, 14, *ταῦτα . . . συσκευάζεσθαι.*

2. NOTES.

§ 13. **ἐκ τούτου**: *hereupon,* adv. phrase; lit. what? **ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου**: cf. Chap. II. § 17. **λέξοντες**: lit. *about to say;* translate, *in order to say, to say;* the fut. partc. is used to express purpose. **οἷᾱ**: *how great* (lit. *of what sort*), from οἷος. **εἴη**: opt. in indir. disc. after a past tense. **μένειν . . . ἀπιέναι**: both depend on ἀπορίᾱ, cf. *καθεύδειν* Chap. III. § 11.

§ 14. **εἷς . . . εἶπε**: *and one man in particular urged.* **σπεύδειν**: *to be eager,* depends on *προσποιούμενος.* **ὡς τάχιστα**: on ὡς cf. Chap. I. § 6; *τάχιστα,* adv., superl.; from the adj. *ταχύς,* adv. *ταχέως.* **πορεύεσθαι**: depends on *σπεύδειν.* **ἑλέσθαι**: depends on *εἶπε, urged them to choose;* so also the following infinitives, *ἀγοράζεσθαι, αἰτεῖν* (twice), *συντάττεσθαι, πέμψαι,* all depend upon *εἶπε.* **εἰ μὴ βούλεται**: the direct form of discourse is retained; *βούλοιτο* might have been used; note that *μή* is the negative used in conditional clauses even with the

indicative. **ἡ δ' ἀγορά . . . στρατεύματι**: parenthesis thrown in by Xenophon to show the absurdity of the proposition.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Future participles may express purpose.

2. The indicative and subjunctive of the direct discourse may be changed to the optative in the indirect discourse after historical tenses, or they may be retained.

3. The infinitive may depend upon nouns as well as upon verbs.

4. **μή** is the negative used in conditional clauses even with the indicative.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of *τῑμάω* in the pres. system mid., H. 323; G. 492.

2. Participles of purpose, H. 969, c; G. 1563, 4.

3. Indirect discourse, H. 930–933; G. 1475–1481.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀγοράζω**, *buy.*

2. **ἀν-ίστημι**, *raise up;* mid. *stand up, rise.*

3. **ἡ ἀπορίᾱ**,[1] *difficulty, perplexity.*

4. **ἐγκέλευστος, -ον**,[2] *instigated.*

5. **οἷος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *qualis, of what sort, what.*

6. **προς-ποιέομαι**, *pretend.*

7. **σπεύδω**, *hasten, be eager.*

8. **συ-σκευάζομαι**, *pack up.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: **εἷς, οἷος.**

II. For Oral Translation: 1. Of our own accord we shall say what we think. 2. The difficulty of going away without Cyrus is very great (superl.). 3. Let us hasten (subj.) to choose another general as quickly as possible unless (*εἰ μή*) you wish to lead. 4. Choose other generals as quickly as possible. 5. Another arose (*ἀνίστατο*) to speak.

III. For Written Translation: 1. Hereupon one arose to speak and the other remained sitting (*καθήμενος*). 2. The speaker (partc.) said this: 3. "Choose another general quickly, if you wish to return. 4. It is necessary for us to proceed into Greece. 5. If

[1] Cf. *ἀπορῶν*, Chap. III. § 8.

[2] From *ἐν* + *κελεύω*.

Clearchus is unwilling (= not willing, from ἐθέλω) to lead, choose some one else (= some other one)."

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Different ways of expressing purpose in Greek. 2. The negative in conditional clauses. 3. The indic. and subj. in indirect discourse. 4. The negative with the subjunctive, imperative, infinitive. 5. The opt. εἴη. 6. ὡς with superlatives.

LESSON LXII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. III. 14, *ἐλθόντας . . . τοσοῦτον.*

2. NOTES.

§ 14. **ἐλθόντας . . . αἰτεῖν**: *to go . . . and ask* Cyrus *for* boats; *ἐλθόντας* agrees with the subject of *ἑλέσθαι, ἀγοράζεσθαι*, etc., understood; note that the Greek idiom often uses an aorist participle and an infinitive where English requires two infinitives connected by *and.* **Κῦρον . . . πλοῖα**: two objects, one of the *person* and one of the *thing.* **ὡς ἀπο-πλέοιεν**: *ὡς = ἵνα* or *ὅπως*, *in order that;* note the uncontracted form of the verb; verbs in *-έω* of *two syllables* contract only when the contract syllable will be *ει* (cf. *δεῖ*), in other places the uncontracted forms are used, cf. *δέῃ* Chap. III. § 5, *δέοιτο* Chap. III. § 4. **ἐάν . . . διδῷ**: direct form retained; *διδῷ*, subjunctive; it might have been *εἰ . . . διδοίη.* **ὅστις . . . ἀπ-άξει**: lit. (a guide) *who shall lead*, i.e., *to lead;* translate, *some guide to lead;* a rel. clause to express purpose, cf. the fut. partc. used to express purpose, e.g., *λέξοντες* Chap. III. § 13; after the past tense, *ἀπάξοι* might have been used. **φιλίᾱς**: *through the country* (rendering it) *friendly*, implying that without a guide the country will be hostile; note the predicate position of the adjective. **μηδέ**; *not even.* **διδῷ**: pres. subj. act. 3d sing. of *δίδωμι.* **τὴν ταχίστην**: sc. *ὁδόν*, cf. Chap. II. § 20, adv. acc. **προ-κατα-ληψομένους**: sc. *ἄνδρας*, (*men*) *to pre-occupy the heights*, fut. partc. of purpose from *προκαταλαμβάνω.* **ὅπως . . . κατα-λαβόντες**: *in order that neither Cyrus nor the Cilicians may*

get the start (of us in) seizing them (i.e., the heights), *in order that . . . may occupy them before us;* *φθάσωσι*, aor. subj. of *φθάνω*; opt. might have been used; why? **ὧν**: part. gen. with *πολλούς*, and poss. gen. with *χρήματα*: *many of whom* (part. gen.) *and much of whose property* (*ὧν* is now poss. gen.) *we have seized and hold.* *ἀν-ηρπακότες*, from *ἀν-αρπάζω*; tense? **τοῦτον**: why not *τοῦτο*? **τοσοῦτον**: (*only*) *so much* (*as follows*), *only this.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Future relative clauses may express purpose.

2. The indicative and subjunctive of the direct discourse may be changed to the optative in the indirect discourse when the main verb refers to past time, or they may be retained.

3. The aorist participle and an infinitive are often used where English requires two infinitives connected by *and*.

4. Verbs of *asking, demanding,* etc., take two accusatives.

5. **μή** is the regular negative with the subjunctive, infinitive, imperative, all conditional clauses, and final clauses, when a negative is required.

6. Verbs of two syllables in -*έω* contract only to *ει*; elsewhere the uncontracted forms are used.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Verbs in -*έω* of two syllables, H. 411; G. 495.

2. Double object, H. 724; G. 1069.

3. Final relative clauses, H. 911; G. 1442.

4. Modes in final clauses, H. 880, 881, 885, 887; G. 1362, 1365, 1372, 1378.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **αἰτεῖν**, *ask for.*

2. **ἀπο-πλέω**, *sail away.*

3. **ὁ ἡγεμών**, *leader.*

4. **προ-κατα-λαμβάνω**, *seize in advance, pre-occupy.*

5. **φθάνω**, *anticipate.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *πολύς, ἡγεμών*; conjugate *αἰτεῖν* in the present system.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. We shall go (aor. partc.) [and] ask Cyrus for a boat that we may sail back. 2. Clearchus, send (men)

to ask for a friendly land. 3. If Cyrus does not lead (subj.) us back, ask for another leader. 4. In order that the enemy may not occupy the heights, choose other generals.

III. For Written Translation: 1. "Go and ask Cyrus for a boat that you may sail back. 2. And if Clearchus is unwilling to lead, ask him for some other general. 3. And in order that the king may not occupy the heights, send men to preoccupy them." 4. After this the Greeks chose Clearchus to lead (partc.) through the friendly land.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Purpose in Greek. 2. The negative in purpose and conditional clauses. 3. Modes in indirect discourse. 4. Aorist participle with an infinitive or with a finite mode. 5. Construction after verbs of *asking, demanding*. 6. Dissyllabic verbs in -έω. 7. Subjunctives in this lesson. 8. Future conditions with more probability (more vivid future). 9. Construction of *τὴν ταχίστην*, *ὢν* before *πολλούς*.

LESSON LXIII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 15, 16, *ὡς μέν . . . πρᾶξιν.*

2. NOTES.

§ 15. **ὡς στρατηγήσοντα ἐμέ**: *ὡς* with the partc., *let no one of you speak of me as about to lead*; *ἐμέ*, or *ὡς στρατηγήσοντα ἐμέ*, is the object of *λεγέτω*. **μηδείς**: note *μη-* with the imperative instead of *οὐ-δείς*; construction of *ὑμῶν*? **δι' ἅ** ff.: *on account of which* (= *why*) *this is not to be done by me, why I must not do this*; *ἐμοί* is the dat. of agent with the verbal; *ἐστί* is to be understood. **ὡς δέ**: before *ὡς* sc. *ἕκαστος λεγέτω*: *but* (*let each one say*) *that I shall obey*. **τῷ ἀνδρί**: dat. of indirect object, cf. *πιστεύειν*. **ὃν ἂν ἕλησθε**: cond. rel. clause of more probability, cf. Chap. III. § 12. **πείσομαι**: for *πεί(θ)σομαι*, fut. mid. of *πείθω*; *πάσχω* has the same future. **ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα**: sc. *ἐστιν*, cf. *ᾗ ἐδύναντο* Chap. II. § 4, *as much as possible*. **εἰδῆτε**: subjunctive from *οἶδα*, *that you may know*. **καί**: *also*. **ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι**: *that I*

know (how) to be ruled. **ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος**: *as even any other, as well as any other man (knows how to be ruled)*; why the accent on ὥς? *καί* often means *even, ălso.*

§ 16. **τοῦ . . . κελεύοντος**: *of the one who was urging*, etc. **ὥσπερ** ff.: *as if Cyrus were marching back again*, etc., gen. abs. **εὔηθες**: neut. to agree with *αἰτεῖν* which is the subj. of *εἴη*. **εἴη**: opt. in indirect discourse. **ᾧ . . . πρᾶξιν**: translate as if *οὗ*, *whose expedition*, dat. of disadvantage; lit. *for whom we are ruining*, etc. **λῡμαινόμεθα**: direct discourse where the indirect form of statement might have been expected.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ὡς** with participles represents the thought as belonging to some other than the writer or speaker.

2. Negatives compounded with *μη-*, not *οὐ-*, must be used with the imperative.

3. **διὰ ἅ** = *why.*

4. With verbals the agent or doer is usually expressed by the dative.

5. The dative of indirect object is used with verbs signifying *to obey, trust;* English requires the direct object.

6. **καί** = *also, even.*

7. **ὡς, ὅτι,** introduce finite clauses in indirect discourse, but not the infinitive.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of *εὐγενής*, H. 230, 232; G. 312, 313, 314 (*ἀληθής*).

2. Conjugation of the pres. system act. of *δηλόω*, H. 325, 243; G. 340, 341, 492.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **δυνατός, -ή, -όν,**[1] *able, possible.*
2. **ἐν-ορῶ**, *see*, or *discover in* (something).
3. **εὐήθης, εὔηθες**, *simple, foolish.*
4. **ἡ εὐήθεια**, *simplicity, folly.*
5. **λῡμαίνομαι**, *spoil, ruin.*
6. **μηδείς, οὐδείς**, *no one.*
7. **ἡ πρᾶξις,**[2] *business.*
8. **στρατηγέω**, *be general, command.*
9. **ἡ στρατηγίᾱ**, *military plan.*

[1] Cf. *δύναμαι, δύναμις.*

[2] Cf. *πράττω.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: πρᾶξις, μηδείς. Write a synopsis of ὁρῶ[1] in the present system.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. Let not the soldiers say that Cyrus will lead this expedition. 2. We shall obey the men whom we choose. 3. We know how to rule as well as any other man. 4. It is stupid to be asking our leader for boats. 5. He said that it was stupid to be asking the leader for boats.

III. For Written Translation: 1. "Do not be saying that I will lead; for I (dat. of agent) must not do this: but obey the leaders whom we select (= choose). 2. And let no one ask Cyrus for a boat. 3. For he (= this one) will not give it."

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. ὡς with participles. 2. Uses of the dative. 3. Optative in indirect discourse. 4. Meanings of καί. 5. Construction after verbs of *obeying, trusting*. 6. διά with the gen., with the acc. 7. Uses of ἄν. 8. Enclitics. 9. Proclitics. 10. Contraction in δηλόω.

LESSON LXIV.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 16, 17, εἰ δέ . . . εἶναι.

2. NOTES.

§ 16. **ἡγεμόνι**: why dat.? **τί**: interrogative pronoun, never changes the acute to the grave; *what (hinders?)*; order τί κωλύει Κῦρον καὶ κελεύειν προ-κατα-λαμβάνειν ἡμῖν τὰ ἄκρα, or Κῦρον may be taken as the obj. of κελεύειν and ἡμῖν as dat. of advantage. **καί**: *also*. **ἡμῖν**: dat. of disadvantage, *against us*. **προ-κατα-λαμβάνειν;**: note the Greek question mark (;). **τὰ ἄκρα** and προ-κατα-λαμβάνειν are emphatic in position; lit. *what hinders also* THE HEIGHTS *Cyrus to give orders to* PRE-OCCUPY *against us?*

[1] The imperfect has syllabic and temporal augment, e.g. ἑώρων.

§ 17. **ἐγώ**: emphatic, *I* (*for my part*). **ὀκνοίην ἄν**: *should be reluctant*, a so-called *potential optative*. **δοίη**: 2d aor. opt. act. of δίδωμι; a conditional relative clause with the opt. does not take ἄν as the subjunctive does. **μή**: *that, lest*, used after a verb of fearing, ὀκνοίην. **αὐταῖς ταῖς τριήρεσι**: lit. *with the triremes themselves*, translate, *lest he sink us triremes and all*; dat. of *accompaniment*. **τῷ ἡγεμόνι**: dat. of *association* after ἕπεσθαι. **ᾧ**: attracted to the case of ἡγεμόνι; = ὅν. **ὅθεν**: sc. (*to a place*) *from which*. **οὐκ ἔσται**: *it will not be possible*. Note the potential optatives in this section. **ἄκοντος Κύρου**: sc. ὄντος, gen. abs., connect with ἀπ-ιών: *if I go away without the consent of Cyrus*, lit. *Cyrus being unwilling*. **λαθεῖν**: *to escape his notice* (*in*) *going away, to go away without his knowledge, unobserved, secretly*. **ὅ**: neut. because it refers to the preceding clause.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The interrogative τίς does not change the acute to the grave.

2. Relative pronouns are often attracted into the case of their antecedents.

3. The dative expresses relations of *advantage* and *disadvantage; accompaniment* and *association*.

4. The optative with ἄν expresses something as possible or doubtful and is called the *potential optative*.

5. Conditional relative clauses with the optative do not take ἄν.

6. The supplementary participle is used with λανθάνω and contains the main idea; λανθάνω may be translated *secretly*.

7. After verbs of *fearing* the object of the fear is expressed by μή with the subjunctive.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of τίς (interrogative and indefinite), H. 277 and a; G. 415, 416, 418, 1.

2. Potential optative, H. 872; G. 1327, 1328.

3. Genitive absolute, H. 970–972; G. 1152, 1568.

4. Accusative absolute, H. 973, 974; G. 1569, 1570.

5. Conditional sentences (future), H. 898–900, 902; G. 1403, 1408, 1413.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄκων, -ουσα, -ον,**[1] *unwilling.*
2. **ἄρχω,** *rule, begin.*
3. **δύω,** *enter, cause to enter.*
4. **κατα-δύω,** *sink.*
5. **ἐμ-βαίνω,**[2] *go in, embark.*
6. **ὅθεν,** *whence.*
7. **ὀκνέω,** *hesitate.*
8. **φοβέω,**[3] *frighten;* pass., *be frightened, fear.*
9. **ἡ φλυᾱρίᾱ,** *nonsense.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Write a synopsis of *ὀκνέω* in the present system.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. We hesitate to embark in the boat. 2. You are afraid that (= *μή*) they will lead you away. 3. We should wish to obey our leader. 4. Cyrus wishes to sink us, boats and all. 5. If Cyrus trusts his soldiers, no one will hinder. 6. If the soldiers trust the leaders whom Cyrus may give to them, nothing hinders our (= us, *ἡμᾶς*) pre-occupying (= to pre-occupy) the heights. 7. He showed how (*ὡς*) foolish it was to ask guides from Cyrus.

III. For Written Translation: 1. I would not embark in a boat which he should give to any one. 2. And what prevents us from following (= to follow) the leaders whom we choose? 3. Do you fear that the leaders will sink all the boats? 4. This is stupid and impossible. 5. Let each one depart without the knowledge of Cyrus. 6. I fear that the guide whom Cyrus may give to us will lead us into a land from which it will be impossible to come out. 7. Therefore we will not follow him.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Accent of the interrogative and indefinite pronouns. 2. Attraction of relative pronouns. 3. Potential optative. 4. Optative in indirect discourse. 5. Optative in conditional relative clauses. 6. Participles with *τυγχάνω, λανθάνω.* 7. Dative of *accompaniment, association.* 8. Pronouns of the 1st and 2d persons as subjects. 9. Uses of *ἄν.* 10. Declension of the participle *δηλῶν.* 11. Declension of the interrogative and indefinite pronouns. 12. Future conditions. 13. Gen. and acc. absolute.

[1] From α- (called α-privative), *not*, and *ἑκών*, *willing*.

[2] *ἐμ* for *ἐν*, cf. *συμπραττω*.

[3] Cf. hydro-*phobia*.

LESSON LXV.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 18, 19, δοκεῖ . . . ἀφιέναι.

2. NOTES.

§ 18. **ἐλθόντας**: *go to Cyrus (and) ask;* agrees with ἄνδρας the sub. of the infinitive. **οἵτινες**: sc. εἰσιν, *whoever*, i.e., *such as (are suitable)*. **ἐρωτᾶν**: cf. τῑμᾶν; sub. of δοκεῖ; note that it takes two objects. **τί**: *what use he wishes to make of us, for what he wishes to use us.* **χρῆσθαι**: contracted from χράεσθαι, α-ε = η here, generally ᾱ, cf. τιμᾶσθαι. **παραπλησίᾱ οἵαπερ** (= τοιαύτῃ οἵᾱνπερ): *like to that for which;* words of *likeness* take a dat.; οἵᾱνπερ, like τι preceding, is a cognate accusative; note that χρῆσθαι governs the dat. of *means* or *instrument*, lit. *to serve one's self with.* **ἕπεσθαι . . . εἶναι**: subjects of δοκεῖ. **καὶ ἡμᾶς**: (*that*) *we too.* **κακίους**: = κακίονες, cf. πλείους Chap. III. § 7, pred. acc.; why acc.? from κακός; comparatives take what case after them? **τούτῳ**: construction?

§ 19. **μείζων**: in emphatic position, *if* GREATER *the business be found;* compare. **φαίνηται**: in the act. φαίνω = *I show;* mid., *I show myself, appear, am found;* why the subjunctive? **ἀξιοῦν**: from ἀξιόω, cf. δηλοῦν; sc. δοκεῖ from above; αὐτόν (i.e., Κῦρον), sub., with which the following participles agree. **πείσαντα . . . πεισθέντα**: from πείθω; where found? **πρὸς φιλίᾱν**: *in a friendly manner.* **ἀφ-ιέναι**: sc. ἡμᾶς; *to send away, to let go*, from ἀφ-ίημι (ἀπό + ἵημι); ἵημι, εἰμί, εἶμι are three very common verbs which must not be confused.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The verb *to be* is often omitted in Greek.
2. The infinitive is often the subject of a verb.
3. Verbs which seem to be impersonal often really have subjects.
4. **χρῆσθαι** takes the dative of means.
5. Words of resemblance govern the dative.
6. Comparatives take the genitive when ἤ is omitted.

7. **χράεσθαι** irregularly contracts to *χρῆσθαι*, cf. *τῑμᾶσθαι*.

8. An accusative which repeats the meaning of the verb in the noun is called a cognate accusative.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of the pres. system mid. of *δηλόω*, H. 325; G. 492.
2. Words of likeness, H. 773; G. 1175.
3. Comparison of *κακός*, H. 254, 2; G. 361, 2.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀφ-ίημι**, *send away, dismiss.*
2. **ἐπικίνδῡνος, -ον**, *dangerous.*
3. **ἐπίπονος, -ον**, *laborious.*
4. **ἐπιτήδειος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *suitable.*
5. **ἐρωτάω**, *ask.*
6. **κακός, -ή, -όν**, *bad.*
7. **κακίων, -ῑον**, *worse.*
8. **ὅστις**, *whoever;* **ὅ τι**, *whatever.*
9. **παραπλήσιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, or **-ος, -ον**, *like.*
10. **φαίνω**, *show.*
11. **φαίνομαι**, *appear.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Inflect *ἐρωτῶ, ἀξιῶ* in the present active.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. The men kept asking Cyrus for what he wished (opt.; why?) to use them. 2. The mercenaries are more cowardly than we (are). 3. The undertakings (from *πρᾶξις*) appear like the former (ones). 4. Cyrus either persuaded us or was himself persuaded.

III. For Written Translation: 1. But let men go and ask Cyrus what he wants (= wishes). 2. And if the enterprise be not (a) bad (one), we will follow him. 3. But if he shows that the enterprise is dangerous, ask him to let you go.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Declension of comparatives in *-ίων*. 2. Two ways of comparison. 3. Case after comparatives. 4. Potential optatives. 5. Case after *χράομαι, ἕπομαι*. 6. Comparison of *κακός*. 7. Impersonal verbs. 8. Dative of likeness (resemblance).

LESSON LXVI.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 19, 20, *οὕτω . . . σταθμούς.*

2. NOTES.

§ 19. **οὕτω . . . ἑπόμενοι**: *following thus* or *in that case, if we should follow thus,* conditional circumstantial participle. **ἄν**: goes with *ἑποίμεθα,* potential optative. **φίλοι καὶ πρόθῡμοι**: pred. adj. where adverbs might be expected in English. **ἀπ-ιόντες . . . ἀπ-ίοιμεν**: from *ἄπ-ειμι, I go away.* **ὅ τι ἄν . . . λέγῃ**: *whatever he may say in reference to this,* conditional relative clause of more probability. **ἀπ-αγγεῖλαι**: sc. δοκεῖ; aor. infin. **ἡμᾶς**: sub. of *βουλεύεσθαι.* **ἀκούσαντας**: *when we hear* (*it*), or *on hearing.*

§ 20. **ἔδοξε ταῦτα**: lit. *these things seemed good;* translate, *this was resolved upon, was voted.* **τῇ στρατιᾷ**: lit. (*the things which seemed best*) *to the army.* **ἀπ-εκρίνατο**: 1st aor. of a liquid verb. **ἀκούοι**: opt. in indirect disc. **ἐπί**: *upon* (*the bank of*), *at.* **ἀπ-έχοντα**: *distant.* **σταθμούς**: why acc.?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The 1st aorist of liquid verbs is formed without σ, and the theme vowel is lengthened in compensation.

2. Verbs of *asking* take two accusatives.

3. **ἵημι**, *I send,* has the theme **ἑ**; *εἶμι, ἰ*; *εἰμί, ἐσ.*

4. A neuter plural subject takes a singular verb.

5. **ἐπί** is used with the dative after verbs of rest; with the accusative after verbs of motion.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of *εἶμι.* H. 477, a, b, c; G. 808, 1, 2, 3.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀπ-αγγέλλω**, *report, bring back word.*
2. **ἀπ-έχω**, *hold off, be distant.*
3. **ἀπο-κρίνομαι**, *reply.*
4. **ἀφ-ίημι**, *send away, let go, dismiss.*
5. **δεῦρο** (adv.), *hither.*
6. **δώδεκα** (δύο + δέκα), *twelve.*
7. **πρόθῡμος, -ον**, *eager, zealous.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Conjugate ἀξιόω in the pres. mid. system; synopsis of ἐρωτάω in the pres. system act. and mid.; decline ὅστις.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. For thus if you should follow Cyrus, you would follow a friend (case?). 2. And whatever he should say (opt. without ἄν) you would report (opt. with ἄν) (it) hither. 3. Clearchus kept asking the generals for soldiers. 4. But they replied that Abrocomas was one stage distant.

III. For Written Translation: 1. And whatever may be said, report it hither. 2. And when we hear (partc.) we will deliberate in respect to this. 3. Therefore they chose (partc.) men and sent them to (πρός) Cyrus. 4. To them Cyrus replied. 5. "Abrocomas, a foe, is three stages distant."

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Meanings of ἐπί, πρός, εἰς, with the accusative. 2. Different ways of expressing conditions. 3. Impersonal verbs. 4. Infinitive as subject. 5. Dative of *likeness, means, advantage*. 6. Accusative of specification. 7. Verbs which take two accusatives. 8. Liquid aorists. 9. εἶμι. 10. Verbs with neut. plu. subjects. 11. ἐπί with the dative.

LESSON LXVII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iii. 20, 21, πρὸς τοῦτον . . . φανερῷ.

2. NOTES.

§ 20. **κἄν**: = καὶ ἐάν: crasis. **τὴν δίκην**: *the* (*fitting*) *punishment, punishment*, obj. of ἐπι-θεῖναι. **ἐπι-θεῖναι**: 2d aor. act. infin. of ἐπι-τίθημι, *to inflict*. **αὐτῷ**: governed by ἐπι- in composition. **ἤν**: = ἐάν. **βουλευσόμεθα**: abrupt change to the direct discourse, cf. λῡμαινόμεθα Chap. III. § 16.

§ 21. **ἀκούσαντες**: *when they had heard* (*this*). **τοῖς δέ**: cf. ὁ δ' Chap. III. § 20, dat. of poss., *they had a suspicion, they were suspicious.*

μέν: *to be sure.* **ἄγοι**: cf. ἀκούοι Chap. III. § 20. **προσ-αιτοῦσι**: *they ask for additional pay*, προσ- = *in addition.* **δώσειν**: fut. of δίδωμι; subject not expressed because it is the same as the subject of the principal verb. **οὗ**: = τούτου ὅν, *than that which;* τούτου, gen. after the comparative force in ἡμιόλιον. **τοῦ μηνός**: *per month, each month*, gen. of time (within which); the acc. expresses *duration of time.* **τῷ**: *each* (*soldier*); the article has a distributive force here, *the soldier*, i.e., one of the class. **ἐπὶ βασιλέα**: the soldiers suspected that Cyrus was leading them *to* the king (cf. ἄγοι πρὸς βασιλέα), but no one had yet heard, at least openly, that he was leading an expedition *against* him, seems to be the meaning of the passage; but ἐπί, does not always mean *against* and πρός may have that meaning. Cf. Chap. III. § 1. **ἐν . . . φανερῷ**: adv. phrase, *openly* (*at least* = γε).

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A word ending in a vowel may be fused with a following word beginning with a vowel; this is called *crasis* (mingling) and is marked by an apostrophe over the vowel of the resulting syllable.

2. **ἐπί** in composition governs the dative.

3. The dat. of possessor is used with the verb *to be.*

4. The subject of an infinitive is omitted when it is the same as the subject of the principal verb.

5. The gen. expresses the time *within which* something takes place, e.g., *by day, per month, each year;* the acc. shows *how long* something lasted.

6. Extent of space and duration of time are expressed by the accusative.

7. In indirect discourse the principal verb of the direct discourse may become an infinitive after certain verbs; cf. ἔφη.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Crasis, H. 76; G. 42.

2. Conjugation of the present system of δίδωμι, H. 330, 413; G. 506, 627.

3. Declension of διδούς, H. 242; G. 335.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἐκεῖ** (adv.), *there.*
2. **ἡμι-όλιος, -ᾱ, -ον,**[1] *one and a half.*
3. **ὅμως** (adv.), *nevertheless.*
4. **προσ-αιτέω,** *ask besides, ask in addition.*
5. **ὑποψίᾱ,**[2] *suspicion.*
6. **φανερός, -ά, -όν,**[3] *evident.*
7. **χρῄζω,** *desire.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *οὐδείς, οὗτος.*

II. Write a synopsis of *ἀξιόω* in the present system.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. And they said that they desired to go to him. 2. But Clearchus (dat.) suspected that the soldiers were going against the king. 3. Nevertheless he followed. 4. If the soldiers ask for extra (= *προσ-* in comp.) pay, Cyrus will give each man twelve darics per month. 5. If we flee (subj.), Cyrus will follow us. 6. If we should flee, Cyrus would follow us.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. "If he does not flee (subj.), I shall inflict punishment upon him." 2. Nevertheless it seemed best to the soldiers, although they heard (partc.) this, to ask for extra (*προσ-*) pay. 3. Therefore they asked for ten darics a month as wages. 4. The king was evidently (Gr. evident) leading against Cyrus. 5. If the king leads (mode?) against his foes, we shall follow. 6. If the king should hear (it), he would lead against us.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Prepositions in composition which govern the dative. 2. Omission of the subject of an infinitive. 3. The genitive and accusative of time. 4. Extent of space is how expressed? 5. The optative in indirect discourse. 6. The infinitive in indirect discourse. 7. Future conditional sentences. 8. Crasis. 9. *μι*-verbs. 10. Present subjunctive and optative of *δίδωμι.* 11. Endings of *μι*-verbs. 12. Theme and formation of *δίδωμι.* 13. Nominative singular of *διδούς.* 14. Name several uses of the subjunctive. 15. Construction of *τοῖς δέ* in § 21. 16. *ἄγοι* in § 21.

[1] Cf. *hemi*-sphere, Lat. *semi*; -ολιος from ὅλος, *whole, entire.*
[2] Cf. ὑποπτεύω.
[3] From φαν, the theme of φαίνω.

LESSON LXVIII.—REVIEW.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. III.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.[1]

1. Crasis. Enclitics.

2. Declension. — (*a*) εὐγενής; (*b*) διδούς; (*c*) πολύς; (*d*) comparison of adjectives, ἀγαθός, κακός, μέγας, μῑκρός, πολύς, πρότερος, ὕστερος; (*e*) ἐγώ, σύ, οἷ; (*f*) ἐμαυτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ, ἑαυτοῦ; (*g*) τίς, τὶς; (*h*) φιλῶν, τῑμῶν, δηλῶν; (*i*) λελυκώς, ἑστώς.

3. The Verb. — (*a*) φιλέω, τῑμάω, δηλόω; (*b*) φανῶ, ἔφηνα; (*c*) δίδωμι, pres. system; (*d*) verbals in -τέος; (*e*) εἰμί; (*f*) εἶμι; (*g*) verbs in -έω of two syllables.

4. Syntax. — (*a*) Position of genitive of reflexives; (*b*) verbs of *depriving;* (*c*) verbs of *action of the senses* or *mind;* (*d*) gen. of *crime;* (*e*) words of *likeness;* (*f*) acc. of *specification;* adv. acc.; cog. acc.; (*g*) double object; (*h*) attempted action; (*i*) potential optative; (*j*) final clauses; (*k*) rel. clauses of purpose; (*l*) conditions; (*m*) cond. rel. clauses; (*n*) indirect discourse; (*o*) participles, circumstantial; (*p*) genitive absolute; (*q*) supplementary participle; (*r*) verbals in -τέος (syntax).

3. VOCABULARY.

VERBS.

1. ἀγοράζω.
2. ἀδικέω.
3. αἱρέω, αἱρέομαι.
4. αἰσχῡ́νω, -ομαι.
5. ἀλέξω.
6. ἀμελέω.
7. ἀν-ίστημι.
8. ἀπ-αγγέλλω.
9. ἄπ-ειμι.
10. ἀπ-έχω.
11. ἀπο-κρῑ́νομαι.
12. ἀπο-πλέω.
13. ἀπορέω.
14. ἄρχω.
15. ἀφ-αιρέω.
16. ἀφ-ίημι.
17. βιάζομαι.
18. γιγνώσκω.
19. δακρῡ́ω.
20. δαπανάω.
21. δείδω.
22. δέω, δέομαι.
23. δῡ́ω.
24. ἐκ-φεύγω.
25. ἐμ-βαίνω.
26. ἐν-οράω.
27. ἐν-τυγχάνω.
28. ἐξ-ελαύνω.
29. ἐπ-αινέω.
30. ἐπίσταμαι.

[1] Only topics are suggested; the teacher should divide this lesson to suit the needs of the class.

31. ἐρῶ (φημί).
32. ἐρωτάω.
33. ἐπι-τίθημι.
34. ἕπομαι.
35. θαρρέω.
36. καθ-εύδω.
37. καθ-ηδυπαθέω.
38. κάθ-ημαι.
39. κατα-δύω.
40. κατα-πετρόω.
41. λῡμαίνομαι.
42. λῡπέω.
43. μισθόω.
44. οἶδα.
45. οἶμαι.
46. ὀκνέω.
47. ὁράω.
48. πάσχω.
49. προ-δίδωμι.
50. προ-κατα-λαμβάνω.
51. προσ-αιτέω.
52. προσ-έρχομαι.
53. προσ-ποιέομαι.
54. σιωπάω.
55. σκέπτομαι.
56. σπεύδω.
57. στρατηγέω.
58. στρατοπεδεύω.
59. συν-άγω.
60. συ-σκευάζομαι.
61. τῑμάω.
62. τῑμωρέω, -έομαι.
63. ὑπο-λείπω.
64. φαίνω, φαίνομαι.
65. φέρω.
66. φημί.
67. φθάνω.
68. φοβέω, -έομαι.
69. χράομαι.
70. χρή.
71. χρήζω.
72. ψεύδω.

NOUNS.

1. ἡ ἀνάγκη.
2. ἡ ἀπορίᾱ.
3. ἡ γνώμη.
4. ἡ δίκη.
5. ἡ ἐκκλησίᾱ.
6. τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
7. ἡ εὐήθεια.
8. ὁ ἐχθρός.
9. ὁ ἡγεμών.
10. ὁ ἰδιώτης.
11. ὁ μισθοδότης.
12. τὸ ὄφελος.
13. ἡ πατρίς.
14. ἡ πρᾶξις.
15. τὰ σκευοφόρα.
16. ἡ στρατηγίᾱ.
17. ὁ σύμμαχος.
18. τὸ ὑποζύγιον.
19. ἡ ὑποψίᾱ.
20. ἡ φλυᾱρίᾱ.
21. ὁ χρόνος.
22. ἡ ὥρᾱ.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄκων.
2. ἄξιος.
3. ἄριστος.
4. ἀσφαλής.
5. δῆλος.
6. δίκαιος.
7. δυνατός.
8. ἐγκέλευστος.
9. ἐπικίνδῡνος.
10. ἐπίπονος.
11. ἐπιτήδειος.
12. ἔρημος.
13. εὐήθης.
14. ἡμέτερος.
15. ἡμιόλιος.
16. ἴδιος.
17. κακός, κακί̄ων.
18. μῑκρός.
19. οἷος.
20. παραπλήσιος.
21. πολύς, πλείων.
22. πρόθῡμος.
23. πρότερος.
24. πρῶτος.
25. τί̄μιος.
26. φανερός.
27. φίλιος.
28. χαλεπός.

ADVERBS.

1. αὐτοῦ.
2. ἀσφαλῶς.
3. δεῦρο.
4. δῆλον ὅτι.
5. ἐκεῖ.
6. ἔπειτα.
7. εὖ.
8. λάθρᾳ.
9. ὅθεν.

10. ὁμοίως.
11. ὅμως.
12. οὔποτε.
13. πῄ, ὅπῃ.
14. πόρρω.
15. πού, ὅπου.
16. πρόσω.
17. πώ.
18. τότε.
19. ὕστερον.
20. χαλεπῶς.
21. ὥσπερ.

PRONOUNS.

1. μηδείς, οὐδείς.
2. ὅστις.
3. σύ, ὑμεῖς.

PREPOSITIONS.

1. ἄνευ.
2. ἀντί.
3. μετά.
4. ὑπέρ.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. ἕως, ἵνα.

LESSON LXIX.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. IV. 1–3, Ἐντεῦθεν . . . βασιλέᾱ.

2. NOTES.

§ 1. **παρασάγγᾱς**: sound of γγ? construction? **ἐσχάτην**: *frontier.* **πόλιν**: construction? **ἐπί**: note the different uses and meanings of the word in this section. **οἰκουμένην**: *situated, lying;* lit. what? compare μέγας.

§ 2. **ἔμειναν**: pres.? fut.? where found? explain its formation. **τρεῖς**: case? what is the neut.? **Κύρῳ**: *for Cyrus,* dat. of advantage. **νῆες**: *ships;* from ναῦς, Lat. *navis;* case? **αὐταῖς**: refers to what? why fem.? **ναύ-αρχος**: *ship-commander;* composition of the word? **αὐταῖς**: note the dat. after ἡγέομαι, a poetical construction where the gen. is usually found in prose. **ἔχων**: *with.* **ναῦς**: acc. plu.; nom. sing.? **αἷς**: dat. of *means.* **ἐπολιόρκει** and **συνεπολέμει** (below): continued action, as a plup. tense; *with which he had been besieging . . . had been waging war in company with Cyrus against,* etc. **ὅτε**: many texts have ὅτι; difference in meaning? **φίλη**: why fem.? **Κύρῳ**: construction? **αὐτόν**: Tissaphernes.

§ 3. **ἐπί**: *upon,* cf. ἐπ' αὐταῖς § 2.[1] **νε-ῶν**: gen. plu. of ναῦς. **ὧν**: cf. αὐταῖς § 2. **παρά**: *under,* lit. what? meaning with the gen.? acc.? **παρά**: *along, by;* perhaps the acc. is used because ὥρμουν implies previous motion. **παρὰ Ἀβροκόμᾱ**: *from;* with the *Doric gen.;* ᾱ for (ᾱ-ο) -ου of the 1st decl. masc. **συνεστρατεύοντο**: sc. αὐτῷ; how governed?

[1] When no chapter is indicated the reference is to the current chapter.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Predicate nouns do not often have the article; the subject may often be known by the article, cf. *τὸ εὖρος, πλέθρα* § 1.

2. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

3. Genitives, appositives, and prepositional phrases may occupy the attributive position.

4. **ναῦς** is irregularly declined.

5. Verbs of *ruling, leading, commanding*, govern the gen.

6. The dative is used to express *instrument* or *means*, also *advantage*.

7. **ἔχων** may often be translated *with*.

8. Prepositional constructions, even when dependent upon a noun, are often affected and changed by a verb, cf. *παρὰ Ἀβροκόμᾱ, ὥρμουν παρὰ τὴν σκηνήν*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of *ναῦς*, H. 206, 207; G. 268.

2. Conjugation of *τίθημι* in the present system, H. 329; G. 506.

3. Principal parts of *τίθημι, δίδωμι*, H. 534, 1, 4; G. pp. 380, 402.

4. Verbs of *ruling*, . . . H. 741; G. 1109.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἕτερος, -ᾱ, -ον,**[1] *other* (of two).

2. **ἡγέομαι,** *lead, think.*

3. **μετά-πεμπτος, -ον,** *sent for.*

4. **ὁ μισθο-φόρος,**[2] *pay-receiving, mercenary* (soldier).

5. **ἡ ναῦς,** *ship.*

6. **ὁ ναύ-αρχος,** *ship-commander, captain, admiral.*

7. **ὁρμέω,** *lie at anchor.*

8. **τὸ στάδιον,** *a stadion, furlong* (606¾ Eng. feet).

9. **στρατηγέω,** *command.*

10. **φίλος,** *friend, friendly* (adj.).

6. EXERCISES.

I. Locate[3] the verbs in § 3.

II. Decline *εὖρος, θαλάττη*; write a synopsis in the present system of *ὁρμέω*.

[1] Cf. Eng. *hetero*-dox.

[2] *μισθός, pay; φέρω, I bear.*

[3] I.e., tell where they are found: the following is a convenient order, e.g., *λύει*, pres. indic. act. 3d sing.; *λύειν*, pres. infin. act.; *λύων*, pres. partc. act. nom. sing. masc.

III. For Oral Translation: 1. Here there was a river three plethra in width. 2. Pythagoras, the ship-commander, was present with (= having) his ship. 3. They are besieging Miletus with the other ships. 4. We are waging war in company with Tamos. 5. There are also present seven hundred hoplites whom we command. 6. Abrocomas revolts (aor. partc.) (and) comes to Cyrus. 7. The ship of Cyrus lies at anchor beside his own tents.

IV. For Written Translation: 1. Tamos arrived for Cyrus with sixty ships and with Pythagoras as ship-commander. 2. Because (ὅτι) Miletus was friendly to the great king it had been besieged by Tamos. 3. Chirisophus commands seven hundred hoplites under (= beside) Cyrus. 4. Here also a certain other (ἄλλος) revolted (partc.) from Abrocomas and came to Cyrus.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The article with predicate words. 2. Duration of time and extent of space how expressed. 3. Attributive expressions. 4. ναῦς. 5. Case after verbs of *ruling*. 6. *Means, instrument, advantage*, how expressed. 7. Cases after παρά. 8. Translation of ἔχων. 9. ἐκ, ἀπό. 10. μι-verbs. 11. ἐπί in §§ 1 and 3. 12. Accent of παρῆν. 13. Accent of verbs; accent in the 3d decl. 14. Dative with συνεπολέμει. 15. ν in εἴκοσιν. 16. Principal parts. 17. Verb systems.

LESSON LXX.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. IV. 4, 5, Ἐντεῦθεν . . . στρατιᾶς.

2. NOTES.

§ 4. **ταῦτα**: subj. of ἦσαν; agrees in gender with τείχη, but the verb is plu. because ταῦτα really refers to πύλαι; αὗται might have been expected. **τείχη**: nom. sing.? gender? stem? **τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν**; sc. τεῖχος: contrasted with τὸ δὲ ἔξω. **ἔσωθεν**: adv. used as attributive. **τό . . . Κιλικίας**: attributive to τεῖχος understood. **πρό**: *toward; on the side of*, lit. *before*. **εἶχε**: sing. to agree with the first named

and most important subject. **φυλακή**: meaning of φύλακας? φυλακάς? **μέσου**: used as a substantive, *the middle, the space between;* διὰ μέσου = between. **ὄνομα, εὖρος**: acc. of specification. **πλέθρου**: gen. of measure. **ἅπᾱν**: strengthened form of πᾶν. **μέσον**: used substantively, *space between.* **ἦσαν**: plu. to agree with the predicate στάδιοι. **οὐκ ἦν**: = οὐκ ἦν δυνατόν, cf. οὐκ ἔσται Chap. III. § 17. **βίᾳ**: why dat.? **καθ-ήκοντα**: sc. ἦν, pred. partc.; καθ- = *down.* **ἐφ-ει-στή-κε-σαν**: *had been set in,* trans., *had been built in;* construction of τείχεσιν?

§ 5. **ἕνεκα**: preposition governing the gen., usually placed after the word which it governs; *on account of the pass.* **ναῦς**: case? **ἀπο-βιβάσειεν**: why opt.? **τῶν πυλῶν**: gen. with adv. **βιασομένους**: fut. partc. to express purpose. **φυλάττοιεν**: sc. οἱ πολέμιοι, opt. in the indir. disc., standing for ἐὰν φυλάττωσιν in direct discourse. **ὅπερ**: *which very* (thing), *the very thing which.* **ὁ . . . Κῦρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμᾱν**: the article is used with proper names to refer to one well-known or *named in the context.* **ἔχοντα**: causal, *because he had.* **Κῦρον . . . ὄντα**: (*heard that*) *Cyrus was,* suppl. partc., here called participle in indirect discourse, used with a verb of hearing. **στρατιᾶς**: *of army = of soldiers.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **στάδιον** (plu. στάδια and στάδιοι) has forms belonging to two genders.

2. The verb *to be* may agree in number with its predicate instead of its subject.

3. **ἔστι, ἔσται, ἦν,** sometimes = *is, will be, was,* POSSIBLE.

4. **ἕνεκα, μέν, οὖν, δέ,** put after one or more words in their sentences, are called *post-positive.*

5. The supplementary participle follows verbs of hearing and is translated as if an infinitive.

6. The Greek often uses the personal construction where English prefers the impersonal.

7. Adverbs and phrases may be used as attributives.

8. **μέσος** in the predicate position = *middle of.*

9. Many adverbs of place govern the genitive.

10. The article is used with proper names to refer to what is well known or named in the context.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of the present system of ἵστημι, H. 331, 414, 415; G. 506.

2. Principal parts and meaning of ἵστημι, H. 534, 5; 500, 1; G. 509.

3. Principal parts of πέμπω,[1] H. 508, 21; G. p. 396.

4. The future in indirect discourse, H. 855; G. 1276.

5. The infinitive in indirect discourse, H. 930, 2; 946; G. 1494, 1495.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀνα-στρέφω**, *turn back, retreat.*
2. **ἀπ-ελαύνω**, *march away.*
3. **ἀπο-βιβάζω**,[2] *disembark, land.*
4. **ἡ βίᾱ**,[3] *force, violence.*
5. **ἔξω**,[4] *without, outer, outside of.*
6. **ἔσωθεν**,[5] *within, inner.*
7. **ἕνεκα** (with gen.), *on account of.*
8. **ἐφ-ίστημι**, *place upon.*
9. **ἠλίβατος, -ον**, *steep, inaccessible.*
10. **καθ-ήκω**, *come down, extend down.*
11. **ἡ μῡριάς**, *myriad,* 10,000.
12. **τὸ ὄνομα**,[6] *name.*
13. **ὅσπερ, ὅπερ**, *who* or *which very, just who* or *which.*
14. **παρ-έρχομαι**, *come* or *go by.*
15. **παρ-ῆλθον**, *came* or *went by.*
16. **ἡ πάρ-οδος**, *way past, pass.*
17. **ἡ πέτρᾱ**, *rock.*
18. **ἡ πύλη**[7] (usually plu.), *gate.*
19. **στενός, -ή, -όν**,[8] *narrow.*
20. **τὸ τεῖχος**, *wall.*
21. **ὕπερθεν** (adv.), *above.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline: *ναῦς, ἀναστρέψᾱς, τεῖχος, φυλακή.*

II. Write a synopsis of πέμπω in the active voice (cf. H. 313; G. pp. 96, 97).

III. For Oral Translation: 1. There were two walls in Cilicia which the guards held. 2. It was said that the garrisons were guarding the outer wall. 3. Between the gates rivers flow. 4. The inner wall was more narrow than the outer. 5. They will send for their ship. 6. The enemy passed by. 7. For they thought that Cyrus would keep guard (φυλάξειν) with (= having) a great army. 8. Cyrus will hear that they are in Cilicia. 9. Therefore he will

[1] Note that the perf. mid., πέ-πεμ-μαι, loses the final π of the theme between two μ's.
[2] Lit. *cause to go off.*
[3] Cf. ἐβιάζετο Chap. III. § 1.
[4] Cf. ἐκ, ἐξ.
[5] Cf. εἰς.
[6] Cf. pseud-*onym*, an-*onym*-ous.
[7] Cf. Thermo-*pylæ*, *Hot-gates.*
[8] Cf. Eng. *steno*-graphy.

turn back (aor. partc.) (and) march away (from ἀπελῶ, conjugated like τῑμῶ).

IV. For Written Translation: 1. The gates were two walls. 2. The inner (wall) the garrison of Syennesis occupied, but the outer (one) the king was guarding. 3. Between these gates there was the Carsus river. 4. On account of the gates Cyrus sent for a ship to overpower (partc.) the enemy. 5. For he thought that Abrocomas would keep guard at the walls. 6. But he (Abrocomas) turned away, since he had heard (aor. partc.) that we were in Cilicia.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Postpositive words. 2. The neuter plu. subject. 3. Agreement of the verb with two subjects. 4. Tenses of the direct discourse in indirect discourse. 5. Modes of the direct discourse in indirect discourse. 6. The partc. with ἀκούω. 7. Modes in clauses of purpose. 8. The fut. infin. in indirect discourse. 9. Peculiarities of μι-verbs. 10. Personal construction. 11. Attributives and the attributive position. 12. The article with proper names. 13. Adverbs which govern the genitive. 14. Meanings of ἵστημι in different tenses.

LESSON LXXI.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iv. 6, 7, Ἐντεῦθεν . . . ἁλώσοιντο.

2. NOTES.

§ 6. **ἐμπόριον**: pred. nom.; why not subject?

§ 7. **ἔμειναν**: theme μεν, fut. μενῶ for μενέ(σ)ω contracted like φιλῶ; tense? **ἐμ-βά-ντ-ες**: *embarked in a boat . . . put on board . . . (and) sailed away;* note that the aor. participles are used where we should expect aor. indicatives coördinate with ἀπέπλευσαν. **τὰ πλείστου ἄξια**: *their (things) worth most;* trans., *their most valuable effects;* πλείστου, gen. of value after ἄξια. **ἐν-θέ-μενοι**: 2d aor. mid. partc. from ἐντίθημι; force of the middle? **ἀπ-έπλευσαν**: 1st aor. of ἀποπλέω. **ὡς . . . ἐδόκουν**: *as it seemed,* lit. *as they seemed,* personal construction. **φιλο-**

τῑμηθέντες: *being jealous, from jealousy,* or *because they were jealous,* causal. **τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς αὐτῶν**: *their soldiers, who had gone away* (= *over*) *to Clearchus, supposing that* (ὡς) *they were going,* etc., . . . *Cyrus was permitting Clearchus to have;* τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς is the obj. of ἔχειν. **εἴᾱ**: imperf. of ἐάω, cf. ἐτίμᾱ (for ἐ-τίμα-ε); has the syllabic augment contracted with initial vowel, ἐ-έα-ε becoming εἴᾱ, cf. εἶχον for ἔ-εχον. Note the article with the proper name Κλέαρχον. **ἀφανεῖς**: *un-seen, out of sight;* from ἀφανής, cf. φαίνομαι, like ἀληθής, εὐγενής. **διῆλθε**: *went through* (*the army*), *became current.* **λόγος**: *a rumor.* **διώκοι**: opt. in indir. disc. after a past tense. **ὡς**: *on the ground that,* with the partc. **δειλους**: pred. after ὄντας; why acc.? **ληφθῆναι**: from λαμβάνω; where found? **ᾤκτειρον**: sc. αὐτούς; imperf. of οἰκτείρω. **ἁλώσοιντο**: fut. opt. of ἁλίσκομαι (used as a pass. of αἱρέω), cf. διώκοι preceding; the direct thought was: "We pity them, if they shall be taken."

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Aorist participles are often used with finite modes as well as with infinitives where English expects coördinate verbs.

2. *Value* is expressed by the genitive.

3. The participle with an article may generally be translated as a relative clause.

4. The optative may take the place of an indicative or subjunctive in indirect discourse after a past tense.

5. Liquid verbs form their future, without σ, in -έω and contract as in φιλῶ.

6. *Means* is expressed by the dative case.

7. **εὐ** augments to ηὐ; οἰ to ᾠ.

8. Predicate nouns generally omit the article.

9. Proper names generally omit the article.

10. The Greek is fond of the personal construction.

11. **λαβ** becomes ληβ in the future and 1st aor. pass. of λαμβάνω.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of the present system of δείκνῡμι, H. 332; G. 506.

2. Principal parts of φυλάττω, H. 514, 11; G. p. 405.

3. Principal parts of δείκνῡμι, H. 528, 3; G. p. 379.

4. Principal parts of λαμβάνω, H. 523, 5; G. p. 390.
5. The mutes before μ, H. 53; G. 75.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἁλίσκομαι**, *be taken, captured.*
2. **ἀπ-έρχομαι**, *go away.*
3. **ἀπο-πλέω**,[1] *sail away.*
4. **αὐτόθι**, *here, there.*
5. **ἀφανής, -ές**,[2] *out of sight, invisible.*
6. **δειλός, -ή, -όν**, *cowardly, miserable.*
7. **δι-έρχομαι**, *go through, spread* (of rumor).
8. **διώκω**, *pursue.*
9. **ἐάω**, *permit.*
10. **ἐμ-βαίνω**, *go on board, embark.*
11. **τὸ ἐμπόριον**,[3] *port, place of trade.*
12. **ἐν-τίθημι**, *place in, on* (*board*).
13. **εὔχομαι**, *pray.*
14. **λόγος**,[4] *word, rumor.*
15. **οἰκτείρω**, *pity.*
16. **ἡ ὁλκάς**, *freight ship.*
17. **φιλο-τῖμέομαι**, (*love honor*), *be jealous.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline ὁλκάς, δεικνῡ́ς, ἀφανής.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. The city Myriandus was captured by an army. 2. Many ships lie at anchor there. 3. They embark in (= into) the boats of Pasion. 4. Many thought (= they seemed to many) that they were jealous. 5. Cyrus does not permit his soldiers to go back (= away) to the king. 6. Their valuable effects were placed on (board) (= ἐνετέθη). 7. Cyrus will permit (from ἐάσω) Clearchus to take (aor. partc.) his soldiers and to go back.

III. For Written Translation: 1. Thence they marched through a region (which was) inhabited by Phœnicians. 2. The general embarks (aor. partc.) in his boat and sails away because of jealousy (= being jealous). 3. Cyrus permits very many (superl.) generals to have their soldiers. 4. An obscure rumor is going through (the army) that the other generals are pursuing the king. 5. Many pity him if he is taken (= shall be taken).

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Aorist participle with infinitives and finite modes. 2. How to express agency. 3. Subject and predicate with the verb *to be*. 4. Agreement of ἐμβάντες § 7. 5. Construction of πλείστοις § 7.

[1] Cf. πλοῖον, *boat*.
[2] α-privative (negative) and φαίνομαι.
[3] Eng. *emporium*.
[4] Cf. Eng. words in *-logy*, e.g., geo-*logy*, minera-*logy*.

6. Comparison of πλείστοις. 7. Means is how expressed in Greek? 8. The article with proper names. 9. The fut. and 1st aor. of liquid verbs. 10. Post-positive words. 11. Three prepositions which govern the genitive only; two which govern the dative only. 12. Classification of consonants. 13. Conjugation of ἐάω in the present system.

LESSON LXXII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. IV. 8, 9, **Κῦρος . . . συνεπορεύοντο.**

2. NOTES.

§ 8. **συγ-καλέσᾱς**: συγ = συν; why γ? its sound? **τοὺς στρατηγούς**: i.e., the Greeks. **Ἀπο-λε-λοίπᾱσιν**: direct disc.; why plu.? **ἀλλ᾽ . . . μέντοι**: *but nevertheless (let them know) full well* (lit. well at least). **ἐπιστάσθων**: imperative 3d plu. of ἐπίσταμαι (deponent). **ἀπο-δε-δρᾱ́κᾱσιν**: from ἀπο-διδρᾱ́σκω, *have they run away, eluded,* in the manner of slaves. **οἶδα**: 2d perf. with a pres. meaning. **ὅπῃ**: *in what* (*way,* sc. ὁδῷ), *whither;* adv. **οἴχονται**: present with a perf. meaning, where *they are,* or *have, gone;* contrast with οἶδα. **ἀπο-πε-φεύγ-ᾱσιν**: lit. *have fled away, escaped* (like an enemy). **ὥστε**: with the infin. to express result. **ἑλεῖν**: present? meaning of the middle? the subj. is not expressed because it is the same as the subj. of ἔχω; *so as to capture, so that I can take.* **μά**: *by* (*the gods*); an adv. of swearing used with negative oaths and followed by the acc. case. **ἔγω-γε**: *I at least, I for my part.* **ἐρεῖ**: fut. classed with εἶπον, εἴρηκα; *no one shall say.* **ἐγώ**: note that the pronoun is expressed because it is desired to make the subject emphatic. **ἕως . . . τις**: *as long as any one is present with me,* = *if any one,* etc.; conditional rel. sentence expressing a *general truth,*[1] note ἄν with the subjunctive; after past tenses the opt. without ἄν is used. **χρῶμαι**: for χράομαι, *use, make use of* (him, i.e., τινί); remember that χράομαι takes the dative; why? **ἐπειδὰν δέ**: = ἐπειδή + ἂν δέ; ἐπειδάν with

[1] I.e., what (*always*) occurs when any one is with Cyrus; note the present tense in the conclusion (apodosis), χρῶμαι; if the conclusion were future, the conditional rel. clause would be a clause of more probability.

βούληται, another general conditional rel. clause, cf. *ἕως* preceding; *ἄν* is here compounded with *ἐπειδή* to *ἐπειδάν*. **συλλαβών . . . ποιῶ**: *that I arrest . . . (and) both do harm to (the men) themselves.* **αὐτούς**: plu. where *αὐτόν* might have been expected from *τίς*, but *τίς* is regarded as collective, one of a class; it is the direct object, though English requires a preposition, *to*, with the object. **τὰ χρήματα**: *(rob them of) their money;* for the plu. cf. *αὐτούς*. **ἰόντων**: imperative, *(but) let them go.* **εἰδότες**: *knowing;* partc. from *οἶδα*, nom. *εἰδώς*. **κακίους**: case? positive? *worse, more unjust.* **ἢ ἡμεῖς**: sc. what? **καίτοι**: *and yet.* **αὐτῶν**: *of theirs*, lit. *of* (i.e., belonging to) *them.* **καί . . . καί**: *both . . . and.* **φρουρούμενα**: neut. because both wives and children are considered as things or chattels. **ἀλλ' οὐδέ**: *but not even of these shall they be deprived.* **τούτων**: *gen. of separation.* **στερήσονται**: mid. with pass. signification. **ἕνεκα**: governs what case? its position? **περὶ ἐμέ**: in the attributive position; why? note that the longer forms of the personal pronouns are used after prepositions; *not περί με.*

§ 9. **ταῦτα**: *this.* **εἴ τις . . . ἦν**: *even* (= *καί*) *if any one had been somewhat disheartened* (lit. more disheartened), *whoever had been*, etc.; note the force of the comparative degree here, *somewhat*, or *rather, disheartened.* **ἀκούοντες**: *on hearing.* **ἀρετήν**: *magnanimity.* **ἥδῑον**: *more gladly,* comparative adv.; positive *ἡδέως*, comp. *ἥδῑον*, superl. *ἥδιστα*; the acc. neut. sing. of the adj. is used for the comparative of the adv.; the acc. neut. plu. for the superl.; both were originally *adverbial accusatives;* cf. *προθῡμότερον* following.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Before palatals *ν* becomes *γ* nasal.

2. **οἶδα** is a 2d perfect with present meaning.

3. **οἴχομαι** is a present with perfect meaning.

4. **ὥστε** with the infinitive expresses result.

5. The subject of an infinitive is not expressed when it is the same as the subject of the principal verb.

6. The nominative case of the personal pronouns is not used except for emphasis.

7. General conditional relative clauses of present time take a rel. + *ἄν* with the subjunctive in the condition, and the pres. indic. in the conclusion.

8. **χράομαι** governs the *dative* (of means, instrument).

9. Verbs of depriving may take the genitive of *separation.*

10. **ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ** are used after prepositions rather than *μοῦ, μοί, μέ.*

11. Adverbs take for their comparative the acc. neut. sing. of the adjective; for their superlative, the acc. neut. plu. of the adjective.

12. **γυνή** (plu. *γυναῖκες*) is irregularly declined.

13. Enclitics of two syllables after paroxytones retain the accent on the ultima, cf. *κακίους εἰσί* § 8.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of *γυνή*, H. 216, 4; G. 291, 8.
2. Principal parts of *φεύγω*, H. 511, 15; G. p. 404.
3. Conjugation of *οἶδα*, H. 491; G. 820.
4. Principal parts of *μένω*, H. 510, 14; G. p. 392.
5. Principal parts of *ἔρχομαι*, H. 539, 2; G. p. 383.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄθῡμος, -ον,**[1] *dispirited, disheartened.*
2. **ἡ ἀνάβασις**, *upward march.*
3. **ἀπο-διδρᾱ́σκω,**[2] *run off* (by stealth), *elude.*
4. **ἀπο-λείπω**, *leave behind, forsake, desert.*
5. **ἀπο-σῡλάω**, *steal, rob.*
6. **ἀπο-φεύγω**, *flee away, escape.*
7. **ἡ ἀρετή**, *goodness, magnanimity, fidelity.*
8. **ἔγωγε**, *equidem, I at least.*
9. **ἐπειδάν**[3] (with subj.), *whenever, after.*
10. **ὁ θεός,**[4] *god.*
11. **κακός, -ή, -όν**, *bad, base.*
12. **κακῶς**, *badly.*
13. **κακῶς ποιέω**, *injure, wrong.*
14. **μά** (adv. of swearing), *nay, by.*
15. **οὐδέ**, *not even, nor yet.*
16. **οἴχομαι**, *be gone, departed.*
17. **προθύμως**, *with spirit, zealously.*
18. **στερέω**, *deprive.*
19. **συγ-καλέω**, *call together.*
20. **τὸ τέκνον**, *child.*
21. **φρουρέω,**[5] *guard.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Write a synopsis of the middle and passive of **ποιῶ.**

II. For Oral Translation: 1. Cyrus said to the generals: 2. "Let Xenias take (partc.) his soldiers and go away, if he wishes.

[1] ἀ-privative (like the English suffix *-less* in spirit-less), *θῡμός, mind, courage.*
[2] Theme, *δρα*; cf. *δρό-μος.*
[3] *ἐπεί* + *δή* + *ἄν*, followed by the *subjunctive.*
[4] Cf. Eng. *theo-logy.*
[5] Cf. *φρουράρχοις* XX.

3. For I will neither seize him nor do harm to his children and wives. 4. However, he will be deprived of his triremes and boats." 5. The soldiers were more despondent than Cyrus in respect to the valor (fr. ἀρετή) of the generals. 6. However, they followed most gladly and zealously.

III. For Written Translation: 1. The generals said: 2. "We shall neither arrest nor pursue Pasion. 3. But by the gods, let him go, well knowing that he is most cowardly. 4. But whenever we may wish to do harm to him, we will seize his wife and children. 5. However, on account of his former fidelity, although we have possessions of his (= him), we shall not deprive him (acc.) of these." 6. The Greeks, on hearing this, were rather despondent.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Gamma nasal. 2. Clauses of result; purpose. 3. When is the subject of the infinitive omitted? 4. Pronouns of the 1st and 2d person as subjects. 5. General cond. relative clauses of present time. 6. Genitive of separation. 7. Case after χράομαι. 8. Formation and comparison of adverbs. 9. Enclitics of two syllables after paroxytones. 10. Accusative with adverbs of swearing. 11. αἱρέω and ἁλίσκομαι, their relation in meaning. 12. Declension of ἀφανής, τριήρης. 13. Location [1] of the verbs in § 8.

LESSON LXXIII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iv. 9–11, Μετά . . . ἕπεσθαι.

2. NOTES.

§ 9. **ὄντα . . . πλέθρου**: *being, which was* (i.e., the river) *of a plethron in respect to width;* πλέθρου, gen. of measure; construction of τὸ εὖρος? stem? **πλήρη**: nom. πλήρης, cf. θηρίων πλήρης Chap. II. § 7. **ἰχθύων**: nom. ἰχθῦς; why gen.? **θεούς**: pred. acc. **ἀδικεῖν**: sc. τινα as its subj. **εἴων**: cf. εἴᾱ § 7. **περιστεράς**: *nor yet* (did they

[1] Cf. LXIX. "Exercises."

permit any one to injure) *the doves.* **Παρυσάτιδος**: cf. ἦσαν . . . δεδομέναι Chap. I. § 6. **εἰς ζώνην**: lit. *for a girdle*, cf. Eng. "pin money," "spending money," *for her private purse.*

§ 10. **τὸ εὖρος**: sc. ἦν. Construction of πλέθρου? **βασίλεια**: βασιλειᾱ́ means what? **τοῦ . . . ἄρξαντος**: *the one who once*, or *had, ruled over Syria* = *the former ruler of Syria;* the aor. partc. expresses action prior to the action of the principal verb; τοῦ . . . ἄρχοντος would mean *the one who was* (*then*) *ruling*, etc.; why gen. case Συρίᾱς? **παράδεισος**: construction? **ἐξ-έκοψε**: from ἐκ-κόπτω, *cut out, destroyed*, 1st aor. **κατ-έκαυσε**: 1st aor. of κατακᾱ́ω, *burned* (*down*, i.e., completely).

§ 11. **ᾠκεῖτο**: *was situated.* **ὄνομα**: *by name;* construction? **ἔσοιτο**: fut. opt. of εἰμί; *opt. in indirect discourse;* the direct discourse was: "the journey will be" (ἔσται). **κελεύει**: historical present. **ἀναπείθειν ἕπεσθαι**: sc. αὐτούς (i.e., the soldiers); *to try to persuade them to follow.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. "A river four feet wide" is in the Greek idiom "a river of four feet in respect to width."

2. "The cities belong to Parysatis" in Greek idiom is "the cities are of Parysatis."

3. Words of fullness govern the genitive.

4. Verbs of *considering, regarding*, take a predicate accusative in addition to the direct object.

5. Participles, even when used as nouns, govern the case which the verb from which they come governs.

6. Verbs of ruling take the genitive case.

7. The future optative is used only in indirect discourse to represent the future indicative of the direct discourse.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of ἰχθῦς, H. 201; G. 257.

2. Conjugation of the aor. system of τίθημι, H. 333; G. 506.

3. Principal parts of πείθω, κόπτω, H. 511, 8; 513, 9; G. pp. 395, 388.

4. Uses of the acc., H. 711, 712, 715, 718, 719, 720, 723, 724, 726; G. 1047, 1049, 1051, 1058, 1060, 1062, 1066, 1069, 1077.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀδικέω,**[1] *harm, injure.*
2. **ἀνα-πείθω,** *persuade, induce.*
3. **ἐκ-κόπτω,**[2] *cut out, destroy utterly.*
4. **ἡ ζώνη,**[3] *belt, girdle.*
5. **ὁ ἰχθῦς,**[4] *fish.*
6. **κατα-κάω,**[5] *burn down, destroy by fire.*
7. **ἡ κώμη,** *village.*
8. **πρᾶος, -εῖα, -ον,**[6] *mild, tame.*
9. **σκηνέω,**[7] *encamp.*
10. **φύω,**[8] *produce, yield, bring forth.*
11. **ἡ ὥρᾱ,**[9] *season* (of the year).

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *μέγας, ζώνη, ὄνομα*; write a synopsis of the active voice of *πείθω*.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. The Chalus river was a plethron wide and full of fish. 2. Cyrus had given these villages to Parysatis for "pin-money." 3. There was in Syria a river a plethron wide. 4. To this (river) the generals were marching with all their army. 5. Belesys had a beautiful park which produced all things. 6. Thence, after marching (*ἐξελάσαντες*) to Thapsacus, a great and prosperous city, the generals sent for their soldiers (to come) to them = to themselves. 7. They said to the soldiers that Cyrus ordered them to follow to the king. 8. Cyrus will order the soldiers to follow. 9. They said that Cyrus would order (fut. opt.; why?) the soldiers to follow.

III. For Written Translation: 1. After this, the generals came to villages which had been given to Parysatis. 2. In that place was a river in which were large and tame fish. 3. Both the doves and the fish belonged to the Syrians. 4. Thence they marched (*ἐξήλασαν*) to a very large and beautiful park in which the ruler of Syria had a palace. 5. This park produces all things. 6. Here Cyrus spoke as follows to the generals. 7. "We are going (from *εἶμι*) to the great king, not against (= *ἐπί*) him." 8. Therefore the generals tried-to-persuade[10] the soldiers to follow Cyrus (dat.).

[1] From *ἄδικος* = *ἀ*-privative, and *δίκη*, *justice*.
[2] Cf. *κατα-κοπῆναι* Chap. II. § 25.
[3] Cf. Eng. *zone*.
[4] Cf. Eng. *ichthy*-ology.
[5] *κάω*, fut. *καύ-σω*; Eng. *caustic*.
[6] Irregularly declined. The study of its declension is omitted for the present.
[7] Cf. *σκηνή*, *tent*.
[8] Whence *φύσις*, *nature*, Eng. *physics*, *physi*-ology, *meta-physics*.
[9] Cf. Lat. *hora*, Eng. *hour*.
[10] From *ἀναπείθω*, imperf.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. *μετά* with the gen.; with the acc. 2. Accusative of specification. 3. Predicate accusative. 4. Genitive of measure; with words of fulness. 5. Conjugation of *εἴων*. 6. *εἰς ζώνην*. 7. The genitive with *ἄρξαντος*. 8. Predicate genitive of possession. 9. The future optative. 10. Time denoted by the tenses of the participle. 11. *πρός*, *παρά*, *ἐπί*, with the acc. 12. Uses of the accusative. 13. *πάντα ὅσα*. 14. Declension of *πᾶς*.

LESSON LXXIV.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iv. 12–14, *οἱ δέ . . . Κύρῳ*.

2. NOTES.

§ 12. **οἱ δέ**: i.e., the generals. **ποιήσαντες**: translate as an aor. indic. with *and*. **ταῦτα**: Eng. *this*. **τοῖς στρατηγοῖς**: (*were angry*) *at the generals;* indirect object with verbs of *anger*. **εἰδότας**: partc. from *οἶδα*, concessive, *although they had known*. **κρύπτειν**: pres. infin. in indir. disc. standing for an imperfect in direct discourse; render as plup., *had concealed*. **οὐκ ἔφασαν**: cf. Chap. III. § 1, *said they would not go, refused to go*. **ἰέναι**: indirect disc. for *ἴμεν*, *we will not go unless some one gives us money*. **ἐὰν μή**: *if not = unless; μή* is the negative used in conditional clauses; future condition with more probability; after the past tense, translate, *unless some one should give*, etc. **τοῖς . . . ἀναβᾶσι**: sc. *τις ἔδωκε*, *just as* (*some one gave money*) *to the former ones who went up with*, etc. **καὶ ταῦτα**: *and that too*. **οὐκ . . . ἰόντων**: sc. *ἐκείνων*, *though they were not going*. **καλοῦντος . . . Κῦρον**: lit. (*but because*) *his father called Cyrus;* Eng., *Cyrus's father called him*.

§ 13. **δώσειν**: subject omitted because it is the same as the subject of *ὑπέσχετο*; (*that he*) *would give;* direct disc. would be *δώσω*. **ἀργυρίου**: gen. of material. **ἐπήν**: $=$ *ἐπεί* $+$ *ἄν*, *whenever*. **ἥκωσι**: lit. *they* (*shall*) *come;* Eng. *whenever they should come;* direct form of disc. is retained for vividness; it might have been *ἐπεὶ ἥκοιεν*. **τὸν μισθὸν**

ἐντελῆ: *their pay complete, full pay;* ἐντελῆ in the predicate position; perhaps an after-thought. **μέχρι ἄν**: *until he should restore* (lit. *shall*), or *should have restored the Greeks;* μέχρι ἄν with the subj. as in conditional rel. clauses of more probability; the direct form of disc. retained, cf. ἐπὴν ἥκωσι. **τό . . . πολύ**: *the bulk, the principal part.* **Ἑλληνικοῦ**: sc. στρατεύματος. **πρίν . . . εἶναι**: *before it was evident;* like ὥστε, πρίν is followed by the infin. **δῆλον**: neut. to agree with the subj. of εἶναι, viz., the clauses τί . . . οὔ. **ποιήσουσιν . . . ἕψονται**: direct disc. in form; translate *would do . . . would follow.* **πότερον . . . ἤ**: *whether . . . or.* **οὔ**: accented because it is at the end of the clause. **χωρίς**: adv. governing the genitive (of *separation*). **ἔλεξε**: cf. συνέλεξε: difference?

§ 14. **ἐάν . . . πεισθῆτε**: form of condition? **μοι**: indir. obj. with a verb of *obeying.* **οὔτε**: *without either running risk or.* **τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν**: (*than*) *the rest of the soldiers:* gen. after the compar. adv. πλέον. **ποιῆσαι**: sc. ὑμᾶς; what would ποιεῖν mean? **νῦν . . . ἐγώ**: emphatic. **ὑμᾶς . . . διαβῆναι**: *you ought to cross,* lit. *it is necessary that you cross;* χρῆναι, pres. infin. of χρή; διαβῆναι: 2d aor. infin. of διαβαίνω. **ὅ τι**: from ὅστις, indef. rel. pro.; *what.* **ἀποκρῖνοῦνται**: fut. of a liquid verb.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. In conditional sentences, μή is the negative in the condition (protasis), οὐ in the conclusion (apodosis).

2. **καὶ ταῦτα** = *and that too.*

3. Conditional relative clauses with more probability are expressed by a rel. + ἄν with the subjunctive.

4. The 1st aor. of ἵστημι is transitive, = *to set* or *place.*

5. **πρίν** is sometimes followed by the infinitive, but generally by the subjunctive when the principal verb is negative.

6. The interrogative, τίς, never changes the acute accent to the grave.

7. **οὐ** at the end of a sentence becomes οὔ.

8. The modes of the direct discourse are often retained in the indirect for vividness.

9. The comparative is followed by the genitive, when ἤ (*than*) is omitted.

10. χρή, *it is necessary*, has an irregular pres. infin. χρῆναι.

11. Verbs of *anger* take the dat. of indirect object where English expects the acc. with a preposition.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of μνᾶ, H. 144; G. 183, 184.
2. Declension of πατήρ, H. 188, 189; G. 274, 1.
3. Aor. system of δίδωμι, H. 334; G. 506, 802.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀπ-αγγέλλω**, *report.*
2. **τὸ ἀργύριον**, *silver money.*
3. **ἐὰν μή** (with subj.), *unless.*
4. **ἐντελής, -ές**, *full, complete.*
5. **ἐπήν** (with subj.), *when.*
6. **καὶ ταῦτα**, *and that too, although.*
7. **κρύπτω**,[1] *hide, conceal.*
8. **ἡ μνᾶ**,[2] *mina.*
9. **πάλαι**,[3] *long ago.*
10. **ὁ πατήρ**,[4] *father.*
11. **πονέω**,[5] *labor, toil.*
12. **πότερον . . . ἤ**, *whether . . . or.*
13. **προ-τῑμάω**, *honor above others, prefer.*
14. **χαλεπαίνω**,[6] *be angry.*
15. **χωρίς**, *apart from.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. Although the generals knew (partc.) this, they were concealing (it). 2. The soldiers will not go unless money is (= be) given (δοθῇ) to them just as to their fathers. 3. The generals were going up with Cyrus to his father. 4. Cyrus will give money to each of the Greeks when he comes (= shall have come) to Babylon. 5. Will Menon persuade the Greek force or not? 6. Before Menon[7] follows he speaks to Cyrus apart from his own men as follows: 7. "Cyrus, if the soldiers obey me, what shall[8] I order them to do? 8. They ought to follow you (dat.) against the king. 9. But they will toil more than other men. 10. What (= τί) shall[8] I reply to them?"

II. For Written Translation: 1. The soldiers are angry at Cyrus

[1] Cf. ἐπι-κρυπτόμενος, Eng. *crypt*

[2] The sixtieth part of a talent = 100 drachmae, about $18.75.

[3] Eng. *palae*-ontology.

[4] Lat. *pater*.

[5] Cf. ἐπι-πονωτέρᾱ Chap. III. § 19.

[6] From χαλεπός, *hard, difficult.*

[7] Make "Menon" the subj. of "speaks."

[8] Use the subj., called the Deliberative Subjunctive.

and refuse to go unless they receive more money. 2. For they say that the father of Cyrus gave money to his soldiers, and that, too, though they were not going for battle. 3. To the generals who reported this Cyrus spoke as follows: 4. "I will give each soldier a mina when I come to Babylon. 5. But until the soldiers follow me they will receive (fr. λαμβάνω) nothing." 6. Accordingly the majority (= the many) of the soldiers were thus persuaded. 7. But Menon's soldiers spoke as follows: 8. "If we obey we shall follow Cyrus to Babylon. 9. But we (acc.) ought to cross the river and go back to Ionia. 10. But if he pays (fr. ἀποδίδωμι) us full wages until we arrive in Ionia, we will do whatever he orders."

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The negative in the condition (protasis). 2. οὐ at the end of a clause. 3. Construction after πρίν. 4. Construction after comparatives. 5. Case after χωρίς; with ἄρχω; with δέομαι. 6. Case with ἕπομαι, πείθομαι (*obey*). 7. Conditional sentences. 8. ἄν in conditional relative sentences is used with what mode? 9. Accent of the interrogative pronoun; indefinite. 10. Modes in indirect discourse. 11. καὶ ταῦτα. 12. Meanings of ἵστημι. 13. The future of liquid verbs. 14. πότερον . . . ἤ. 15. τὸ πολύ. 16. ἐπήν. 17. Construction with verbs of *anger*.

LESSON LXXV.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. IV. 15, 16, ἢν μέν . . . νομίζετε.

2. NOTES.

§ 15. **ἢν μέν**: contrasted with ἢν δέ below; ἤν = ἐάν; what form of condition? **αἴτιοι**: construction? why not acc.? **ἄρξαντες**: causal, *because you began the crossing;* note that verbs of *beginning* govern the genitive. **τοῦ διαβαίνειν**: the infin. with the neut. article may be used as a substantive in any case. **ὡς . . . οὖσιν**: (*to you*) lit. *as being most zealous, on the ground that you were*, etc. **εἴσεται**: fut. of οἶδα, lit. (*Cyrus*) *will know gratitude*, i.e., *will feel the obligation.*

ἀποδώσει: *will give it back, will repay it.* **ἐπίσταται**: *knows how,* sc. χάριν ἀποδοῦναι. **εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος**: *if any one does.* **ἀπο-ψηφίσωνται**: *vote away from, vote "No"*; ἀπο here has a negative force. **ἄπιμεν**: peculiarity of εἶμι in meaning? **τοὔμπαλιν**: crasis, = τὸ ἔμπαλιν, adv. **ὑμῖν**: with χρήσεται, *will use you, as most trustworthy.* **ὡς μόνοις**: *on the ground that (you) alone obeyed.* **καί . . . καί**, *both . . . and.* **ἄλλου**: usually explained as for ἄλλο, obj. of τεύξεσθε, inverse attraction, ἄλλο attracted to the case of the relative οὗτινος; but τυγχάνω governs the gen.; translate *whatever else* (*you may need*). **οὗτινος . . . δέησθε**: what kind of clause? **ὡς φίλοι . . . Κύρου**: *you will obtain from Cyrus, as friends,* i.e., if you are his friends. **Κύρου**: gen. of source. **τεύξεσθε**: fut. of τυγχάνω.

§ 16. **ᾔσθετο διαβεβηκότας**: *perceived that they* (sc. αὐτούς) *had crossed*; supplementary partc. **ᾔσθη**: from ἥδ-ο-μαι, aor. pass. **τε . . . καί**, = **καί . . . καί**: note that τε is post-positive and an enclitic. **τῷ στρατεύματι**: with both πέμψᾱς and εἶπεν. **Ἐγώ**: *emphatic;* so also ἐμέ, ἐμοί following. **ὅπως . . . μελήσει**: *and that you also praise* (fut.) *me, will be a care to me,* i.e., *I will take care that,* etc. **ἤ**: *or* (if I do not care for it). **μηκέτι**: *no longer regard me as* CYRUS. Note that μή, not οὐ, is the negative used with the imperative.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Verbs of *beginning* govern the genitive.

2. The infinitive with the neuter article may be used as a substantive in any case.

3. ἀπό in compounds sometimes has a negative force.

4. εἶμι in the present indicative has a future meaning.

5. Verbs of *needing* take the genitive.

6. The genitive is used to express source.

7. Verbs of *hearing, perceiving,* etc., take the supplementary participle (participle in indirect discourse).

8. **ὅπως** is used with the fut. indic. after verbs of *striving* or *caring for.*

9. **μή** and its compounds are the negatives used with the imperative.

10. Personal pronouns, as subjects-nominative, are *emphatic.*

11. **ἥσ-θη**, *was pleased*, is for ἥδ-θη, from ἥδ-ο-μαι.

12. The antecedent of a relative pronoun sometimes takes the case of the relative; this is called *inverse attraction.*

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of φημί . . . H. 481; G. 812.

2. Conjugation of the 2d aor. of ἵστημι (ἔστην), H. 335; G. 506.

3. Genitive with substantives, H. 728, 729, a–f, 732; G. 1084, 1085, 1–7, 1093.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **αἴτιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *responsible for, chargeable with.*
2. **ἄρχω**, *begin, rule.*
3. **ἡ λοχᾱγίᾱ**, *captaincy.*
4. **μέλει**, *refert, it is a care, it concerns.*
5. **μηκέτι, οὐκέτι**, *no longer.*
6. **μόνος, -η, -ον**,[1] *alone.*
7. **τοὔμπαλιν** (= τὸ ἔμπαλιν), *back, back again.*
8. **τυγχάνω**, *happen upon, meet with, obtain.*
9. **τὸ φρούριον**,[2] *a citadel, a garrison.*
10. **ψηφίζομαι**, *vote.*
11. **ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι**, *vote against.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. If the soldiers follow, we shall begin the marching (fr. ἐξελαύνω). 2. The soldiers will be grateful to us. 3. We shall use the most faithful soldiers. 4. Whatever we need we shall obtain from our friends. 5. The generals perceived that Cyrus was pleased (pres. partc.). 6. Cyrus, praise us, or we will no longer be your soldiers. 7. Cyrus considers us soldiers. 8. We know that Cyrus will go to the king.

II. For Written Translation: 1. If you begin the voting, the other soldiers will be grateful to you. 2. And Cyrus also knows how to repay it (i.e., the favor). 3. But if you vote to go back, Cyrus will not use you for (= εἰς) anything else that he may need. 4. Thus the soldiers were both persuaded and pleased. 5. But before they crossed the river, they said to him. 6. "Take care (= let it be a care to you) that you praise us when we have crossed" (perf. partc.).

[1] Cf. the Eng. *mono*-syllable, *mono*-tone, *mono*-gram.

[2] Cf. φρουράρχοις Chap. I. § 6, φρουρούμενα Chap. IV. § 8.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Verbs which govern the genitive. 2. Verbs which take a supplementary participle. 3. The negative with the imperative. 4. The substantive use of the infinitive. 5. *ὅπως* with the future indicative. 6. Source is how expressed? 7. Personal pronouns as subjects. 8. Construction after *μέλει*. 9. Inverse attraction. 10. Crasis. 11. Lingual mutes before linguals. 12. Meaning of *εἶμι*.

LESSON LXXVI.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iv. 17–19, *οἱ μέν . . . ἐπεσῑτίσαντο.*

2. NOTES.

§ 17. **ηὔχοντο**: *ηὐ* augmented from *εὐ*. **ἐλέγετο**: sc. Κῦρος; personal construction; translate, *it was said that Cyrus,* etc. **ταῦτα**: *this.* **ποιήσᾱς**: temporal. **συν-είπετο**: imperfect of *συν-έπομαι*, cf. *εἶχε* from *ἔχω*, emphatic in position. **αὐτῷ**: construction? **ἅπᾱν**: emphatic by its position. **τῶν διαβαινόντων**: *of those who were crossing;* the present participle denotes continued action at the time of the principal verb; partitive genitive. **ἀνωτέρω**: *above* (lit. *higher than*). **μαστῶν**: construction?

§ 18. **διαβατός**: *fordable* (lit. *crossable*). **γένοιτο**: opt. in indir. disc. **εἰ μή**: *except.* **πλοίοις**: what dat.? **κατέκαυσεν**: *had burned,* aor. for pluperf. **ἵνα . . . διαβῇ**: direct form of disc. retained in indirect. Note that *μή* is the negative used in *purpose clauses.* **ἐδόκει**: (sc. the fact that the river was fordable) *seemed.* **ποταμόν**: subj. of *ὑποχωρῆσαι.* **Κύρῳ**: dat. of advantage. **βασιλεύσοντι**: note the tense.

§ 19. **σίτου, οἴνου**: construction?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **εὐ** augments to *ηὐ*; **ε** in augment in a few verbs appears as **ει**.
2. Words placed first in their sentence are often emphatic.
3. The agent is expressed by *ὑπό* with the genitive.

4. Means is expressed by the dat.

5. **μή** is the negative used in clauses of purpose.

6. The dative is used to express that for whose *advantage* or *disadvantage* something is done.

7. **ἵνα, ὡς, ὅπως**, with the subjunctive are used to express purpose; after a past tense, the opt. may be used.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of the 2d perf. system of *ἵστημι*, H. 336; G. 507.

2. Conjugation of the 2d aor. of *δύω* (*ἔδῡν*), H. 335; G. 504.

3. Uses of the genitive, H. 736, 738, 739, 741, 742, 743, 745, 746, 748, 749, 750, 753, f, 755–759; G. 1097, 1, 1099, 1102, 1109, 1112, 1117, 1120, 1121, 1130, 1133, 1135, 1136, 1147, 1148, 1151, 1152, 1153.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀνωτέρω**, *higher.*
2. **βρέχω**, *moisten, wet.*
3. **δια-βατός, -ή, -όν,** *fordable, passable.*
4. **ἐπι-σῑτίζομαι**,[1] *lay in provisions.*
5. **εὐτυχέω**,[2] *be fortunate, successful.*
6. **Θαψακηνός, -ή, -όν,** *inhabitant of Thapsacus.*
7. **θεῖος, -α, -ον**,[3] *divine, supernatural, miraculous.*
8. **ὁ μαστός**, *breast.*
9. **μεγαλο-πρεπῶς**,[4] *magnificently.*
10. **οὐπώποτε**, *never yet, never before.*
11. **πεζῇ**,[5] *on foot.*
12. **πρό-ειμι**, *go before, in advance.*
13. **σαφῶς**, *clearly.*
14. **ὁ σῖτος**, *corn, food.*
15. **ὑπο-χωρέω**, *retreat, give way.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. Since Cyrus was in great expectation, he sent gifts to the soldiers. 2. Therefore they pray that Cyrus may be (infin.) successful. 3. When they had done this, they attempted to cross, kept-crossing, crossed (a single act). 4. The Euphrates river is never fordable. 5. Therefore the barbarians go forward and burn the boats. 6. It seemed to them that Cyrus

[1] Cf. *σῖτος, food.*

[2] *εὖ, well; τύχη, fortune. τυγχ-άνω* has the same theme.

[3] Cf. *θεός, god.*

[4] The first element is *μέγας*; so in the translation the first element is *magnus.*

[5] Cf. *πούς, foot;* Lat. *pes.*

would be king. 7. They marched across the Araxes river to a city.

II. For Written Translation: 1. After Cyrus had sent gifts to Menon he crossed the river with (ἔχων) his whole army. 2. Now (δή) this river was said to be impassable (= not passable) except by boats. 3. But at that time the river clearly receded. 4. Therefore it seemed to all that Cyrus was-going-to-be (= would be) king. 5. Thence Cyrus marched into Syria (which was) full of grain, in order that he might obtain provisions. 6. There they came to some villages in which there was also much wine.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Augment of ευ; of ε. 2. Formation of adverbs. 3. Uses of gen.; acc.; dat. 4. Expressions of agency; means. 5. Expressions of purpose; result. 6. Translation of the present, aorist, perfect, participles. 7. The use of the negative μή. 8. Position for emphasis in Greek sentence. 9. Proclitics. 10. Enclitics. 11. Complete synopses of ἵστημι, τίθημι, δίδωμι in the pres. and 2d aor. systems.

LESSON LXXVII.—REVIEW.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. iv.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Mutes** before μ.

2. **Declension.** — (*a*) μνᾶ; (*b*) πατήρ; (*c*) ἰχθῦς; (*d*) ναῦς; (*e*) γυνή.

3. **Verbs.** — (*a*) ἵστημι; (*b*) δείκνῡμι; (*c*) τίθημι; (*d*) δίδωμι; (*e*) φημί; (*f*) ἔδῡν; (*g*) οἶδα.

4. **Syntax.** — (*a*) Accusative. (*b*) Genitive with substantives. (*c*) Genitive with verbs. (*d*) The future in indirect discourse. (*e*) The infinitive in indirect discourse.

5. **Principal parts.** — φυλάττω, δείκνῡμι, λαμβάνω, πείθω, κόπτω, φεύγω, μένω, ἔρχομαι, ἵστημι, πέμπω, τίθημι, δίδωμι.

3. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

1. ἡ ἀνάβασις.
2. τὸ ἀργύριον.
3. ἡ ἀρετή.
4. ἡ βίᾱ.
5. τὸ ἐμπόριον.
6. ἡ ζώνη.
7. ὁ θεός.
8. ὁ ἰχθῦς.
9. ἡ κώμη.
10. ὁ λόγος.
11. ἡ λοχᾱγίᾱ.
12. ὁ μαστός.
13. ὁ μισθοφόρος.
14. ἡ μνᾶ.
15. ἡ μῡριάς.
16. ὁ ναύαρχος.
17. ἡ ναῦς.
18. ἡ ὁλκάς.
19. τὸ ὄνομα.
20. ἡ πάροδος.
21. ὁ πατήρ.
22. ἡ πέτρᾱ.
23. ἡ πύλη.
24. ὁ σῖτος.
25. τὸ στάδιον.
26. τὸ τεῖχος.
27. τὸ τέκνον.
28. ὁ φίλος.
29. τὸ φρούριον.
30. ἡ φυλακή.
31. ἡ ὥρᾱ.

VERBS.

1. ἀδικέω.
2. ἁλίσκομαι.
3. ἀνα-πείθω.
4. ἀνα-στρέφω.
5. ἀπ-αγγέλλω.
6. ἀπ-ελαύνω.
7. ἀπ-έρχομαι.
8. ἀπο-βιβάζω.
9. ἀπο-διδρᾱ́σκω.
10. ἀπο-λείπω.
11. ἀπο-πλέω.
12. ἀπο-σῡλάω.
13. ἀπο-φεύγω.
14. ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι.
15. ἄρχω.
16. βρέχω.
17. δι-έρχομαι.
18. διώκω.
19. ἐάω.
20. ἐκ-κόπτω.
21. ἐμ-βαίνω.
22. ἐν-τίθημι.
23. ἐπι-λείπω.
24. ἐπι-σῑτίζομαι.
25. εὐτυχέω.
26. εὔχομαι.
27. ἐφ-ίστημι.
28. ἡγέομαι.
29. καθ-ήκω.
30. κατα-κᾱ́ω.
31. κρύπτω.
32. μέλει.
33. οἰκτείρω.
34. οἴχομαι.
35. ὀργίζομαι.
36. ὁρμέω.
37. παρ-έρχομαι.
38. πονέω.
39. πρό-ειμι.
40. προ-τῑμάω.
41. σκηνέω.
42. στρατηγέω.
43. συγ-καλέω.
44. τυγχάνω.
45. ὑπο-χωρέω.
46. φιλοτῑμέομαι.
47. φρουρέω.
48. φῡ́ω.
49. χαλεπαίνω.
50. ψηφίζομαι.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄθῡμος.
2. αἴτιος.
3. ἀφανής.
4. δειλός.
5. δια-βατός.
6. ἐντελής.
7. ἕτερος.
8. ἠλίβατος.
9. θεῖος.
10. κακός.
11. μόνος.
12. πρᾷος.
13. στενός.
14. φίλος.

ADVERBS.

1. ἄνω, ἀνωτέρω.
2. αὐτόθι.
3. ἔξω.
4. ἔσωθεν.
5. καὶ ταῦτα.
6. κακῶς.
7. μά.
8. μεγαλοπρεπῶς.
9. μηκέτι, οὐκέτι.
10. οὐδέ.
11. οὐπώποτε.
12. πάνυ.
13. πάλαι.
14. πεζῇ.
15. προθύμως.
16. σαφῶς.
17. τουμπαλιν.
18. ὕπερθεν.
19. χωρίς.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. ἐάν.
2. ἐπειδάν.
3. ἐπήν.
4. πότερον . . . ἤ.

PRONOUNS.

1. ἔγωγε.
2. ὅσπερ.

PREPOSITION.

1. ἕνεκα (strictly an adv.).

LESSON LXXVIII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. v. 1–3, Ἐντεῦθεν . . . ἦν.

2. NOTES.

§ 1. **διά**: with the acc. it would mean what? **ἐν δεξιᾷ** (sc. χειρί, *hand*). **ἐρήμους**: *through a desert.* **τούτῳ**: could the phrase be written τῷ τούτῳ τόπῳ? **ἦν μέν . . . πεδίον ἀψινθίου δὲ πλῆρες**: a sort of contrast in the two ideas, "the land was a plain" but "full of wormwood." What is the subj. of ἦν? **ἅπᾶν**: translate as an adv. **ὥσπερ**: *like* (*a sea*). **ἀψινθίου**: construction? **πλῆρες**: limits what? **εἰ δέ τι**: *whatever*, lit. *if there was any.* **ἄλλο**: *else*, or *other* (*kind*). **ὕλης, καλάμου**: with ἄλλο; what kind of genitive? **ἅπαντα**: refers to τι, plu. because of the collective idea in τι, cf. αὐτούς Chap. IV. § 8. **ἦσαν**: would regularly be singular number with a neut. plu. subj.

§ 2. **ὄνοι ἄγριοι**: sc. ἐνῆσαν. **δὲ καί**: *and also.* **ταῦτα τὰ θηρία**: in emphatic position, cf. ἐδίωκον following. **ἐδίωκον**: customary past action. **ἐπεί τις διώκοι**: *whenever anyone pursued;* a conditional relative clause, referring generally to any one of a class of actions. **προ-δραμόντες ἕστασαν**: *they ran forward* (or *would run forward*), (*and*) *stood still* (or *would stand still*): 2d aor. partc. of προτρέχω; 2d plup.

of ἵστημι, but *imperfect in meaning; ἕστηκα = I am standing.* **πολύ**: adverbial, with θᾶττον; emphatic by separation from θᾶττον and by standing first in the sentence, MUCH *faster.* **τῶν ἵππων**: with θᾶττον; construction? **θᾶττον**: comparative adv.; positive ταχέως; for τάχ-ῑον, the aspirate χ being lost and the initial τ being aspirated to θ in compensation; superl. of ταχέως? **ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν**: cf. ἐπεὶ διώκοι preceding. **ταὐτόν**: crasis (= τὸ αὐτόν) for τὸ αὐτό. **οὐκ ἦν**: *was not possible,* cf. οὐκ ἔσται Chap. III. § 17. **εἰ μή**: *unless;* why μή instead of οὐ? **διαστάντες**: *took their stand at intervals (and),* etc. **θηρῷεν**: cf. διώκοι, πλησιάζοιεν. **δια-δέχομενοι**: *(by) relieving one another (by turns* = δια). **τὰ κρέᾱ**: plu., because more than one are referred to (τῶν ἁλισκομένων). **τοῖς ἐλαφείοις**: sc. κρέασι, *venison; dat. of likeness.* **ἁπαλώτερα**: comparative of ἁπαλός; note that ο of the stem (ἁπαλο-) has been lengthened to ω in the comparative; why?

§ 3. **τῶν ἱππέων**: partitive gen. **ταχύ**: adv. acc. = ταχέως. **πολύ**: cf. § 2. **ἀπ-έσπᾱ φεύγουσα**: imperf. of customary past action; *it would outstrip (them) in flight,* lit. *withdrew fleeing.* **ποσί**: from πούς. **πτέρυξιν**: dat. with χρώμενος. **δρόμῳ**: cf. προδραμόντες § 2, *dat. of manner.* **αἴρουσα**: *(by) raising them* (i.e., *wings*). **ὥσπερ ἱστίῳ**: *just as a sail,* i.e., *using its wings as a sail;* for construction, cf. πτέρυξιν. **ἄν τις . . . ἀνιστῇ**: a present general supposition, *not* fut. with more probability as ἔστι, the conclusion (apodosis), shows. **ἔστι**: *is possible;* note the accent when it denotes *possibility.* **λαμβάνειν**: object? **βραχύ**: acc., construction? **ἥδιστα**: superl. adv.; positive ἡδέως; comparative? *very sweet;* the superl. is sometimes used to denote "*a very high degree of the quality.*"

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **οὗτος** requires an article with its substantive and takes the predicate position.

2. The imperfect may express customary or repeated past action.

3. A general conditional sentence referring to present time takes ἐάν + the subjunctive in the condition, and the present indicative in the conclusion.

4. The optative is used in general conditions which refer to past time; in the conclusion, the imperfect is used.

5. **ἔστι** = *it is possible;* ἦν, ἔσται, may also denote possibility.

6. The neut. acc. sing. of an adjective is often used adverbially.

7. **ταχύς, ταχέως**, roughen *τ* to *θ* in the comparative in compensation for the lost aspirate *χ*.

8. Adjectives in -*ος* with short penult lengthen -*ο*- to -*ω*- before the comparative and superlative endings -*τερος* and -*τατος*, to prevent excessive multiplication of short syllables.

9. The superlative may denote a very high degree of the quality expressed by the positive.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Transfer of aspiration, H. 74, and b; G. 95, 5.

2. Comparison by -*ῑων*, -*ιστος*, H. 253; G. 357.

3. Declension of *γέρας*, H. 191; G. 228.

4. Present or past suppositions, particular and general, H. 890, 892–94, 1, 2; G. 1384, 1, 1387, I., 1390, 1393, 1, 2.

5. Declension of *ἡδύς*, H. 229; G. (*γλυκύς*), 319–320.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **αἴρω**, *raise.*
2. **ἀν-ίστημι**, *raise up, rouse.*
3. **ἀπ-αγορεύω**, *desist, fail, give out.*
4. **ἁπαλός, -ή, -όν**, *tender.*
5. **ἀπο-σπάω**,[1] *draw off, withdraw.*
6. **τὸ ἄρωμα**,[2] *spice.*
7. **τὸ ἀψίνθιον**,[3] *wormwood.*
8. **βραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ**,[4] *short.*
9. **δια-δέχομαι**,[5] *receive in turn, succeed, relieve.*
10. **δι-ίστημι**, *set apart;* intrans., *stand apart.*
11. **ἡ δορκάς**,[6] *gazelle.*
12. **ἐλάφειος, -ον**, *belonging to a deer;* **κρέας ἐλάφειον**, *venison.*
13. **ἔν-ειμι**, *be in.*
14. **ἐνίοτε**, *sometimes.*
15. **ἔρημος, -η, -ον**, or **-ος, -ον**,[7] *deserted, desolate;* **σταθμὸς ἔρημος**, *a day's march* through a *desert* country.
16. **εὐώδης, -ες**,[8] *fragrant.*
17. **ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ**,[9] *sweet.*
18. **ὁ κάλαμος**,[10] *reed, brushwood.*
19. **τὸ κρέας**,[11] *flesh, meat.*
20. **ὁμαλής, -ές**,[12] *even, level.*
21. **ὁ ὄνος**, *ass, donkey.*
22. **παντοῖος, -ᾱ, -ον**,[13] *varied, of all kinds.*
23. **παύω**,[14] *stop;* mid., *cease.*

[1] Cf. Eng. *spasm.*
[2] Cf. Eng. *aromatic.*
[3] Cf. French *absinthe*, brandy flavored with wormwood.
[4] Hence Eng. tri-*brach*, *brachy*-logy.
[5] Cf. Eng. *take.*
[6] Hence the name *Dorcas.*
[7] Cf. Eng. *eremite, hermit.*
[8] *εὖ well*, cf. Eng. *eu*-logy; *ὠδ*, from the theme *οδ* (Lat. *od-or*), *smell.*
[9] Cf. *ἥδομαι, be pleased; ἡδέως, gladly.*
[10] Hence Lat. *calamus.*
[11] Cf. Eng. *crea*-sote.
[12] Cf. Eng. an-*omalous.*
[13] From *παντ*-, stem of *πᾶς*.
[14] Cf. Eng. *pause.*

24. ἡ πέρδιξ, *partridge.*
25. πέτομαι,[1] *fly.*
26. πλησιάζω,[2] *approach.*
27. προ-τρέχω, 2d aor., -έδραμον,[3] *run ahead.*
28. ἡ πτέρυξ, *wing.*
29. ἡ στρουθός,[4] *ostrich.*
30. ὁ τόπος,[5] *place, locality.*
31. ἡ ὕλη,[6] *wood.*
32. ἡ ὠτίς,[7] *bustard.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *κρέας, ὁμαλής, ὠτίς, βραχύς.*

II. For Oral Translation: 1. The entire country was full of wormwood. 2. All the river; every[8] river. 3. The spices were all fragrant. 4. All kinds of wild animals and horses were in this land. 5. The horsemen used to hunt these animals, whenever they wished to capture them. 6. The flesh of asses[9] is like venison. 7. If the horsemen pursue the ostriches, they soon stop. 8. For they fly far (*πολύ*). 9. The flesh of partridges (use the generic article) is much sweeter than that (= the [flesh]) of bustards (generic article).

III. For Written Translation: 1. In Arabia, through which they marched, every region was level and full of reeds. 2. But there were no trees in the entire country. 3. All the plain, however, was fragrant. 4. In this land there was very much game (= very many wild animals). 5. Whenever the horsemen pursued the ostriches, it was not possible to take them. 6. For they run as fast as possible. 7. They also lift up their wings as a sail (in) running. 8. If any one pursues far (= *πολύ*), it is possible to take a bustard.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Οὗτος with a substantive. 2. Uses of the imperfect. 3. Conditional relative sentences. 4. General suppositions, past and present. 5. Simple supposition, particular. 6. Declension of nouns and adjectives whose stems end in *εσ-*; the manner of contraction. 7. The case after comparatives. 8. The aspiration in *θᾶττον.*

[1] Theme *πετ*; Lat. *pen-na, wing,* for *pet-na.*
[2] Cf. *παραπλήσιος, like.*
[3] Cf. *δρό-μος.*
[4] Cf. Eng. o-*strich.*
[5] Cf. Eng. *topo*-graphy.
[6] Cf. Lat. *silva.*
[7] A large bird, which like the ostrich runs with great swiftness.
[8] *πᾶς* or *ἅπας* without the article.
[9] *τῶν ὄνων*, generic article.

9. Formation of comparative and superlative adjectives; adverbs. 10. ω in ἁπαλώτερα. 11. ἔστι, ἐστί, ἔσται. 12. Accent of ἐνῆν; why? 13. A special meaning of superlative adjectives.

LESSON LXXIX.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. v. 4–6, Πορευόμενοι . . . διεγίγνοντο.

2. NOTES.

§ 4. **Μάσκᾱν**: note that the names of rivers generally take the attributive position, i.e., between the article and the word for river. **τὸ εὖρος**: construction? **ὄνομα**: sc. ἦν. **αὐτῇ**: dat. of possessor. **περι-ε-ρ-ρεῖ-το**: imperf. pass. of περι-ρρέω; note that initial ρ is doubled when a vowel comes before it. **Μάσκᾱ**: Doric gen. (for Μάσκου), cf. Ἀβροκόμᾱ Chap. IV. § 3. **κύκλῳ**: dat. of *manner* = an adv., *about*.

§ 5. **ἔχων**: *with*. **πολλά**: subject. **τῶν ὑποζυγίων**: what kind of gen.? **ἀπώλετο**: cf. ἀπώλοντο Chap. II. § 25. **οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον**: *nor any plant besides*; note the double negatives of the same kind, strengthening the negation in Greek; ἄλλος often = *besides*. **ἅπᾱσα ἡ χώρᾱ**: *all the country*, i.e., *the country as a whole*; note the slightly different meaning of ἡ ἅπᾱσα χώρ ῑ, *the whole*, or *entire, country*. **ὄνους ἀλέτᾱς . . . ὀρύττοντες**: *quarrying (upper) mill-stones*, etc. The upper mill-stone was turned by an ass. **παρά**: *along*. **ποιοῦντες**: making them into the proper form, i.e., *dressing them*. **ἦγον . . . ἐπώλουν**: *used to take . . . and sell*; customary past action. **ἀντα-γοράζοντες . . . ἔζων**: *lived by buying food (in exchange* = ἀντ(ι)), i.e., they lived by bartering the mill-stones in exchange for food; ἔζων imperf. of ζάω.

§ 6. **τὸ στράτευμα**: emphatic by position. **σῖτος**: masc. in the sing., neut. in the plu., i.e., τὰ σῖτα. **πρίασθαι**: sc. σῖτον; aor. of ὠνέομαι, depends on ἦν, *it was not possible to buy*, etc. **εἰ μή**: *except*. **βαρ-βαρικῷ**: sc. what? **τὴν καπίθην**: sc. (*it was possible to buy*). **σίγλων**: gen. of *price, value*. **δύναται**: transitive, *is worth*. **ἐχώρει**: *held, contained*. **κρέᾱ**: emphatic by position. **ἐσθίοντες . . . διεγίγνοντο**: *lived*

by eating, i.e., *subsisted on* FLESH, lit. continued eating, suppl. partc. with a verb of *continuing*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. In masc. proper names of the 1st declension the gen. sing. sometimes takes the Doric ending -ᾱ instead of -ου.

2. The dat. of poss. is used with the verb *to be*.

3. *Manner* is expressed by the *dative*.

4. **ἄλλος** as a sort of appositive to its substantive means *besides*.

5. **πᾶς** (strengthened ἅπᾱς) in the predicate position means *all;* in the attributive position, the *sum total, collective body;* in the sing., without the article, it often means *every*, e.g., πᾶς ἀνήρ, *every man*.

6. Initial ρ is doubled when a vowel is brought before it either by composition or inflection.

7. Price is expressed by the *genitive*.

8. The supplementary participle is used with verbs of *continuing*.

9. **σῖτος** is masculine in the sing., neuter in the plu.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The genitive with verbs of buying, H. 746; G. 1133.

2. Uses of the dative, H. 763, 764, 1, 2, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 780, 781, 782; G. 1157, 1158, 1159, 1160, 1165, 1173, 1174, 1175, 1179, 1180, 1181, 1182, 1183, 1184–1189, 1190, 1192.

3. πᾶς and ὅλος with the article, H. 672, a–c; G. 979.

4. Uses of ἄλλος, H. 653, 704, 705; G. 966, 1, 2.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **τὸ ἄλευρον** (usually plu.), *wheat flour.*
2. **τὸ ἄλφιτον** (usually plu.), *barley-grits.*
3. **ἀντ-αγοράζω**,[1] *buy in exchange.*
4. **Ἀττικός, -ή, -όν**, *Attic, Athenian.*
5. **δύναμαι**, *be able; worth.*
6. **ἐνενήκοντα**, *ninety.*
7. **ἐπι-λείπω**, *give out, fail.*
8. **ἐπριάμην**, cf. ὠνέομαι.
9. **ζάω**,[2] *live.*
10. **ἡμι-ωβόλιον**,[3] *half-obol.*
11. **ἡ καπίθη**,[4] *kapithe, two quarts.*

[1] Cf. ἀγορά, *market.*

[2] Cf. Eng. *zoo*-logy.

[3] Cf. ἡμι-όλιον = $1\frac{1}{2}$.

[4] A Persian dry measure = (about) *two quarts.*

12. ὁ κύκλος,[1] *circle.*
13. ὁ λῑμός, *hunger.*
14. ὁ ὀβολός,[2] *obol*, (about) *three cents.*
15. ὁ ὄνος ἀλέτης, *grinding-jack, mill-stone.*
16. ὀρύττω, *dig, quarry.*
17. περι-ρ-ρέω, *flow about, encompass.*
18. πλεθριαῖος, -ᾱ, -ον, *of a plethron* (in extent).
19. πωλέω,[3] *sell.*
20. ὁ σίγλος,[4] *shekel*, 24 *cents.*
21. ἡ χοῖνιξ,[5] *choenix, one quart.*
22. ὁ χόρτος, *grass, fodder.*
23. χωρέω,[6] *give room, move, go; hold, contain.*
24. ψῑλός, -ή, -όν, *bare.*
25. ὠνέομαι, *buy.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Write a synopsis of πωλέω in the present system.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. Thence they proceed to a deserted city which is surrounded by a river, Mascas by name (case?). 2. They were marching with the Euphrates river on the right. 3. Many of the trees in this stage were bare. 4. The inhabitants sell grain and fodder. 5. It is not possible to sell grain for money (= silver; case?). 6. Cyrus continued to sell grain. 7. Many of the soldiers perished. 8. The entire army arrived at Pylae. 9. Every soldier was eating meat (= flesh). 10. The general's (dat. of possessor) name was Cyrus.

III. For Written Translation: 1. They proceed to a deserted city through which the Mascas flows. 2. The city's name was Corsote. 3. Thence they marched many stages through a desert (= desert stages). 4. Therefore many of the horses perished from (= by) hunger. 5. But the inhabitants along the Euphrates river (dat.) live by buying grain in Babylon. 6. Cyrus was not able to buy corn for his army. 7. Therefore all the soldiers ate flesh. 8. Every soldier bought a kapithe of corn for a siglus. 9. There were no trees except in Corsote. 10. The army used to eat flesh whenever corn failed (cf. ἐπεί τις διώκοι § 2).

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Case after διά. 2. Position of names of rivers. 3. Decl. of εὖρος. 4. Doubling of ρ. 5. Dative of *possessor, manner.* 6. αὕτη,

[1] Cf. Eng. *cycle.*
[2] An Attic coin, the sixth part of a drachma.
[3] Cf. Eng. mono-*poly.*
[4] A Persian coin, equal to about 24 cents.
[5] A grain measure, equal to about one quart.
[6] Cf. χώρᾱ.

αὐτή. 7. Μάσκᾱ. 8. ἐν δεξιᾷ. 9. Meanings of ἄλλος, πᾶς (or ἅπᾱς), ὅλος. 10. *Price* is how expressed? 11. Decl. of σῖτος. 12. Case after δύναται when transitive. 13. Some verbs followed by supplementary participles. 14. Present and past suppositions, particular and general. 15. Some uses of the optative; of the subjunctive.

LESSON LXXX.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. v. 7, 8, ἦν . . . ἁμάξᾱς.

2. NOTES.

§ 7. **ἦν δέ . . . ἤλαυνον**: lit. *there were of these stages which he marched very long*, i.e., *some of these stages which he marched were very long;* ἦν, singular because no definite subject is expressed. **σταθμῶν**: partitive gen., depending on an indefinite subject of ἦν, or the unexpressed antecedent of οὕς. **οὕς**: cognate acc., e.g., Eng. *to march a march*, repeating the idea of the verb in the form of a noun. **ὕδωρ**: irregularly declined, gen. ὕδατος. **βούλοιτο**: cf. διώκοι § 2. **διατελέσαι**: intransitive, or else sc. τὴν ὁδόν. **στενοχωρίᾱς**: translate gen. abs. by clauses. What kind of clause here? **δυσ-πόρευτος**: *hard* (= δυσ-) *for the wagons to pass.* **ὁ Κῦρος**: why the article? **ἀρίστοις**: positive? *noblest.* **εὐδαιμον-εστάτοις**: positive εὐδαίμων; note that stems in -ον are compared with the endings -εστερος, -εστατος instead of -τερος and -τατος. **λαβόντας**: agrees with what? translate as if λαβεῖν καί. **τοῦ . . . στρατοῦ**: (*a part*) *of the army;* part. gen., cf. σταθμῶν above. **συν-εκ-βιβάζειν**: note the force of the present, continued action, *to be conveying* (*the wagons*) *out with* (*somebody*), *to help take the wagons out.*

§ 8. **ἐδόκουν**: personal construction. **ποιεῖν**: cf. συν-εκβιβάζειν, *to be doing* (*it slowly*). **ὀργῇ**: *in anger*, cf. κύκλῳ § 4. **κρατίστους**: positive? *most powerful, strongest.* **συν-επι-σπεῦσαι**: *to help in hastening on*, συν as in συν-εκβιβάζειν. **μέρος**: lit. *part;* here with τί = *some specimen, an instance.* **τῆς εὐταξίᾱς**: either, *of that famous discipline* which characterized the Persian army, or *discipline*, since the article is often used with abstract nouns. **ἦν**: *it was possible;* sub. is the

infin. **ἑστηκώς**: (happened) *to be standing;* suppl. partc. **ἵεντο**: from ἵημι, *I send: they sent* (*themselves*), i.e., *they rushed, hastened.* **ἂν δράμοι**: potential opt.; present of δράμοι? **καὶ μάλα**: *even* down a *very;* μάλα adv., limits πρᾱνοῦς. **τούς**: *those* (*well-known*). **ἔνιοι δὲ καί**: *and some also*, sc. ἔχοντες. **χερσί**: nom. χείρ, *hand;* here *arms, wrists.* **θᾶττον . . . ᾤετο**: *more quickly than* (omit ὡς, *as*) *any one would have thought* (not implying that any one did think so, but expressing what *would have been likely* to happen); a past tense of the indicative with ἄν is called the hypothetical (potential) indicative; it is also used in the conclusion of conditional sentences contrary to fact in which the condition is expressed by εἰ and a past indicative. In a similar manner, the potential optative (cf. ἂν δράμοι) is used in the conclusion of future conditional sentences with less probability, in which the condition is expressed by εἰ and the optative. **μετεώρους**: pred. adj.; Eng. (*they*) *raised up* (*and*), etc., lit. *they carried out the wagons raised up* (*in the air*).

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Verbs, as well as nouns, may be followed by the partitive genitive.

2. An accusative which repeats the idea of the verb on which it depends is called a *cognate accusative.*

3. **Ὕδωρ** in the nom., acc., and voc.; elsewhere from the stem ὑδατ-.

4. The genitive absolute is usually to be translated by a subordinate clause.

5. Adjectives whose stems end in **ον-** are compared with the irregular endings **-εστερος, -εστατος.**

6. **ἀμείνων, ἄριστος**, refer to excellence or worth, *nobler, braver,* etc.; κρείττων, κράτιστος, to strength, *stronger, strongest.*

7. **σύν** in composition frequently expresses the idea of *helping* in the action of the simple verb.

8. General conditions and conditional relative sentences, when they refer to past time, take εἰ or a relative with the opt. in the condition (protasis) and the imperfect in the conclusion (apodosis).

9. The optative with ἄν is called the potential optative; it may be used alone or as the conclusion of a future conditional clause with less probability, expressed by εἰ and the optative.

10. A past tense of the indicative with ἄν is called the hypothetical or potential indicative; it may be used alone or as the conclusion of a conditional clause contrary to fact, expressed by εἰ and a past indicative.

11. The article may be used to refer to something as *well-known.*

12. The article is often used with abstract nouns; often in this usage it cannot be translated, e.g., ἡ εὐταξίᾱ, *good order.*

13. ἵστημι has a 1st and 2d perf. partc. (ἑστηκώς, ἑστώς), without difference of meaning; both are present in meaning.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Comparison of stems in ον-, H. 251, a; G. 354.

2. Conjugation of the present system of ἵημι, H. 476; G. 810.

3. Conditional sentences contrary to fact and future with less probability (less vivid), H. 895 and Note, 900; G. 1397, 1408, 1329, 1340.

4. Partitive genitive with verbs, H. 736; G. 1097, 1.

5. Cognate accusative, H. 715, a, b; 716, a, b; G. 1051, 1052, 1054, 1076.

6. Declension of ὕδωρ, H. 182, a; G. 291, 34.

7. Declension of χείρ, H. 216, 20; G. 291, 36.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **αἱ ἀναξυρίδες**, *Persian trowsers.*
2. **ὁ γή-λοφος**,[1] *hill.*
3. **δια-τελέω**,[2] *bring through to an end, complete, continue, go on.*
4. **δυσ-πόρευτος, -ον**,[3] *difficult of travel.*
5. **εἰσ-πηδάω**, *leap into.*
6. **ἐκ-κομίζω**, *carry out.*
7. **ἔνιοι, -αι, -α**, *some.*
8. **εὐθύς**, *immediately.*
9. **ἡ εὐταξίᾱ**,[4] *good order, discipline.*
10. **ἵημι**, *send, hurl;* mid. *hasten.*
11. **κράτιστος, -η, -ον**, *most powerful, best.*
12. **μακρός, -ά, -όν**, *long.*
13. **μάλα**, *very, exceedingly.*
14. **τὸ μέρος**, *part, portion.*
15. **μετέωρος, -ον**,[5] *lifted, raised* (in mid air).

[1] γῆ, *earth;* λόφος, *an eminence.*
[2] Cf. τελευτάω, *finish.*
[3] Cf. πορεύομαι, ἀπορίᾱ, ἀπορέω; δυσ- has the sense of *difficult*, cf. Eng. *dys*-pepsia.
[4] εὖ, *well*, and τάττω, *arrange.*
[5] Cf. Eng. *meteor.*

16. ἡ νίκη,[1] *victory.*
17. ἡ ὀργή, *anger.*
18. πάνυ,[2] *wholly, exceedingly, very.*
19. ὁ πηλός, *mud.*
20. ποικίλος, -η, -ον, *many-colored, embroidered.*
21. πολυτελής, -ές, *costly, rich.*
22. πορφύρεος, contr., -οῦς, -ᾶ, -οῦν, *purple.*
23. πρᾱνής, -ές,[3] *steep.*
24. ῥίπτω, *throw, throw off.*
25. σπεύδω, *hasten.*
26. ἡ στενοχωρίᾱ,[4] *a narrow place, pass.*
27. συν-εκ-βιβάζω,[5] *help pull out.*
28. συν-επι-σπεύδω, *help in hastening onward.*
29. σχολαῖος, -ᾱ, -ον, *slow;* -ως, adv., *slowly.*
30. ὁ τράχηλος, *throat, neck.*
31. τὸ ὕδωρ,[6] *water.*
32. ἡ χείρ,[7] *hand.*
33. ὁ χῑλός, *grass, fodder.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline δυσπόρευτος, μέρος, πολυτελής, πορφυροῦς.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. Some of these stages were very long. 2. And once, certainly (= δή), the bravest of the companions of Cyrus (= the bravest about Cyrus) conveyed the wagons out. 3. The Persians leisurely threw off their robes where they severally (from ἕκαστος) happened to be. 4. Some of the men ran down the steep hills faster than horses. 5. The Persians wore (= had) necklaces and bracelets. 6. The generals would run if Cyrus should order. 7. If Cyrus were ordering, the generals would run (implying that they are not running). 8. If Cyrus orders (subj.), the generals will throw (off) their robes.

III. For Written Translation: 1. Whenever Cyrus wishes either water or forage, he (always) makes (= marches) long stages. 2. Once mud was found (= appeared). 3. Therefore Cyrus ordered the barbarian army to assist (in) conveying the wagons out. 4. And when it seemed that they were acting leisurely, in anger Cyrus ordered the bravest and strongest Persians to throw off their tunics (and) to convey the wagons out. 5. And immediately they leaped into the mud (and) did so (= οὕτω(ς)). 6. The soldiers would run faster, if Cyrus should order. 7. If I had a tunic, I should think it beautiful.

[1] Cf. νῑκάω Chap. II. § 8.
[2] Cf. πᾶς, *all.*
[3] Cf. Lat. *prōnus.*
[4] στενός, *narrow;* χώρᾱ, *place.*
[5] Cf. ἀπο-βιβάζω Chap. IV. § 5.
[6] Cf. Eng. *hydrant, hydro*-phobia.
[7] Cf. Eng. *chir*-ography.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The partitive genitive. 2. Cognate accusative. 3. Decl. of *ὕδωρ, χείρ*. 4. Comparison of *ἀγαθός*; of stems in *ον-*. 5. Potential optative. 6. Hypothetical indicative. 7. Conditions with less probability; conditions contrary to fact; general suppositions, past and present. 8. Uses of the Greek article. 9. The supplementary participle. 10. The aorist participle with infinitives. 11. Translation of gen. absolute. 12. The infinitive as subject.

LESSON LXXXI.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. v. 9, 10, Τό . . . πλεῖστον.

2. NOTES.

§ 9. **τὸ σύμπαν**: adv. acc., *on the whole*. **δῆλος ἦν**: personal construction, Eng. *it was evident that Cyrus*. **σπεύδων**: suppl. partc. **ὁδόν**: construction? **ὅπου μή**: *except where; μή* because the sentence implies a condition; cf. *εἰ μή, except*. **ἕνεκα**: note its position; postpositive. **ὅσῳ . . . τοσούτῳ**: *quanto . . . tanto*, lit. *by how much . . . by so much;* translate *the . . . the*, i.e., *the faster he went, the more unprepared*, etc.; the dative of degree of difference. **ἔλθοι**: opt. of indir. disc. standing for *ὅσῳ ἂν θᾶττον ἔλθω*, as we judge from the future apodosis *μαχεῖσθαι*. **βασιλεῖ**: with *μαχεῖσθαι*, dat. of association or *opposition*. **μαχεῖσθαι**: fut. infin., for the indic. of the direct discourse. **σχολαί-τερον**: adv.; note that final *ο* of the stem (*σχολαιο-*) has been lost before the comparative ending *-τερο-*; so also in the superlative. **πλέον**: = *πλεῖον*; agrees with *στράτευμα*. **συναγείρεσθαι**: pres., where the fut. is expected, because the action was already going on. **βασιλεῖ**: dat. of advantage. **συνιδεῖν**: 2d aor. infin. of *συνοράω, to see at a glance*, lit. *together;* translate as if *δῆλον*, (*it was*) *evident* (*that*); the personal construction is used and *ἰδεῖν* stands just as if the impersonal construction had been used with *ἄρχην οὖσαν ἰσχῡράν*, etc., as the obj. of *συνιδεῖν*. **τῷ προσέχοντι**: lit. *for the one holding his mind to* (it), *for the attentive observer;* dat.

of interest in looser relation, i.e., one in *whose view* something is true. **νοῦν**: acc. of *νοῦς* contracted from *νό-ος*. **πλήθει**: dat. of *respect*; strong *in respect to extent*, lit. *multitude, of territory and (number) of men*. **τοῖς μήκεσι**: cf. *πλήθει*. **τῷ δι-εσπάσθαι**: weak *in the fact that its forces were scattered*: same construction as *πλήθει*; perf. pass. infin. from *δια-σπάω*; note the reduplication *ε-* because the verb begins with two consonants. **διὰ ταχέων**: *through quick (means), quickly*. **ποιοῖτο**: opt. in indir. disc. for *ποιεῖται* in the direct discourse.

§ 10. **πέρᾱν**: adv. governing the gen. **κατά**: *opposite*. **σχεδίαις**: *on rafts*, i.e., by *means* of rafts; dat. of *means*. **διαβαίνοντες**: pres. partc. to express *repeated* action. **ὧδε**: *as follows*; note the absence of a connective with the following clause because it is explanatory of what precedes. **στεγάσματα**: appositive, *as tent-coverings*. **χόρτου**: gen. after a verb of *filling*. **ὡς**: = *ὥστε*; note *μή* with the infin. **κάρφης**: gen. after a word of *touching*. **τὸ ὕδωρ**: subj.; cf. *τὰς δυνάμεις* above. **οἶνον**: appositive. **τοῦτο**: refers to *μελίνης* as a *thing*. **πλεῖστον**: *very abundant*.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Greek prefers the personal construction.

2. **μή** is the negative in the condition of conditional sentences.

3. The infin. when used as a noun may take a subject-accusative.

4. The dative is used to express *degree of difference*; also the person in *whose view* or *in relation to whom* something is true, called the *dat. of interest in looser relations*; also to express that *in respect to which* something is true, *dat. of respect*.

5. Verbs of *touching* take the genitive; also verbs of *filling*.

6. **πέρᾱν**, an adv. of place, governs the genitive.

7. Verbs beginning with two consonants reduplicate with *ε*.

8. The present participle may represent an imperfect and may, therefore, represent a past action as *continued*, *repeated*, or *attempted*.

9. The infinitive with *ὥστε* (sometimes *ὡς*) expresses result; if negative, *μή* is used.

10. *σχολαῖος* has the comparative *σχολαίτερος*; superl. *σχολαίτατος*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Contract substantives of the 2d decl., H. 157, 158; G. 201, 203.

2. Dat. of degree of difference, respect, interest in looser relations, H. 781, 780, 771; G. 1184, 1172, 1182.

3. Conjugation of the 2d pass. system: *ἐστάλην, σταλήσομαι*, H. 322; G. (*ἐφάνην, φανήσομαι*) 482.

4. Principal parts of *ὁράω, φαίνω*, H. 539, 4, 343; G. pp. 394, 404.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀναγκαῖος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *necessary;* neut., *a necessity.*
2. **ἅπτομαι**, *touch, lay hold of.*
3. **ἡ βάλανος**, *nut;* (of the date-palm) *date.*
4. **δια-σπάω**,[1] *draw apart; separate.*
5. **δια-τρίβω**,[2] *wear away; delay.*
6. **ἡ διφθέρᾱ**,[3] *hide;* (hide made into a) *bag.*
7. **ὁ ἐπισῑτισμός**, *provisioning, taking supplies.*
8. **καθ-έζομαι**, *sit down, rest.*
9. **ὁ κάνδυς**, *caftan* (a Persian vest).
10. **ἡ κάρφη**, *hay.*
11. **κοῦφος, -η, -ον**, *light.*
12. **μάχομαι**,[4] *fight, contend with.*
13. **τὸ μῆκος**,[5] *length.*
14. **ὁ (νόος) νοῦς**, *mind.*
15. **πέρᾱ(ν)**,[6] *beyond, across.*
16. **πίμπλημι**,[7] *fill.*
17. **τὸ πλῆθος**, *number, multitude, extent.*
18. **προσ-έχω**, *hold to, apply.*
19. **τὸ στέγασμα**,[8] *covering.*
20. **συν-αγείρω**, *collect together.*
21. **συν-οράω**, *see together, at a glance.*
22. **συ-σπάω**,[9] *draw together.*
23. **ἡ σχεδίᾱ**,[10] *float, raft.*
24. **ὁ φοῖνιξ**, *date-palm.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Compare *πολύς, ἀγαθός, ἀσθενής, ταχέως, σχολαίως.*

II. For Oral Translation: 1. The generals were plainly (= plain) not delaying except (*εἰ μή*) for (*ἕνεκα*) corn. 2. We think (that) we shall fight the king's army (while it is) most unprepared. 3. The king is strong in territory but weak in his forces. 4. It is evident that the king's army is strong (personal construction). 5. The greater the king's army is, the more leisurely he marches.

[1] Cf. *ἀπέσπᾱ* § 3.
[2] Cf. Eng. *diatribe.*
[3] How different from *τὸ δέρμα*? Cf. Eng. *diphtheria.*
[4] Cf. *μάχη*, *battle*, Eng. logo-*machy.*
[5] Cf. *μακρός*, *long*, § 7.
[6] Cf. *κατ' ἀντιπέρᾱς* Chap. I. § 9.
[7] Cf. *πλή-ρης, σύμ-πλε-ως, πλῆ-θος.*
[8] From *στέγω* = *tego, cover.*
[9] Cf. *ἀπο-σπάω* § 3; *δια-σπάω* § 9.
[10] How different from *τὸ πλοῖον*?

6. The water did not touch the corn. 7. Cyrus crossed the river upon these rafts; by means of these rafts. 8. We shall take provisions out of the city; away from the city; in the city; into the city. 9. Cyrus is filling my rafts with provisions. 10. Cyrus was crossing; kept crossing, attempted to cross; crossed.

III. For Written Translation: 1. On the whole, it was evident that the soldiers were hastening the entire way on account of water. 2. For they thought the faster they marched (opt. of indir. disc.), the stronger the king would be (fut. infin.) in the number of his men. 3. The king was evidently weak in his forces. 4. Cyrus was buying provisions for his army from the city Charmande beyond a river, Euphrates by name. 5. He was filling his rafts with hay. 6. By means of these (i.e., rafts) he kept crossing (partc.) (and) taking corn and wine. 7. The king's force was strong in the (fact that) his territory was very large.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Adverbial accusative. 2. Supplementary participles. 3. ὅσῳ . . . τοσούτῳ. 4. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs. 5. Construction after verbs of *fighting*, *filling*, *touching*. 6. The infinitive as substantive. 7. Negative result. 8. Negative in protasis; in apodosis. 9. Uses of the dative in this lesson. 10. Comparison of σχολαῖος, σχολαίως. Decl. of νοῦς. 11. Adverbs which govern the genitive. 12. Conjugation of πίμπλημι in the present system (cf. ἵστημι). 13. Comparison of πολύς. 14. Opt. in indir. disc.

LESSON LXXXII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. v. 11–13, Ἀμφιλεξάντων . . . πράγματα.

2. NOTES.

§ 11. **ἀμφιλεξάντων**: gen. abs. with του (= τινός) after Μένωνος and του supplied after τῶν Κλεάρχου: *when* or *because* (*some*) *one of the soldiers of Menon and* (*one*) *of those of Clearchus had some dispute.* **δέ τι**: explain the accent of δέ; τι cognate acc. Note that του (= τινός)

is an enclitic. **ἀδικεῖν**: *was in the wrong* or *had done wrong; ἀδικέω* often has a perfect meaning in the present. **ἔλεγεν**: what would *ἔλεξεν* mean? why imperfect? **Κλεάρχῳ**: dat. of *indirect object.*

§ 12. **ἡμέρᾳ**: dat. of time: why not accusative or genitive of time? what would *τῇ ἡμέρᾳ αὐτῇ* mean? **τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν**: (*few*) *attendants;* lit. *those about him.* **ἧκεν**: imperfect with pluperf. meaning; the present is perfect in meaning. **ἵησι**: *throws his ax at him,* dat. of instrument, throws *with* his ax. **αὐτοῦ**: gen. after a verb of *missing.* **ἄλλος**: sc. *ἵησι.*

§ 13. **ὁ δέ**: *but he,* marks a change of subject. **παραγγέλλει**: sends the word along "to arms"; *orders them to come to arms;* note the historical present in vivid narration. **αὐτοῦ**: *there.* **τὰς ἀσπίδας . . . θέντας**: i.e., in readiness for attack. **οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ**: lit. *who were to him,* dat. of poss.; translate *of whom he had.* **πλείους**: case? another form? **τούτων δέ . . . Θρᾷκες**: parenthetical. **ἐπί**: expresses hostility, *against.* **ἐκ-πε-πλῆχ-θαι**: perf. pass. infin. of *ἐκ-πλήττω,* theme *πληγ.* The ending *-σθαι* drops *σ* between *γ* and *θ*, and then *γ* is made *χ* to be coördinate with *θ*; *were terrified,* lit. *had been struck out* (*of their senses*). **αὐτόν**: lit. *himself, too, also.* **τρέχειν**: why not aor.? **οἱ δὲ καί**: *and others also.* **ἕστασαν**: imperf. in meaning; tense? **τῷ πράγματι**: cf. *Κλεάρχῳ* § 11.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The indefinite pronoun is an enclitic, and, therefore, not usually placed first in a sentence.

2. Verbs of *feeling,* such as *anger, displeasure, perplexity,* and the like, take the dative of indirect object where the English expects the accusative with a preposition. Such datives may also be considered datives of cause with verbs of feeling.

3. The dative expresses the time *at which* something occurs.

4. Verbs of hurling are followed by the dat. of instrument, where the English expects the accusative.

5. Verbs of missing take the genitive case.

6. In the perf. mid. (pass.) infinitive ending *-σθαι*, *σ* is lost between two consonants.

7. **γόνυ** is irregular in declension.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of *γόνυ*, H. 216, 3; G. 291, 7.
2. Conjugation of the aor. system of *ἵημι*, H. 476; G. 810.
3. Principal parts of *ἵημι*, H. 476; G. 810.
4. Principal parts of *κελεύω*, *ἁμαρτάνω*, H. 505, 18; 522, 2; G. pp. 387, 374.
5. Dative with verbs of feeling, H. 764, 2; 778; G. 1159, 1160.
6. Dative of time, H. 782; G. 1192.
7. Comparison of *μῑκρός*, *ὀλίγος*, H. 254, 3, 4; G. 361, 5, 6.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἁμαρτάνω** (theme *ἁμαρτ*), *miss, err.*
2. **ἀμφι-λέγω** (talk on both sides), *wrangle, quarrel.*
3. **ἡ ἀξίνη**, *ax.*
4. **ἀφ-ιππεύω**,[1] *ride away.*
5. **τὸ γόνυ**,[2] *knee.*
6. **ἡ διάβασις**,[1] *crossing, ford.*
7. **δι-ελαύνω**, *ride through.*
8. **ἐκ-πλήττω**,[3] *strike out;* (of one's senses) *dumfound; amaze.*
9. **ἐμ-βάλλω**,[4] *throw on;* **πληγὰς ἐμβάλλω**, *throw on blows, chastise by beating.*
10. **κατα-σκέπτομαι**, or **-σκοπέω**,[5] *examine, watch, reconnoiter.*
11. **κατα-φεύγω**, *flee for refuge, escape.*
12. **κρίνω**, *decide, judge.*
13. **ὁ λίθος**,[6] *stone.*
14. **τὸ ξύλον**, *piece of wood.*
15. **ὀλίγος, -η, -ον**,[7] *small;* plu. *few.*
16. **ὀργίζομαι**,[8] *be angry.*
17. **οὔπω**, *not yet.*
18. **πληγή**, *plaga, blow.*
19. **προσ-ελαύνω**, *ride forward, up.*
20. **σχίζω**,[9] *scindo, split.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. Here the soldiers were disputing (about) something. 2. The soldiers came to their own generals. 3. Cyrus judged that Clearchus had done wrong (pres.). 4. On this very day (= this day itself), Cyrus rides to his own army with few attendants (= those about him). 5. The soldiers of Clearchus were very few. 6. As Clearchus rides through (the army), he sees

[1] Derivation?
[2] Same in origin as *genu* and the Eng. *knee.*
[3] Theme *πλαγ*, *πληγ*, cf. *πληγή*.
[4] Cf. *ἐμβάλλει* Chap. II. § 8.
[5] Cf. *σκεπτέον* Chap. III. § 11.
[6] Cf. Eng. *litho*-graphy, mono-*lith*.
[7] Cf. Eng. *olig*-archy.
[8] Cf. *ὀργή* § 8.
[9] Cf. Eng. *schism.*

a certain man splitting wood. 7. Clearchus placed his shield upon his knee. 8. Clearchus had more horsemen than Menon. 9. Menon's men (= the men of Menon) and Menon too became terrified (from ἐξεπλάγην).

II. For Written Translation: 1. Cyrus was exceedingly angry at Clearchus because he (= that one) had inflicted (partc.) blows upon a certain soldier (dat. governed by ἐν in composition). 2. For he judged that Clearchus had done wrong. 3. And the soldiers also were angry. 4. For on this very day some soldiers threw their axes (at Clearchus). 5. But all missed him. 6. Accordingly Clearchus immediately summoned his own soldiers to arms, and ordered more than forty cavalrymen to march against Menon, so that both Menon and his soldiers were terrified at the affair.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Genitive absolute. 2. Cognate accusative. 3. Time denoted by the present partc.; the aorist. 4. Position and accent of the indefinite pronoun. 5. Formation and comparison of ἰσχῡρῶς. 6. Different ways of expressing time. 7. Uses of the genitive and dative in this lesson. 8. Position of the genitive of the reflexive pronouns; position of αὐτός. 9. Meanings of αὐτός. 10. Case after comparative with ἤ; without ἤ. 11. Result. 12. Meaning of ἀδικέω, ἥκω, in the present. 13. Meaning of ἵστημι in the perf. and plup.

LESSON LXXXIII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. v. 14–17, Ὁ . . . ὅπλα.

2. NOTES.

§ 14. **ὕστερος**: pred. adj. with the force of an adv., *behind.* **προσιών**: *to come up*, suppl. partc. **τάξις**: sc. ἔτυχε. **εἰς τὸ μέσον**: *between*; μέσον is used substantively. **ἄγων**: sc. τάξιν. **ἔθετο τὰ ὅπλα**: *stood under arms;* the action of the soldiers assigned to the leader. **ἐδεῖτο**: *kept begging*, gen. of the person; the object is **μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα**, *not to be doing this, not to keep on doing this.* **ὁ δέ**: note the change of sub-

ject. **αὐτοῦ**: i.e., Clearchus, gen. abs. **ὀλίγου**: gen. after *δεήσαντος*, a verb of *want*, lit. *when he wanted little*, translate, *when he had lacked little of being stoned to death.* **λέγοι**: i.e., Proxenus; opt. in indir. disc. **αὐτοῦ**: i.e., Clearchus. **τε**: without a correlative *τε* or *καί*. **αὐτόν**: construction? **ἐξίστασθαι**: depends on what?

§ 15. **ἐν τούτῳ**: sc. *χρόνῳ*, *time; meanwhile.* **ἐπύθετο**: *ascertained*, lit. *learned by inquiry.* **πιστῶν**: used substantively, *faithful* (*ones*), *attendants.* **λέγει**: historical. **τάδε**: *as follows.*

§ 16. **οἱ ἄλλοι**: sc. *ὑμεῖς*, with which *οἱ ἄλλοι* is in apposition; nom. for voc.; *you other Greeks who are*, etc. **ἴστε**: from *οἶδα*. **ὅ τι**: more indefinite than *ὅ*. **ἀλλήλοις**: dat. of *association.* **συνάψετε**: the fut. indic. with *εἰ* often takes the place of *ἐάν* with the subjunctive; more vivid than the subjunctive. **νομίζετε**: imperative. **ἐμέ**: emphatic, as the long form of the pronoun shows. **κατα-κεκόψεσθαι**: fut. perf. infin. for fut.; for vividness, the action is looked upon as if already completed. **πολύ**: adv. acc.; *πολλῷ*, the dat. of degree of difference, might have been used. **ἐμοῦ**: cf. *ἐμέ*; emphatic; construction? **κακῶς**: emphatic by position; with *ἐχόντων*. **τῶν ἡμετέρων**: sc. *πρᾱγμάτων*, gen. abs., conditional, *if our affairs turn out badly.* **ἡμῖν**: dat. after the adj.

§ 17. **ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο**: *became in himself*, i.e., *came to himself, to his senses.* **κατὰ χώρᾱν**: *in* (*the proper*) *place.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. In Greek, predicate adjectives are often used where the English expects adverbs.

2. **ὀλίγου δεῖν**, followed by an infin. = *almost.*

3. The fut. perf. may be used for the fut. to represent the action more vividly as already completed.

4. **εἰ** with the fut. indic. may be used instead of *ἐάν* with the subj. for vividness.

5. Adverbs with *ἔχω* = predicate adjectives with *εἰμί*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Future perfect of *λύω*, H. 319; G. 480.

2. The future perfect, H. 466, 467, 850 and a; G. 703–705, 1266.

3. Predicate adj. equivalent to an Eng. adv., H. 619; G. 926.

4. The gen. with δέω, H. 743, a, b; G. 1112, 1114, 1116.

5. Principal parts of τελέω, καλέω, παύω, ἀκούω, H. 503, 14; 504, 5; 505, 17; 507, 1; G. pp. 401, 387, 395, 373.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἐξ-ίστημι**, *set, place, out of*; mid., *stand out of.*
2. **κακῶς ἔχειν**,[1] *be* or *go ill, be in a bad condition.*
3. **κατα-λεύω**,[2] *stone down, to death.*
4. **τὸ πάθος**,[3] *suffering, experience.*
5. **τὸ παλτόν**, *light spear, javelin* (used for hurling or striking).
6. **πρᾴως**,[4] *mildly.*
7. **πρόσ-ειμι**, *come to, near; approach.*
8. **πυνθάνομαι** (theme πυθ), *learn by inquiry.*
9. **συν-άπτω**,[5] *make touch, join together*; w. **μάχην**, *join battle.*
10. **τίθημι τὰ ὅπλα**; mid., *take a military position* (in line), *stand under arms* (after advancing to or from a place).
11. **ὕστερος, -ᾱ, -ον**,[6] *later, behind.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. Proxenus chanced to be following with his hoplites. 2. When he came up (partc.), he begged both generals to stand out from between them. 3. Generals, do not do this. 4. But Clearchus said: "Withdraw from between us." 5. When Cyrus ascertained the difficulty, he said: 6. "Clearchus and Proxenus, you are more hostile to me than the barbarians (are). 7. For if our affairs go badly, the king will join battle with us." 8. On hearing this the two men came to their senses.

II. For Written Translation: 1. The hoplites of Proxenus happened to come up later. 2. And when they ascertained (partc.) the difficulty, they begged the two generals not to-continue-to-be-angry (pres.) at each other. 3. For they said that the king would join (fut.) battle with them if the affairs of the Greeks should go badly. 4. But at this juncture Cyrus rode into their midst and ordered the generals to stop. 5. He spoke as follows: "Stand under arms. 6. For if you do not stop (subj.), the king will cut us all to pieces on this very (= itself) day."

[1] Cf. εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχειν Chap. I. § 5.
[2] Cf. κατα-πετρόω Chap. III. § 2.
[3] Cf. πάσχω (theme παθ, πενθ) Chap. III. § 4.
[4] Cf. πρᾷος Chap. IV. § 9.
[5] Cf. ἅπτεσθαι § 10.
[6] ὕστερον (used adverb.) Chap. III. § 2.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Article with proper names. 2. Comparison of ὕστερος, πρότερος. 3. Imperfect of εἶμι. 4. Pluperfect of οἶδα. 5. Stem of πρᾶγμα. 6. Genitives and datives in §§ 14 and 16. 7. Comparison of πολέμιος. 8. Dative with adjectives. 9. Use of ἐμέ, ἐμοῦ. 10. Future of οἶδα, of εἰμί. 11. Meaning of εἶμι.

LESSON LXXXIV.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VI. 1–3, Ἐντεῦθεν . . . δίδωσιν.

2. NOTES.

§ 1. **προιόντων**: sc. αὐτῶν. **ἐφαίνετο**: *kept appearing*, agrees with the subject nearest to it. **ὁ στίβος**: personal construction. **ὡς δισχῑλίων**: *that of* (i.e., the track of), *about*, etc.; what other word with numerals means *about?* **οὗτοι**: i.e., *horsemen*, understood from ἵππων. **καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο**: *and whatever else there was*: lit. *if there was any other thing*, etc. **Πέρσης ἀνήρ**: translate *Persian*. **γένει**: *by birth*, dat. of manner. **βασιλεῖ**: construction? **τὰ πολέμια**: acc. of specification. **λεγόμενος**: *said (to be) among*. **Κύρῳ**: construction? **καί**: *even* or *also*. **πολεμήσᾱς**: concessive, *although he had*, etc.

§ 2. **δοίη**: conditional sentence with less probability in the indir. disc. **ὅτι**: translate as if it came before εἰ . . . δοίη. **κατακάνοι ἄν**: a part of the conclusion (apodosis) of the preceding condition. **ἐνεδρεύσᾱς**: manner, *by lying in ambush*. **ἂν ἕλοι**: this and the following optatives are in the same construction as κατακάνοι ἄν preceding. **τοῦ κάειν ἐπιόντας**: *would hinder them from attacking (and) burning*; gen. of separation; note the substantive use of the infinitive. **ποιήσειεν ὥστε μήποτε δύνασθαι**: *would make it impossible*: what lit.? **ἰδόντας**: (1) concessive, or (2) *to see (and) report*. **ταῦτα**: sub. of ἐδόκει. **ὠφέλιμα**: pred. nom. after εἶναι, nom. instead of acc., because the subj. of εἶναι is not expressed and is the same as the subject of ἐδόκει. **μέρος**: sc. τῶν στρατιωτῶν. **παρ᾽**: in the gen. is used with *persons* in the sense of *from*; ἀπό is used of *places* in the sense of *from*, i.e., *away from*; ἐκ = *out of*.

§ 3. **νομίσᾱς**: temporal. **ἑτοίμους**: why acc.? **αὐτῷ**: dat. with adj. **βασιλέᾱ**: (*the*) *king*: why no article? **ἥξοι**: opt. in indir. disc.; direct was, *I will come.* **ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους**: (*with*) *as many horsemen as he could;* direct form of thought retained in vivid narration; conditional rel. clause with more probability. **φράσαι . . . ἐκέλευεν**: sc. *βασιλέᾱ*; indir. disc. for *φράσον τοῖς σεαυτοῦ ἱππεῦσιν ὡς φίλιόν με ὑποδέχεσθαι.* **φιλίᾱς, πίστεως**: i.e., to the king. **ὡς ᾤετο**: (*faithful*), *as he supposed.* **λαβών**: *took* (*and*).

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. In the genitive absolute construction a substantive must sometimes be supplied from the context.

2. Circumstantial participles are often best translated as subordinate clauses; the kind of clause must be determined by the connection.

3. The subject of an infinitive is not expressed when it is the same as the subject of the principal verb; a predicate word with the infinitive is then in the nominative.

4. Conditional relative clauses with more probability are expressed by a rel. + *ἄν* and the subjunctive.

5. Conditional sentences with less probability take *εἰ* with the optative in the condition and the optative with *ἄν* in the conclusion.

6. **ὡς** with numerals = *about;* with superlatives, *as possible.*

7. A verb with two or more subjects may agree with the subject nearest to it.

8. **ἄν** is not used in indirect discourse unless it was also used in the direct.

9. The future optative is used only in indirect discourse.

10. The infinitive with the neuter article may be used as a noun.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conditional relative clauses, H. 912–918; G. 1428–1437.

2. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs, H. 248, 249, 250 (*σχολαῖος*), 251, a, 253, 254, 255, 257, 258, 259, 260; G. 350, 351, 354, 357, 361, 362 (*σχολαῖος*), 363, 365, 367, 368, 369, 370.

3. Principal parts of *ἄγω, ἄρχω, γράφω, ἔχω*, H. 508, 6, 7, 11, 16; G. pp. 372, 376, 378, 384.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. τὸ γένος,[1] *genus, race, family.*
2. γράφω,[2] *write.*
3. δι-αγγέλλω, *carry word through, report.*
4. εἰκάζω, *liken; estimate, suppose.*
5. ἐν-εδρεύω, *lie in ambush.*
6. ἡ ἐπιστολή, *epistola, letter.*
7. ἕτοιμος, -η, -ον, or -ος, -ον, *ready.*
8. τὸ ἴχνος, *trace, track, footprint.*
9. κατα-καίνω,[3] *kill, put to death.*
10. ὁ κόπρος, *dung.*
11. προ-κατα-κάω, or -καίω,[4] *burn in advance.*
12. προσ-ήκων,[5] *belonging to, related to.*
13. ὁ στίβος, *trodden* or *beaten path.*
14. ὑπο-δέχομαι, *receive, welcome.*
15. τὸ ὑπόμνημα, *reminder.*
16. φράζω, *tell, declare.*
17. χρήσιμος, -η, -ον, or -ος, -ον, *useful.*
18. ὠφέλιμος, -ον, *advantageous, beneficial.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. Orontas was most excellent in military affairs. 2. He kept burning whatever (= if there was anything) was useful to Cyrus. 3. If Cyrus gives me men, I shall either capture (= take) or kill (from κατακανῶ) the horsemen. 4. If Orontas should plot against me, I would slay him. 5. We shall come with as large an army as we can. 6. Tell your soldiers to receive Orontas as a friend. 7. I shall write many letters to my friends. 8. Cyrus said that he would write a letter to me. 9. The horsemen are ready for the king. 10. Cyrus, keep (= hinder) the soldiers from seizing the king.

II. For Written Translation: 1. Orontas wrote the following letter to the king. 2. "I shall come to (πρός) you with as many soldiers as I can. 3. Cyrus will give me a thousand horsemen. 4. For I told him that I would keep (= hinder) you from burning the forage in this country. 5. But I shall not do this. 6. Bid your army to receive me as a friend." 7. But this letter was given to Cyrus.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Neuter plural subject. 2. Translation of circumstantial participles. 3. Construction of γένει, τὰ πολέμια, Κύρῳ in § 1. 4. Opta-

[1] Cf. γίγνομαι, theme γεν; Lat. *gigno, genus.*
[2] Cf. Eng. geo-*graphy*, *graph*-ite.
[3] καίνω, same as κτείνω; cf. ἀπο-κτενῶν Chap. I. § 3.
[4] Cf. κατέκαυσεν Chap. IV. § 10.
[5] From ἥκω, *come.* Associated with what verb?

tives and subjunctives in this lesson. 5. Case after verbs of *fighting.* 6. Genitive of separation. 7. Infinitive as substantive. 8. Expression of negative result in Greek. 9. Potential opt.; opt. in indir. disc. 10. *οὗτος* with substantives. 11. Uses of *ἄν*. 12. Uses of *ὡς*. 13. *ἀπό, ἐκ, παρά,* with the genitive.

LESSON LXXXV.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VI. 4–6, Ἀναγνοὺς . . . ἔδωκα.

2. NOTES.

§ 4. **ἀναγνούς**: 2d aor. partc. of *ἀναγιγνώσκω, I read.* **ἀρίστους**: attrib. of Πέρσᾱς. **τῶν περὶ αὐτόν**: *of the (men) about him,* note the omission of the substantive and the attributive position of *περὶ αὐτόν.* **θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα**: *to stand under arms.* **ταῦτα**: *this* in English.

§ 5. **Κλέαρχον**: emphatic in position; so *ἑπτά* above. **εἴσω**: adv. **σύμβουλον**: appositive. **ὅς γε**: *since he;* relative clauses may express *cause;* note that *γε* is an enclitic. **μάλιστα**: adv., superlative; compared *μάλα, μᾶλλον, μάλιστα.* **τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: partitive gen. after *μάλιστα.* **τὴν κρίσιν . . . ὡς ἐγένετο,** *the trial . . . how (it) took place;* Eng. *how the trial took place,* a case of *prolepsis* or *anticipation.* H. 878. **ἀπόρρητον**: neut. because the subj. of *ἦν* is *ὡς* (*ἡ κρίσις*) *ἐγένετο.*

§ 6. **ἔφη**: note the infin. construction after *φημί.* **τοῦ λόγου**: *his speech;* why gen.? **Παρ-εκάλεσα**: aor. used where English expects the perfect. **ὅπως**: with the subjunctive *πράξω, that I may do.* **βουλευόμενος**: object? **πρός**: *in the sight of.* **τοῦτο**: referring to the clause *ὅ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι.* **Ὀρόντᾱ**: Doric gen. **τουτουί**: *here, ι* added to show that the word refers to one near by, *this one here.* **τοῦτον**: note the position for emphasis. **εἶναι**: infin. of purpose. **ἐμοί**: emphatic. **αὐτός**: other meanings for *αὐτός*? **ἐμοί**: cf. *ἐμοί* preceding; construction? **αὐτόν**: with *ἐποίησα*; why not with *προσπολεμῶν*? **δόξαι**: the subject is *παύσασθαι.* **πολέμου**: cf. *τοῦ κάειν* § 2. **δεξιάν**: sc. *χεῖρα,* lit. *a right hand; a pledge.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. γιγνώσκω = *I know*, ἀνα-γιγνώσκω = *I read*.

2. By *prolepsis* or *anticipation* the subject of a subordinate clause is made the object of the principal verb.

3. Substantives, even when modified by attributives, may be omitted when they can be readily supplied from the context.

4. Relative clauses may denote *cause*.

5. A predicate adjective is neuter when it refers to a clause as subject.

6. ι added to a demonstrative pronoun makes it refer to what is near; such a demonstrative may be used with a substantive without the article.

7. **μάλα** is compared *μάλα, μᾶλλον, μάλιστα*.

8. The infinitive may be used as *subject*, also as *indirect object* to express *purpose*.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of the indef. rel. pro., H. 280; G. 425.

2. Declension of the reciprocal pro., H. 268; G. 404.

3. Principal parts of γιγνώσκω, δοκέω, ἀγγέλλω, ποιέω, πράττω, H. 531 (4), 509 (3), cf. 342, 339, 514 (6); G. pp. 378, 380, 372, cf. 115, 398.

4. Complete synopsis of ποιέω, H. 339; G. cf. φιλέω, 494.

5. Enclitics, H. 113, 115, 116; G. 140, 141, 142, 143.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀνα-γιγνώσκω**, *recognize, read*.
2. **ἀπό-ρ-ρητος**, **-ον**,[1] *not to be told, secret*.
3. **ἡ δεξιά**,[2] *pledge*.
4. **ἐξ-αγγέλλω**, *bring out word, make known*.
5. **ἡ κρίσις**,[3] *judgment, trial*.
6. **παρα-καλέω**, *call to one's side, invite*.
7. **προσ-πολεμέω**, *wage war against*.
8. **ὁ σύμβουλος**, *counsellor*.
9. **ὑπήκοος**, **-ον**,[4] *subject to, obedient*.

[1] ἀπό, *from, not* (like α-priv.), and the theme ῥε, *speak*; cf. εἴρηκα Chap. II. § 5.

[2] Strictly *right hand*, sc. χείρ.

[3] Same derivation as κρίνω; cf. κρῖνᾱς Chap. V. § 11.

[4] ὑπό and ἀκούω; cf. Lat. *obedio* = *ob* + *audio*.

6. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *κρίσις, ἀναγνούς.*

II. For Oral Translation: 1. Cyrus orders his own generals to bring (= to lead) their own hoplites into the tents. 2. About three thousand hoplites were brought into the tents. 3. My friends say that the trial of Orontas took place as follows. 4. Cyrus began the trial after saying this. 5. "I shall deliberate with you what is right for us (acc.) to do about this (man) here." 6. In order that he may not wage war against us, it seems best to take pledges from him. 7. Orontas was honored most of the Persians.

III. For Written Translation: 1. When this letter had been read (aor.), Orontas was arrested (from *συλλαμβάνω*). 2. The noblest of the Persians were called together, and the hoplites stood under arms about Cyrus. 3. Clearchus also was within as a counsellor. 4. And the trial of Orontas was reported by him to me as follows. 5. Cyrus began his speech by saying (partc.): 6. "Orontas here was first given to me by my father. 7. But he says that my brother ordered him to make war against me. 8. However, I caused him to cease from waging war against me."

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Prolepsis. 2. *οὑτοσί.* 3. Comparison of *μάλα.* 4. Meaning of synopsis. 5. Gen. of separation. 6. *πολεμεῖν αὐτῷ, πολεμεῖν σὺν αὐτῷ.* 7. Adjectives in agreement with clauses. 8. The infinitive of *purpose.* 9. Purpose is how expressed? result? 10. Uses of relative clauses. 11. Enclitics. 12. Meanings of *αὐτός, οὗτος.* 13. Liquid futures and aorists.

LESSON LXXXVI.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VI. 7, 8, *μετά . . . δόξαιμι.*

2. NOTES.

§ 7. **ὦ**: used with the voc. of address. **ἔστιν**: for *ἐστίν* because it stands at the beginning of the clause. **ὅ τι σε ἠδίκησα**: (*is there*) *any*

wrong which I did to you; ὅ τι, a cognate acc.; σε is the other object. **ὅτι οὔ**: "*No.*" ὅτι when it introduces direct discourse is equivalent to our quotation marks; οὐ, a proclitic, standing at the end of a sentence takes an accent. **ἠρώτᾱ**: from ἐρωτάω; where found? **οὐδέν**: cog. acc., *no* (*wrong*). **ἀδικούμενος**: concessive. **ἀποστᾱ́ς**: *revolt* (*and*). **ὅ τι ἐδύνω**: *as far as you could*; lit. *what* (*harm*) *you were able to do*, sc. κακῶς ποιεῖν; ὅ τι, cog. acc.; ἐδύνω, imperf. 2d sing. of δύναμαι. **ἔφη**: *said "Yes."* **ἔγνως**: *came to know, recognized.* **δύναμιν**: perhaps ironical for *weakness.* **μεταμέλειν σοι ἔφησθα**: *say that you were sorry, repented.* **πιστά**: *pledges.* **καὶ ταῦθ'**: *this too*, or *also.*

§ 8. **τί**: (1) *why*, adv. acc., or (2) cog. acc. with ἀδικηθείς, *what wrong*, etc. **τὸ τρίτον**: cf. τί. **ἐπιβουλεύων**: suppl. partc. **φανερὸς γέγονας**: *have you been plainly plotting*, etc., adj. where Eng. expects adv. **ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθείς**: sc. ἐπιβουλεύων φανερὸς γέγονα. **ἄδικος**: why nom.? **Ἦ γὰρ ἀνάγκη**: *assuredly* (*I admit it*) *for* (*it is*) *necessary.* **ἐκ τούτου**: *thereupon.* **Ἔτι**: *hereafter.* **ἂν γένοιο**: what kind of optative? **ὅτι**: cf. ὅτι οὔ. **οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην**: *not even if I should become* (*friendly and faithful*). **σοί γ' ἄν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι**: *would I ever again seem so to you at least*; note the conditional sentence, fut. with less probability.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ἐστί becomes ἔστι when it stands first in the sentence or when it expresses possibility.

2. οὐ at the end of a sentence takes the acute accent.

3. ἀδικέω and κακῶς ποιέω take a cognate accusative of the wrong done and an accusative of the person or thing injured.

4. A predicate adjective is often used where an adverb might be expected.

5. ὅτι introducing direct quotations is equivalent to the English quotation marks and is not to be translated.

6. After an infinitive whose subject is not expressed because it is the same as the subject of the principal verb, a predicate word is in the nominative.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Accent of οὔ, H. 112, a; G. 138.

2. ἔστι(ν), H. 480, 1, 2, 3; G. 144, 5.

3. Conjugation of *δύναμαι*, H. 487, 1, 2, 3; G. 729, 742, 632.

4. Principal parts of *γίγνομαι, φημί, εἶπον, τάσσω*, H. 506, 1, 535, 1, 539, 8, 514, 9; G. pp. 378, 404, 381, 401.

5. Classes of verbs (1–4), H. 392–401; G. 567, 568, 569, 572, 576, 579, 580, I., II., III., IV.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄδικος, -ον,**[1] *unjust.*
2. **ὁ βωμός,** *altar.*
3. **γέ** (enclitic), *at least* (emphasizing the preceding word).
4. **ἦ,** *verily, assuredly.*
5. **κακῶς ποιέω,** *do evil* or *harm to, injure.*
6. **μετα-μέλει** (impersonal), *poenitet, it repents.*
7. **ὁμολογέω,** *acknowledge, confess, admit.*
8. **οὐκοῦν,** *therefore, then;* in questions, *so then?*
9. **πώποτε,** *ever yet.*
10. **τρίτος, -η, -ον,** *tertius, third.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Select and classify the verbs of the first four classes in this lesson.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. They kept asking Orontas. 2. "Did you not then revolt to the king?" 3. "Will you do harm to our country after this?" 4. "Did you not come to me and take a pledge from me?" 5. Orontas injured Cyrus's land as far as he could (= whatever he was able). 6. Why was Orontas injured by Cyrus? 7. They have plainly been plotting against us. 8. Orontas replied: "I will never again become hostile to you." 9. Orontas replied that he would never again become hostile to Cyrus. 10. If we should become friends to Cyrus, he would never again injure us.

III. For Written Translation: 1. "After that I wronged him in nothing (acc.; why?), as he (= this one) always says. 2. Orontas admits that he wronged me (in) whatever he could.[2] 3. But when he knew my power, he repented and gave me pledges. 4. Orontas, in what were you injured by me after that? 5. 'In nothing,' said Orontas. 6. If then he should again become a friend to me, he would never again seem (so) at least to me."

[1] Cf. *δίκη, δίκαιος, ἀδικέω.*

[2] Cf. 5 of the Oral Exercises.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Proclitics. 2. ἔστιν, ἐστίν. 3. ὅτι in direct quotations. 4. A peculiar use of predicate adjectives. 5. Cases after ἀδικέω, κακῶς ποιέω. 6. Comparison of ὕστερον. 7. ἐδύνω. 8. μεταμέλειν σοι § 7. 9. ἔφησθα. 10. παρ' ἐμοῦ; why not παρά μου? why not ἐξ or ἀπό? 11. Conditional sentences in § 8. 12. Potential optative. 13. Synopsis of φημί in the act. voice. 14. Location of the verbs in § 8.

LESSON LXXXVII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VI. 9–11, Πρός . . . ἐφάνη.

2. NOTES.

§ 9. **ὑμῶν**: partitive gen. **σύ**: emphatic. **πρῶτος**: (*be the*) *first to*; πρῶτον would mean what? compare the adjective. **ἀπόφηναι**: why not ἀποφῆναι? where found? **ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ**: the antecedent of ὅ τι is *not* γνώμην; the whole clause is an indirect question depending on the idea of *declare* in ἀπόφηναι γνώμην: (declare) *what you think best.* **τάδε**: *as follows;* ταῦτα generally refers to what precedes, so οὕτω(ς); ὧδε, to what follows. **ἄνδρα**: obj. of ποιεῖσθαι; meaning of the mid.? **ἐκ-ποδών**: derivation? **τάχιστα**: compare. **ὡς**: = ἵνα. **μη(κ)-έτι**: why not οὐκέτι? derivation? **δέῃ**: why not δῇ? **φυλάττεσθαι**: *to be on one's guard against.* **ἡμῖν**: dat. of poss. **τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι**: *so far as this man is concerned*, adv. acc. or abs. infin., H. 956, a; G. 1534. **εὖ ποιεῖν**: cf. κακῶς ποιεῖν.

§ 10. **γνώμῃ**: H. 775; G. 1179. **καί**: not "*and.*" **κελεύοντος Κύρου**: *at the command of Cyrus;* lit. what? **τῆς ζώνης**: *by the belt;* verbs of taking hold of take the acc. of the person and the genitive of the part touched. **ἐπὶ θανάτῳ**: *for death,* purpose. **καί**: *even.* **ἐξῆγον**: its subject is the antecedent of οἷς. **οἷς**: construction? **οἵπερ**: *the very ones who.* **προσεκύνουν**: customary past action; note the simple fact stated by the following aorist. **καίπερ**: *although.* **ἐπὶ θάνατον**: *to execution;* the acc. rather than the dat. after ἐπί (cf. ἐπὶ θανάτῳ) because of motion expressed by the verb. **ἄγοιτο**: pass.; why opt.?

§ 11. **εἰσ-ήχθη**: from εἰσ-άγω. **τοῦ πιστοτάτου**: appositive. **ὅπως ἀπέθανεν**: *how he died,* probably *buried alive,* a method of punish-

ment among the Persians. **εἰδώς**: *from knowledge, with certainty;* construction? **ἄλλοι ἄλλως**: *some (conjectured) one way, others another; different ones conjectured differently.* **αὐτοῦ**: adv., *there.*

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Verbs of *taking hold of* govern the genitive of the part touched.

2. The nominative of the personal pronoun is expressed only when emphasis is required.

3. Verbs of two syllables in -έω contract only when the contraction results in ει.

4. **εὖ ποιεῖν** takes the same construction as κακῶς ποιεῖν or ἀδικεῖν.

5. The imperfect represents a past action as *in progress,* or as *repeated* (customary), or as attempted; the aorist represents it simply as *occurring* in the past.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Classes of verbs (1–7), H. 392–405; G. 567, 568, 569, 572, 576, 579, 580, I.–IV., 603, 613, 619, 621.

2. Principal parts of θνήσκω, λέγω (*speak*), δέω (*need*), λείπω; H. 530, 4, 508, 19 b, 510, 5, 511, 7; G. pp. 385, 390, 379.

3. Complete synopsis of φαίνω, H. 343; G. 478.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄλλως**, *otherwise, differently.*
2. **ἀπο-φαίνω**, *show forth;* mid. *reveal one's self,* or something of *one's own, declare, appear.*
3. **ὁ ἐθελοντής**,[1] *volunteer.*
4. **εἰσ-άγω**, *lead into* or *within.*
5. **ἐκποδών**, *out of the way.*
6. **ἐξ-άγω**, *lead out.*
7. **ὁ θάνατος**,[2] *death.*
8. **θνήσκω**, *die;* 2d aor. ἔθανον.
9. **προσ-κυνέω**, *prostrate one's self before, pay homage to.*
10. **προσ-τάττω**, *assign, order, command.*
11. **προσ-τίθημι**, *place to;* mid. *place one's self to, join; agree.*
12. **ὁ σκηπτοῦχος**,[3] *scepter-bearer.*
13. **ὁ συγγενής**,[4] *relative, kinsman.*
14. **ἡ σχολή**,[5] *leisure.*
15. **ὁ τάφος**, *grave, tomb.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. Those who were present said that Orontas had done wrong (pres. opt. of ἀδικέω). 2. Generals, be the

[1] Cf. ἐθέλω. [2] Cf. Eng. "*Thanat*-opsis" (a view of death). [3] From σκῆπτρον and ἔχω. [4] Cf. συγ-γίγνομαι, γένος. [5] Cf. σχολαίως Chap. V. § 8.

first to show forth your opinions. 3. We advise you to do good to those who are (partc.) your friends. 4. Let us have (imv.) leisure to guard against Orontas. 5. We agree with the generals' opinions. 6. They took (partc.) Orontas by the belt and led him forth. 7. Do ye all arise and seize Orontas. 8. Orontas knew that the soldiers were leading him forth to execution. 9. Artapates, a faithful scepter-bearer, led Orontas into his tent. 10. No one knows how Orontas died, but we all conjecture.

II. For Written Translation: 1. In regard to Orontas, Cyrus said that the man had done this (plu.). 2. "Let Clearchus be the first to speak (= speak first) what he thinks." 3. "Put Orontas out of the way, that we may no longer be guarding against him!" 4. After this Cyrus ordered the relatives of Orontas to take him by the belt (and) to lead him away to execution. 5. And then when he was led forth it was enjoined upon all (case? why?) to do homage to him. 6. Accordingly they led him into a tent, and after this Orontas was never seen alive. 7. All supposed that he (= *αὐτόν*) was put to death, but nobody ever saw his tomb.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. *πρῶτος*; *πρῶτον*. 2. *ἀπόφηναι*; *ἀποφῆναι*. 3. Indefinite relative pronouns. 4. Meanings of *ὅπως*. 5. *τάδε*, *ὧδε*; *ταῦτα*, *οὕτω(ς)*. 6. Derivation of *οὐκέτι*, *μηκέτι*. 7. Dative of possessor. 8. Partitive genitive. 9. Case after verbs of *taking hold of*. 10. *ἐπὶ θανάτῳ*; *ἐπὶ θάνατον*. 11. *οἵπερ*, *οἵ*. 12. *ἄλλοι*, *ἄλλως*. 13. Classification of verbs in this lesson. 14. Principal parts of the verbs in this lesson.

LESSON LXXXVIII.—REVIEW.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. V.–VI.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Enclitics. Transfer of aspiration. Accent of οὔ.**
2. **Declension.**—(*a*) Contract substantives of the 2d decl.; (*b*) *ὕδωρ*;

(*c*) χείρ; (*d*) γέρας; (*e*) γόνυ; (*f*) reciprocal pronoun; (*g*) indef. rel. pro.; (*h*) ἡδύς.

3. **Comparison.** — (*a*) Adjectives; (*b*) adverbs.

4. **Verbs.** — (*a*) Classes; (*b*) fut. perfect; (*c*) 2d pass. system; (*d*) ἵημι; (*e*) δύναμαι; (*f*) synopses: ποιέω, φαίνω; (*g*) principal parts: ἄγω, ἀγγέλλω, ἀκούω, ἁμαρτάνω, ἄρχω, γίγνομαι, γιγνώσκω, γράφω, δέω (*need*), δοκέω, εἶπον, ἔχω, θνήσκω, ἵημι, καλέω, κελεύω, λέγω (*speak*), λείπω, ὁράω, παύω, ποιέω, πρᾱ́σσω, τάσσω, τελέω, φαίνω, φημί; (*h*) ἔστιν.

5. **Syntax.** — (*a*) πᾶς, ὅλος; (*b*) cognate accusative; (*c*) partitive gen. with verbs; (*d*) genitive with δέω; (*e*) genitive of price; (*f*) uses of the dative; (*g*) predicate adjective for adv.; (*h*) conditional sentences; (*i*) conditional rel. clauses.

3. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

1. τὸ ἄλευρον.
2. τὸ ἄλφιτον.
3. αἱ ἀναξυρίδες.
4. ἡ ἀξῑ́νη.
5. τὸ ἄρωμα.
6. τὸ ἀψίνθιον.
7. ἡ βάλανος.
8. ὁ βωμός.
9. τὸ γένος.
10. ὁ γήλοφος.
11. τὸ γόνυ.
12. ἡ δεξιά.
13. ἡ διάβασις.
14. ἡ διφθέρᾱ.
15. ἡ δορκάς.
16. ὁ ἐθελοντής.
17. ὁ ἐπισῑτισμός.
18. ἡ ἐπιστολή.
19. ἡ εὐταξίᾱ.
20. τὸ ἡμιωβόλιον.
21. ὁ θάνατος.
22. τὸ ἴχνος.
23. ὁ κάλαμος.
24. ὁ κάνδυς.
25. ἡ καπίθη.
26. ἡ κάρφη.
27. ἡ κόπρος.
28. τὸ κρέας.
29. ἡ κρίσις.
30. ὁ κύκλος.
31. ὁ λίθος.
32. ὁ λῑμός.
33. τὸ μέρος.
34. τὸ μῆκος.
35. ἡ νῑ́κη.
36. ὁ νοῦς.
37. τὸ ξύλον.
38. ὁ ὀβολός.
39. ὁ ὄνος.
40. ὁ ὄνος ἀλέτης.
41. ἡ ὀργή.
42. τὸ πάθος.
43. τὸ παλτόν.
44. ἡ πέρδιξ.
45. ὁ πηλός.
46. τὸ πλῆθος.
47. ὁ προσήκων.
48. ὁ σίγλος.
49. ὁ σκηπτοῦχος.
50. ἡ στενοχωρίᾱ.
51. ὁ στίβος.
52. ἡ στρουθός.
53. ὁ συγγενής.
54. ὁ σύμβουλος.
55. ἡ σχολή.
56. ὁ τάφος.
57. ὁ τόπος.
58. ὁ τράχηλος.
59. τὸ ὕδωρ.
60. ἡ ὕλη.
61. τὸ ὑπόμνημα.
62. ἡ χείρ.
63. ὁ χῑλός.
64. ὁ χοῖνιξ.
65. ὁ χόρτος.
66. ἡ ὠτίς.

VERBS.

1. αἴρω.
2. ἁμαρτάνω.
3. ἀμφι-λέγω.
4. ἀνα-γιγνώσκω.
5. ἀν-ίστημι.
6. ἀντ-αγοράζω.
7. ἀπ-αγορεύω.
8. ἀπο-πλέω.
9. ἀπο-σπάω.
10. ἀπο-φαίνω.
11. ἅπτομαι.
12. ἀφ-ιππεύω.
13. γράφω.
14. δι-αγγέλλω.
15. δια-δέχομαι.
16. δια-κόπτω.
17. δια-σπάω.
18. δια-τελέω.
19. δια-τρῑ́βω.
20. δι-ελαύνω.
21. δι-ίστημι.
22. δύναμαι (2 senses).
23. εἰκάζω.
24. εἰσ-άγω.
25. εἰσ-πηδάω.
26. ἐκ-κομίζω.
27. ἐκ-πλήττω.
28. ἐμ-βάλλω.
29. ἐν-εδρεύω.
30. ἔν-ειμι.
31. ἐξ-αγγέλλω.
32. ἐξ-άγω.
33. ἐξ-ίστημι.
34. ζάω.
35. θνήσκω.
36. ἵημι.
37. καθ-έζομαι.
38. κακῶς ἔχειν.
39. κακῶς ποιεῖν.
40. κατα-καίνω.
41. κατα-κᾱ́ω.
42. κατα-λῡ́ω.
43. κατα-πηδάω.
44. κατα-σκέπτομαι, or -σκοπέω.
45. κατα-φεύγω.
46. κρῑ́νω.
47. μάχομαι.
48. μετα-μέλει.
49. ὁμολογέω.
50 ὀρύττω.
51. παρα-καλέω.
52. παύω.
53. περι-ρρέω.
54. πέτομαι.
55. πίμπλημι.
56. πλησιάζω.
57. προ-διδρᾱ́σκω.
58. προ-κατα-κᾱ́ω.
59. πρόσ-ειμι.
60. προσ-ελαύνω.
61. προσ-κυνέω.
62. προσ-πολεμέω.
63. προσ-τάττω.
64. προσ-τίθημι.
65. πυνθάνομαι.
66. πωλέω.
67. ῥῑ́πτω.
68. συν-αγείρω.
69. συν-άπτω.
70. συν-εκ-βιβάζω.
71. συν-επι-σπεύδω.
72. συν-οράω.
73. συ-σπάω.
74. σχίζω.
75. τίθεμαι τὰ ὅπλα.
76. ὑπο-δέχομαι.
77. φράζω.
78. φυλάττω.
79. χορέω.
80. ὠνέομαι.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄδικος.
2. ἁπαλός.
3. ἀπόρρητος.
4. Ἀττικός.
5. βραχύς.
6. δυσ-πόρευτος.
7. ἐλάφειος.
8. ἐνενήκοντα.
9. ἔνιοι.
10. ἔρημος.
11. ἕτοιμος.
12. εὐώδης.
13. ἡδύς.
14. κοῦφος.
15. κράτιστος.
16. μακρός.
17. μετέωρος.
18. ὀλίγος.
19. ὁμαλής.
20. παντοῖος.
21. πλεθριαῖος.
22. ποικίλος.
23. πολυτελής.
24. πορφυροῦς.
25. πρᾱνής.
26. σῑταγωγός.
27. σχολαῖος.
28. τρίτος.
29. ὑπήκοος.
30. ὕστερος.
31. χρήσιμος.
32. ψῑλός.
33. ὠφέλιμος.

ADVERBS.

1. ἄλλως.
2. γέ.
3. ἐκποδών.
4. εὐθύς.
5. ἦ.
6. μάλα.
7. οὔπω.
8. οὐκοῦν.
9. πέρᾱν.
10. πρᾴως.
11. πώποτε.

LESSON LXXXIX.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. vii. 1–3, Ἐντεῦθεν . . . πολλαπλασίων.

2. NOTES.

§ 1. **σταθμούς**: construction? **ποιεῖται**: why mid.? **περὶ μέσᾱς νύκτας**: *about midnight*, plu. used with reference to the *watches* into which the night was divided. **ἐδόκει**: sc. αὐτῷ; *he thought*. **εἰς τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἕω**: *on the following morning;* εἰς is used with reference to the time when the day has come *to* its dawn; ἐπιοῦσαν, *coming on, coming after*, i.e., *following;* ἕω, nom. ἕως, acc. case, cf. Ταμώς, Ταμών, Chap. II. § 21; note that ἕω has no acc. ending -ν. **βασιλέᾱ**: why no article? **τῷ**: *his*. **μαχούμενον**: agrees with what? fut. partc. to express *purpose*. **κέρως**: lit. *horn;* of an army, *wing:* for κέρασ-ος, from κέρας; cf. γένους for γένεσ-ος; why the gen.? **εὐωνύμου**: sc. what? **αὐτός**: *in person*, lit. (*he*) *himself*. **τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ**: sc. what?

§ 2. **μετά**: with the gen. = what? **ἅμα**: lit. *at the same time with*, followed by the dat. of association; the whole phrase is: *at dawn of the following day*. **ἥκοντες**: pres. with perf. meaning, *having come*. **παρά . . . βασιλέως**: how different in meaning from ἀπό? **βασιλέως**: redundant. **συνεβουλεύετο**: why is the mid. used? what would the active mean? **ἄν**: belongs with ποιοῖτο, potential opt.; ἄν often connects itself with interrogative words, though it modifies the verb, H. 862; G. 1299, 2. **ποιοῖτο**: potential opt., H. 872, and a; G. 1327, 1328. **αὐτός**: cf. αὐτός preceding. **τοιάδε**: cf. Chap. III. § 9.

§ 3. **ἄνδρες**: cf. Chap. III. § 3. **ἀνθρώπων**: gen. after a verb of *want*. **ἀπορῶν**: causal. **συμμάχους**: appositive. **νομίζων**: cf. ἀπορῶν. **ἀμείνους καὶ κρείττους**: *braver and stronger*, acc. **βαρβάρων**: construction? **διὰ τοῦτο**: *for this reason*, emphatic repetition; διά with the

gen. means what? **προσέλαβον**: προσ- = *in addition, besides.* ὅπως with the fut. indic. is used after verbs of *effort* to express purpose; the principal verb is often unexpressed before it, and so the sentence becomes a sort of exhortation or entreaty: (*See to it*) *that you be,* etc. **τῆς ἐλευθερίας**: gen. after ἄξιοι. **ἧς** (1st): attracted from ἥν. **κέκτησθε**: *possess,* perf. with pres. meaning. **ἧς** (2d): gen. of *cause.* **ἴστε**: from what? mode? **τὴν ἐλευθερίαν**: *the* (i.e., *that*) *freedom.* **ἑλοίμην ἄν**: what kind of opt.? present of the verb? meaning in the act.? **ἀντὶ ὧν ἔχω πάντων**: = ἀντὶ πάντων ἃ ἔχω; attraction of ἅ to the case of its antecedent and incorporation of the antecedent into the rel. clause.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Some nouns of the 2d declension end in -ως (masc. and fem.) in the nom. sing., and have ω retained in all the cases; ἕως omits the acc. ending -ν.

2. The future participle is used to express purpose.

3. Nouns whose stem ends in ασ- drop σ between two vowels and contract.

4. Verbs expressing emotion take the gen. of cause.

5. **ἄν** is not always written next to the verb with which it belongs; it is often attached to adverbs and interrogative words.

6. After verbs of effort, clauses of purpose take ὅπως with the fut. indicative; the principal verb is often omitted.

7. **ἄξιος** takes the gen. of value after it.

8. A relative pronoun may be attracted into the case of its antecedent, and the antecedent may be incorporated into the relative clause.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Attic 2d declension, νεώς and ἕως, H. 159, 161, 162, a, b; G. 196, 198, 199.

2. Declension of κέρας, H. 181, 183; G. 237, 1.

3. Genitive of cause, H. 744; G. 1126.

4. Purpose with verbs of *effort,* H. 885, 886; G. 1352–1354.

5. Position of ἄν, H. 862; G. 1299, 2.

6. Attraction and incorporation, H. 994. 995; G. 1031, 1037.

7. Principal parts of *μάχομαι*, *αἰνέω*, H. 510, 11, 504, 4; G. pp. 391, 372.

8. Review of the synopsis and the conjugation of the active voice of *λύω*.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἅμα**, *together, together with.*
2. **ὁ αὐτόμολος**,[1] *deserter.*
3. **δια-τάττω**, *dispose in order, arrange.*
4. **ἡ ἐλευθερίᾱ**, *freedom.*
5. **εὐδαιμονίζω**,[2] *deem happy, congratulate.*
6. **ἡ ἕως**, *dawn.*
7. **τὸ κέρας**,[3] *horn; wing* (of an army).
8. **κτάομαι**, *acquire;* perf. *possess.*
9. **αἱ μέσαι νύκτες**, *mid-watches* (of the night), *midnight.*
10. **παρ-αινέω**,[4] *advise, exhort.*
11. **πολλαπλάσιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, or **-ος, -ον**, *many times as much.*
12. **προσ-λαμβάνω**, *take in addition.*
13. **πῶς**, *how?*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Classification of the verbs in § 1.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. The king will come to fight with (i.e., against) Cyrus. 2. Menon's soldiers will come in company with Cyrus. 3. Cyrus will come with (= having) soldiers. 4. The deserters came at daybreak. 5. The king came on the following day. 6. The king will come by night (gen.; why?). 7. The king was marching during the night. 8. If the king should consult with his soldiers, they would fight. 9. You are braver and stronger than others. 10. Be men worthy of your generals. 11. Cyrus chose freedom instead of all things which he had (imp.).

III. For Written Translation: 1. Since (= *ἐπεί*) all thought (it seemed to all) that the king would fight on the following day (dat.), a review was made about midnight. 2. Clearchus led the right wing, but Menon the left. 3. The soldiers of Cyrus were arranged by himself. 4. After this the generals deliberated how they would join battle (= make the battle), if the great king should fight. 5. For it was reported that (*ὡς* or *ὅτι*) he was calling together (pres. opt.; why?) his soldiers to come (fut. partc.) at daybreak. 6. And Cyrus said: "I am not in want of allies (case?). 7. See to it that

[1] From *αὐτός*, *self*, and the theme *μολ*, *to go*.

[2] Cf. *εὐδαίμων*.

[3] Cf. Eng. rhino-*ceros*, having a *horn* on the nose.

[4] Cf. *ἐπ-αινέω* Chap. III. § 7.

you enter (= go into) the battle as brave men. 8 If you should choose freedom you would have all things."

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Attic 2d declension. 2. Neuters in *ασ-*. 3. Declension of *ἕως*. 4. Construction of *ἡμέρᾳ* § 2. 5. Comparison of *ἀμείνους*. 6. *ὅπως* with the fut. indic. 7. Optatives in this lesson. 8. Ways of expressing purpose. 9. Genitives in the lesson. 10. Time: acc., gen., dat. 11. Position of *ἄν*. 12. Incorporation and attraction. 13. Infinitives in indirect discourse. 14. *γάρ* explanatory. 15. Locate the verbs in § 1.

LESSON XC.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VII. 4–6, Ὅπως . . . *φίλοι*.

2. NOTES.

§ 4. **εἰδῆτε**: mode? why? **ἀγῶνα**: distinguish between *ἀγών* and *ἄγων*. **εἰδώς**: sc. what? **γάρ**: explanatory of the preceding statement; omit in translation. **πλῆθος**: sc. *ἐστι*. **κραυγῇ**: dat. of manner. **ἐπίᾱσιν**: plu. referring to the collective noun *πλῆθος*. **ἄν**: = *ἐάν*. **ταῦτα**: the multitude and their shouting. **ἀνάσχησθε**: fr. *ἀνέχω*; *if you endure this.* **τὰ ἄλλα**: acc. of specification. **καί**: *even.* **οἵους . . . ἀνθρώπους**: *the sort of men that.* **ἡμῖν**: translate with *ὄντας* as dat. of poss., *we have*; for another construction for *ἡμῖν* cf. H. 770; G. 1171. **ἀνθρώπους**: incorporated in the rel. clause, properly the obj. of *αἰσχυνεῖσθαι*. **ὑμῶν . . . ὄντων**: conditional. **εὖ τῶν ἐμῶν γενομένων**: *if my affairs* (= *expedition*) *turn out well.* **ἐγὼ ὑμῶν**: emphatic by juxtaposition. **ἀπιέναι**: depends on *βουλόμενον*. **τοῖς οἴκοι**: masc.; for construction cf. H. 771; G. 1172. **ἀπελθεῖν**: depends on *ποιήσω*; its subj. is *τόν . . . βουλόμενον*. **πολλούς**: separated from **ἑλέσθαι** for emphasis. **ποιήσειν**: subj. is the same as that of the principal verb. **τά**: *the* (*things*); substantive omitted. **τῶν οἴκοι**: neut.; construction?

§ 5. **παρών**: translate as a rel. clause. **καὶ μήν**: lit. *and in truth*; translate, "*Yes, but.*" **ὑπισχνεῖ**: in what person is the verb? **διὰ τό**

. . . **εἶναι**: lit. *on account of the being*, i.e., *because you are.* **ἐν τοιούτῳ**: *at such a (crisis).* **κινδύνου**: partitive gen. **τι**: refers indefinitely to the expedition of Cyrus; cf. "*matters*," in the Eng. *if matters turn out well.* **οὐ μεμνήσεσθαι**: indir. disc.; fut. perf. with fut. meaning; *μέμνημαι*, the perf. of *μιμνήσκω*, = *I remember; οὐ*, also *οὐδ'* following, with infin. because the infin. takes the same neg. in the indir. disc. as in the direct, H. 1024; G. 1611. Note that *φασι* takes the infin. construction in indirect disc.; *λέγουσι* usually takes *ὅτι* or *ὡς* (cf. preceding lines), sometimes the infin., H. 946, b; G. 1523. **μεμνῇο**: contraction for *μεμνή-ιο*, H. 465, a; G. 734; cf. *βούλοιο*. **δύνασθαι ἄν**: indir. disc. for *δύναιο ἄν*, the conclusion of the conditional sentence of less probability; note that the infin. may take *ἄν* when a finite mode for which it stands would take *ἄν*, H. 964, (a); G. 1308.

§ 6. **'Αλλ'**: for 'Αλλά, *Well;* introducing Cyrus's rejoinder. **ἔστι ἡμῖν**: *we have.* **πατρῴᾱ**: = *τοῦ πατρός*. **πρός**: (*extending*) *towards.* **μέχρι οὗ**: lit. *until where; to a place where.* **ἐν μέσῳ τούτων**: *between these* (*limits*).

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The infinitive in indirect discourse regularly takes the negative *οὐ*.

2. **φημί** takes the infinitive construction after it; *λέγω* usually a clause with *ὅτι* or *ὡς*, except when passive.

3. **μέμνημαι**, from *μιμνήσκω*, = *I remember.*

4. The infinitive takes *ἄν* when it represents a finite mode with *ἄν*.

5. The article is often used with adverbs and phrases without a substantive.

6. The infinitive with a neuter article is a substantive.

7. The dative may denote one *in whose view*, or *in relation to whom*, something is true.

8. **γάρ** explanatory = Eng. *viz.*, *i.e.*

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **μέμνημαι**, H. 365, b, 465, a, 466, b; G. 525, 704, 734.

2. Principal parts of *αἱρέω*, *βούλομαι*, *μιμνήσκω*, H. 539, 1, 510, 4, 530, 6; G. pp. 372, 377, 392.

3. Synopsis and conjugation of the middle and passive of **λύω**.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀν-έχω**, *hold up, endure.*
2. **ἡ ἄρκτος**,[1] *bear; Great Bear; north.*
3. **διδάσκω**,[2] *teach.*
4. **ζηλωτός, -ή, -όν**, *to be envied, object of envy.*
5. **τὸ καῦμα**,[3] *heat.*
6. **ὁ κίνδῡνος**,[4] *danger.*
7. **μήν** (postpositive), *verily, of a truth.*
8. **ἡ μεσημβρίᾱ**,[5] *midday; south.*
9. **μέχρι οὗ**, *until where; to the place where.*
10. **μιμνήσκω**, *I remind;* **μέμνημαι**, *memini, I remember.*
11. **πατρῷος, -ᾱ, -ον**,[3] *paternal, hereditary.*
12. **σατραπεύω**,[3] *govern as satrap.*
13. **ὁ χειμών**, *winter, cold.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. We are going into great contests. 2. In order that we may endure dangers we shall fight the king. 3. If the king knows (subj.) what sort of men we are he will wish to go homeward. 4. We came away objects of envy in the view of the (men) at home. 5. Cyrus is said to be making many promises (= to be promising many things) because (= *διά*) he is in great danger. 6. We come to (= *εἰς*) such a point of danger. 7. Cyrus said that men could not (= were not able to) dwell in his brother's dominion on account of the heat (in two ways: with infin. construction and with a finite mode).

II. For Written Translation: 1. Here Cyrus said: "We are entering a very great contest. 2. Our enemies are numerous and very brave. 3. See to it, therefore, that ye be men. 4. If you are brave and matters turn out well, I will make you objects of envy in the view of all men. 5. Because we are in such a crisis now, I promise you many things when you return (partc.) home. 6. And be assured (= know ye well) that (*ὅτι* or *ὡς*) I am able to pay all that I promise. 7. For if my affairs turn out well, I (dat. of poss.) shall have my brother's kingdom."

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Negative with the infinitive. 2. *ἄν* with the infinitive. 3. The infinitive as a noun. 4. *μέμνημαι*. 5. *οἴκαδε, οἴκοι, οἴκοθεν* (cf. *ἐντεῦ-*

[1] Cf. Eng. *arct*-ic. [2] Cf. Eng. *didactic*. [3] Derivation?
[4] Cf. *κινδῡνεύω*. [5] From *μέσος* and *ἡμέρᾱ*.

θεν). 6. Omission of the subj. of an infin. 7. The supplementary participle. 8. Indirect discourse after λέγω, φημί. 9. The attributive and predicate positions. 10. Subjunctives and optatives in this lesson. 11. Conditional sentences in this lesson. 12. Different ways of expressing condition in this lesson. 13. Circumstantial participles. 14. Omission of verbs and substantives. 15. γάρ explanatory.

LESSON XCI.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VII. 7–9, ἦν . . . λήψομαι.

2. NOTES.

§ 7. **ἡμεῖς, ἡμᾶς**: the plural number is more complimentary, as it includes the Greeks as well as Cyrus. **τούτων**: refers to τά . . . πάντα of the preceding section; depends on ἐγκρατεῖς: rule for the construction? **ὥστε**: with the indic. rather than the infinitive to give emphasis to the result as an actual occurrence; with the infinitive μή would be used. **τοῦτο**: refers here to what follows, like τόδε. **δέδοικα**: perf. with pres. signification, *I fear*. **μὴ οὐκ**: *lest not, that not;* after verbs of fearing clauses are introduced by μή, or, if negative, by μὴ οὐ. **ἔχω**: subjunctive; after a past (secondary) tense the opt. may be used. **ὅ τι δῶ**: indirect for τί δῶ, "*What shall I give?*" translate: *anything to give;* δῶ is the subjunctive in a question as to what may be done with *propriety* or *advantage,* called the deliberative or interrogative subjunctive; as a rule only the first person of the subjunctive is thus used, cf. Gram. Lesson. **ἂν εὖ γένηται**: cf. § 5. **ἱκανούς**: sc. φίλους. **τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: appositive. **καί**: *also;* in addition to other gifts.

§ 8. **οἱ δέ**: *but they,* i.e., generals and captains. **πολύ**: = πολλῷ. **εἰσῄσαν**: note the force of the imperf., *kept going into,* etc. **τινές**: why does the enclitic have an accent? H. 116; G. 143, 2. **τί**: why not τὶ? **σφίσιν**: dat. of poss.: *what they should have:* the direct discourse was τί ἡμῖν ἔσται, ἐὰν κρατήσωμεν. **γνώμην**: *expectation, mind.*

§ 9. **αὐτῷ**: construction? **μάχεσθαι**: i.e., in person; what they said was: μὴ μάχου. **ἑαυτῶν**: gen. after the adv. **τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ**: why

not *τῷ τούτῳ καιρῷ?* **οἴει**: fr. *οἴομαι*, 2d sing. **γάρ**: *why;* expresses surprise. **σοι**: construction? **Νὴ Δί'**: *yes indeed; yes, by Zeus.* *Δί'* for *Δία*, H. 216, 6; G. 291, 13; acc. after a word of swearing, H. 723; G. 1066. **ἐμὸς ἀδελφός**: *a brother of mine*, predicate. **ταῦτα**: cf. *τούτων* § 7.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The subjunctive of the 1st person is used in questions of deliberation as to what may be done with propriety or advantage. Such questions, in indirect discourse after a principal (primary) tense, retain the subjunctive, but an interrogative pronoun becomes indefinite relative.

2. **Μή** and *μὴ οὐ* are used after verbs of fearing with the subjunctive; the optative may be used after past (secondary) tenses.

3. Adverbs of swearing are followed by the accusative of the object sworn by.

4. Instead of the dative of degree of difference an adverbial accusative may be used.

5. Predicate nouns generally omit the article.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Modes after verbs of fearing, H. 887; G. 1378.

2. Subjunctive of deliberation, H. 866, 3; G. 1358, 1359.

3. Principal parts of *βάλλω, στέλλω, βαίνω*, H. 518, 4, 17, 519, 7; G. pp. 376, 400.

4. Conjugation of the 2d aor. system (*ἔλιπον*, etc.), 2d perf. system (*λέλοιπα*, etc.), 2d pass. system (*ἐστάλην*, etc.), G. (*ἐφάνην*, etc.).

5. Accent of the verb, H. 386, 387, a, b, 388, 389, a–e, 391, a, b; G. 130, 131, 1–5, 132, 133, 1.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀμαχεί**,[1] *without a battle.*
2. **δια-λέγομαι**,[1] *converse with.*
3. **ἐμ-πίμπλημι**,[2] *fill in, satisfy.*
4. **ἠρόμην**, 2d aor., *I asked.*
5. **ὁ καιρός**, *occasion.*
6. **κρατέω**,[3] *rule, have power over.*
7. **νή**, *yea, by;* affirmative adverb of swearing.
8. **ὄπισθεν**, *behind.*
9. **παρα-κελεύομαι**, *advise, encourage.*
10. **πώς**, *in some way;* **ὧδέ πως**, *about thus.*
11. **ὁ στέφανος**,[4] *crown.*

[1] Derivation?

[2] From theme *πλα*; cf. *πλῆθος, πλήρης*, *ple*-o, *ple*-nty.

[3] Cf. *ἐγκρατής*.

[4] Hence Eng. *Stephen*.

6. EXERCISES.

I. Synopsis of νῑκάω in the present system; λαμβάνω in the 2d aor. system.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. If I conquer, my friends will be masters of my brother's province. 2. Each one of the friends of Cyrus will have golden crowns. 3. We fear that (μή) Cyrus will not give us a crown. 4. I am going to Cyrus to ask (fut. partc.) what he will give us. 5. Do not fight with your brother in person (αὐτός), Cyrus. 6. Does Cyrus think that the king will fight him? 7. Yes, indeed, he will not take his brother's kingdom without a battle.

III. For Written Translation: 1. Cyrus does not fear that he will not conquer the king. 2. Cyrus did not fear that he would not have enough friends. 3. What shall we do? 4. What shall we have, if we conquer? 5. Cyrus, continue-to-be-stationed (pres. imperative) behind us. 6. Cyrus thought that he would fight his brother. 7. If all things turn out well, Cyrus will receive the kingdom (from ἀρχή) of his brother.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Conditional sentences in this lesson. 2. Subjunctives in this lesson. 3. Modes after verbs of fearing. 4. μή, μὴ οὐ, after verbs of fearing. 5. Subjunctive of deliberation. 6. Direct and indirect discourse. 7. Genitive with adverbs. 8. Accusative with adverbs of swearing. 9. Use of γάρ in questions. 10. 1st and 2d aorists, and perfects. 11. ἐμὸς ἀδελφός, ὁ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός. 12. Enclitics in the lesson, and their accents. 13. Uses of the imperfect. 14. Dative of possessor. 15. Locate the verbs in § 7.

LESSON XCII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VII. 10–13, Ἐνταῦθα . . . ἤγγελλον.

2. NOTES.

§ 10. **ἀσπίς**: = ὁπλῖται; cf. English usage, e.g., "*a thousand horse*" instead of *horsemen*.

§ 11. **ἄλλοι**: *besides*, H. 705; G. 966, 2. **ὧν**: construction? **τεταγμένοι ἦσαν**: plup. 3d plu. pass., H. 464; G. 486, 2.

§ 12. **ἕκαστος**: sc. *ἄρχων*. **μάχης**: a comparative idea is in the verb upon which it depends, = *ἀφίκετο ὕστερος*. **ἡμέραις**: dat. of degree of difference.

§ 13. **ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων**: Eng. (those) *of the enemy* (who deserted), etc.; note the difference between *ἐκ* and *παρά* with the gen. **τῶν πολεμίων**: part. gen. **ταὐτά**: = *τὰ αὐτά*; *ταῦτα* means what?

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of the perf. mid. and aor. pass. of *ἀλλάσσω*, H. 328; G. 487, 2.

2. Conjugation and synopses of the present system of *τῑμάω*, *φιλέω*, *δηλόω*.

3. Principal parts of *αἰσθάνομαι*, *δύναμαι*, *ἱκνέομαι*, H. 522, 1; 535, 5; 524, 2; G. pp. 372, 380, 386.

4. Formation of the perfect stem, H. 446–452; G. 682–684, 687, 688, 692.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **αὐτομολέω**,[1] *desert.*

2. **δρεπανη-φόρος, -ον**,[2] *scythe-bearing.*

3. **ἐγ-κρατής, -ές**,[3] *in power over, master of.*

4. **ἑξακισχίλιοι**, *six thousand.*

5. **ἡ ἐξοπλισίᾱ**,[4] *the arming, equipment.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Conjugation of *τέταγμαι*; synopsis of *ἐτάχθην*; complete synopsis of *γίγνομαι*.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. Cyrus said that there were (dir. disc., *there are*) 6,000 scythe-bearing chariots present. 2. They were drawing up the soldiers of Artagerses before the chariots. 3. Of these four generals, Abrocromas arrives with his own chariots. 4. You will arrive a day after the battle. 5. Men came out of the cities to the great king. 6. Men from Cyrus deserted to the enemy. 7. After the battle the same (things) were reported to Cyrus.

III. For Written Translation: 1. The number of the targeteers was about 500. 2. But Artagerses led 6,000 horsemen whom he

[1] From *αὐτόμολος*.

[2] *δρέπανον*, *scythe*, + *φέρω*.

[3] Cf. *κρατέω*.

[4] Derivation?

had marshaled in front of the king himself. 3. Each general led thirty myriads. 4. A hundred chariots were present in battle. 5. The hoplites of Abrocomas arrived three days afterwards. 6. And some (note the Greek order) of the soldiers of Tissaphernes, who had been taken after the battle, reported these same (things).

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Declension of numerals. 2. Cases after *μετά*. 3. Construction of *ἡμέραις*. 4. *ἄλλοι* in § 11. 5. Construction after *ὑστερέω*. 6. Comparison of *ὕστερος*. 7. *ἐκ, ἀπό, παρά,* with the gen. 8. *τεταγμένοι ἦσαν*. 9. *ὢν* in § 11. 10. *ἀσπίς* in § 10: meaning, stem, declension? 11. Principal parts of the verbs in this lesson. 12. Locate the verbs in this lesson.

LESSON XCIII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. vii. 14–17, Ἐντεῦθεν . . . *πολλά*.

2. NOTES.

§ 14. **στρατεύματι**: dat. of accompaniment, cf. Chap. III. § 17, *τριήρεσι*. **παντί**: note the position; meaning of *τῷ παντὶ στρατεύματι*? **ἡμέρᾳ**: why dat.? what would *ἡμέρᾱν* mean? *ἡμέρᾱς*? **βασιλέᾱ**: why no article? **ὀρυκτή**: lit. *dug*, i.e., *artificial*. **βαθεῖα**: masc.? **τὸ μὲν εὖρος**: why *μέν*? construction? **ὀργυιαί**: explanatory apposition where a gen. of measure might have been expected.

§ 15. **παρετέτατο**: fr. *παρατείνω*. **ἄνω**: *upward* (from Babylon). **τείχους**: case? stem? **ἀπό**: differs how from *ἐκ*? **ῥέουσαι**: why not *ῥοῦσαι*? **ἰσχῡρῶς**: adjective? **πλεῖ**: why not *πλέει*? cf. *ῥέουσαι*. **σῖταγωγά**: derivation? **ἑκάστη**: in apposition with the subject. **παρασάγγην**: construction? **ἔπεισιν**: why not *ἐπεῖσιν*? cf. *ἀπῆν, ἀπῆσαν*. **μεταξύ**: adv. gov. the gen., = *ἐν μέσῳ*. **ποδῶν**: gen. of measure.

§ 16. **ποιεῖ**: hist. pres. where English would expect the pluperfect. **ἀντί**: lit. *instead of*, i e., *to serve as*, *for the purpose of*. **πυνθάνεται**: historical. **προσελαύνοντα**: suppl. partc. **παρῆλθε**: note the accent; explain the sing. number with two subjects; cf. *ἐγένοντο* following.

§ 17. **ἐμαχέσατο**: why is not the imperfect used here? **ὑποχωρούντων**: emphatic by position.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Verbs in *-έω* of two syllables contract only when the contraction will produce *-ει*.

2. The accent of a compound verb cannot go back of the augment.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Principal parts of *πυνθάνομαι, ὑπισχνέομαι, πάσχω*, H. 523, 8, 524, 5, 533, 11; G. pp. 398, 403, 395.

2. Formation of the perf. and pluperf. mid. (pass.), H. 459–465; G. 488, 489, 640, 698–701, 721, 733.

3. Conjugation of perf. mid. systems of *τετέλεσμαι, ἔσταλμαι, πέφασμαι, πέπεισμαι*, H. 328; G. 486, 487.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **τὸ βάθος, -ους**, *depth.*
2. **βαθύς, -εῖα, -ύ**, *deep.*
3. **δια-λείπω**, *leave between, be distant.*
4. **ἡ διῶρυξ**,[1] *canal, trench.*
5. **εἰσ-βάλλω**, *throw into; enter, empty.*
6. **τὸ ἔρυμα**, *protection; rampart.*
7. **μεταξύ**, adv., *between.*
8. **ἡ ὀργυιά**,[2] *fathom.*
9. **ὀρύττω**, *dig.*
10. **ὀρυκτός, -ή, -όν**, *dug.*
11. **παρα-τείνω**, *stretch beside, extend.*
12. **πλεθριαῖος,-ᾱ, -ον**, *of a plethron.*
13. **πλέω**, *sail.*
14. **σῑταγωγός, -όν**,[3] *grain-carrying.*
15. **ἡ τάφρος**, *ditch, trench.*
16. **ὑστερέω**,[3] *be* or *come (too) late.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. Complete synopsis of *λείπω*.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. The enemy proceed (fr. *πορεύομαι*) during one day with the soldiers all drawn up. 2. The king will fight Cyrus by day. 3. The width of the ditch was a fathom. 4. Each canal empties into the Tigris river. 5. There was a bridge over the river (dat.). 6. The ditch extends from the Euphrates to the Tigris. 7. They extend a parasang from (i.e., away from) the wall. 8. The king made a narrow pass between the rivers. 9. For he had learned that the enemy was marching against (him). 10. We

[1] From *διά* and *ὀρύττω*. See 9.
[2] Strictly, the span of the outstretched hands, from *ὀρέγω*, *I reach*.
[3] Derivation?

passed this ditch and arrived within the wall. 11. Many horses and men were retreating.

III. For Written Translation: 1. All the Greek army had been drawn up. 2. For the king thought that the enemy would fight that very day (= on that day itself). 3. Now the king had dug (ὀρωρύχη) a great ditch up through the country. 4. Boats (for) carrying grain sailed on it. 5. This ditch emptied into the Euphrates river. 6. When Tissaphernes learned that the enemy was marching towards (him), he made a narrow ditch as a fortification. 7. Instead of fighting (infin. with the article) Cyrus on that day, the great king was plainly (adj.) retreating.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Perf. mid. system of liquid and mute verbs. 2. σ in **τετέλεσμαι**. 3. πᾶς in the predicate position. 4. Datives, accusatives, and genitives in this lesson. 5. *μέσον τὸν σταθμόν, τὸν μέσον σταθμόν.* 6. Formation of adverbs. 7. Contraction of verbs in -έω of two syllables. 8. Accent in compound verbs. 9. Two expressions for *between.* 10. Adverbs which govern the genitive. 11. Supplementary participles. 12. Dat. of accompaniment. 13. Genitive of measure.

LESSON XCIV.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. vii. 18–20, Ἐνταῦθα . . . *ὑποζυγίων.*

2. NOTES.

§ 18. **καλέσᾱς**: translate as if indicative. **τῇ . . . ἡμέρᾳ**: *ten days before.* **ἐκείνης**: why fem.? **θῡόμενος**: note the mid. force, *for himself,* i.e., with a view to taking the omens. **εἶπεν**: = Eng. pluperfect. **ὅτι**: = Eng. quotation marks with the direct discourse. **ἡμερῶν**: gen. of time *within which.* **ἔτι**: *at all.* **μαχεῖται**: H. 899; G. 1405. **οὐ**: H. 1021, 1028; G. 1383. **παρῆλθον**: *had passed by, were up.* **αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι**: restrictive art., those mentioned above.

§ 19. **διαβαίνειν**: *from crossing.* **ἔδοξε . . . Κύρῳ**: *Cyrus thought.* **ἀπ-εγνωκέναι**: sc. *αὐτόν*: *had decided not, had given up the thought*

of; *ἀπό* with a neg. force, cf. *ἀποψηφίζομαι* Chap. IV. § 15. **τοῦ μάχεσθαι**: gen. after *ἀπό* in composition, H. 751; G. 1132. **ὑστεραίᾳ**: construction? **μᾶλλον**: *more* or *rather*.

§ 20. **τρίτῃ**: supply what? **τὴν πορείᾱν ἐποιεῖτο**: = *ἐπορεύετο*. **αὑτοῦ**: why not *αὐτοῦ*? **τὸ πολύ**: sc. *στράτευμα*: *the greater part of*. **αὐτῷ**: dat. of disadvantage; translate, *his*. **ἀνα-τεταραγμένον**: *ἀνα-*, intensive: *in utter confusion*. **στρατιώταις**: dat. of advantage. **ὑποζυγίων**: sc. what?

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Time *within which* is expressed by the genitive.

2. **ἀπό** in composition sometimes has a negative force. It may still govern the genitive case.

3. **ὅτι** introducing direct discourse is equivalent to the English quotation marks.

4. In expressions of time *ἡμέρᾱ* is often omitted.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of *ἧμαι*, H. 483, 484; G. 814–816.

2. Principal parts of *τυγχάνω, ταράσσω, ἐλαύνω*, H. 523, 9, 514, 8, 521, 1; G. pp. 403, 401, 382.

3. Attic reduplication, H. 368; G. 529.

4. Augment of the pluperfect, H. 358; G. 510, 527.

5. Genitive with compound verbs, H. 751; G. 1132.

6. Conjugation of perf. mid. and aor. pass. of *ῥίπτω* (G. **τρίβω**), *ἐλέγχω*, H. 328; G. 486, 487.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀληθεύω**, *speak the truth*.
2. **ὁ Ἀμπρακιώτης**, *Ambraciot*.[1]
3. **ἀνα-ταράττω**, *stir up, confuse*.
4. **ἀπο-γιγνώσκω**,[2] *give up, abandon the idea*.
5. **ἄρα**, *then, therefore*.
6. **ἑνδέκατος, -η, -ον**,[3] *eleventh*.
7. **ἠμελημένως**,[4] *carelessly*.
8. **ὁ μάντις**, *seer, soothsayer*.
9. **ἡ πορείᾱ**,[5] *journey*.
10. **προ-θύομαι**, *sacrifice before*, or *in behalf of* (some one).
11. **τὸ τάλαντον**,[6] *talent*.

[1] Ambracia was in Epirus, near the gulf which bore its name — the Ambracian Gulf.

[2] Cf. *γνώμη*; *ἔγνω*.

[3] Derivation?

[4] Perfect middle participle of *ἀ-μελέω* with adverbial ending.

[5] Cf. *πορεύομαι*.

[6] A sum of money, about $1100.

6. EXERCISES.

I. Conjugate τάσσω in the perf. mid. system; synopsis of εἶπον.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. Here Silanus was summoned by (ὑπό; case?) Cyrus, and 3,000 darics were given to him. 2. If the king does not (μή; why?) fight in ten days, I will give you money. 3. Since (gen. abs.) the enemy did not prevent Cyrus from crossing, the army proceeded. 4. On the following day the soldiers' arms were carried for them upon the wagons. 5. Cyrus was seated upon his horse. 6. Cyrus mounted his horse (*went up upon:* ἐπί with the acc. because of motion). 7. If the king fights me, I will give you ten talents. 8. Cyrus has given up the idea of crossing the river because (ὅτι) his army is proceeding rather carelessly.

III. For Written Translation: 1. Here Cyrus gave to Silanus the ten talents which he had promised (aor.) him because ten days before the seer had said to Cyrus that the king would not fight in (ἐν) these days. 2. When the king gave up the thought of fighting, Cyrus and his army crossed the ditch, since nothing hindered (gen. abs.). 3. The soldiers were proceeding with few wagons and beasts of burden. 4. Cyrus had very few (superl.) soldiers before him(self). 5. When Cyrus had summoned the generals and captains of the Greeks he promised to give to each of the Greeks a golden crown. 6. And he also said that if the Greeks conquered he would make his friends masters of (cf. § 7) his brother's dominions (things). 7. Therefore he did not fear that he would not have enough to give to each of his friends, if matters should turn out well, but that he would not have enough friends to whom to give.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Expressions of *time*. 2. 1st aorist in κα, instead of σα. 3. ὅτι followed by direct discourse. 4. Modes in indirect discourse. 5. Mutes before μ; before σ; before mutes. 6. Different kinds of reduplication. 7. Analysis of ἀπεγνωκέναι, ἀνατεταραγμένον. 8. Meaning of the mid. voice. 9. Uses of the aorist. 10. καθ in καθήμενος. 11. Comparison of μᾶλλον. 12. Formation of adverbs. 13. Principal parts of the verbs in the lesson. 14. Augment of the pluperfect. 15. Prefixes having a negative force. 16. Genitive and dative with compound verbs. 17. Modes used after ὥστε.

LESSON XCV.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VIII. 1–4, *Καί . . . Ἑλληνικοῦ.*

2. NOTES.

§ 1. **ἦν**: impersonal, *it was.* **ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν**: *about full market* (*time*), cf. Eng. *early-candle-light,* from 10 to 12 A.M. **πλησίον**: adv. **σταθμός**: *station, halting-place.* **ἔνθα**: *where,* i.e., (*the place*) *where.* **ἔμελλε**: sc. Κῦρος. **καταλύειν**: *halt.* **ἀνήρ**: omit in translation. **τῶν . . . πιστῶν**: (*one*) *of the faithful,* etc., part. gen. **προφαίνεται**: *appears forth, comes in sight.* **ἀνὰ κράτος**: *at full speed,* lit. *up to* (*the full measure of*) *strength.* **ἵππῳ**: cf. *συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι* Chap. VII. § 14. **οἷς**: construction? **βαρβαρικῶς**: *in Persian.* **ὅτι**: = the quotation marks in Eng. **ὡς εἰς**: *as if for, apparently for.* **παρεσκευασμένος**: tense?

§ 2. **ἐγένετο**: *came to be,* i.e., *arose.* **αὐτίκα**: emphatic by position, modifies *ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι.* **ἐδόκουν**: *supposed.* **καί**: *too.* **δέ**: *and.* **ἀτάκτοις**: cf. *τάσσω.* **σφίσιν**: construction? **ἐπι-πεσεῖσθαι**: fut. of *ἐπι-πίπτω,* H. 426; G. 666.

§ 3. **ἐνέδῡ**: *put on;* lit. *entered;* 2d aor. of *δύω,* and conjugated according to the *μι*-system. **ἀναβάς**: fr. *ἀνέβην,* 2d aor., of the *μι*-system. **ἐξοπλίζεσθαι**: *to arm themselves out,* i.e., *completely.* **καθίστασθαι**: *to take their stand, to fall into line.* **ἕκαστον**: agreeing with an implied subject of *καθίστασθαι* where the dat. would be expected in agreement with *ἄλλοις.*

§ 4. **Κλέαρχος**: partitive apposition with the subject of *καθίσταντο*; *they were forming in line;* so also *Πρόξενος, οἱ ἄλλοι.* **τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος**: *the right of the* (Greek) *wing.* **ἐχόμενος**: lit. *holding on to, next to,* sc. *Κλεάρχου,* H. 816, 9, 738; G. 1246, 1099. **τὸ στράτευμα**: a part of the subject. **Ἑλληνικοῦ**: supply what?

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Second aorists of the *μι*-form, H. 489, 1, 12, 15, 17; G. 798, 799.

2. Conjugation of *ἔστην, ἔδῡν,* H. 335; G. 504, 506.

3. Conjugation of the 2d aorists of *τίθημι, δίδωμι*, H. 333, 334; G. 506, 802, 2.

4. Principal parts of *πίπτω, μέλλω, μέλω*, H. 506, 4, 510, 12, 13; G. pp. 397, 391.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀνά**, *up*; **ἀνὰ κράτος**, *up to* the full measure of *strength*, e.g., *at full speed*.
2. **ἄτακτος, -ον**,[1] *out of order, disorderly*.
3. **αὐτίκα**, *immediately*.
4. **βαρβαρικῶς**, *barbarously; in the Persian tongue*.
5. **βοάω**, *shout* or *cry out*.
6. **ἑλληνικῶς**, *in the Greek fashion* or *tongue*.
7. **ἐν-δύω**, *enter into; put on*.
8. **ἐπι-πίπτω**, *fall upon*.
9. **ἐξ-οπλίζω**,[2] *arm completely*.
10. **ἡνίκα**, *when*; like the Lat. *cum* (*inversum*) with the indic.
11. **ἱδρόω**, *sweat, perspire*.
12. **ὁ θώρᾱξ, -ᾱκος**,[3] *breastplate*.
13. **κατα-πηδάω**,[4] *leap down*.
14. **τὸ κράτος, -ους**, *power, strength*. See *ἀνά* above.
15. **μέλλω**, *be about, intend*.
16. **πλήθω**, *be full*; **ἀγορᾱ̀ πλήθουσα**, *full market*, i.e., 10–12 A.M.
17. **πλησίον**, *near*.
18. **προ-φαίνω**, *show forth*; mid. *appear in sight*.
19. **ὁ τάραχος**,[5] *confusion*.

5. EXERCISES

I. Complete synopsis of *ἀγγέλλω*.

II. For Oral Translation: 1. A certain one (position?) of the followers (= the ones with, or about) of Cyrus fell in with (= happened upon) the king. 2. He kept shouting: "The enemy will come prepared for battle. 3. The king will attack (= fall upon) us in disorder, and the confusion will be great." 4. The soldiers leaped down from the chariots and put on their breastplates. 5. Each general armed himself completely. 6. The right wing was near the river. 7. Menon and his army were next to this (wing). 8. The horsemen were riding at full speed with their horses sweating. 9. We shall mount (aor. partc.) our horses (and) take our javelins in our hands.

III. For Written Translation: 1. When they were near where they intended to halt, a man came running at full speed. 2. And

[1] Derivation?
[2] Cf. *ἐξοπλισίᾱ* Chap. VII. § 10.
[3] Hence Eng. *thorax*.
[4] Cf. Chap. V. § 8.
[5] Cf. *ἀνα-ταράττω*.

he shouted to every one that the king was coming up as if to fight (fut. partc.). 3. All the generals mounted (partc.) their horses and took their javelins in their hands, and afterwards (ὕστερον) each one took his place in his own line. 4. Clearchus, Proxenus, and[1] Menon occupied the right wing, but the others were next (= were holding on to). 5. If we meet (subj.) the king, he will fall upon us in disorder. 6. The men said that the king would fall upon them in disorder.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Declension of κράτος. 2. Reduplication of verbs beginning with two consonants. 3. Declension of κέρας. 4. μετά with acc.; with the genitive. 5. Verbs of *taking hold of* take what case? 6. Principal parts of all the verbs in this lesson. 7. 2d aorists. 8. The direct middle. 9. Construction of τῷ ἵππῳ § 1. 10. Synopses of ἔβην, ἔσχον.

LESSON XCVI.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. viii. 5–8, τοῦ . . . ἐγίγνοντο.

2. NOTES.

§ 5. **εἰς**: *to the number of*, i.e., *about;* what other word meaning *about* is used with numerals? **παρά**: with the acc. because of implied motion in ἔστησαν, *came and took their stand alongside of C.*, H. 788; G. 1225. Note the difference between ἔστησαν and ἕστασαν, i.e., *came to a standing position*, and *were standing*. **τὸ ἄλλο**: why the article?

§ 6. **ὅσον**: adv. acc., = ὡς, εἰς, *about*. The verb is supplied from the preceding sentence, ἔστησαν. **αὐτοί**: (*the men*) *themselves*, distinguished from οἱ ἵπποι § 7, which were also armed. **πλήν**: as a preposition governs the gen. **ψῑλήν**: pred. adj., *bare*, i.e., *without helmet*. **λέγεται . . . κινδῡνεύειν**: parenthetical. **κεφαλαῖς**: construction?

§ 7. **οἱ μετά**: why οἱ?

[1] The Greek says, Clearchus *and* Proxenus *and* Menon, or else omits all connectives.

§ 8. **μέσον ἡμέρᾱς**: *midday, noon;* what is the Greek for *midnight?* **δείλη**: *afternoon,* here *early in the afternoon,* from 12 to 2 P.M. **χρόνῳ**: why dat.? **μελανίᾱ τις**: *a sort of blackness,* i.e., *a kind of black cloud;* cf. H. 702. **ἐπὶ πολύ**: *for a great distance, far and wide.* **χαλκός τις**: *bronze here and there;* referring to the flashing of armor and weapons. **ἤστραπτε**: note the force of the imperfect, *repeated* action. **τάξεις**: *divisions, corps.*

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of the present systems of *τίθημι, δίδωμι, ἵστημι, δείκνῡμι.*

2. Principal parts of *κτείνω, τείνω, τρέχω,* H. 519, 4, 5, 539, 5; G. pp. 389, 401, 403.

3. Short *α* in the first declension, H. 139, a–d; G. 174, 175.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀστράπτω**, *flash.*
2. **ἡ δείλη**, *afternoon.*
3. **δια-κινδῡνεύω**, *brave the danger.*
4. **ἐγγύς**, *near;* **ἐγγύτερον**, *nearer.*
5. **καταφανής, -ές**,[1] *in plain view.*
6. **ὁ κονιορτός**, *a stirring* or *cloud of dust.*
7. **ἡ λόγχη**, *spear-head; spear, lance.*
8. **λευκός, -ή, -όν**, *white.*
9. **ἡ μάχαιρα**, *short sword, dagger.*
10. **ἡ μελανίᾱ**,[2] *blackness; black object.*
11. **ἡ νεφέλη**, *cloud.*
12. **ὁπλίζω, -ίσω** or **-ιῶ**, *put on heavy armor; arm.*
13. **ὅσον**, *so much as;* with num., *about.*
14. **τὰ παραμηρίδια**, *thigh-pieces* of armor.
15. **πελταστικός, -ή, -όν**, *consisting of targeteers.*
16. **τὰ προμετωπίδια**, armor-pieces before the forehead, *frontlets.*
17. **τὰ προστερνίδια**,[3] armor-pieces before the breast, *breastplates.*
18. **ἡ σπουδή**, *zeal, haste.*
19. **συχνός, -ή, -όν**, *much, considerable.*
20. **τάχα**, *quickly.*
21. **ὁ χαλκός**,[4] *bronze, bronze object.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. Decline *μάχαιρα, μελανίᾱ, θώρᾱξ, δείλη, καταφανής.*

II. For Oral Translation: 1. The soldiers were taking their places in battle. 2. All the Persians used to have their heads

[1] *κατά* has the sense of *thoroughness,* as in *καταπράξειε(ν)* Chap. II. § 2.
[2] Cf. Eng. *melan*-choly.
[3] From *πρό* and *στέρνον, sternum, the breast bone.*
[4] Hence *χαλκοῦς* Chap. II. § 16.

unprotected in battle. 3. Every cavalry-man with Cyrus had a sword. 4. About midday, about midnight, about afternoon. 5. The soldiers were seen for a great distance. 6. And considerably later white clouds were distinctly visible. 7. When the army was much nearer, the rest of the barbarians appeared.

III. For Written Translation: 1. Cyrus armed his horsemen with breastplates and helmets. 2. But he himself used to incur danger (imperfect) with unprotected head. 3. And it was also said that the Greek horses had frontlets. 4. Not long after midday (later than midday by not much time) the great king appeared on the plain. 5. But he was not yet distinctly visible. 6. However, in the evening (gen. of time *within which*), when he came nearer, the line of battle was visible.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. *μέν* and *δέ*. 2. *About* with numerals. 3. *τὸ ἄλλο, ἄλλο*. 4. Comparison of adverbs. 5. Final *α* in the first declension. 6. Comparison of *καταφανής*. 7. Peculiar meanings for *τίς*. 8. *τάχα, ταχέως*. 9. *ὑπ* in *ὕπαρχος*. 10. 1st decl. nouns in the lesson.

LESSON XCVII.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. viii. 9–12, *καὶ* . . . *πεποίηται*.

2. NOTES.

§ 9. **ἦσαν**: *there were.* **Τισσαφέρνης . . . ἄρχειν**: no connective; parenthetical and explanatory. **τούτων**: why gen.? **ἐχόμενοι**: *next*, cf. § 4. **Αἰγύπτιοι**: pred. after *εἶναι*; why nom.? **κατὰ ἔθνη**: *nation by nation.* **τὸ ἔθνος**: partitive apposition to *οὗτοι*. **ἐπορεύετο**: attracted to the sing. to agree with *ἔθνος* because nearest the verb.

§ 10. **ἅρματα**: sc. *ἦν* or *ἦσαν*? **συχνόν**: acc. of extent of space. **εἶχον**: the singular number would be regular. **εἰς πλάγιον**: *sidewise.* **ἀποτεταμένα**: fr. *ἀποτείνω*. **ὡς**: = *ὥστε*, H. 1054, f.; G. 1456; purpose is expressed here, cf. H. 953, a; G. 1452. **ὅτῳ**: fr. *ὅστις*; construction? **ἐντυγχάνοιεν**: cf. *εἶχον*; opt. in a general conditional

rel. clause of past time. **γνώμη**: *expectation, intention.* **ὡς ἐλῶντα καὶ διακόψοντα**: sc. τὰ δρεπανηφόρα ἅρματα, acc. abs., *that they would drive into,* etc., H. 973, 974; G. 1569, 1570.

§ 11. **ὅ**: antecedent is τοῦτο following; Eng. order: Κῦρος ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο ὃ εἶπεν. **τοῦτο**: construction? **ὡς ἀνυστόν**: = ὡς δυνατόν.

§ 12. **τούτῳ**: sc. χρόνῳ. **ἐβόα**: note the force of the imperfect. **εἴη**: opt. in indirect disc. **τοῦτ'**: i.e., τὸ μέσον. **ἐὰν νῑκῶμεν**: form of cond.? **ἡμῖν**: dat. of agent. **πεποίηται**: perf. to express the fact as already accomplished; more vivid than the future; H. 848; G. 1264.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of ὅστις, H. 280 and a; G. 425.

2. Conjugation of ἵημι, pres. and 2d aor. systems.

3. Principal parts of βλέπω, σπάω. H. 508, 8, 503, 4; G. pp. 377, 400.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀνυστός, -όν**, *practicable, possible.*
2. **ὁ ἄξων, -ονος**, *axle.*
3. **ἀπο-τείνω, -τενῶ**, *stretch off, extend.*
4. **βλέπω**, *look.*
5. **βραδύς, -εῖα, -ύ**, *slow*; **-έως**, *slowly.*
6. **ὁ γερρο-φόρος**, *soldier bearing a wicker-shield.*
7. **δια-κόπτω, -ψω**, *cut through* or *in pieces.*
8. **ὁ δίφρος**, *chariot (seat).*
9. **τὸ δρέπανον**, *scythe.*
10. **τὸ ἔθνος**,[1] *tribe, nation.*
11. **ἡσυχῇ**, *quietly.*
12. **ἴσος, -η, ον**,[2] *equal, even.*
13. **λευκο-θώρᾱξ, -ᾱκος**, *wearing a white breastplate.*
14. **ξύλινος, -η, -ον**,[3] *wooden.*
15. **πλάγιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *oblique*; **εἰς πλάγιον**, *sidewise.*
16. **τὸ πλαίσιον**, *square, rectangle.*
17. **ποδ-ήρης, -ες**, *reaching the feet.*
18. **ἡ σῑγή**, *silence.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. The entire army was proceeding nation by nation. 2. Each square was full of bowmen (case? why?). 3. In front of the army the soldiers were driving the chariots into the enemy. 4. Cyrus had urged the soldiers not to be deceived by the enemy. 5. For he said that they would advance (indir. disc. for "will advance") silently and slowly. 6. All things have been done by the king, — for the king. 7. All things

[1] Cf. Eng. *ethno*-logy. [2] Cf. Eng. *iso*-sceles, *iso*-thermic. [3] Derivation?

will be done by (ὑπό) the king. 8. If we lead the army against (ἐπί; case?) the king, we shall conquer.

II. For Written Translation: 1. Tissaphernes was leading the horsemen *who wore white breastplates* (attrib. adj.). 2. The Egyptians were next to him (gen.; why?). 3. Each general was said to have his hoplites in a square. 4. And in front of the army there were scythe-bearing chariots. 5. For the thought was that the scythes would cut to pieces whomsoever they met. 6. The Greeks, however, were deceived in respect to this. 7. For Cyrus had said that the barbarians would advance with a shout. 8. Cyrus shouted to the generals as follows: 9. "Lead the army against (ἐπί) the king himself. 10. For if he is (= be) conquered, all things will be done for us."

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Uses of ἄλλος. 2. Construction after ἐπί. 3. Meanings of κατά. 4. ὡς with the infinitive. 5. Clauses of purpose; result. 6. Accusative absolute. 7. Optatives and subjunctives in the lesson. 8. Future of ἐλαύνω. 9. Crasis. 10. The grave accent. 11. Special uses of the dat., gen., acc., in this lesson. 12. Principal parts of the verbs in this lesson.

LESSON XCVIII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VIII. 13–15, ὁρῶν . . . καλά.

2. NOTES.

§ 13. **ὁρῶν, ἀκούων**: concessive; *although he saw*, etc. **τὸ μέσον**: substantive. **Κύρου**: H. 742, c; G. 1103. **ἔξω**: with τοῦ εὐωνύμου. **ὄντα . . . βασιλέᾱ**: *that the king was*, etc., suppl. partc., H. 982; G. 1588. **τοσοῦτον**: adv. acc.; what part of speech? H. 273; G. 429. **πλήθει**: cf. Chap. V. § 9. **περιῆν**: cf. περιγίγνομαι, why not περίῃν? **μέσον**: = τὸ μέσον. **τῶν**: supply what? **ἔχων**: cf. ἀκούων, ὁρῶν preceding. **ὁ Κλέαρχος**: repeated because of the interruption caused by the long parenthesis. **μή**: *that;* why not ὅτι? **κυκλωθείη**: H. 887;

G. 1378. **ἑκατέρωθεν**: for the force of -*θεν* cf. *ἐντεῦθεν*. **ἀπεκρίνατο**: in answer to the command of Cyrus in § 12. **αὐτῷ**: indirect obj. **μέλοι**: indir. disc. **καλῶς ἔχοι**: *it should be well*, impersonal; **ἔχω** with adverbs = *εἰμί* with adjectives. **ἔχοι**: the direct statement of Clearchus was *μέλει μοι ὅπως καλῶς ἔχῃ*, cf. H. 885, b; G. 1374.

§ 14. **ὁμαλῶς**: = *ἐν ἴσῳ* § 11. **τῷ αὐτῷ**: *the same place* where the advance had halted; the rear was still on the march as *ἐκ . . . προσιόντων* shows. **οὐ πάνυ πρός**: *not very near to*, i.e., *some distance from.* **ἑκατέρωσε**: cf. *ἑκατέρωθεν*; force of -*σε*? H. 219, b; G. 294. **εἴς**: why accented? H. 115, c; G. 143, 4.

§ 15. **ἰδών**: temporal. **πελάσᾱς**: translate as if indic. followed by *and*. **ὡς**: to express purpose, cf. *ὡς διακόπτειν* § 10. **εἴ**: cf. *εἴς* § 14; *whether*; the direct disc. probably was *παραγγέλλεις τι;* "Do you give any command?" "Have you any orders to give?" **ἐπιστήσᾱς**: sc. *τὸν ἵππον*; on the translation cf. *πελάσᾱς*. **ἱερά**: *omens* from the appearance of the heart, lungs, and liver. **σφάγια**: *omens* from the movements of the animals slain; *καλά . . . καλά*, emphatic repetition; sc. *εἴη*, opt. of indir. disc.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ἀκούω** takes the gen. of the source from which one hears something.

2. The ending -*θεν* denotes motion *from*; -*σε*, motion *toward*, cf. -*δε* in *οἴκαδε*.

3. **εἰ** in indirect questions means *whether*.

4. **μέλω** is an impersonal verb; e.g., *μέλει μοι, it is a care to me, I am taking care.*

5. **ὡς** is sometimes used, instead of *ὥστε*, with the infinitive to express purpose.

6. The supplementary participle (participle in indirect discourse) is used after many verbs, especially verbs of *seeing*, *hearing*, etc.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of *εἶμι, εἰμί, φημί*, in the present systems.

2. Principal parts of *ἐθέλω, κρίνω, ἔρομαι* H. 510, 10, 519, 2, 508, 14; G. pp. 381, 383, 389.

3. First declension.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀπο-βλέπω**, *look off* or *away*.
2. **ἀπο-σπάω, -άσω**, *draw off* or *away*.
3. **ἑκατέρω-σε**, *to*, or *in*, *either direction*.
4. **ἑκατέρωθεν**,[1] *from* or *on both sides*.
5. **ἱερός, -ά, -όν**, *sacred*; **τὰ ἱερά**, *sacrifices*.
6. **κατα-θεάομαι**, *view, look down upon* or *watch intently*.
7. **κυκλόω**,[1] *encircle, surround*.
8. **ὁμαλῶς**, *evenly, in even line*.
9. **ὅμως**, *nevertheless*.
10. **πελάζω**, *approach, draw near*.
11. **περί-ειμι**,[2] *excel, surpass*.
12. **τὸ στῖφος, -ους**, *dense mass, crowd*.
13. **συν-αντάω**, *confront, meet*.
14. **τὸ σφάγιον**, *sacrificial victim*; plu. *omens from sacrifice*.

6. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. Clearchus feared that the Greeks would be surrounded, if he should draw off the right wing from the river. 2. Take care, Clearchus, that all shall be well. 3. The enemy beheld Cyrus riding by near to his own army — near to the same army. 4. When Xenophon met (partc.) Cyrus (dat.; why?) he asked him as follows: 5. "Shall I carry (subj.) any message to the army?"

II. For Written Translation: 1. But Clearchus had heard from the interpreter that the king's army was so much superior in number that his own men (= the men of himself) were beyond the left wing of the Greeks. 2. But nevertheless he replied to Cyrus: 3. "I will take care that all shall be well." 4. Although the barbarians were advancing (gen. abs.), the Greeks still remained in the same place. 5. When Cyrus saw Xenophon riding by, he stopped his horse and told him to report to the army that everything was favorable.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Translation of circumstantial participles. 2. The adverbial endings *-σε, -δε, -θεν*. 3. *ὡς* with the infinitive. 4. *μή* after *φοβούμενος*. 5. Cases after *ἀκούω*. 6. Optatives in the lesson. 7. *στάς, στήσᾱς*. 8. *μέλει αὐτῷ*.

[1] Derivation?

[2] *περι-* as in *περι-γίγνομαι*.

LESSON XCIX.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VIII. 16–18, ταῦτα . . . ἵπποις.

2. NOTES.

§ 16. **λέγων**: why not λέξᾱς or εἰπών? **θορύβου**: why gen.? cf. § 13. **εἴη**: why opt.? ὅτι = " ". **δεύτερον**: adverbial. **καὶ ὅς**: = *and he*, H. 275, b; G. 1023, 2. **τίς παραγγέλλει**: direct form of thought; sc. τὸ σύνθημα. **ὅ τι**: for τί of the direct question, H. 700; G. 1013.

§ 17. **Ἀλλά**: cf. Chap. VII. § 6; *Well* ("though I did not give this watchword"), *I accept it*, H. 1046, 2, b. **τοῦτο ἔστω**: *let it be this*, or *this it shall be*; sc. τὸ σύνθημα **χώρᾱν**: cf. Chap. V. § 17. **στάδια**: construction? **διειχέ-την**: note the ending -την; where found? **τώ**: what part of speech? **ἄντιοι**: pred. adj., *against, to meet*, H. 619; G. 926. **πολεμίοις**: dat. with adj., H. 765; G. 1174.

§ 18. **πορευομένων**: sc. αὐτῶν. **τι**: *something (of), a part (of)*. **τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον**: *that which was left behind, the part left behind.* **δρόμῳ θεῖν**: *to run with a rush, to run hastily;* cf. the aor. of τρέχω.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Conjugation of ἧμαι, κάθημαι, οἶδα, H. 483, 484, 491; G. 814–816, 820.

2. Principal parts of δέχομαι, θέω, H. pp. 357, 359; G. pp. 379, 385.

3. Second declension.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀντίος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *opposite*; **ἀντίος ἰέναι**, *go to meet, go against.*

2. **δεύτερος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *second.*

3. **δέχομαι**, *receive, accept.*

4. **δι-έχω**, *have between; be apart, separated* or *distant.*

5. **τὸ δόρυ**, *spear-shaft, spear.*

6. **δουπέω**, *make a din, clash.*

7. **ἐκ-κῡμαίνω**, *bend out* (or *forth*) *like a wave.*

8. **ἐλελίζω**, *raise a war-cry.*

9. **ὁ Ἐνῡάλιος**, *Enyálius, Ares.*

10. **ὁ Ζεύς**, *Zeus.*

11. **θέω**, *run.*

12. **ὁ θόρυβος**, *noise, uproar.*

13. **οἷον**, adv., *as, just as.*

14. **παιᾱνίζω**, *sing a paean* or *war-song.*

15. **τὸ σύνθημα**, *compact; watch-word, password.*

16. **ὁ σωτήρ**, *savior.*

17. **φθέγγομαι**, *shout, cry out.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. What is the noise? 2. What is the watchword? 3. Cyrus heard the watchword from Xenophon (cf. § 13). 4. When Cyrus was no longer a stadion distant from the army, the Greeks went against the enemy. 5. Cyrus's army will begin to go against the king. 6. The phalanx ran, and at the same time every one shouted.

II. For Written Translation: 1. When Cyrus heard (partc.) the noise, the soldiers said to him: 2. "The watchword is victory." 3. And Cyrus, on hearing it, rode back to meet his own (ἑαυτοῦ) generals. 4. But the army was beginning to go to meet (= against) the barbarian force. 5. As[1] some of the men wavered out (of line), the rest began to run. 6. It is also said that they frightened (cf. § 18) the horses by making a noise with their spears.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Meaning of the aor. partc.; of the present. 2. *καὶ ὅς, ὁ δέ.* 3. The ending *-την.* 4. *ἀλλά* and *γάρ* in answers. 5. Optatives. 6. Principal parts of verbs in the lesson. 7. *ὅ τι* and *τί* in questions. 8. Adjectives which take the dative. 9. Construction of *δρόμῳ, ἀσπίσι.* 10. *ὅτι* introducing direct discourse. 11. Classification of the verbs in the lesson.

LESSON C.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VIII. 19–21, *πρίν . . . στρατεύματος.*

2. NOTES.

§ 19. **πρίν . . . ἐξικνεῖσθαι**: cf. Chap. IV. § 13 *πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι.* **κατὰ κράτος**: cf. *ἀνὰ κράτος* Chap. VIII. § 1.

§ 20. **ἐφέροντο**: sing. number would be regular. **τὰ μέν . . . τὰ δέ**: *some . . . others, partly . . . partly,* partitive apposition. **κενὰ ἡνιόχων**:

[1] In connected discourse Greek sentences usually begin with a conjunction, while English sentences (e.g., this one) do not.

cf. *ὑμῶν ἔρημος* Chap. III. § 6. **οἱ δ'**: i.e., the Greeks. **προΐδοιεν**: sc. *τὰ ἅρματα*; H. 914, B; G. 1431. **ἔστι ὅστις**: *some one,* cf. *ἦν . . . σταθμῶν οὕς . . . ἤλαυνεν* Chap. V. § 7. **ἐκπλαγείς**: cf. *σταλείς* from *ἐστάλην*. **οὐδέν . . . οὐδέ**: *not even this one suffered anything.* **οὐδ' ἄλλος οὐδεὶς οὐδέν**: *and nobody else . . . suffered anything;* accumulation of negatives to strengthen the negation, H. 1030; G. 1619. **πλήν**: sometimes governs what case?

§ 21. **ὁρῶν**: temporal, *when,* etc. **νῑκῶντας**: suppl. partc., *that . . . had conquered.* **τό**: sc. *μέρος*. **καθ' αὑτούς**: *opposite themselves.* **ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος**: concessive, *although he was,* etc. **ὥς**: note the accent; *thus,* cf. *ὡς*. **ποιήσει**: direct form. **καὶ γάρ**: *and* (and this was reasonable) *for.* **αὐτόν**: prolepsis or anticipation; we should expect *αὐτόν* to be the subject of *ἔχοι*; cf. Matthew xxv. 24, "I knew thee that thou art a hard man." **ἔχοι**: why opt.?

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. *ἔστιν οἵ*, H. 998; G. 1029.
2. Principal parts of *ἕπομαι, οἶδα,* H. 508, 13, 491; G. pp. 383, 183.
3. The third declension.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἐκ-κλίνω**, *bend out* of line; *give way.*
2. **ἐκ-πλήττω**, *strike out* of one's senses, *dismay.*
3. **ἐξ-άγω**, *lead out, carry away.*
4. **ἐξ-ικνέομαι**, *arrive at, reach.*
5. **ὁ ἡνίοχος**, *rein-holder, driver.*
6. **ὁ ἱππόδρομος**, *race-course.*
7. **κενός, -ή, -όν**, *empty.*
8. **προ-οράω**, *see in front.*
9. **συ-σπειράω**, *coil together, gather together.*
10. **τὸ τόξευμα**, *bow-shot; arrow.*
11. **ὥς**, *thus.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. Do not run, but follow the line. 2. Shout to the Greeks to pursue at full speed. 3. The soldiers will stand apart when (*ἐπάν*) they see (subj.) the chariots before (them). 4. Some of the drivers were terror-stricken at the running (dat. of cause). 5. No others were-hit-by-arrows. 6. The soldiers were induced by the generals to pursue the king. 7. Cyrus watches (to-see) what his own horsemen will do. 8. The soldiers knew that

the king occupied the center of his army. (Give 8 in two ways: one with suppl. partc.)

II. For Written Translation: 1. Cyrus kept shouting to the Greeks to follow their generals. 2. Before the Greeks arrived the barbarians were fleeing. 3. Whenever a chariot appeared without a driver, the army parted. 4. They captured some of the drivers (who were) terror-stricken. 5. But the Greeks suffered nothing at all (nothing in any respect). 6. Cyrus saw that the army was conquering the part opposite itself. 7. The companions of Cyrus already saluted him as king. 8. But Cyrus himself cared for his own line-of-battle.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Modes after *πρίν*. 2. *κατά* in this lesson. 3. *ἔστι ὅστις*; *ἔστιν οἵ*. 4. *τὰ μέν . . . τὰ δέ*. 5. Construction of *ἡνιόχων*. 6. Declension and stem of *ἐκπλαγείς*. 7. Double negatives in Greek. 8. *πλήν*. 9. *ὥς*, *ὡς*. 10. Agency is how expressed? means? manner? 11. Case after *ἕπομαι*? *ἐπιμελέομαι*? 12. *ᾔδει*: tense?

LESSON CI.

1. TEXT.

Anab. I. viii. 22–25, **καί . . . καλούμενοι.**

2. NOTES.

§ 22. **τὸ αὐτῶν**: with *μέσον*. **ἡγοῦνται**: i.e., in battle. **νομίζοντες**: causal. **οὕτω**: i.e., at the center of the army. **καί**: *both*. **ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ**: *in* (*the*) *safest* (*place*), i.e. *most safe*. **εἶναι**: subj. why omitted? indir. for *ἐσμέν*. **ἦν ᾖ**: gen. cond. for present time, H. 894, 1; G. 1393, 1. **αὐτῶν**: with *ἰσχύς*. **εἴ**: why accented? **χρῄζοιεν**: why opt.? H. 900; G. 1408. **ἄν**: with *αἰσθάνεσθαι*; indirect disc. for the opt. with *ἄν*, H. 964, a; G. 1418. **χρόνῳ**: construction?

§ 23. **ἔχων**: concessive, as *ὅμως* shows. **ἔξω**: with **κέρατος**; **κέρως** means what? **αὐτῷ**: construction? **ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου**: with *οὐδείς*; lit. *from the opposing* (*side*); *over against, opposite*. **αὐτοῦ**: with *ἔμπροσθεν*. **ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν**: *as if to surround*.

§ 24. **δείσᾱς**: from *δέδοικα*. **μή**: why not *οὐ*? how translated? **γενόμενος**: sc. *βασιλεύς*, the subj. of *κατακόψῃ*. **ἀντίος**: cf. § 17. **τοῖς**: why is the article used? **τοὺς ἑξακισχῑλίους**: emphatic by position. **λέγεται**: personal construction.

§ 25. **εἰς**: governs what? **πλὴν . . . κατελείφθησαν**: *except that . . . were left behind.* **σχεδόν**: adv.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Principal parts of *τρέπω*, H. 508, 28; G. p. 403.

2. Declension of adjectives of the vowel- and consonant-declensions.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀσφαλής, -ές**, *safe*; **ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ**, *in a safe place.*

2. **δια-σπείρω**, *scatter seed broadcast*; pass. (of an army), *become separated.*

3. **ἔμπροσθεν**, *in front.*

4. **ἐπι-κάμπτω**, *bend upon*; *bend* the wings of an army *upon*, or *towards, the center*, i.e., *together.*

5. **ἥμισυς, -εια, -υ**, *half.*

6. **ἡ ἰσχῦς**, *might, strength.*

7. **κατα-λείπω**, *leave behind.*

8. **ἡ κύκλωσις**, *surrounding*; **εἰς κύκλωσιν**, *in order to surround.*

9. **ὁ ὁμοτράπεζος**, *table-companion.*

10. **σχεδόν**, *almost, chiefly.*

11. **τοξεύω**, *shoot with a bow, strike with an arrow.*

12. **τρέπω**, *turn.*

13. **ἡ τροπή**, *a turning, rout.*

14. **ἡ φυγή**, *flight.*

5. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. If the commanders occupy (subj.) the center of their own armies, they are most secure. 2. For if they should give any commands, the soldiers would learn (it). 3. The soldiers are in front of their commanders. 4. No one will fight against the king. 5. But many men will fight in company with him. 6. The soldiers feared that the enemy would cut them to pieces. 7. Therefore they attacked (partc.) and killed three hundred (men). 8. The three hundred had been drawn up before the king. 9. Those who were left behind about Cyrus were called table-companions.

II. For Written Translation: 1. If the commanders should occupy the center, thus they would be safe. 2. If (ever) they desire to give any word of command, the soldiers (always) learn (it).

3. At that time, certainly (= δή), the king's army extended beyond the Greeks' left wing, so that no one fought with him. 4. Here now Cyrus feared that the king would wheel about (partc.) and attack him. 5. Cyrus, therefore, attacked and put the king to flight. 6. It is also said that Artagerses himself was killed (fr. ἀποθνήσκω) by Cyrus. 7. Accordingly the six hundred set out in (= into) pursuit and left very few about Cyrus himself.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Conditional sentences. 2. Other ways of expressing conditions. 3. Indirect discourse. 4. The optative and infinitive in indirect discourse. 5. Modes after words of fearing. 6. Uses of *μή*. 7. Infinitive as substantive. 8. Uses of *πλήν*. 9. Principal parts of the verbs in the lesson.

LESSON CII.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VIII. 26–29, *σύν . . . πιστότητα.*

2. NOTES.

§ 26. **ὤν**: what kind of partc.? expresses what? **ἐκεῖνον**: stronger than *αὐτόν*, but translate as if *αὐτόν*. **ἠν-έσχετο**: from *ἀν-έχω*; note the two augments in this compound verb; *ἀν* augmented to *ἠν*, and ε after the preposition, H. 361, a; G. 544; lit. *he did not hold* (*himself*) *back, could not control himself.* **Τὸν ἄνδρα**: whom? why the article? **ἵετο**: *rushed*, lit. *threw himself.* **ἐπ᾽ αὐτόν**: differs how from *πρὸς αὐτόν, παρ᾽ αὐτόν*? **ὥς**: why accented? *as.* **αὐτός**: agrees with the subj. of *ἰᾶσθαι.*; why nom.?

§ 27. **παίοντα**: striking whom? **ὑπό**: with the acc. because after implied motion, otherwise the dat. would be used. **μαχόμενοι**: translate as if in the gen. abs. with *βασιλεύς*, Κῦρος, *οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτούς*, *while . . . were fighting*; there is a break in the sentence so that the nominatives have no verb. **ὁπόσοι . . . βασιλέᾱ**: contrasted with Κῦρος δέ. **ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι**: *eight* (*of*), etc.; *ἄριστοι* refers to rank. **ἔκειντο**: *lay* (sc. *dead*).

§ 28. **αὐτῷ**: with the adj. **πεπτωκότα**: what kind of partc.? cf. Chap. II. § 21, ἔχοντα. **περιπεσεῖν**: *embraced.* **αὐτῷ**: government?

§ 29. **οἱ μέν . . . οἱ δέ**: *some . . . others.* **Κύρῳ**: government? **ἐπισφάξασθαι**: direct mid. **χρῡσοῦν**: sc. what? *gilded.* **ἐφόρει**: *was accustomed to wear.* **καὶ τᾶλλα** (= **τὰ ἄλλα**): *and the other ornaments.* **ἄριστοι**: construction?

3. OBSERVATION.

1. **ἀν-έχομαι**, *endure*, has both the syllabic and the temporal augment.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Principal parts of *παίω, τιτρώσκω*, H. 505, 12, 531, 6; G. pp. 395, 402.

2. Declension of pronouns.

3. Conjugation of *κεῖμαι*, H. 482; G. 818.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀκοντίζω**, *hurl* (*hit with*) *the spear.*
2. **βίαιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *powerful;* adv. **-ως**, *powerfully, violently.*
3. **ἑκάτερος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *each* (of two).
4. **ἐπι-σφάττω**, *slay upon* or *over.*
5. **ἡ εὔνοια**, *good will, devotion.*
6. **ὁ θεράπων**, *attendant, servant.*
7. **ἰάομαι**, *dress* or *heal* (a wound).
8. **ὁ ῑ̓ᾱτρός**, *physician.*
9. **καθ-οράω**, *look down upon, see.*
10. **κεῖμαι**, *lie, lie fallen.*
11. **ὁ ὀφθαλμός**, *eye.*
12. **παίω**, *strike.*
13. **περι-πίπτω**, *fall around, embrace.*
14. **πίπτω**, *fall.*
15. **ἡ πιστότης**, *faithfulness.*
16. **σπάω**, *draw.*
17. **τὸ στέρνον**, *breast.*
18. **τιτρώσκω**, *wound.*
19. **τὸ τραῦμα**, *a wound.*
20. **φορέω**, *wear.*

6. EXERCISES.

I. For Oral Translation: 1. Cyrus said that he saw the king, H. 946, b; G. 1523. 2. I am rushing against the king. 3. Ctesias healed the wound. 4. While Cyrus was striking (partc.) the king, he was hit violently under the eye. 5. The attendants of the king fight for (= in behalf of) him. 6. Cyrus was lying dead upon his bravest men. 7. The attendants are said to have leaped down from their horses. 8. A certain one is ordered to kill Artapates, a

faithful attendant of Cyrus, on account of his fidelity. 9. But he (= ὁ δέ) drew (partc.) his dagger and killed himself.

II. For Written Translation: 1. When Cyrus in company with his table-companions saw the king, he immediately (εὐθύς) rushed against him. 2. And the king's physician declares that Cyrus wounded the king through the breastplate. 3. And here both Cyrus and the king fought with each other. 4. Cyrus was slain together with the noblest Persians. 5. The scepter-bearers of Cyrus embraced him after he had fallen. 6. But it is said that the king ordered them to be killed. 7. For Cyrus had honored them because of their good will.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Circumstantial and supplementary participles. 2. Declension of στῖφος, ἄνδρα, τραῦμα, πιστότης. 3. Comparison of the adjectives and adverbs in this lesson. 4. Meanings and position of αὐτός. 5. τἄλλα, ὥς φησι, αὐτός τε. 6. Construction of the genitives and datives in the lesson. 7. The most common way of expressing agency in Greek. 8. Enclitics and proclitics in the lesson. 9. Position of δέ, γάρ, οὖν. 10. Synopsis of ἵημι in the act. and mid. present system. 11. First aorists in κ. 12. Uses of μέν and δέ.

LESSON CIII.—REVIEW.

1. TEXT.

ANAB. I. VII.–VIII.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension. — (*a*) Short α in the 1st decl.; (*b*) Attic 2d decl., νεώς, ἕως; (*c*) κέρας; (*d*) ὅστις.

2. Verbs. — (*a*) Formation of the perfect; (*b*) Attic reduplication; (*c*) augment of the plup.; (*d*) formation of the perf. and plup. mid. (pass.); (*e*) perf. mid. and aor. pass. systems: τετέλεσμαι, ἔσταλμαι, πέφασμαι, πέπεισμαι, ἔρρῖμμαι (G. τέτρῖμμαι), ἤλλαγμαι, ἐλήλεγμαι; (*f*) ἔστην, ἔδῦν; (*g*) μέμνημαι; (*h*) ἧμαι; (*i*) 2d aor. of the μι- form; (*j*) κεῖμαι.

3. Syntax. — (*a*) Gen. of cause; (*b*) gen. with comp. verbs; (*c*) subjunctive of deliberation; (*d*) clauses after verbs of fearing;

(*e*) purpose with verbs of effort; (*f*) position of ἄν; (*g*) attraction and incorporation; (*h*) ἔστιν οἵ.

4. Principal parts. —

1. αἰνέω.
2. αἱρέω.
3. αἰσθάνομαι.
4. βαίνω.
5. βάλλω.
6. βλέπω.
7. βούλομαι.
8. δέχομαι.
9. δύναμαι.
10. ἐθέλω.
11. ἐλαύνω.
12. ἕπομαι.
13. ἔρομαι.
14. θέω.
15. ἱκνέομαι.
16. κρίνω.
17. κτείνω.
18. μάχομαι.
19. μέλλω.
20. μέλω.
21. μιμνήσκω.
22. οἶδα.
23. παίω.
24. πάσχω.
25. πίπτω.
26. πυνθάνομαι.
27. σπάω.
28. στέλλω.
29. ταράσσω.
30. τείνω.
31. τιτρώσκω.
32. τρέπω.
33. τρέχω.
34. τυγχάνω.
35. ὑπισχνέομαι.

3. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἄξων.
2. ἡ ἄρκτος.
3. ὁ αὐτόμολος.
4. τὸ βάθος.
5. ὁ γερροφόρος.
6. ἡ δείλη.
7. ἡ διῶρυξ.
8. τὸ δόρυ.
9. τὸ δρέπανον.
10. τὸ ἔθνος.
11. ἡ ἐλευθερίᾱ.
12. ὁ Ἐνῡάλιος.
13. ἡ ἐξοπλισίᾱ.
14. τὸ ἔρυμα.
15. ἡ εὔνοια.
16. ἡ ἕως.
17. ὁ Ζεύς.
18. ὁ ἡνίοχος.
19. ὁ θεράπων.
20. ὁ θόρυβος.
21. ὁ θώρᾱξ.
22. ὁ ἰᾱτρός.
23. ὁ ἱππόδρομος.
24. ἡ ἰσχῡ́ς.
25. ὁ καιρός.
26. τὸ καῦμα.
27. τὸ κέρας.
28. ὁ κίνδῡνος.
29. ὁ κονιορτός.
30. τὸ κράτος.
31. ἡ κύκλωσις.
32. ἡ λόγχη.
33. ὁ μάντις.
34. ἡ μάχαιρα.
35. ἡ μελανίᾱ.
36. αἱ μέσαι νύκτες.
37. ἡ μεσημβρίᾱ.
38. ἡ νεφέλη.
39. ὁ ὁμοτράπεζος.
40. ἡ ὀργυιά.
41. ὁ ὀφθαλμός.
42. τὰ παραμηρίδια.
43. ἡ πιστότης.
44. τὸ πλαίσιον.
45. ἡ πορείᾱ.
46. τὰ προμετωπίδια.
47. τὰ προστερνίδια.
48. ἡ σῑγή.
49. ἡ σπουδή.
50. τὸ στέρνον.
51. ὁ στέφανος.
52. τὸ στῖφος.
53. τὸ σύνθημα.
54. τὸ σφάγιον.
55. ὁ σωτήρ.
56. τὸ τάλαντον.
57. ὁ τάραχος.
58. ἡ τάφρος.
59. τὸ τόξευμα.
60. τὸ τραῦμα.
61. ἡ τροπή.
62. ἡ φυγή.
63. ὁ χαλκός.
64. ὁ χειμών.

VERBS.

1. ἀκοντίζω.
2. ἀληθεύω.
3. ἀνα-ταράττω.
4. ἀν-έχω.
5. ἀπο-βλέπω.
6. ἀπο-γιγνώσκω.
7. ἀπο-σπάω.
8. ἀπο-τείνω.
9. ἀστράπτω.
10. αὐτομολέω.
11. βλέπω.
12. βοάω.
13. δια-κινδῡνεύω.
14. δια-λέγομαι.
15. δια-λείπω.
16. δια-τάττω.
17. δια-σπείρω.
18. διδάσκω.
19. δι-έχω.
20. δουπέω.
21. εἰσ-βάλλω.
22. ἐκ-κλῑνω.
23. ἐκ-κυμαίνω.
24. ἐκ-πλήττω.
25. ἐλελίζω.
26. ἐμ-πίμπλημι.
27. ἐν-δῡω.
28. ἐξ-άγω.
29. ἐξ-ικνέομαι.
30. ἐξ-οπλίζω.
31. ἐπι-κάμπτω.
32. ἐπι-πῑπτω.
33. ἐπι-σφάττω.
34. εὐδαιμονίζω.
35. ἠρόμην.
36. θέω.
37. ῑ̓άομαι.
38. ῑ̔δρόω.
39. καθ-οράω.
40. κατα-θεάομαι.
41. κατα-λείπω.
42. κεῖμαι.
43. κρατέω.
44. κτάομαι.
45. κυκλόω.
46. μέλλω.
47. μιμνήσκω.
48. ὁπλίζω.
49. ὀρύττω.
50. παιᾱνίζω.
51. παίω.
52. παρ-αινέω.
53. παρα-κελεύομαι.
54. παρα-τείνω.
55. πελάζω.
56. περί-ειμι.
57. περι-πῑπτω.
58. πῑπτω.
59. πλέω.
60. πλήθω.
61. προ-θῡομαι.
62. προ-οράω.
63. προσ-λαμβάνω.
64. προ-φαίνω.
65. σατραπεύω.
66. σπάω.
67. συν-άπτω.
68. συ-σπείρω.
69. τιτρώσκω.
70. τοξεύω.
71. τρέπω.
72. ὑστερέω.
73. φθέγγομαι.
74. φορέω.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἀντίος.
2. ἀνυστός.
3. ἀσφαλής.
4. ἄτακτος.
5. βαθύς.
6. βίαιος.
7. βραδύς.
8. δεύτερος.
9. δρεπανηφόρος.
10. ἐγκρατής.
11. ἑκάτερος.
12. ἑνδέκατος.
13. ἑξακισχῑλιοι.
14. ζηλωτός.
15. ἥμισυς.
16. ῑ̔ερός.
17. ῑ̓σος.
18. καταφανής.
19. κενός.
20. λευκοθώρᾱξ.
21. λευκός.
22. ξύλινος.
23. ὀρυκτός.
24. πατρῷος.
25. πελταστικός.
26. πλάγιος.
27. ποδήρης.
28. συχνός.

ADVERBS.

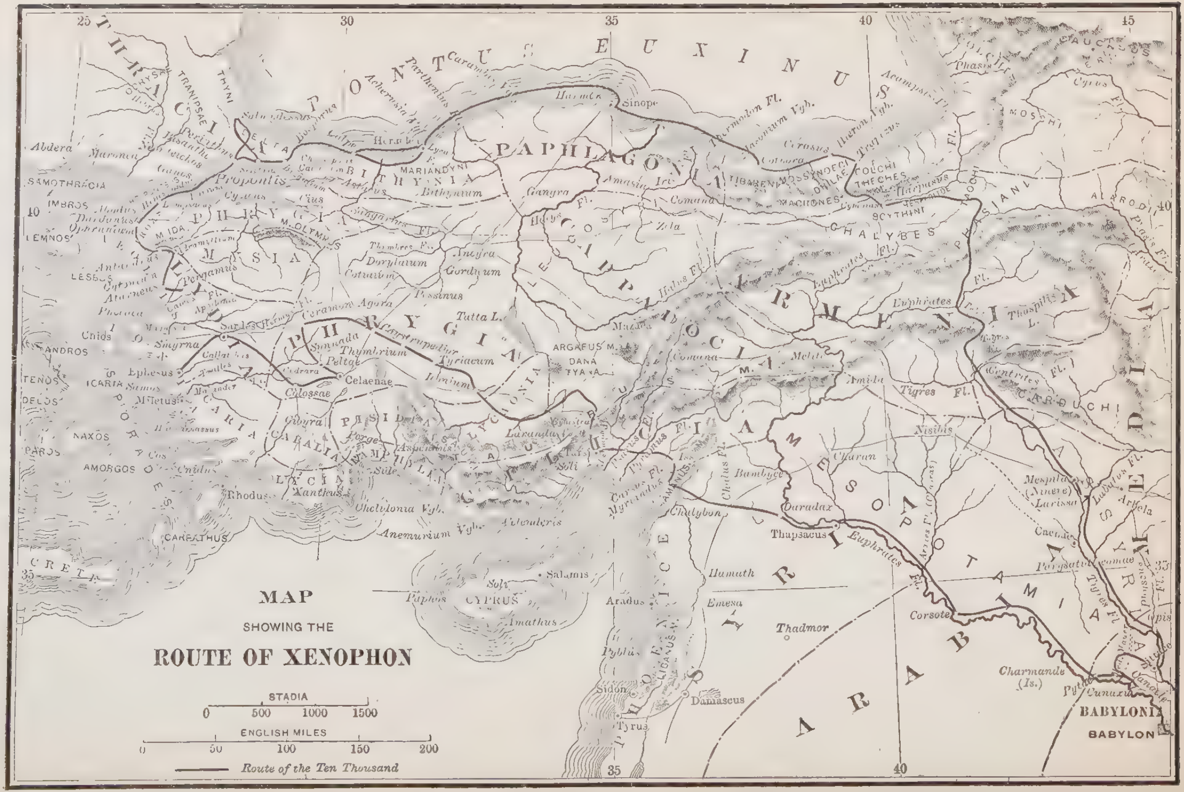
1. ἅμα.
2. ἀμαχεί.
3. ἄρα.
4. αὐτίκα.
5. βαρβαρικῶς.
6. βιαίως.
7. βραδέως.
8. ἐγγύς.
9. ἑκατέρωθεν.
10. ἑκατέρωσε.
11. ἑλληνικῶς.
12. ἔμπροσθεν.
13. ἠμελημένως.
14. ἡσυχῇ.
15. μεταξύ.
16. μέχρι.
17. μήν.
18. νή.
19. οἷον.
20. ὁμαλῶς.
21. ὅμως.
22. ὄπισθεν.
23. ὅσον.
24. πλησίον.
25. πῶς, πώς.
26. σχεδόν.
27. τάχα.
28. ὥς.

CONJUNCTION.

1. ἡνίκα.

PREPOSITION.

1. ἀνά.


MAP
SHOWING THE
ROUTE OF XENOPHON
STADIA
0 500 1000 1500
ENGLISH MILES
0 50 100 150 200
Route of the Ten Thousand
PONTUS EUXINUS
PAPHLAGONIA
BITHYNIA
MARIANDYNI
PHRYGIA
MYSIA
LYDIA
CARIA
LYCIA
PISIDIA
CAPPADOCIA
ARMENIA
CHALYBES
MESOPOTAMIA
ARABIA
SYRIA
BABYLONIA
BABYLON
CYPRUS
Sinope
Thapsacus
Thadmor
Damascus
Sidon
Tyrus
Aradus
Celaenae
Colossae
Sardes
Ephesus
Smyrna
Tigres Fl.
Euphrates
Corsote
Charmande (Is.)
Cunaxa
Larissa
Mespila
Nisibis
Salamis
Paphos
Amathus
Rhodus
LESBOS
LEMNOS
IMBROS
SAMOTHRACIA
NAXOS
PAROS
DELOS
TENOS
ANDROS
AMORGOS
CARPATHUS
CRETA
Abdera
Maronea
THYNI
TRANIPSAE
MACRONES
SCYTHINI
TAOCHI
COLCHI
MOSSYNOECI
TIBARENI
Trapezus
Cerasus
Cotyora
Tyriaeum
Iconium
Peltae
Thymbrium
Gordium
Ancyra
Dorylaeum
Pessinus
Tatta L.
Zela
Comana
Amasia
Gangra
Mazaca
Tyana
Dana
Tarsus
Soli
Issus
Myriandus
Chalybon
Bambyce
Charran
Amida
Humath
Emesa
Byblus
Propontis
Pergamus
Miletus
Halicarnassus
Cnidus
Xanthus
Side
Aspendus
Perge
Laranda
Cybistra
Celenderis
Anemurium
Thymbrium

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS.

BOOK I. I.–VIII.

Note. — Every word, except proper names, is printed in **dark** type upon its first occurrence, later in ordinary type.

Numbers in parentheses refer to the Lessons in which the text is treated.

In the first forty lessons, the quantity of α, ι, and υ is marked when they are long, except when the circumflex accent stands over them, which fact of itself shows that they are long. As ε and ο are always short, and η and ω always long, they do not require any marking to show the quantity.

I. (1) Δᾱρείου **καὶ** Παρυσάτιδος **γίγνονται παῖδες** 1
δύο, (2) **πρεσβύτερος μὲν** Ἀρταξέρξης, **νεώτερος δὲ** Κῦρος.
(3) **ἐπεὶ** δὲ **ἠσθένει** Δᾱρεῖος (4) καὶ **ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου**, (5) **ἐβούλετο** τὼ παῖδε
ἀμφοτέρω παρ-εῖναι. (6) ὁ μὲν 2
οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρ-ὼν **ἐτύγχανε**· (7) Κῦρον δὲ **μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ** τῆς **ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε**, (8) καὶ **στρατηγὸν** δὲ αὐτὸν **ἀπ-έδειξε πάντων** (9) **ὅσοι εἰς** Καστωλοῦ **πεδίον ἀθροίζονται**. **ἀνα-βαίνει** οὖν ὁ Κῦρος **λαβὼν** Τισσαφέρνην **ὡς φίλον**, (10) καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων **ἔχων ὁπλίτᾱς** ἀν-έβη **τριᾱκοσίους**, **ἄρχοντα** δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίᾱν Παρράσιον.

ὁπλίτης.

(12) Ἐπεὶ δὲ **ἐτελεύτησε** Δᾱρεῖος καὶ **κατ-έστη** εἰς 3
τὴν **βασιλείᾱν** Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης **δια-βάλλει** τὸν Κῦρον **πρὸς** τὸν **ἀδελφὸν** ὡς **ἐπι-βουλεύοι** αὐτῷ. (13) ὁ δὲ **πείθεται** καὶ **συλ-λαμβάνει** Κῦρον ὡς **ἀπο-κτενῶν**· ἡ δὲ **μήτηρ ἐξ-αιτησαμένη** αὐτὸν **ἀπο-πέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ** τὴν

4 ἀρχήν. (14) ὁ δ' ὡς **ἀπ-ῆλθε κινδῡνεύσᾱς** καὶ **ἀτῑμασθείς**, (15) **βουλεύεται** ὅπως **μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται** ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, **ἀλλά**, **ἢν δύνηται**, **βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου**.

(16) Παρύσατις μὲν **δὴ** ἡ μήτηρ **ὑπ-ῆρχε** τῷ Κῡ́ρῳ, **φιλοῦσα** αὐτὸν **μᾶλλον ἢ** τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην.

5 (17) **Ὅστις** δ' **ἀφ-ικνοῖτο** τῶν **παρὰ βασιλέως** πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας **οὕτω δια-τιθεὶς** ἀπ-επέμπετο **ὥστε** αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. (19) καὶ τῶν παρ' **ἑαυτῷ** δὲ **βαρβάρων ἐπ-εμελεῖτο** ὡς **πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ** εἴησαν καὶ **εὐνοϊκῶς** ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ.

6 Τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν **δύναμιν** ἤθροιζεν ὡς **μάλιστα** ἐδύνατο **ἐπι-κρυπτόμενος**, ὅπως **ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον** λάβοι βασιλέᾱ. (20) **ὧδε** οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν **συλλογήν**. **ὁπόσᾱς** εἶχε **φυλακὰς ἐν** ταῖς **πόλεσι παρ-ήγγειλε** τοῖς **φρουράρχοις ἑκάστοις** λαμβάνειν **ἄνδρας** Πελοποννησίους ὅτι **πλείστους** καὶ **βελτίστους**, ὡς ἐπι-βουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. (21) καὶ **γὰρ** ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ **ἀρχαῖον ἐκ** βασιλέως **δεδομέναι**, **τότε** δὲ **ἀφειστήκεσαν** πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι **πλὴν** Μῑλήτου.

7 Ἐν Μῑλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης **προ-αισθόμενος** τὰ αὐτὰ **ταῦτα** βουλευομένους, ἀπο-στῆναι πρὸς Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν ἀπ-έκτεινε τοὺς δ' **ἐξ-έβαλεν**. (22) ὁ δὲ Κῦρος **ὑπο-λαβὼν** τοὺς **φεύγοντας συλ-λέξᾱς στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει** Μῑ́λητον καὶ **κατὰ γῆν** καὶ κατὰ **θάλατταν** καὶ **ἐπειρᾶτο κατ-άγειν** τοὺς **ἐκ-πεπτωκότας**. καὶ αὕτη **αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις** ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα.

8 (23) Πρὸς δὲ βασιλέᾱ **πέμπων ἠξίου** ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι **οἷ** ταύτᾱς τᾱ̀ς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην **ἄρχειν** αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ **συν-έπρᾱττεν** αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν **ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ ᾐσθάνετο**, (24) Τισσαφέρνει δὲ **ἐνόμιζε** πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν

ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα **δαπανᾶν**· ὥστε **οὐδὲν ἤχθετο** αὐτῶν πολεμούντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπ-έπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους **δασμοὺς** βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν Τισσαφέρνους ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.

Ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συν-ελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ 9
τῇ **κατ' ἀντιπέρᾱς** Ἀβύδου **τόνδε** τὸν **τρόπον**. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος **φυγὰς** ἦν· (25) τούτῳ **συγ-γενόμενος** ὁ Κῦρος **ἠγάσθη** τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ **μῡρίους δᾱρεικούς**. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ **χρῡσίον** στράτευμα συν-έλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν **χρημάτων** καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου **ὁρμώμενος** τοῖς Θρᾳξὶ τοῖς **ὑπὲρ** Ἑλλήσποντον **οἰκοῦσι** καὶ **ὠφέλει** τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα **συν-εβάλλοντο** αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν **τροφὴν** τῶν **στρατιωτῶν** αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις **ἑκοῦσαι**. (26) τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω **τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν** αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα.

GOLD DARIC (actual size).

Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς **ξένος** ὢν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ, 10
καὶ **πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ** τῶν **οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν ἔρχεται** πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ **αἰτεῖ** αὐτὸν εἰς **δισχῑλίους** ξένους καὶ **τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν**, ὡς οὕτως **περι-γενόμενος ἂν** τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. (27) ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς **τετρακισχῑλίους** καὶ **ἓξ** μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ **δεῖται** αὐτοῦ **μὴ πρόσθεν κατα-λῦσαι** πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτᾱς **πρὶν** ἂν αὐτῷ **συμβουλεύσηται**. οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στράτευμα.

(28) Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ξένον ὄντα **ἐκέλευσε** 11
λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους **παρα-γενέσθαι**, ὡς εἰς Πῑσίδᾱς βουλόμενος **στρατεύεσθαι**, ὡς **πρᾱ́γματα παρεχόντων** τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ **χώρᾳ**.

Σοφαίνετον δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν

Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας
λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσα-
φέρνει **σὺν** τοῖς φυγάσι τοῖς Μῑλησίων. καὶ ἐποίουν
οὕτως οὗτοι.

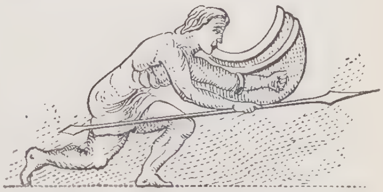
1 **II.** (30) Ἐπεὶ δ' **ἐδόκει** αὐτῷ **ἤδη πορεύεσθαι ἄνω**, τὴν
μὲν πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πῑσίδᾱς βουλόμενος ἐκ-βαλεῖν
παντάπᾱσιν ἐκ τῆς χώρᾱς· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους
τό τε **βαρβαρικὸν** καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. **ἐνταῦθα** καὶ παρ-
αγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι **ἥκειν** ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ
στράτευμα, καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ **συν-αλλαγέντι** πρὸς τοὺς
οἴκοι ἀπο-πέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα· (31) καὶ
Ξενίᾳ τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ **προ-ειστήκει** τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι
ξενικοῦ, ἥκειν παρ-αγγέλλει λαβόντα τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν
2 ὁπόσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς **ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. ἐκάλεσε**
δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας
ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι, **ὑπο-σχόμενος** αὐτοῖς,
εἰ καλῶς κατα-πρᾱ́ξειεν ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν
παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς κατ-αγάγοι **οἴκαδε.** (32) οἱ δὲ
ἡδέως ἐπείθοντο· **ἐπίστευον** γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες
τὰ ὅπλα παρ-ῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις.

3 Ξενίᾱς μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο
εἰς Σάρδεις ὁπλῑ́τᾱς εἰς τετρακισχῑλίους, Πρόξενος δὲ
παρ-ῆν ἔχων ὁπλῑ́τᾱς μὲν εἰς **πεντακοσίους** καὶ **χῑλίους,**
γυμνῆτας δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφᾱ́λιος
ὁπλῑ́τᾱς ἔχων χῑλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ὁπλῑ́τᾱς
ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους, Πᾱσίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς τριᾱκο-
σίους μὲν ὁπλῑ́τᾱς, τριᾱκοσίους δὲ **πελταστὰς** ἔχων παρ-
εγένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μί-
4 λητον στρατευομένων. (33) οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ
ἀφ-ίκοντο. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ **κατα-νοήσᾱς** ταῦτα, καὶ **μείζονα**

ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πῑσίδᾱς τὴν **παρασκευήν**, πορεύ-
εται ὡς βασιλέᾱ ᾗ ἐδύνατο **τάχιστα ἱππέᾱς** ἔχων ὡς
πεντακοσίους. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ ἐπεὶ **ἤκουσε** Τισσα- 5
φέρνους τὸν Κῡ́ρου **στόλον, ἀντι-παρ-εσκευάζετο.**

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς **εἴρηκα** ὡρμᾶτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ
ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λῡδίᾱς **σταθμοὺς** τρεῖς **παρασάγγᾱς**
εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον **ποταμόν.** τούτου
τὸ **εὖρος** δύο **πλέθρα· γέφῡρα** δὲ **ἐπ-ῆν ἑπτὰ ἐζευγμένη**
πλοίοις.

(34) Τοῦτον **δια-βὰς** ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίᾱς σταθμὸν 6
ἕνα παρασάγγᾱς **ὀκτὼ** εἰς Κολοσσᾱ́ς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην,
εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. ἐν-
ταῦθα **ἔμεινεν ἡμέρᾱς** ἑπτά·
καὶ ἧκε Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς
ὁπλῑ́τᾱς ἔχων χῑλίους καὶ
πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους,
Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ
Ὀλυνθίους.



πελταστής WITH AMAZONIAN SHIELD.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγᾱς εἴκο- 7
σιν εἰς Κελαινᾱ́ς, τῆς Φρυγίᾱς πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην
καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κῡ́ρῳ **βασίλεια** ἦν καὶ **παράδει-**
σος μέγας **ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης**, ἃ ἐκεῖνος **ἐθήρευεν** ἀπὸ
ἵππου, ὁπότε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους.
διὰ **μέσου** δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου **ῥεῖ** ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός·
αἱ δὲ **πηγαὶ** αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ
διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως.

(35) Ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασίλεια ἐν 8
Κελαιναῖς **ἐρυμνὰ** ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσύου ποταμοῦ
ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως
καὶ **ἐμ-βάλλει** εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ Μαρσύου τὸ
εὖρός ἐστιν εἴκοσι καὶ **πέντε ποδῶν.**

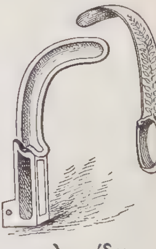
Ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκ-δεῖραι Μαρσύᾱν νῑκήσᾱς ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ σοφίᾱς, καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύᾱς. (36) ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ ἀπ-εχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασίλεια καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν.

9 Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρᾱς τριᾱ́κοντα· καὶ ἧκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὁπλῑ́τᾱς χῑλίους καὶ πελταστᾱ̀ς Θρᾳ̂κας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότᾱς Κρῆτας διακοσίους. ἅμα δὲ καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρᾱκούσιος ἔχων ὁπλῑ́τᾱς τριᾱκοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἀρκὰς ἔχων ὁπλῑ́τᾱς χῑλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὁπλῖται μὲν μῡ́ριοι καὶ χῑ́λιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχῑλίους.

PARIS WITH τόξον.

10 (37) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγᾱς δέκα εἰς Πέλτᾱς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ᾽ ἔμεινεν ἡμέρᾱς τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίᾱς ὁ Ἀρκὰς τὰ Λύκαια ἔθῡσε καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἆθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες χρῡσαῖ· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγᾱς δώδεκα εἰς Κεράμων ἀγορᾱ́ν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην πρὸς τῇ Μῡσίᾳ χώρᾳ.


στλεγγίδες.

11 (38) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγᾱς τριᾱ́κοντα εἰς Καΰστρου πεδίον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ᾽ ἔμεινεν ἡμέρᾱς πέντε· καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο

μισθὸς πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ **πολλάκις ἰόντες** ἐπὶ
τὰς **θύρᾱς ἀπ-ῄτουν**. ὁ δὲ **ἐλπίδας** λέγων **δι-ῆγε** καὶ **δῆλος**
ἦν **ἀνῑώμενος**· οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπου ἔχοντα
μὴ **ἀπο-διδόναι**.

(39) Ἐνταῦθα ἀφ-ικνεῖται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συεννέσιος **γυνὴ** 12
τοῦ Κιλίκων βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ
δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ᾽ οὖν **στρατιᾷ** τότε ἀπέ-
δωκε Κῦρος μισθὸν **τεττάρων** μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα
φυλακὴν περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίους· ἐλέγετο
δὲ καὶ συγ-γενέσθαι Κῦρον τῇ Κιλίσσῃ.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγᾱς δέκα εἰς 13
Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. (41) ἐνταῦθα ἦν παρὰ τὴν
ὁδὸν κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ᾽
ᾗ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον θηρεῦσαι **οἴνῳ κεράσας** αὐτήν.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα 14
εἰς Τυριάειον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέ-
ρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέγεται
δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα
Κύρου **ἐπιδεῖξαι** τὸ στρά-
τευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος
οὖν ἐπι-δεῖξαι ἐξέτασιν
ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν
Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρ-
βάρων. (42) ἐκέλευσε 15
δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ὡς
νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην
οὕτω **ταχθῆναι** καὶ **στῆ-**

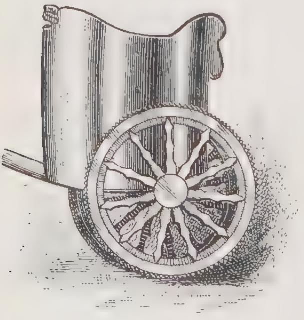
SOLDIER IN χιτών. DIANA IN χιτών.

ναι, συν-τάξαι δ᾽ ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν
ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν **δεξιὸν** Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν
αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ **εὐώνυμον** Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ
μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί.

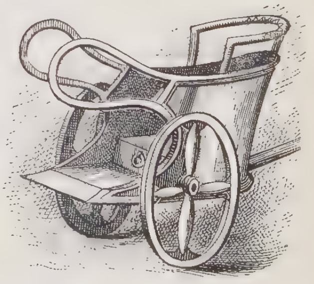
16 Ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος **πρῶτον** μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ δὲ **παρ-ήλαυνον** τεταγμένοι κατὰ **ἴλας** καὶ κατὰ **τάξεις**·

VARIOUS FORMS OF GREEK HELMETS.

εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, παρ-ελαύνων ἐφ' **ἅρματος** καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ' **ἁρμαμάξης**. εἶχον δὲ πάντες **κράνη χαλκᾶ** καὶ **χιτῶνας φοινικοῦς** καὶ **κνημῖδας** καὶ τὰς **ἀσπίδας**
17 **ἐκ-κεκαλυμμένας**. (43) **ἐπειδὴ** δὲ πάντας παρ-ήλασε, στήσας τὸ ἅρμα **πρὸ** τῆς **φάλαγγος** μέσης, πέμψας



PERSIAN WAR CHARIOT.



GREEK WAR CHARIOT.

Πίγρητα τὸν **ἑρμηνέα** παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε **προ-βαλέσθαι** τὰ ὅπλα καὶ **ἐπι-χωρῆσαι ὅλην** τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα **προ-εῖπον** τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ **ἐσάλπιγξε**, προ-βαλόμενοι τὰ ὅπλα **ἐπ-ῇσαν**. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θᾶττον **προ-ϊόντων** σὺν **κραυγῇ** ἀπὸ τοῦ **αὐτομάτου δρόμος** ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς **σκηνάς**.
18 (44) τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων **φόβος** πολύς, καὶ ἥ τε Κίλισσα

ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἁρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς κατα-λιπόντες τὰ ὤνια ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλωτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασε. Κῦρος δὲ ἥσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρ-βάρους φόβον ἰδών.

σαλπιγκτής.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει σταθμοὺς 19
τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας.

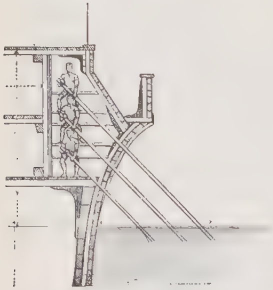
Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα. ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπ-έτρεψε δι-αρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν.

(45) Ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν 20
ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν. καὶ συν-έπεμψεν αὐτῇ

τοὺς στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ Καππαδοκίας σταθμοὺς

τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε εἰς Θόανα, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπ-έκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσην Μεγαφέρνην, **φοινικιστὴν βασίλειον**, καὶ **ἕτερόν τινα** τῶν **ὑπάρχων δυνάστην, αἰτιασάμενος** ἐπι-βουλεύειν αὐτῷ.

21 (46) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο **εἰσ-βάλλειν** εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ δὲ **εἰσβολὴ** ἦν ὁδὸς **ἁμαξιτὸς ὀρθία ἰσχυρῶς** καὶ **ἀμήχανος εἰσ-ελθεῖν** στρατεύματι, εἴ τις **ἐκώλυεν**. ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ



SECTION OF **τριήρης**.

Συέννεσις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν **ἄκρων** φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν· **διὸ** ἔμειναν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ' **ὑστεραίᾳ** ἧκεν **ἄγγελος** λέγων ὅτι **λελοιπὼς** εἴη Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στράτευμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν **εἴσω** τῶν **ὀρέων**, καὶ ὅτι **τριήρεις** ἤκουε **περιπλεούσας** ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμῶν ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου.

22 (47) Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀν-έβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηνὰς οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον.

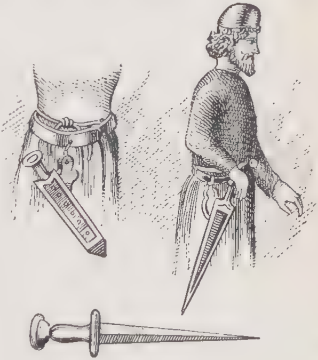
Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ **κατ-έβαινεν** εἰς πεδίον μέγα καὶ **καλόν, ἐπίρρυτον**, καὶ **δένδρων παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων** καὶ **ἀμπέλων**· πολὺ δὲ καὶ **σήσαμον** καὶ **μελίνην** καὶ **κέγχρον** καὶ **πυροὺς** καὶ **κριθὰς φέρει**. ὄρος δ' αὐτὸ **περι-έχει ὀχυρὸν** καὶ **ὑψηλὸν πάντῃ** ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.

23 Κατα-βὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου **ἤλασε** σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσούς, τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, ἔνθα ἦν τὰ Συεννέσιος βασίλεια τοῦ Κιλίκων βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου δὲ τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς Κύδνος **ὄνομα**, εὖρος δύο
24 πλέθρων. (48) ταύτην τὴν πόλιν **ἐξ-έλιπον** οἱ **ἐν-οικοῦντες**

μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς **χωρίον** ὀχυρὸν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ **καπηλεῖα** ἔχοντες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς. Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ **προτέρα** Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσοὺς **ἀφ-ίκετο**.

25 Ἐν δὲ τῇ **ὑπερβολῇ** τῶν ὀρέων τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον δύο **λόχοι** τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος **ἀπ-ώλοντο**· οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν **ἁρπάζοντάς** τι **κατα-κοπῆναι** ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλίκων, οἱ δέ, **ὑπο-λειφθέντας** καὶ οὐ δυναμένους **εὑρεῖν** τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα **οὐδὲ** τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα **πλανωμένους** ἀπ-ολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι **ἑκατὸν** ὁπλῖται.

26 (49) Οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἧκον, τήν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοὺς δι-ήρπασαν, διὰ τὸν **ὄλεθρον** τῶν **συστρατιωτῶν** **ὀργιζόμενοι**, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ.



ἀκινάκης.

Κῦρος δὲ ἐπεὶ **εἰσ-ήλασεν** εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετ-επέμπετο τὸν Συέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' **οὔτε** πρότερον οὐδενί **πω** **κρείττονι** ἑαυτοῦ εἰς **χεῖρας** ἐλθεῖν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρῳ ἰέναι **ἤθελε**, πρὶν ἡ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ **πίστεις** ἔλαβε. 27 (50) μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο **ἀλλήλοις**, Συέννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ **δῶρα** ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ **τίμια**, ἵππον **χρυσοχάλινον** καὶ **στρεπτὸν** χρυσοῦν καὶ **ψέλια** καὶ **ἀκινάκην** χρυσοῦν καὶ **στολὴν** Περσικήν, καὶ τὴν χώραν **μηκέτι** δι-αρπάζεσθαι· τὰ δὲ ἡρπασμένα **ἀνδράποδα**, ἤν **που** **ἐν-τυγχάνωσιν**, ἀπο-λαμβάνειν.

1 **III.** (52) Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέ-
ρας εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ
πρόσω· ὑπ-ώπτευον γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἰέναι· **μισθω-
θῆναι** δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ Κλέαρχος
τοὺς αὑτοῦ στρατιώτας **ἐβιάζετο** ἰέναι· οἱ δὲ αὐτόν τε
ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ **ὑποζύγια** τὰ ἐκείνου, ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο προ-
2 ϊέναι. (53) Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν **μικρὸν ἐξ-έφυγε** μὴ
κατα-πετρωθῆναι, **ὕστερον** δ᾽ ἐπεὶ **ἔγνω** ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται
βιάσασθαι, **συν-ήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν** τῶν αὑτοῦ στρατιωτῶν.
καὶ πρῶτον μὲν **ἐδάκρυε** πολὺν **χρόνον** ἑστώς· οἱ δὲ
ὁρῶντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ **ἐσιώπων**· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε **τοιάδε**.
3 "Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι **χαλεπῶς** φέρω
τοῖς παρ-οῦσι πράγμασιν. **ἐμοὶ** γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο
καί με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς **πατρίδος** τά τε ἄλλα **ἐτίμησε**
καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε δαρεικούς· (54) οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν οὐκ
εἰς τὸ **ἴδιον κατεθέμην** ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ **καθ-ηδυπάθησα**, ἀλλ᾽ εἰς
ὑμᾶς ἐδαπάνων.
4 "Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐπολέμησα, καὶ
ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος **ἐτιμωρούμην** μεθ᾽ ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερ-
ρονήσου αὐτοὺς ἐξελαύνων βουλομένους **ἀφ-αιρεῖσθαι** τοὺς
ἐν-οικοῦντας Ἕλληνας τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει,
λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμην, **ἵνα** εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοίην αὐτὸν
5 ἀνθ᾽ ὧν **εὖ ἔπαθον** ὑπ᾽ ἐκείνου. (55) ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ
βούλεσθε **συμ-πορεύεσθαι**, **ἀνάγκη** δή μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς **προ-
δόντα** τῇ Κύρου **φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι** ἢ πρὸς ἐκεῖνον **ψευσάμενον**
μεθ᾽ ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ **δίκαια** ποιήσω οὐκ **οἶδα**, **αἱ-
ρήσομαι** δ᾽ οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅτι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι.
καὶ **οὔποτε** ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ Ἕλληνας **ἀγαγὼν** εἰς τοὺς
βαρβάρους, προδοὺς τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων
6 φιλίαν εἱλόμην. (56) ἀλλ᾽ ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέλετε
πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν **ἕψομαι** καὶ ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι.

νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ
συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν **οἶμαι** εἶναι τίμιος **ὅπου**
ἂν ὦ, ὑμῶν δὲ **ἔρημος** ὢν οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὔτ'
ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὔτ' ἂν **ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι**. ὡς ἐμοῦ
οὖν ἰόντος **ὅπῃ** ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω τὴν **γνώμην ἔχετε**."

(57) Ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἵ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου 7
καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ βασι-
λέα πορεύεσθαι **ἐπ-ῄνεσαν**· παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίω-
νος πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ
σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλέαρχον. Κῦρος 8
δὲ τούτοις **ἀπορῶν** τε καὶ **λυπούμενος** μετεπέμπετο τὸν
Κλέαρχον· ὁ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ἤθελε, **λάθρᾳ** δὲ τῶν
στρατιωτῶν πέμπων αὐτῷ ἄγγελον ἔλεγε **θαρρεῖν** ὡς
κατα-στησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ **δέον**. μετα-πέμπεσθαι
δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι. (58) μετὰ 9
δὲ ταῦτα συν-αγαγὼν τούς θ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας καὶ τοὺς
προσ-ελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε
τοιάδε.

"Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι
οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς **ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ** τὰ **ἡμέτερα** πρὸς ἐκεῖνον·
οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιῶται, ἐπεί **γε** οὐ **συν-**
επόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι ἡμῖν **μισθοδότης**. ὅτι
μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἶδα· (59) ὥστε καὶ 10
μετα-πεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγι-
στον **αἰσχυνόμενος** ὅτι **σύν-οιδα ἐμαυτῷ** πάντα ἐψευσμένος
αὐτόν, **ἔπειτα** καὶ **δεδιὼς** μὴ λαβών με **δίκην ἐπιθῇ** ὧν
νομίζει ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἠδικῆσθαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ **ὥρα** 11
εἶναι ἡμῖν **καθ-εύδειν** οὐδ' **ἀμελεῖν** ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ
βουλεύεσθαι ὅ τι **χρὴ** ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. (60) καὶ ἕως τε
μένομεν **αὐτοῦ σκεπτέον** μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως **ἀσφαλέστατα**
μενοῦμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ **ἀπιέναι**, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα

ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ **ἐπιτήδεια** ἕξομεν· **ἄνευ** γὰρ τούτων
12 οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε **ἰδιώτου** **ὄφελος** οὐδέν. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολ-
λοῦ μὲν **ἄξιος** φίλος ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾖ, **χαλεπώτατος** δ' ἐχθρὸς
ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾖ, ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ **πεζὴν** καὶ **ἱππικὴν**
καὶ **ναυτικὴν** ἣν πάντες **ὁμοίως** ὁρῶμέν τε καὶ **ἐπιστάμεθα**·
καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ **καθ-ῆσθαι**.
ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὅ τι τις γιγνώσκει **ἄριστον** εἶναι."

13 (61) Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. ἐκ δὲ τούτου **ἀν-ίσταντο**
οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον, οἱ δὲ
καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου **ἐγκέλευστοι**, ἐπι-δεικνύντες **οἵα** εἴη ἡ
ἀπορία ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι.
14 εἷς δὲ δὴ εἶπε, **προσ-ποιούμενος** **σπεύδειν** ὡς τάχιστα
πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, στρατηγοὺς μὲν ἑλέσθαι
ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος **ἀπ-άγειν**·
τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' **ἀγοράζεσθαι** — ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῷ βαρ-
βαρικῷ στρατεύματι — καὶ **συ-σκευάζεσθαι**· (62) ἐλθόν-
τας δὲ Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς **ἀπο-πλέοιεν**· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ
διδῷ ταῦτα, **ἡγεμόνα** αἰτεῖν Κῦρον ὅστις διὰ **φιλίας** τῆς
χώρας ἀπ-άξει. ἐὰν δὲ **μηδὲ** ἡγεμόνα διδῷ, συν-τάττε-
σθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ καὶ **προ-κατα-ληψομένους**
τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ **φθάσωσι** **μήτε** Κῦρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες
κατα-λαβόντες, ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν
ἀν-ηρπακότες. οὗτος μὲν **τοιαῦτα** εἶπε· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον
Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον.

15 (63) "Ὡς μὲν **στρατηγήσοντα** ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν **στρατηγίαν**
μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ **ἐν-ορῶ** δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο
οὐ **ποιητέον**· ὡς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἕλησθε πείσομαι ᾗ
δυνατὸν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι
ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα **ἀνθρώπων**."

16 Μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπι-δεικνὺς μὲν τὴν **εὐή-
θειαν** τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν

στόλον Κύρου ποιουμένου, ἐπι-δεικνὺς δὲ ὡς **εὔηθες** εἴη
ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου ᾧ **λυμαινόμεθα** τὴν **πρᾶξιν.**
(64) εἰ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν Κῦρος δῷ,
τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν Κῦρον προ-κατα-
λαβεῖν; ἐγὼ γὰρ **ὀκνοίην** μὲν ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα **ἐμβαίνειν** 17
ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς ταῖς τριήρεσι **καταδύσῃ**, **φοβοίμην**
δ' ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ᾧ δοίη ἕπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν
οὐκ ἔσται **ἐξ-ελθεῖν**· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν **ἄκοντος** ἀπιὼν Κύρου
λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπ-ελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν. ἀλλ' ἐγώ
φημι ταῦτα μὲν **φλυαρίας** εἶναι· (65) δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἄνδρας 18
ἐλθόντας πρὸς Κῦρον, οἵτινες ἐπιτήδειοι, σὺν Κλεάρχῳ
ἐρωτᾶν ἐκεῖνον **τί** βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν
ἡ πρᾶξις ᾖ **παραπλησία οἵαπερ** καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρῆτο τοῖς
ξένοις, ἕπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ **κακίους** εἶναι τῶν πρό-
σθεν τούτῳ **συν-ανα-βάντων**· ἐὰν δὲ μείζων ἡ πρᾶξις τῆς 19
πρόσθεν **φαίνηται** καὶ **ἐπιπονωτέρα** καὶ **ἐπικινδυνοτέρα**,
ἀξιοῦν ἢ πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φιλίαν
ἀφ-ιέναι· (66) οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἑπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ
καὶ **πρόθυμοι** ἑποίμεθα καὶ ἀπ-ιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπ-
ίοιμεν· ὅ τι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ **ἀπ-αγγεῖλαι δεῦρο**·
ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας πρὸς ταῦτα βουλεύεσθαι.

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἑλόμενοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμ- 20
πουσιν οἳ ἠρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ
δ' **ἀπ-εκρίνατο** ὅτι ἀκούοι Ἀβροκόμαν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ
τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, **ἀπ-έχοντα** δώδεκα σταθμούς·
(67) πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κἂν μὲν ᾖ
ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη **χρῄζειν** ἐπι-θεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἢν δὲ φύγῃ,
ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. ἀκούσαντες δὲ 21
ταῦτα οἱ **αἱρετοὶ** ἀπ-αγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· τοῖς
δὲ **ὑποψία** μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγοι πρὸς βασιλέα, **ὅμως** δὲ ἐδό-
κει ἕπεσθαι. **προσ-αιτοῦσι** δὲ μισθόν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος

ὑπ-ισχνεῖται **ἡμιόλιον** πᾶσι δώσειν οὗ πρότερον ἔφερον,
ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία **ἡμιδαρεικὰ** τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ·
ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς
ἔν γε τῷ **φανερῷ**.

1 **IV.** (69) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρα-
σάγγας δέκα ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ **εὖρος**
τρία πλέθρα.
Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας **πέντε**
ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ **εὖρος** **στάδιον**.
Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας **πεντε-**
καίδεκα εἰς Ἰσσούς, τῆς Κιλικίας ἐσχάτην πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ
θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα
2 ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρῳ παρῆσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοπον-
νήσου **νῆες** τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς **ναύαρχος**
Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐταῖς Ταμὼς
Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς ἑτέρας Κύρου πέντε
καὶ εἴκοσιν, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει
3 φίλη ἦν, καὶ **συνεπολέμει** Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτόν. παρῆν
δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, **μετά-**
πεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου, **ἑπτακοσίους** ἔχων ὁπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρα-
τήγει παρὰ Κύρῳ. αἱ δὲ νῆες **ὥρμουν** παρὰ τὴν Κύρου
σκηνήν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρὰ Ἀβροκόμα **μισθοφόροι**
Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ Κῦρον **τετρακόσιοι**
ὁπλῖται καὶ **συνεστρατεύοντο** ἐπὶ βασιλέα.
4 (70) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας
πέντε ἐπὶ **πύλας** τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. ἦσαν
δὲ ταῦτα δύο **τείχη**, καὶ τὸ μὲν **ἔσωθεν** τὸ πρὸ τῆς
Κιλικίας Συέννεσις εἶχε καὶ Κιλίκων φυλακή, τὸ δὲ **ἔξω**
τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ φυλάττειν.
διὰ μέσου δὲ ῥεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα, εὖρος

πλέθρου. **ἅπαν** δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν στάδιοι τρεῖς· καὶ **παρελθεῖν** οὐκ ἦν **βίᾳ**· ἦν γὰρ ἡ **πάροδος στενὴ** καὶ τὰ τείχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν **καθήκοντα, ὕπερθεν** δ' ἦσαν **πέτραι ἠλίβατοι**· ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς τείχεσιν ἀμφοτέροις **ἐφειστήκεσαν** πύλαι. ταύτης **ἕνεκα** 5

τῆς παρόδου Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο, ὅπως ὁπλίτας **ἀποβιβάσειεν** εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν βιασομένους τοὺς πολεμίους εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις, **ὅπερ** ᾤετο ποιήσειν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμαν, ἔχοντα πολὺ στράτευμα. Ἀβροκόμας δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα **ἀναστρέψας** ἐκ Φοινίκης παρὰ βασιλέα **ἀπήλαυνεν**, ἔχων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα **μυριάδας** στρατιᾶς.

(71) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας σταθμὸν ἕνα παρα- 6
σάγγας πέντε εἰς Μυρίανδον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ· **ἐμπόριον** δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὥρμουν **αὐτόθι ὁλκάδες** πολλαί. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας
ἑπτά· καὶ Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς στρατηγὸς καὶ Πασίων ὁ 7
Μεγαρεὺς ἐμβάντες εἰς πλοῖον καὶ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια **ἐνθέμενοι** ἀπέπλευσαν, ὡς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν **φιλοτιμηθέντες** ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας ὡς ἀπιόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα **εἴα** Κῦρος τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν **ἀφανεῖς, διῆλθε λόγος** ὅτι **διώκοι** αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν **ηὔχοντο** ὡς **δειλοὺς** ὄντας αὐτοὺς
ληφθῆναι, οἱ δ' **ᾤκτειρον** εἰ **ἁλώσοιντο**. (72) Κῦρος δὲ 8
συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπεν.

"'**Ἀπολελοίπασιν** ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων. ἀλλ' εὖ γε μέντοι ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὔτε **ἀποδεδράκασιν**· οἶδα γὰρ ὅπῃ **οἴχονται**· οὔτε **ἀποπεφεύγασιν**· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἑλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον· ἀλλὰ **μὰ** τοὺς **θεοὺς** οὐκ **ἔγωγε** αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῇ τις χρῶμαι, **ἐπειδὰν** δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβὼν καὶ αὐτοὺς **κακῶς** ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα **ἀποσυλῶ**. ἀλλὰ ἰόντων, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. **καίτοι** ἔχω γε αὐτῶν καὶ **τέκνα** καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι **φρουρούμενα**· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τούτων **στερήσονται**, ἀλλ' ἀπολήψονται τῆς πρόσθεν ἕνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ **ἀρετῆς**."

9 Καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ **ἀθυμότερος** ἦν πρὸς τὴν **ἀνάβασιν**, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν **ἥδιον** καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.

(73) Μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' **ἰχθύων** μεγάλων καὶ **πραέων**, οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἀδικεῖν οὐκ εἴων, οὐδὲ τὰς **περιστεράς**. αἱ δὲ **κῶμαι** ἐν αἷς **ἐσκήνουν** Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν εἰς **ζώνην** δεδομέναι.

10 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Δάρδατος ποταμοῦ, οὗ τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου. ἐνταῦθα ἦν τὰ Βελέσυος βασίλεια τοῦ Συρίας ἄρξαντος, καὶ παράδεισος **πάνυ** μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὧραι **φύουσι**. Κῦρος δ' αὐτὸν **ἐξέκοψε** καὶ τὰ βασίλεια **κατέκαυσεν**.

11 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων Θάψακος ὄνομα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας

πέντε. καὶ Κῦρος μεταπεμψάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς
τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα
μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα
τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπείθειν ἕπεσθαι. (74) οἱ δὲ 12
ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρα-
τιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς
πάλαι ταῦτ᾽ εἰδότας κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἐὰν
μή τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῷ, ὥσπερ τοῖς προτέροις μετὰ
Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα
οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς
Κῦρον.

Ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελλον· ὁ δ᾽ ὑπέσχετο 13
ἀνδρὶ ἑκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὴν εἰς Βαβυ-
λῶνα ἥκωσι, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῆ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ
τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν πάλιν. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ
Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπείσθη.

Μένων δὲ πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι
στρατιῶται, πότερον ἕψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὔ, συνέλεξε τὸ
αὑτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.

"Ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες οὔτε 14
πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτιμήσεσθε στρατιωτῶν
ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι; νῦν δεῖται Κῦρος
ἕπεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς
χρῆναι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι
ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ. (75) ἢν μὲν 15
γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἕπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαν-
τες τοῦ διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὡς προθυμοτάτοις οὖσιν ὑμῖν
χάριν εἴσεται Κῦρος καὶ ἀποδώσει· ἐπίσταται δ᾽ εἴ τις
καὶ ἄλλος· ἢν δὲ ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπιμεν μὲν
ἅπαντες τοὔμπαλιν, ὑμῖν δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις πιστο-
τάτοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ εἰς λοχαγίας, καὶ

ἄλλου οὗτινος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι τεύξεσθε
Κύρου.”
16 Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπείθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς
ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δ’ ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο διαβε-
βηκότας, ἥσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι πέμψας Γλοῦν
εἶπεν, “Ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ· ὅπως δὲ
καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ **μελήσει**, ἢ μηκέτι με Κῦρον
17 νομίζετε.” (76) οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγά-
λαις ὄντες ηὔχοντο αὐτὸν **εὐτυχῆσαι**, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ
δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι **μεγαλοπρεπῶς**. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας
διέβαινε· συνείπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτῷ
ἅπαν. καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς **ἐβρέχθη**
18 ἀνωτέρω τῶν **μαστῶν** ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Θαψακηνοὶ
ἔλεγον ὅτι **οὐπώποθ’** οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς **διαβατὸς** γένοιτο
πεζῇ εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις, ἃ τότε Ἀβροκόμας προϊὼν
κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος διαβῇ. ἐδόκει δὴ **θεῖον** εἶναι
καὶ **σαφῶς ὑποχωρῆσαι** τὸν ποταμὸν Κύρῳ ὡς βασιλεύ-
σοντι.
19 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας σταθμοὺς **ἐννέα**
παρασάγγας **πεντήκοντα**· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς τὸν
Ἀράξην ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι πολλαὶ **μεσταὶ**
σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας **τρεῖς** καὶ
ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

1 **V.** (78) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν
Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους
πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ
τῷ **τόπῳ** ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίον ἅπαν **ὁμαλὲς** ὥσπερ θάλαττα,
ἀψινθίου δὲ πλῆρες· εἰ δέ τι καὶ ἄλλο **ἐνῆν** **ὕλης** ἢ **καλά-**
2 **μου**, ἅπαντα ἦσαν **εὐώδη** ὥσπερ **ἀρώματα**· δένδρον δ’
οὐδὲν ἐνῆν, θηρία δὲ **παντοῖα**, πλεῖστοι **ὄνοι** ἄγριοι,

πολλαὶ δὲ **στρουθοὶ** αἱ μεγάλαι· ἐνῆσαν δὲ καὶ **ὠτίδες**
καὶ **δορκάδες**· ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἱππεῖς **ἐνίοτε** ἐδίωκον.
καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄνοι, ἐπεί τις διώκοι, **προδραμόν-
τες** ἕστασαν. πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων **ἔτρεχον**
θᾶττον· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ **πλησιάζοιεν** οἱ
ἵπποι, ταὐτὸν ἐποίουν, καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν,
εἰ μὴ **διαστάντες** οἱ ἱππεῖς **θηρῷεν διαδεχό-
μενοι**. τὰ δὲ **κρέα** τῶν ἁλισκομένων ἦν

OSTRICH.

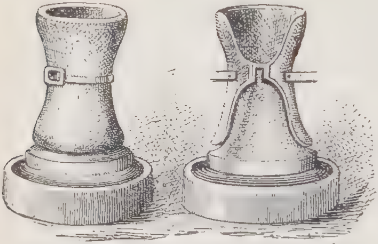
παραπλήσια τοῖς **ἐλαφείοις**, **ἁπαλώτερα** δέ. στρουθὸν
δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν ἱππέων 3
ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ **ἀπέσπα** φεύγουσα, τοῖς
μὲν ποσὶ δρόμῳ, ταῖς δὲ **πτέρυξιν αἴρουσα**, ὥσπερ
ἱστίῳ χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας ἄν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ
ἔστι λαμβάνειν· **πέτονται** γὰρ **βραχὺ** ὥσπερ **πέρδικες**
καὶ ταχὺ **ἀπαγορεύουσι**. τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν ἥδιστα
ἦν.

(79) Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνοῦνται 4
ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος **πλεθριαῖον**. ἐνταῦθα
ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ᾽ αὐτῇ Κορσωτή·
περιερρεῖτο δ᾽ αὕτη ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα **κύκλῳ**. ἐνταῦθ᾽
ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους **τρισκαίδεκα**
παρασάγγας **ἐνενήκοντα** τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ
ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας.

Ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώ- 5
λετο ὑπὸ **λιμοῦ**· οὐ γὰρ ἦν **χόρτος** οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν
δένδρον, ἀλλὰ **ψιλὴ** ἦν ἅπασα ἡ χώρα· οἱ δὲ ἐνοι-
κοῦντες ὄνους **ἀλέτας** παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν **ὀρύττοντες** καὶ
ποιοῦντες εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦγον καὶ **ἐπώλουν** καὶ **ἀνταγορά-
ζοντες** σῖτον **ἔζων**. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σῖτος **ἐπέλιπε**, καὶ 6
πρίασθαι οὐκ ἦν εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδίᾳ ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου

βαρβαρικῷ, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. ὁ δὲ σίγλος δύναται ἑπτὰ ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιωβόλιον Ἀττικούς· ἡ δὲ καπίθη δύο χοίνικας Ἀττικὰς ἐχώρει. κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο.



MILL AND SECTION OF UPPER (ὄνος ἀλέτης) STONE.

7 (80) ἦν δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὓς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὁπότε ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἢ πρὸς χιλόν.

Καὶ δή ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος ταῖς ἁμάξαις δυσπορεύτου ἐπέστη ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συν-
8 εκβιβάζειν τὰς ἁμάξας. ἐπεὶ δ᾽ ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ σχολαίως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς κρατίστους συνεπισπεῦσαι τὰς ἁμάξας. ἔνθα δὴ μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας ἦν θεάσασθαι. ῥίψαντες γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροῦς κάνδυς ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος ἑστηκώς, ἵεντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις περὶ νίκης καὶ μάλα κατὰ πρανοῦς γηλόφου, ἔχοντες τούς τε πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις καὶ ψέλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ σὺν τούτοις εἰσπηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν πηλὸν θᾶττον ἢ ὥς τις ἂν ᾤετο μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν τὰς ἁμάξας.

ROYAL NECKLACE.

ROYAL BRACELET.

9 (81) Τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος ὡς σπεύδων πᾶσαν

τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ **διατρίβων** ὅπου μὴ **ἐπισιτισμοῦ** ἕνεκα
ἤ τινος ἄλλου **ἀναγκαίου** **ἐκαθέζετο**, νομίζων, ὅσῳ μὲν
θᾶττον ἔλθοι, τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ **μαχεῖ-**
σθαι, ὅσῳ δὲ σχολαίτερον, τοσούτῳ πλέον **συναγείρεσθαι**
βασιλεῖ στράτευμα. καὶ **συνιδεῖν** δ' ἦν τῷ **προσέχοντι**
τὸν **νοῦν** ἡ βασιλέως ἀρχὴ **πλήθει** μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώ-
πων **ἰσχυρὰ** οὖσα, τοῖς δὲ **μήκεσι** τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ **διε-**
σπάσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις **ἀσθενής**, εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων τὸν
πόλεμον ποιοῖτο.

Πέραν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρή- 10
μους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη, ὄνομα
δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ
ἐπιτήδεια, **σχεδίαις** διαβαίνοντες ὧδε. **διφθέρας** ἃς
εἶχον **στεγάσματα** **ἐπίμπλασαν** χόρτου **κούφου**, εἶτα συν-
ῆγον καὶ **συνέσπων**, ὡς μὴ **ἅπτεσθαι** τῆς **κάρφης** τὸ
ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ τούτων διέβαινον καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτή-
δεια, οἶνόν τε ἐκ τῆς **βαλάνου** πεποιημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ
φοίνικος καὶ σῖτον μελίνης· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ
πλεῖστον.

(82) **Ἀμφιλεξάντων** δέ τι ἐνταῦθα τῶν τε τοῦ Μένωνος 11
στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου, ὁ Κλέαρχος **κρίνας**
ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος **πληγὰς** ἐνέβαλεν· ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν
πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ
στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ
Κλεάρχῳ. τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν 12
διάβασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐκεῖ **κατασκεψάμενος** τὴν ἀγο-
ρὰν **ἀφιππεύει** ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος
στρατεύματος σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· Κῦρος δὲ
οὔπω ἧκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι **προσήλαυνε**· τῶν δὲ Μένωνος στρα-
τιωτῶν **ξύλα** **σχίζων** τις ὡς εἶδε Κλέαρχον **διελαύνοντα**,
ἵησι τῇ **ἀξίνῃ**· καὶ οὗτος μὲν αὐτοῦ **ἥμαρτεν**· ἄλλος δὲ

13 **λίθῳ** καὶ ἄλλος, εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης. ὁ δὲ
καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα, καὶ εὐθὺς παραγ-
γέλλει εἰς τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ὁπλίτας αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε
μεῖναι τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ **γόνατα** θέντας, αὐτὸς δὲ λα-
βὼν τοὺς Θρᾷκας καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ
στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ **τετταράκοντα**, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλεῖ-
στοι Θρᾷκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους
ἐκπεπλῆχθαι καὶ αὐτὸν Μένωνα, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα·
οἱ δὲ καὶ ἕστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι.

14 (83) Ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος — ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος **προσιὼν**
καὶ τάξις αὐτῷ ἑπομένη τῶν ὁπλιτῶν — εὐθὺς οὖν εἰς τὸ
μέσον ἀμφοτέρων ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὅπλα καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ
Κλεάρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαινεν ὅτι αὐτοῦ
ὀλίγου δεήσαντος **καταλευσθῆναι πρᾴως** λέγοι τὸ αὑτοῦ
15 **πάθος**, ἐκέλευσέ τε αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ μέσου **ἐξίστασθαι**. ἐν
τούτῳ δὲ ἐπῄει καὶ Κῦρος καὶ **ἐπύθετο** τὸ πρᾶγμα· εὐθὺς
δ' ἔλαβε τὰ **παλτὰ** εἰς τὰς χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι
τῶν πιστῶν ἧκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε.
16 "Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες Ἕλλη-
νες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. εἰ γάρ τινα ἀλλήλοις μάχην
συνάψετε, νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψε-
σθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον· κακῶς γὰρ τῶν
ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὁρᾶτε βάρβαροι
πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων."
17 Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο· καὶ
παυσάμενοι ἀμφότεροι κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα.

1 **VI.** (84) Ἐντεῦθεν προϊόντων ἐφαίνετο **ἴχνη** ἵππων
καὶ **κόπρος**· **εἰκάζετο** δ' εἶναι ὁ **στίβος** ὡς δισχιλίων
ἵππων. οὗτοι προϊόντες **ἔκαον** καὶ χιλὸν καὶ εἴ τι
ἄλλο **χρήσιμον** ἦν.

Ὀρόντας δὲ Πέρσης ἀνὴρ **γένει** τε **προσήκων** βασιλεῖ
καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν ἐπι-
βουλεύει Κύρῳ καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας, **καταλλαγεὶς** δέ.
οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίη ἱππέας χιλίους, ὅτι 2
τοὺς **προκατακάοντας** ἱππέας ἢ **κατακάνοι** ἂν **ἐνεδρεύσας** ἢ
ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἂν ἕλοι καὶ κωλύσειε τοῦ κάειν
ἐπιόντας, καὶ ποιήσειεν ὥστε μήποτε δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς
ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα βασιλεῖ **διαγγεῖλαι**. τῷ
δὲ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα ἐδόκει **ὠφέλιμα** εἶναι, καὶ
ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἑκάστου τῶν
ἡγεμόνων.

Ὁ δ' Ὀρόντας νομίσας **ἑτοίμους** εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς 3
ἱππέας **γράφει ἐπιστολὴν** παρὰ βασιλέα ὅτι ἥξοι ἔχων
ἱππέας ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους· ἀλλὰ **φράσαι** τοῖς
ἑαυτοῦ ἱππεῦσιν ἐκέλευεν ὡς φίλιον αὐτὸν **ὑποδέχεσθαι**.
ἐνῆν δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλίας **ὑπομνή-
ματα** καὶ πίστεως. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ
ἀνδρὶ, ὡς ᾤετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδωσιν.

(85) **Ἀναγνοὺς** δὲ αὐτὴν ὁ Κῦρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόν- 4
ταν, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας τοὺς
ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἑπτά, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων
στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσεν ὁπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ
θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα περὶ τὴν αὑτοῦ σκηνήν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα
ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς **τρισχιλίους** ὁπλίτας. Κλέαρχον 5
δὲ καὶ εἴσω **παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον**, ὅς γε καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ
τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτιμηθῆναι μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξῆλθεν, **ἐξήγγειλε** τοῖς φίλοις τὴν **κρίσιν** τοῦ
Ὀρόντα ὡς ἐγένετο· οὐ γὰρ **ἀπόρρητον** ἦν.

Ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου ὧδε. "Παρεκάλεσα 6
ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος ὅ τι
δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο

πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντα τουτουί. τοῦτον γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ **ἐμὸς** πατὴρ ἔδωκεν **ὑπήκοον** εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθείς, ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν καὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν **προσπολεμῶν** ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ δεξιὰν ἔλαβον καὶ ἔδωκα,"

7 (86) μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, "ὦ Ὀρόντα, ἔστιν ὅ τι σε ἠδίκησα;" ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι "οὔ." πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτα, "**Οὐκοῦν** ὕστερον, ὡς αὐτὸς σὺ **ὁμολογεῖς**, οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος ἀποστὰς εἰς Μυσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν ὅ τι ἐδύνω;" ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντας. "Οὐκοῦν," ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, "ὁπότ' αὖ ἔγνως τὴν **σαυτοῦ** δύναμιν, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος **βωμὸν μεταμέλειν τέ** σοι ἔφησθα καὶ πείσας ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ;" καὶ ταῦθ' ὡμολόγει ὁ Ὀρόντας.

8 "Τί οὖν," ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, "ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ **τρίτον** ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας;" **εἰπόντος** δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθείς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτόν, "Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ **ἄδικος** γεγενῆσθαι;" "**Ἦ** γὰρ ἀνάγκη," ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντας. ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος, "Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός;" ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι "οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ' ἄν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι."

9 (87) Πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν, "Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, **ἀπόφηναι** γνώμην ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ." Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. "Συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον **ἐκποδὼν** ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέῃ τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ **σχολὴ** ᾖ ἡμῖν, τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι, τοὺς **ἐθελοντὰς** φίλους εὖ ποιεῖν."

Ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους **προσθέσθαι**. 10
μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, κελεύοντος Κύρου ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης
τὸν Ὀρόνταν ἐπὶ **θανάτῳ** ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες καὶ οἱ
συγγενεῖς· εἶτα δ᾽ **ἐξῆγον** αὐτὸν
οἷς **προσετάχθη**. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον
αὐτὸν οἵπερ πρόσθεν **προσεκύνουν**,
καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν, **καίπερ**
εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο.
ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκη- 11
νὴν **εἰσήχθη** τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν
Κύρου **σκηπτούχων**, μετὰ ταῦτα
οὔτε ζῶντα Ὀρόνταν οὔτε **τεθνη-
κότα** οὐδεὶς εἶδε **πώποτε** οὐδὲ ὅπως
ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς ἔλεγεν·
εἴκαζον δὲ ἄλλοι **ἄλλως**· **τάφος** δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ
ἐφάνη.

σκηπτοῦχος.

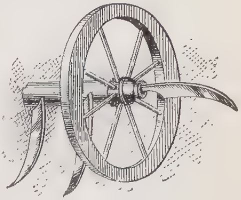
VII. (89) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας 1
σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας **νύκτας**· ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν **ἕω** ἥξειν βασιλέα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι μαχούμενον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ **κέρως** ἡγεῖσθαι, Μένωνα δὲ τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ εὐωνύμου, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ **διέταξε**.

Μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἥκοντες 2
αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ περὶ τῆς βασιλέως στρατιᾶς. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ **λοχαγοὺς** τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνεβουλεύετό τε **πῶς** ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο καὶ αὐτὸς **παρῄνει θαρρύνων** τοιάδε,

3 "Ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀπορῶν βαρ-
βάρων συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ νομίζων **ἀμείνους**
καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων ὑμᾶς εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο
προσέλαβον. ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς **ἐλευ-
θερίας** ἧς **κέκτησθε** καὶ ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ **εὐδαιμονίζω.** εὖ
γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἑλοίμην ἂν ἀντὶ ὧν ἔχω
πάντων καὶ ἄλλων **πολλαπλασίων.**
4 (90) "Ὅπως δὲ καὶ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἷον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα,
ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς **διδάξω.** τὸ μὲν γὰρ πλῆθος πολὺ καὶ κραυγῇ
πολλῇ ἐπίασιν· ἂν δὲ ταῦτα **ἀνάσχησθε,** τὰ ἄλλα καὶ
αἰσχυνεῖσθαί μοι δοκῶ οἵους ἡμῖν γνώσεσθε τοὺς ἐν
τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους. ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν ὄντων καὶ
εὖ τῶν ἐμῶν γενομένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν οἴκαδε βουλόμε-
νον ἀπιέναι τοῖς οἴκοι **ζηλωτὸν** ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν, πολλοὺς
δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ ἑλέσθαι ἀντὶ τῶν οἴκοι."
5 Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης παρὼν φυγὰς Σάμιος, πιστὸς δὲ
Κύρῳ, εἶπε, "Καὶ μήν, ὦ Κῦρε, λέγουσί τινες ὅτι πολλὰ
ὑπισχνεῖ νῦν διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ **κινδύνου**
προσιόντος, ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηταί τι, οὐ **μεμνήσεσθαί** σέ
φασιν· ἔνιοι δέ, οὐδ' εἰ μεμνῇό τε καὶ βούλοιο δύνα-
6 σθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνεῖ." ἀκούσας ταῦτα
ἔλεξεν ὁ Κῦρος, "Ἀλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡ
ἀρχὴ ἡ **πατρῴα** πρὸς μὲν **μεσημβρίαν** μέχρι οὗ διὰ
καῦμα οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ **ἄρκτον**
μέχρι οὗ διὰ **χειμῶνα**· τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων πάντα
7 **σατραπεύουσιν** οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. (91) ἢν δ'
ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους **τού-
των ἐγκρατεῖς** ποιῆσαι. ὥστε οὐ τοῦτο δέδοικα μὴ οὐκ
ἔχω ὅ τι δῶ ἑκάστῳ τῶν φίλων, ἂν εὖ γένηται, ἀλλὰ μὴ
οὐκ ἔχω ἱκανοὺς οἷς δῶ. ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ
στέφανον ἑκάστῳ χρυσοῦν δώσω."

Οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοί τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθυ- 8
μότεροι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξήγγελλον. **εἰσῆσαν** δὲ παρ᾽
αὐτὸν οἵ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινὲς
ἀξιοῦντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσται, ἐὰν **κρατήσωσιν**. ὁ
δὲ **ἐμπιμπλὰς** ἁπάντων τὴν γνώμην ἀπέπεμπε. **παρεκε-** 9
λεύοντο δὲ αὐτῷ, πάντες **ὅσοιπερ διελέγοντο**, μὴ μάχε-
σθαι, ἀλλ᾽ **ὄπισθεν** ἑαυτῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ **καιρῷ**
τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ὧδέ **πως** ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· "Οἴει γάρ
σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν;" "**Νὴ** Δί᾽,"
ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, "**εἴπερ** γε Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδός
ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ **ἀμαχεὶ** ταῦτ᾽ ἐγὼ
λήψομαι."

(92) Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ **ἐξοπλισίᾳ** ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν 10
μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἀσπὶς μυρία καὶ τετρακοσία, πελτασταὶ
δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι, τῶν
δὲ μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μυ-
ριάδες καὶ ἅρματα **δρεπανηφόρα** ἀμφὶ
τὰ εἴκοσι. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο 11
εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδες καὶ
ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα διακόσια. ἄλ-
λοι δὲ ἦσαν **ἑξακισχίλιοι** ἱππεῖς, ὧν
Ἀρταγέρσης ἦρχεν· οὗτοι δ᾽ αὖ πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως
τεταγμένοι ἦσαν.


δρεπανηφόρος.

Τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ 12
στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες τέτταρες, τριάκοντα μυριάδων
ἕκαστος, Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας, Ἀρβάκης.
τούτων δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες
καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα· Ἀβρο-
κόμας δὲ **ὑστέρησε** τῆς μάχης ἡμέραις πέντε, ἐκ Φοινίκης
ἐλαύνων. ταῦτα δὲ **ἤγγελλον** πρὸς Κῦρον οἱ **αὐτομολή-** 13
σαντες ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως πρὸ

τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην οἳ ὕστερον ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων ταὐτὰ ἤγγελλον.

14 (93) Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ· ᾤετο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέα· κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον **τάφρος** ἦν **ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα**, τὸ μὲν εὖρος **ὀργυιαὶ** πέντε,
15 τὸ δὲ **βάθος** ὀργυιαὶ τρεῖς. **παρετέτατο** δὲ ἡ τάφρος ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας τείχους.

Ἔνθα αἱ **διώρυχες**, ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ῥέουσαι· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς **σιταγωγά**· εἰσβάλλουσι δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, **διαλείπουσι** δ' ἑκάστη παρασάγγην, γέφυραι δ' ἔπεισιν.

Ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ **μεταξὺ** τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος·
16 ταύτην δὲ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ μέγας ἀντὶ **ἐρύματος**, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάροδον Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρῆλθε καὶ ἐγένοντο
17 εἴσω τῆς τάφρου. ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο βασιλεύς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἴχνη πολλά.

18 (94) Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος Σιλανὸν καλέσας τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην **μάντιν** ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δαρεικοὺς τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ **ἐνδεκάτῃ** ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ προθυόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι "βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν," Κῦρος δ' εἶπεν, "Οὐκ **ἄρα** ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' **ἀληθεύσῃς**, ὑπισχνοῦμαί σοι δέκα **τάλαντα**." τοῦτο τὸ χρυσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρῆλθον
19 αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασι-

λεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις **ἀπεγνωκέναι** τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο **ἠμελημένως** μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπί τε τοῦ ἅρματος καθήμενος τὴν **πορείαν** ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὑτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ **ἀνατεταραγμένον** ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν ἤγετο καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

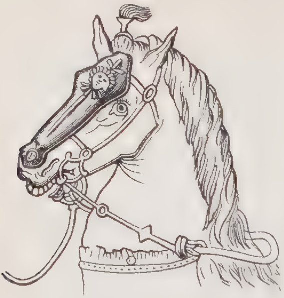
VIII. (95) Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν **πλήθουσαν** καὶ 1
πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα **ἔμελλε** καταλύειν, **ἡνίκα** Πατηγύας ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον πιστῶν **προφαίνεται** ἐλαύνων **ἀνὰ κράτος ἱδροῦντι** τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν **ἐβόα** καὶ **βαρβαρικῶς** καὶ **ἑλληνικῶς** ὅτι "βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην **παρεσκευασμένος**."

Ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς **τάραχος** ἐγένετο· **αὐτίκα** γὰρ ἐδόκουν 2
οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ **ἀτάκτοις** σφίσιν **ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι**·
Κῦρός τε **καταπηδήσας** ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος 3
τὸν **θώρακα ἐνέδυ** καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν **ἐξοπλίζεσθαι** καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστον.

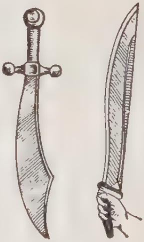
θώραξ.

Ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ **σπουδῇ** καθί- 4
σταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μένων δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας
ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. (96) τοῦ δὲ βαρβαρικοῦ ἱππεῖς 5
μὲν Παφλαγόνες εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν **πελταστικόν**, ἐν δὲ τῷ

εὐωνύμῳ Ἀριαῖός τε ὁ Κύρου ὕπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρ-
6 βαρικόν, Κῦρος δὲ καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς τούτου ὅσον **ἑξακόσιοι**



προμετωπίδιον.



μάχαιραι.

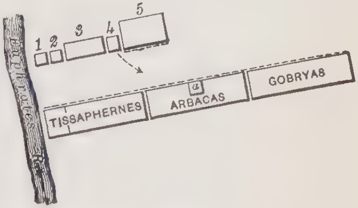
κατὰ τὸ μέσον, **ὡπλισμένοι** θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ **παραμηριδίοις** καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος δὲ ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν **κεφαλὴν** εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο λέγε-

PERSIAN FOOT SOLDIERS.

ται δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας ψιλαῖς ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἐν
7 τῷ πολέμῳ **διακινδυνεύειν.** οἱ δ' ἵπποι πάντες οἱ μετὰ
Κύρου εἶχον καὶ **προμετωπίδια** καὶ **προστερνίδια**· εἶχον
δὲ καὶ **μαχαίρας** οἱ ἱππεῖς Ἑλληνικάς.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὔπω **καταφανεῖς** 8
ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἡνίκα δὲ **δείλη** ἐγίγνετο, ἐφάνη
κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ **νεφέλη λευκή**, χρόνῳ δὲ **συχνῷ** ὕστερον
ὥσπερ **μελανία** τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολύ. ὅτε δὲ **ἐγγύ-
τερον** ἐγίγνοντο, **τάχα** δὴ καὶ **χαλκός** τις **ἤστραπτε** καὶ
αἱ **λόγχαι** καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίγνοντο. (97) καὶ 9
ἦσαν ἱππεῖς μὲν **λευκοθώρακες** ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν
πολεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων ἄρχειν· ἐχό-
μενοι δὲ **γερροφόροι**, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὁπλῖται σὺν **ποδήρεσι
ξυλίναις** ἀσπίσιν. Αἰγύπτιοι δ᾽ οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι·
ἄλλοι δ᾽ ἱππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται. πάντες δ᾽ οὗτοι κατὰ
ἔθνη ἐν **πλαισίῳ** πλήρει ἀνθρώπων ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος
ἐπορεύετο.

Πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἅρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν ἀπ᾽ ἀλ- 10
λήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ
δρέπανα ἐκ τῶν **ἀξόνων** εἰς
πλάγιον ἀποτεταμένα καὶ
ὑπὸ τοῖς **δίφροις** εἰς γῆν
βλέποντα, ὡς **διακόπτειν** ὅτῳ
ἐντυγχάνοιεν. ἡ δὲ γνώμη
ἦν ὡς εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν
Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα καὶ δια-
κόψοντα. ὃ μέντοι Κῦρος 11
εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκε-
λεύετο τοῖς Ἕλλησι τὴν
κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων
ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο·
οὐ γὰρ κραυγῇ ἀλλὰ **σιγῇ** ὡς **ἀνυστὸν** καὶ **ἡσυχῇ** ἐν ἴσῳ
καὶ **βραδέως** προσῇσαν.



1, Paphlagonian cavalry.
2, Greek peltasts.
3, Greek hoplites under: (1) Clearchus, (2) Proxenus, (3) Menon.
4, Probable position of Cyrus and his six hundred cavalry.
5, Barbarians under Ariaeus.
a, Artaxerxes with the six thousand cavalry.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι 12
τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ

ἐβόα ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων,
ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἴη· κἂν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νικῶμεν, πάνθ'
13 ἡμῖν πεποίηται. (98) ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος τὸ μέσον
στῖφος καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εὐω-
νύμου βασιλέα — τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει **περιῆν** βασιλεὺς
ὥστε μέσον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου ἔξω
ἦν — ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀποσπάσαι
ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας, φοβούμενος μὴ **κυκλω-
θείη ἑκατέρωθεν**, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι
ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι.
14 Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα
ὁμαλῶς προῄει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον
συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παρε-
λαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στρατεύματι **κατεθεᾶτο
ἑκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων** εἴς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς
15 φίλους. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν
Ἀθηναῖος, **πελάσας** ὡς **συναντῆσαι** ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγ-
γέλλοι· ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευε πᾶσιν
16 ὅτι καὶ τὰ **ἱερὰ** καλὰ καὶ τὰ **σφάγια** καλά. (99) ταῦτα δὲ
λέγων **θορύβου** ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο
τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἴη. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι **σύνθημα**
παρέρχεται **δεύτερον** ἤδη. καὶ ὃς ἐθαύμασε τίς παρ-
αγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὅ τι εἴη τὸ σύνθημα. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρί-
17 νατο "Ζεὺς **σωτὴρ** καὶ νίκη." ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούσας
"Ἀλλὰ **δέχομαί** τε," ἔφη, "καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω." ταῦτα δ'
εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν αὑτοῦ χώραν ἀπήλαυνε.
Καὶ **οὐκέτι** τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια **διειχέτην** τὼ φά-
λαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἡνίκα **ἐπαιάνιζόν** τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ
18 ἤρχοντο **ἀντίοι** ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. ὡς δὲ πορευομένων
ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον ἤρξατο
δρόμῳ **θεῖν**· καὶ ἅμα **ἐφθέγξαντο** πάντες οἷον τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ

ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθεον. λέγουσι δέ τινες ὡς
καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ **δόρατα** **ἐδούπησαν** φόβον ποιοῦν-
τες τοῖς ἵπποις. (100) πρὶν δὲ **τόξευμα** **ἐξικνεῖσθαι** 19
ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐν-
ταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες,
ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ᾽ ἐν τάξει
ἕπεσθαι. τὰ δ᾽ ἅρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι᾽ αὐ- 20
τῶν τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων **κενὰ**
ἡνιόχων. οἱ δ᾽ ἐπεὶ **προΐδοιεν**, διίσταντο· ἔστι δ᾽
ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν **ἱπποδρόμῳ** ἐκπλα-
γείς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν,
οὐδ᾽ ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ
ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ **τοξευθῆ-**
ναί τις ἐλέγετο.

δόρυ.

Κῦρος δ᾽ ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ᾽ 21
αὑτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνού-
μενος ἤδη ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὐτόν, οὐδ᾽ **ὣς** ἐξήχθη
διώκειν, ἀλλὰ **συνεσπειραμένην** ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν
ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ τι
ποιήσει βασιλεύς. καὶ γὰρ ᾔδει αὐτὸν ὅτι μέσον
ἔχοι τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. (101) καὶ πάντες 22
δ᾽ οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ
αὑτῶν **ἡγοῦνται**, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν **ἀσφαλε-**
στάτῳ εἶναι, ἢν ᾖ ἡ **ἰσχὺς** αὐτῶν ἑκατέρωθεν, καὶ
εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι χρῄζοιεν, **ἡμίσει** ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθά-
νεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον 23
ἔχων τῆς αὑτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὅμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου
εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δ᾽ οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ
ἀντίου οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις **ἔμπροσθεν**, **ἐπέκαμπτεν**
ὡς εἰς **κύκλωσιν**. ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ ὄπισθεν 24
γενόμενος κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ

ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως
τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς **φυγὴν** **ἔτρεψε** τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους,
καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρτα-
γέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν.
25 Ὡς δ᾽ ἡ **τροπὴ** ἐγένετο, **διασπείρονται** καὶ οἱ Κύρου
ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὁρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι
ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, **σχεδὸν** οἱ **ὁμοτράπεζοι** καλού-
26 μενοι. (102) σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὢν **καθορᾷ** βασιλέα καὶ τὸ
ἀμφ᾽ ἐκεῖνον στῖφος· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ᾽ εἰπὼν
"Τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ" ἵετο ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸν καὶ **παίει** κατὰ τὸ **στέρνον**
καὶ **τιτρώσκει** διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὥς φησι Κτησίας ὁ
27 **ἰατρός**, καὶ **ἰᾶσθαι** αὐτὸς τὸ **τραῦμά** φησι. παίοντα δ᾽
αὐτὸν **ἀκοντίζει** τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν **ὀφθαλμὸν** **βιαίως**· καὶ
ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ᾽
αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ **ἑκατέρου**, — ὁπόσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα
ἀπέθνησκον Κτησίας λέγει· παρ᾽ ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν· Κῦρος
δὲ αὐτός τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν
28 **ἔκειντο** ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ. Ἀρταπάτης δ᾽ ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ
τῶν σκηπτούχων **θεράπων** λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ **πεπτωκότα** εἶδε
Κῦρον, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου **περιπεσεῖν** αὐτῷ.
29 καὶ οἱ μέν φασι βασιλέα κελεῦσαί τινα **ἐπισφάξαι** αὐτὸν
Κύρῳ, οἱ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπισφάξασθαι **σπασάμενον** τὸν ἀκινά-
κην· εἶχε γὰρ χρυσοῦν· καὶ στρεπτὸν δ᾽ **ἐφόρει** καὶ
ψέλια καὶ τἆλλα ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι Περσῶν· ἐτετίμητο
γὰρ ὑπὸ Κύρου δι᾽ **εὔνοιάν** τε καὶ **πιστότητα**.

WORD FOR WORD PARALLEL OF ANABASIS.

Book I., Chapters I.–II.

Note. — The figures between parentheses indicate the Lessons of this book in which the text, corresponding to this parallel, is treated.

CHAPTER I.

1. (1) Of-Darius and of-Parysatis are-born boys two, (2) *elder* Artaxerxes, *younger* but Cyrus. (3) When but was-sick Darius (4) and was-suspecting an-end of-the (of-)life, (5) he-was-wishing the-two two-boys both to-be-present.

2. (6) The now *elder* being-present happened; (7) *Cyrus* but he-sends-after from the province of-which him satrap he-made, (8) also general and him he-appointed of-all (9) as-many-as into Castolus's plain collect-themselves (= assemble). Goes-up, therefore, (the) Cyrus taking Tissaphernes as a-friend, (10) also of-the Greeks, having heavy-armed-men he-went-up three-hundred, commander and of-them Xenias, a-Parrhasian.

3. (12) When but ended Darius and became-established into the kingdom Artaxerxes, Tissaphernes slanders (the) Cyrus to the (= his) brother, that he-is-plotting-against him. (13) The (= he) and is-persuaded and arrests Cyrus as-if about-to-kill; the (= his) but mother having-begged-off him sends-back again to the (= his) province.

4. (14) The (= he) but when went-back, after-incurring-danger and after-being-dishonored, (15) deliberates how never again he-shall-be in-the-power-of his brother, but, if he-be-able, [how] he-shall-be-king instead-of that-one.

(16) *Parysatis* now, his mother, supported (the) Cyrus, loving him more than the reigning Artaxerxes.

5. (17) *Whoever* and arrived of-the from-beside king to him, all so disposing he-kept-sending-away, so-as to-him rather friends to-be than to-king. (19) Also of-the by-the-side-of himself and barbarians he-was-taking-care, that to-wage-war both able they-might-be and in-a-friendly-way they-might-have-[themselves] to-him, i.e., be friendly to him.

6. The but Greek force he-was-collecting, as-much-as he-could, hiding-for-himself, in-order-that as-unprepared-as-possible he-might-take (= find) king. (20) As-follows, therefore, he-was-making-for-himself the levy. As-many-soever-as he-had garrisons in the cities he-sent-orders to-the garrison-commanders each to-take men Peloponnesian as-many-as-possible and as-good-as-possible, saying-that plotting-against Tissaphernes the cities. (21) And (this was plausible) for *were* the Ionian cities of-Tissaphernes the-ancient (= for-

merly) from king having-been-given, then but they-had-revolted to Cyrus all except Miletus.

7. In Miletus but Tissaphernes observing-beforehand the same those [things] [them] planning, to-revolt to Cyrus, *the* (= *some*) he-killed-off, *the* (= *others*) but he-cast-out, i.e., banished. (22) (The) but Cyrus, taking-under-(his protection) the fleeing [ones], after-collecting an-army, was-besieging Miletus both by land and by sea and was-endeavoring to lead-down [= back] the having-fallen-out [ones] (= the exiles). And this again another pretext was to-him of-the to-collect an-army.

8. (23) To and king sending, he-kept-demanding, brother being of-him, to-be-given to-himself those the cities rather than Tissaphernes to-rule (of-)them, and his mother coöperated with-him these [things]; so-that king the *against himself conspiracy* not was-perceiving, (24) with-*Tissaphernes* but he-was-thinking warring him about (= on) the armies to-be-spending-money; so-that in-no-wise was-he-angry, (because of) them warring. (And) for (the) Cyrus kept-forwarding the becoming (i.e., accruing) revenues to-king from the cities, (of-)which of-Tissaphernes he-happened having.

9. Another but army for-him was-being-collected in Chersonesus the opposite Abydus, (in) this (the) way. Clearchus a-Lacedæmonian exile was; (25) with-this (one) (= him) after-associating, (the) Cyrus admired both him and gives to-him ten-thousand darics. The (= he) but, after-taking the money, an-army collected from those the means, and was-warring, from Chersonesus setting-out, with-the Thracians the above (= on) [the] Hellespont living, and he-was-aiding the Greeks; so-that also means they-were-contributing for-him into the support of-the soldiers, the Hellespontine cities, willing. (26) *This* and again thus being-supported was-escaping-notice for-him (the) army.

10. Aristippus and, the Thessalian, a-guest-friend being happened to-him, and being-hard-pressed under (= by) his at-home opponents he-comes to (the) Cyrus and asks him (for) into (= about) two-thousand mercenaries and three months' pay, on-the-ground-that thus becoming-superior would (= would be superior) of-(= to)-his opponents. (27) (The) but Cyrus gives to-him about four-thousand and six months' pay, and requests (of-)him not sooner to-become-reconciled to his opponents before with-him he-may-confer. Thus and again the in Thessaly was-escaping-notice for-him being-supported army.

11. (28) Proxenus and, the Bœotian, a-guest-friend being, he ordered taking men as-many-as-possible, to-become-at-[his]-side, saying-that, into (= against) (the) *Pisidians*, wishing (= he wished) to-make-an-expedition, on-the-ground-that *troubles*, were furnishing the Pisidians, to-the of-himself country (= to his own country).

Sophænetus and, the Stymphalian, and Socrates, the Achæan, guest-friends being also these, he ordered, men having-taken, to-come, as many-as-possible, on-the-ground-that being-(= he was)-about-to-war-with (= against) Tissaphernes together-with the exiles (the) of-[the]-Milesians. And *were-doing* thus those.

CHAPTER II.

1. (30) When but it-was-seeming-best to-him now to-proceed upward, the *pretext* he-was-making as (the) Pisidians wishing (i.e., that he wished) to-drive-out wholly from the country; and he-collects as-if against these the both barbarian and the Greek [army]. There also he-sends-orders to-the both Clearchus having-taken (= with) to-come how-great was to-him army, and to(-the) Aristippus, reconciled to his [opponents] at-home, to-send-away to himself what he-had army; (31) and to-Xenias, the Arcadian, who for-him was commanding the in the cities mercenary [army], to-come he-sends-orders, having-taken the others except how-many sufficient were the citadels to-guard.

2. He-called and also the Miletus besieging [ones], and the exiles he-ordered with him to-join-the-expedition, having-promised to-them, if well he-should-accomplish [those things] for which he-was-making-the-expedition, not sooner (about-) to-cease until them he-should-lead-down (= back) homeward. (32) The (= they) and gladly were-obeying; they-trusted for (to-) him; and taking the arms they were-present into Sardis.

3. *Xenias* accordingly the from the cities taking became-present into Sardis, heavy-armed-men to (= about) four-thousand, *Proxenus* and was-present having *heavy-armed-men* about five-hundred and one-thousand, *light-armed-men* but five-hundred, Sophænetus and, the Stymphalian, heavy-armed-men having one-thousand, Socrates and, the Achæan, heavy-armed-men having about five-hundred, Pasion and, the Megarean, *three-hundred heavy-armed-men*, *three-hundred* and *targeteers* having, arrived; was but both that [one] and (the) Socrates of-the about Miletus campaigning [ones].

4. (33) *Those* into Sardis for him arrived. *Tissaphernes* but, having-perceived these things (= this), and greater thinking to-be than as-if against (the) Pisidians the preparation, proceeds to king, by-what [way] he was-able most-quickly, horsemen having about five-hundred.

5. And king accordingly, when he-heard of-Tissaphernes the Cyrus's military-preparation, prepared-in-turn.

Cyrus but, having whom I-have-mentioned, set-forth from Sardis; and he-marches through (the) Lydia day's-journeys three, parasangs twenty and two, to the Mæander river. Of-this the width two plethra; a-bridge and was-upon seven having-been-joined by-means-of-boats.

6. (34) This after-crossing, he-marches through Phrygia day's-journey one, parasangs eight, into Colossæ, a-city (well-) inhabited, prosperous and large. There he-waited days seven; and came Menon, the Thessalian, hoplites having one-thousand and peltasts five-hundred, Dolopians and Ænianians and Olynthians.

7. Thence he-marches day's-journeys three, parasangs twenty, into Celænæ, of-(the) Phrygia city inhabited, large and prosperous. There to-Cyrus royal-(apartments) was and a-park large, of-wild animals full, which that-one used-to-hunt from a-horse, whenever to-exercise he-wished (opt.) himself both and

his horses. Through middle and of-the park flows the Mæander river; the and sources of-it are out-of the royal-apartments (= palace); it-flows and also through the Celænæ city.

8. (35) There-is and also of-great king royal-palace in Celænæ fortified upon the sources of-the Marsyas river beneath the acropolis; flows and also this through the city and empties into the Mæander; of-the and Marsyas the width is of-twenty and five feet.

There is-said Apollo to-have-flayed [it is said that Apollo flayed] Marsyas after-conquering [him] contending with-himself concerning [musical-] wisdom, and the skin to-have-hung-up [and that he hung up, etc.] in the cave whence the sources; on-account-of and this [fact] the river is-called Marsyas. (36) There Xerxes, when from (the) Greece after-being-defeated in-the battle he-was-retreating, is-said to-have-built [it is said that he built] these both (the) royal-apartments (= palace) and the of-Celænæ citadel.

9. There waited Cyrus days thirty; and came Clearchus, the Spartan exile, having hoplites one-thousand and peltasts Thracians eight-hundred and bowmen Cretan two-hundred. At-the-same-time and also Sosis was-present, the Syracusan, having hoplites three-hundred, and Sophænetus, the Arcadian, having hoplites one-thousand. And there Cyrus review and enumeration of-the Greeks made in the park, and became (= amounted-to) the all-together *hoplites* ten-thousand and one-thousand, *peltasts* but about (the) two-thousand.

10. (37) Thence he-marches day's-journeys two, parasangs ten, into Peltæ, a-city inhabited. There he-remained days three; in which Xenias, the Arcadian, the Lycæan sacrificed and a-contest appointed; the and prizes were flesh-combs golden; viewed (= witnessed) and the contest also Cyrus.

Thence he-marches day's-journeys two, parasangs twelve, to of-(the)-Ceramians market, city inhabited, remotest near (= frontier or border city of) the Mysian country.

11. (38) Thence he-marches day's-journeys three, parasangs thirty, into Cayster's plain, city inhabited. There he-remained days five; and to-the soldiers was-due pay more than of-three months, and frequently going to his gates they-kept-demanding [it] from [him]. The (= he) but, hopes speaking, kept-putting-(them)-off and evident was being-troubled; not for was-it according-to the of-Cyrus manner (= custom, or character), having, not to-give-back (= pay-over).

12. (39) There arrives Epyaxa, the of-Syennesis wife, the Cilicians' king to-the-side-of Cyrus; and she-was-said to-Cyrus to-have-given [it was said that she gave, etc.] means (= money) much. To-the but at-any-rate army then paid Cyrus pay of-four months. Had and the Cilician-(woman) a-guard around herself, Cilicians and Aspendians; it-was-said and also to-have-had-intercourse Cyrus [that C. had, etc.] with-the Cilician-(woman).

13. Thence he-marches day's-journeys two, parasangs ten, into Thymbrium, city inhabited. (41) There was beside the road spring, the of-Midas called,

the Phrygians' king, at which is-said Midas the Satyr to-have-caught [it is said that M. caught, etc.] with-wine by-mixing it.

14. Thence he-marches day's-journeys two, parasangs ten, into Tyriæum, city inhabited. There he-remained days three. And is-said to-have-requested the-Cilician-(woman) of-Cyrus [it is said that . . . requested Cyrus] to-show the army to-herself ; wishing accordingly to-show, a-review he-makes in (= on) the plain of-the Greeks and of-the barbarians.

15. (42) He-ordered and the Greeks, as custom to-them into battle [was], so to-be-drawn-up and to-stand, to-marshal and each-one the of-himself [men]. They-were-drawn-up accordingly in fours (= four deep) ; had and the *right* Menon and the (= those) with him, the but *left* Clearchus and the of-that-one [men], the but *middle* the other generals.

16. Viewed (= reviewed) accordingly (the) Cyrus *first* the barbarians ; the (= they) and marched-by having-been-drawn-up according-to squadrons and according-to companies ; *afterwards* but, the Greeks, riding-past upon a-chariot and the Cilician-(woman) upon (= in) a-carriage. They-had and all helmets brazen and tunics purple and greaves and their shields having-been-uncovered.

17. (43) When but all he-rode-past (= he-had-ridden-past), after-stationing his chariot before the phalanx middle, sending Pigres the interpreter to (-the-side-of) the generals of-the Greeks, he-ordered to-present the arms and to-advance entire the phalanx. They but these (orders) said-in-front to-the soldiers ; and when the-trumpet-(had)-sounded, after-presenting the arms, they-advanced. From but this, more-quickly advancing with a-shout, from the spontaneous a-running became to-the soldiers to the tents.

18. (44) Of-the and barbarians fear much, and the both Cilician-(woman) fled upon her carriage and the (= those) from (i.e., in) the market leaving-behind their wares fled. The but Greeks with laughter to their tents went. The and Cilician-(woman), seeing the splendor and the order of-the army, wondered. Cyrus but was-pleased the from the Greeks into the barbarians fear beholding.

19. Thence he-marches day's-journeys three, parasangs twenty, into Iconium, of (the) Phrygia city remote. There he-remained three days. Thence he marches through (the) Lycaonia day's-journeys five, parasangs thirty. This (the) country he-turned-over to-plunder to-the Greeks, as hostile being.

20. (45) Thence Cyrus the Cilician-(woman) into (the) Cilicia sends-away (by) the quickest way ; and he-sent-with her the soldiers whom Menon had and (Menon) himself. Cyrus but with the others marches through Cappadocia day's-journeys four, parasangs twenty and five, into Thoana, city inhabited, large and prosperous. There they-remained days three ; in which (time) Cyrus slew man Persian, Megaphernes, a-wearer-of-the-purple royal, and another certain of-the subordinates chief-officer, accusing to-be-plotting-against him.

21. (46) Thence they-were-attempting to-throw-into (i.e., make an entrance) into (the) Cilicia ; the but entrance was road wagon, steep exceedingly and im-

possible to-enter for-an-army, if any-one was-preventing. Was-said and also Syennesis to-be upon the heights guarding the entrance; wherefore they-waited a-day in the plain. On-the but following [day] came a-messenger saying that having-left was Syennesis the heights, when he-perceived that the of-Menon army already in Cilicia was within the mountains, and because triremes he-heard sailing-around from Ionia into Cilicia Tamos having, the of-Lacedæmonians and of himself Cyrus.

22. (47) Cyrus and accordingly went-up upon the mountains, nobody preventing, and saw the tents where the Cilicians were-guarding.

Thence and he-went-down into a-plain large and beautiful, flowed-upon (= well-watered), and of-trees of-all-kinds quite-full and of-vines; much and also sesame and millet and panic and wheat and barley it-bears. A-mountain and it surrounds, steep and high on-every-side from sea to sea.

23. After-descending and through this (the) plain he marched day's-journeys four, parasangs five and twenty, to Tarsi, of (-the) Cilicia city large and prosperous; where was the of-Syennesis royal-palace, the Cilicians' king; through midst and of-the city flows a-river Cydnus by-name, width of-two plethra.

24. (48) This (the) city they-abandoned, the inhabiting [ones], with Syennesis into a-fortress strong upon the mountains, except the (= those) the shops having [ones]; they-remained and also the along-the-side-of the sea living [ones] in Soli and in Issi. Epyaxa but, the of-Syennesis wife, earlier than-Cyrus by-five days into Tarsi arrived.

25. In but the crossing of-the mountains, the into the plain, two companies of-the Menon's army were-destroyed (= perished); *the* (= *some*) were-saying while-plundering something to-have-been-cut-down (= cut-to-pieces) [that they while . . . were cut down] by the Cilicians, *the* (= *others*) but after-being-left-behind and not being-able to-find the other (= the rest of the) army nor the roads, then, wandering-about, to-have-perished [that they were left behind and . . . that they perished]; they-were but at-any-rate these one-hundred hoplites.

26. (49) The but others when they-came, the both city, (the) Tarsi, they-plundered, on-account-of the loss of-the fellow-soldiers being-angered, and the royal-palace the in it.

Cyrus but when marched-into into the city, kept-sending-after (the) Syennesis to himself; he but neither before to-no-one yet stronger than-himself into hands to-go said [i.e., that he had gone, etc.] nor then to-Cyrus to-go was-he-willing, before [= until] his wife him persuaded and pledges he-received.

27. (50) After but these [things] (= this), when they-became-with one-another, *Syennesis* gave to-Cyrus means much into (= for) the army, *Cyrus* and to-that-one (= him) gifts which is-[= are]-thought alongside-of (the) king (i.e., at the court) valuable, a-horse golden-bridled and necklace golden and bracelets and dagger golden and gown Persian and the country no-longer to-be-ravaged; the and having-been-plundered slaves, if anywhere they-happen-on [them] (= find), to-take-[them]-back.

A FREE TRANSLATION OF CHAPTER I.

NOTE. — The figures between parentheses indicate the Lessons in this book in which the text, corresponding to this translation, is treated.

1. (1) Of Darius and Parysatis two sons are born ; (2) the elder, Artaxerxes ; the younger, Cyrus. (3) Now when Darius was sick (4) and suspected the end of his life to be near, (5) he wished both of his sons to be present.

2. (6) Now the elder happened to be present ; (7) but he sent for Cyrus from the province of which he had made him satrap ; (8) and he had also appointed him general of all (9) who are wont to assemble in the plain of Castolus. So Cyrus goes up, taking Tissaphernes as a friend, (10) having also three hundred hoplites of the Greeks and Xenias, the Parrhasian, as their commander.

3. (12) When Darius died and Artaxerxes became established in the kingdom, Tissaphernes slandered Cyrus to his brother, charging that he was plotting against him. (13) The king believes him and arrests Cyrus, saying that he is going to put him to death ; but the mother of Cyrus begs him off and sends him back again to his province.

4. (14) But when he went back, after incurring danger and disgrace, (15) he planned that he might never again be in the power of his brother, but be king in his stead, if he could.

(16) Now Parysatis, the mother of Cyrus, supported him, since she loved him more than the reigning Artaxerxes.

5. (17) If any one came to him from the king, Cyrus used to send them all back, disposing them so as to be more friendly to him than to the king. (19) And he also cared for the barbarians about him, that they might both be able to fight and be friendly to him.

6. But his Greek force he collected as secretly as possible, in order that he might take the king as unprepared as possible. (20) Accordingly he made his levy as follows. He ordered the captains of all the garrisons which he had in the cities to procure men of Peloponnesus, as many and as good as possible, declaring that Tissaphernes was plotting against his cities. (21) For the Ionian cities belonged to Tissaphernes, having been given to him formerly by the king ; but at this time all had revolted to Cyrus, except Miletus.

7. Tissaphernes perceiving that in Miletus people were deliberating upon these same measures, namely, to revolt to Cyrus, slew some and banished others. (22) But Cyrus, taking the exiles under his protection and collecting an army,

besieged Miletus both by land and sea and endeavored to restore them. This again was another pretext he had for collecting an army.

8. (23) And sending to the king, he kept urging that, because he was a brother of his, those cities should be given to himself rather than that Tissaphernes should rule them, and his mother was coöperating with him in this; so that the king did not perceive the plot against himself, (24) but he thought that by warring with Tissaphernes, he was expending his means upon his armies; so that he felt no anger at their being at war. For Cyrus continually sent to the king the incoming revenues from the cities which belonged to Tissaphernes, but which he happened to have.

9. But another army was collected for him in the Chersonesus which lies directly opposite Abydus, in the following manner. Clearchus was an exile from Sparta. (25) After associating with him, Cyrus both came to know him and admired him, and gave him ten thousand darics. He took the money and raised an army with these means, and sallying forth from the Chersonesus, carried on war with those Thracians who lived beyond the Hellespont, and continually aided the Greeks; so that the cities of the Hellespont voluntarily contributed means for him for the support of his soldiers. (26) This army also was thus secretly supported for him.

10. And Aristippus, the Thessalian, happened to be a guest-friend of his, and, hard pressed by his adversaries at home, he came to Cyrus and asked him for two thousand darics and three months' pay, saying that thus he would get the better of his adversaries. (27) But Cyrus gives him about four thousand darics and six months' pay, and begs him not to come to an agreement with his adversaries before he shall have consulted him. Thus again the army in Thessaly was secretly supported for him.

11. (28) But Proxenus, the Bœotian, a guest-friend of his, he bade take as many men as possible and come to him, stating that he desired to make an expedition against the Pisidians, on the ground that the Pisidians were giving his country trouble.

And Sophænetus, the Stymphalian, and Socrates, the Achæan — these too being friends — he bade take as many men as possible and come to him, saying that he was about to fight Tissaphernes with the aid of the exiles from Miletus. And they did so.

APPENDIX.

Note. — In this Appendix many of the facts and principles of Latin and Greek etymology are presented as a basis for a comparative study of the elements of the two languages. The Appendix is designed to be used in connection with the "Lessons." Its purpose is primarily to aid the student in understanding the principles of the Greek language by comparing them with principles of the Latin language already known by him. As the facts here presented are intended for the use of beginners of the language and chiefly for the purpose of illustration, the treatment of the subject matter is simple and incomplete. Numerous references to the Appendix will be found in the preceding "Lessons," which, it is thought, will render it useful to teachers and students. It is hoped that the teacher will enlarge this comparative study of Latin and Greek whenever it can be done with advantage to the pupil. (See *Suggestions to Teachers*, pp. 7–9.)

A secondary purpose of the Appendix is to furnish for convenient reference all the paradigms needed for the first half of the "Lessons" in the "Primer."

ORTHOGRAPHY AND SOUND.

Alphabet.

1. The following table will show many similarities in the letters of the Latin and Greek languages; the teacher will do well to explain them more fully as the letters occur in the text studied. The standard grammars will give additional information to the teacher.

Latin.[1]	Greek.		Name.	
a	Α	α	ἄλφα	*alpha*
b	Β	β	βῆτα	*beta*
g	Γ	γ	γάμμα	*gamma*
d	Δ	δ	δέλτα	*delta*
ĕ	Ε	ε	ἒ ψῑλόν	*epsīlon*

[1] Only those letters are given which correspond with the Greek alphabet, and they are arranged in the order of the Greek alphabet.

Latin.	Greek.		Name.	
z	Z	ζ	*ζῆτα*	*zeta*
ē	H	η	*ἦτα*	*eta*
th	Θ	θ ϑ	*θῆτα*	*theta*
i	I	ι	*ἰῶτα*	*iota*
c, k	K	κ	*κάππα*	*kappa*
l	Λ	λ	*λάμβδα*	*lambda*
m	M	μ	*μῦ*	*mu*
n	N	ν	*νῦ*	*nu*
x	Ξ	ξ	*ξῖ*	*xi*
ŏ	O	ο	*ὂ μῑκρόν*	*omīcron*
p	Π	π	*πῖ*	*pi*
r	P	ρ	*ῥῶ*	*rho*
s	Σ	σ ς	*σίγμα*	*sigma*
t	T	τ	*ταῦ*	*tau*
y (u)	Υ	υ	*ὖ ψῑλόν*	*upsilon*
ph	Φ	φ	*φῖ*	*phi*
ch	X	χ	*χῖ*	*chi*
ps	Ψ	ψ	*ψῖ*	*psi*
ō	Ω	ω	*ὦ μέγα*	*omĕga*

2. Quantity of Vowels. — In Latin the vowels may be *long* or *short* in quantity; when *long*, they are marked thus, (*ā*); when *short*, thus, (*ă*).

In Greek ϵ, ο, are always *short*,

η, ω, are always *long*,

α, ι, υ, are long in some words, short in others, hence called *doubtful* vowels. The quantity of the doubtful vowels may be marked like that of Latin vowels. In this volume, however, α, ι, υ, have been marked when long, except when a circumflex accent stands over the vowel; when unmarked these vowels are short.

3. Sounds of Vowels. — The Greek vowels are sounded like the corresponding Latin vowels as pronounced by the Roman method of pronunciation, *except* ῠ, ῡ: υ has the sound of the French *u* or German *ü*.

Remark. — Every initial vowel or diphthong has a *breathing*, either *rough* (ʽ) or *smooth* (ʼ). The *rough breathing* shows that *h* is sounded before the vowel or diphthong, thus, ὁ = *hŏ*; the *smooth breathing* simply indicates the absence of the *h*-sound. A diphthong takes the breathing over the second vowel, except an improper diphthong (5).

4. Open and Close Vowels. —

	Latin.	Greek.
The *open* vowels are	*ă*, *ā*.	α, ᾱ, (most open).
	ĕ, *ē*, *ŏ*, *ō*.	ε, η, ο, ω, (less open).
The *close* vowels are	*ĭ*, *ī*, *ŭ*, *ū*.	ι, ῑ, υ, ῡ.

The Latin *y* was introduced from the Greek υ. In Greek diphthongs υ corresponds to the Latin *u*; see 5, 7.

5. Diphthongs. — When two vowels unite in one syllable, they are called a diphthong (δί-φθογγος, *double sound*). In Latin the second vowel of the diphthong is often a close vowel, in Greek it is always so.

Latin Diphthongs.	Greek Diphthongs.
Most common, *ae*, *oe*, *au*, *eu*.	αι, ει, οι; αυ, ευ, ου;
Less common, *ei*, *oi*, *ui*.	ᾱͅ, ῃ, ῳ; ηυ, ωυ, υι.

The diphthongs with the first vowel long and with *iota subscript* are sometimes called *improper* diphthongs.

6. Pronunciation of Diphthongs. — By the Roman method of pronouncing Latin, the following diphthongs are pronounced alike: —

Latin.		Greek.	Latin.		Greek.
ae	=	αι	*ei*	=	ει[1]
au	=	αυ	*eu*	=	ευ
oe	=	οι	*ui*	=	υι

7. Correspondence in Letters. — The Greek diphthongs were represented in Roman letters as follows: —

	αι,	ει,	οι,	αυ,	ευ,	ου,	υι,	ᾱͅ,	ῃ,	ῳ.
by	*ae*,	*ē* or *ī*,	*oe*,	*au*,	*eu*,	*ū*,	*yi*,	*ā*,	*ē*,	*ō*.

8. Mutes. — Those consonants which are called *mutes* are classified as follows: —

	Latin.			Greek.			
Labial mutes	*p*	*b*	*ph*	π	β	φ,	or π-mutes
Lingual mutes	*t*	*d*	*th*	τ	δ	θ,	or τ-mutes
Palatal mutes	*c*, *k*	*g*	*ch*	κ	γ	χ,	or κ-mutes

[1] See Notes on Lesson I. for another sound for ει.

Mutes produced by the same organ of speech (lips, tongue, palate) are *cognate.*

By another classification mutes are divided into three *orders:* —

smooth	π	τ	κ
middle	β	δ	γ
rough	φ	θ	χ

Mutes of the same *order* are said to be *coördinate.*

9. Liquids. — *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and the corresponding Greek letters λ, μ, ν, ρ, are called *liquids.*

10. Nasals. — *m*, *n*, *n* before a palatal (as in i*n*k), and the corresponding μ, ν, γ-nasal (γ before a palatal or ξ), are called *nasals.*

11. Double Consonants. — Latin *x*, *z*, and Greek ξ, ζ, ψ, are called double consonants; *x* (*cs*) = ξ (κσ); *z* (*ds*) = ζ (δσ); ψ = πσ.

12. Sounds of Consonants. — The Greek consonants are sounded like the Roman letters used to represent them. Note in particular that κ and γ are hard like *c* and *g* in *c*an and *g*o; σ ς has the hissing sound of *s*, as in *s*o, never the sound of *z*; τ has the sound of *t* in *t*in; ζ has the sound of Eng. *dz*; θ has the sound of *th* in *th*in.

13. Vowel and Consonant Changes. — These changes are so numerous in both Latin and Greek that they can be best illustrated in the paradigms where they are found and also by the teacher from time to time in connection with the Greek text of the Lessons. See paradigms following.

14. Syllables. — The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima;* the next to the last, *penult;* the one before the penult, *antepenult.*

15. Quantity. — A syllable is long by *nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: *Bĕlgae, trēs;* τώ, τῇ, τοῖς.

16. Accent. — Accent is practically a stress of voice upon the accented syllable. In Greek there are three marks of accent, also themselves called accents: —

the *acute*, written ´;
the *circumflex*, written ῀;
the *grave*, written `.

These accent marks stand over the vowel of the accented syllable; if the accented syllable contains a diphthong, the accent mark stands

over the second vowel, except, of course, in case of an *improper diphthong.*

There are no special marks of accent for Latin words. When it is desired to indicate the accented syllable of a Latin word, the *acute* accent is generally used.

17. Place of the Greek Accents. — The acute can stand on only one of the last three syllables of a word, the circumflex on one of the last two.

A word with the acute

on the *ultima*	is called	*oxytone,*
on the *penult*	" "	*paroxytone,*
on the *antepenult*	" "	*proparoxytone.*

A word with the circumflex

on the *ultima*	is called	*perispomenon,*
on the *penult*	" "	*properispomenon.*

A word with no accent on the ultima is called *barytone.*

18. Accent determined by Quantity. — In Latin, words of two syllables are accented on the *penult;* words of more than two syllables are accented on the *penult,* if the penult is *long,* otherwise on the *antepenult.*

In Greek, (*a*) the *acute* can stand on either *long* or *short* syllables, (*b*) the *circumflex* only on syllables *long by nature,* cf. 15; (*c*) when the ultima is long by nature the acute cannot stand on the *antepenult,* nor the circumflex on the penult. Hence we have the following

General Rules for Greek Accent.

Note that the length of the ultima as determining Greek accent is the basis of these rules.

19. A word with a *short ultima,* if accented

(*a*) on the *antepenult,* has the *acute,*
(*b*) on a *short penult,* has the *acute,*
(*c*) on a *long penult,* has the *circumflex,*
(*d*) on the *ultima,* has the *acute.*

A word with a *long ultima,* if accented

(*e*) on the *penult,* has the *acute,*

(*f*) on the *ultima,* has either the *acute* or *circumflex;*

cf. 35, REMARK, 43, and the paradigms of the following pages.

20. Important Exception in Quantity. — Final -αι and -οι, except in the optative mode and the adverb *οἴκοι, at home,* have the effect of *short* vowels on the accent of penult and antepenult.

21. Change of Acute to Grave. — The acute on an ultima is changed to the grave when words follow in close connection.

22. Proclitics. — In Latin, prepositions standing before their cases are attached so closely to a following word as not to have an accent of their own; cf. *in pártēs.*

In Greek, a few words attach themselves so closely to a following word as not to have a separate accent. Such words are called *proclitics* (leaning forward).

They are: —

(*a*) ὁ, ἡ, οἱ, αἱ, of the article;

(*b*) The prepositions ἐν *in,* εἰς *into,* ἐξ (ἐκ) *from;*

(*c*) The conjunctions εἰ *if,* ὡς *as, that, to* (as a preposition);

(*d*) The adverb οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ) *not.*

23. Enclitics. — Words which attach themselves so closely to a preceding word as to lose their separate accent are called *enclitics* (leaning on another word), e.g., **miniméque**. The most common enclitics in Greek are: —

(*a*) The pronouns μοῦ, μοί, μέ; σοῦ, σοί, σέ; οὗ, οἷ, ἕ, and σφίσι.

(*b*) The indefinite pronoun τίς, τί, in all its forms.

(*c*) The present indicative of εἰμί *be* and φημί *say,* except the second singular.

(*d*) The particles γέ, τέ, τοί, πέρ, and the inseparable -δε.

INFLECTION.

24. Parts of Speech. — They are the same in English, Latin, and Greek, viz.: Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection. English and Greek have also the Definite Article.

25. Properties of Nouns. — They are *gender, number,* and *case;* true for both Latin and Greek.

26. Gender. — In Greek, as in Latin, there are three genders: *masculine, feminine,* and *neuter.* The gender of Greek substantives (nouns and words used as nouns) is generally shown by the form of the definite article. As in Latin, the form of the case-ending sometimes indicates the gender of the word.

27. Number. — English and Latin have two numbers, *singular* and *plural;* Greek has in addition to these a *dual number,* used of two only; the *plural,* however, is often used instead of the *dual.*

28. Case. — There are six cases in Latin: *nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative,* and *ablative.* Greek has the same cases except the ablative. Instead of the ablative, Greek employs the genitive and dative with and without prepositions. See Introduction 42 and 47.

29. Stem and Case Endings. — As in Latin so in Greek the forms of a noun are made by adding *case endings* to a common base called the *stem.* The union of these two elements leads to many vowel and consonant changes. See the declensions which follow.

30. Stem Endings. —

In Latin, stems end in *a, o, i, u, e,* and *consonants.*
In Greek, stems end in α, ο, ι, υ, and *consonants.*

31. Declensions. —

LATIN.

I. *A-* or 1st declension (stems in *a*).
II. *O-* or 2d declension (stems in *o*).
III. Consonant or 3d declension (stems in *consonants* and in *i*).
IV. 4th declension (stems in *u*).
V. 5th declension (stems in *ē*).

GREEK.

I. *A-* or 1st declension (stems in ᾱ).
II. *O-* or 2d declension (stems in ο).
III. Consonant or 3d declension (stems in *consonants* and close vowels, ι, υ).

NOTE. — Greek III. equals Latin III. and IV., and Latin *ē*-stems originally ended in *a* or *s*.

32. First Declension (α-Declension).

Latin.

The stem ends in *ă*.

The nominative singular ends in *ă*.

Nouns of this declension are feminine.

[A few nouns of Greek origin end in *ē* (= η), *ās* (= ᾱς), *ēs* (= ης).]

lingua, language.
(*lingua-*)

	SINGULAR.
N.	*linguă*
G.	*linguae*
D.	*linguae*
A.	*linguă-m*
V.	*linguă*
Ab.	*linguā*

	PLURAL.
N.	*linguae*
G.	*linguārum*
D.	*linguīs*
A.	*linguās*
V.	*linguae*
Ab.	*linguīs*

Greek.

The stem ends in **ᾱ**.

The nominative singular ends in **ᾱ**, **ᾰ**, **η**· feminine; **-ᾱς**, **-ης**, masculine.

-ς is the case-ending of the masculines in the nominative singular.

I. Feminines.

	ἡ χώρᾱ, *land.* (χωρᾱ-)	ἡ ἀρχή, *government.* (ἀρχᾱ-)	ἡ θάλασσᾰ, *sea.* (θαλασσᾱ-)
	SINGULAR.		
N.	χώρᾱ	ἀρχή	θάλασσα
G.	χώρᾱς	ἀρχῆς	θαλάσσης
D.	χώρᾳ	ἀρχῇ	θαλάσσῃ
A.	χώρᾱ-ν	ἀρχή-ν	θάλασσα-ν
V.	χώρᾱ	ἀρχή	θάλασσα
	DUAL.		
N.A.V.	χώρᾱ	ἀρχᾱ́	θαλάσσᾱ
G.D.	χώραιν	ἀρχαῖν	θαλάσσαιν
	PLURAL.		
N.	χῶραι	ἀρχαί	θάλασσαι
G.	χωρῶν	ἀρχῶν	θαλασσῶν
D.	χώραις	ἀρχαῖς	θαλάσσαις
A.	χώρᾱς	ἀρχᾱ́ς	θαλάσσᾱς
V.	χῶραι	ἀρχαί	θάλασσαι

33. Cases Alike in the First Declension. — Latin: nom. and voc. in both sing. and plu.; in each of the declensions the dat. and abl. plu. are always alike.

Greek: nom. and voc. in sing. and plu.; in each of the declensions the nom., acc., and voc. dual, also the gen. and dat. dual, are always alike.

34. Terminations. — In both Greek and Latin in this declension the stem ending has in most cases combined with the original case endings (cf. 29); sometimes it has disappeared entirely, thus *-ῶν* (for *ά-ων*), *īs* (for *α-is*). Hence a comparative view of corresponding *terminations* will give a better idea of the relation existing between Latin and Greek in feminines of this declension: —

Latin.		Greek.		
N.	*ă*	N.	ᾰ	η
G.	*ae*	G.	ᾱς or ης	ης
D.	*ae*	D.	ᾳ or ῃ	ῃ
A.	*ăm*	A.	ᾰν	ην
V.	*ă*	V.	ᾰ	η
Ab.	*ā*			
		N.A.V.	ᾱ	
		G.D.	αιν	
N.	*ae*	N.	αι	
G.	*ārum*	G.	ῶν (for ά-ων)	
D.	*īs* (for *a-is*)	D.	αις	
A.	*ās*	A.	ᾱς	
V.	*ae*	V.	αι	
Ab.	*īs* (for *a-is*)			

NOTE. — The endings containing *ē* (= η) appear in Latin only in nouns of Greek origin. Cf. 32.

35. II. Masculines.

Latin.

[A few nouns of Greek origin are found in Latin with the nom. sing. in *ās* or *ēs*; the stem ending *ă* has been changed to *ē* in certain cases. Cf. the change of ᾱ to η in Greek.]

Æneās, Æneās.

SINGULAR.

N.	*Æneās*
G.	*Æneae*
D.	*Æneae*
A.	*Æneān* (*am*)
V.	*Æneā* (*ă*)
Ab.	*Æneā*

Anchīsēs, Anchīsēs.

SINGULAR.

N.	*Anchīsēs*
G.	*Anchīsae*
D.	*Anchīsae*
A.	*Anchīsēn* (*am*)
V.	*Anchīsē* (*ā, ă*)
Ab.	*Anchīsē* (*ā*)

Greek.

Masculines of the *a*-declension end in ᾱς or ης in the nom. sing.; the stem ends in ᾱ; -ς is the case-ending of the nom. sing. See 32.

	ὁ νεᾱνίᾱς, *young man.* (νεᾱνιᾱ-)	ὁ πολίτης, *citizen.* (πολῑτᾱ-)
N.	νεᾱνίᾱς	πολίτης
G.	νεᾱνίου	πολίτου
D.	νεᾱνίᾳ	πολίτῃ
A.	νεᾱνίᾱν	πολίτην
V.	νεᾱνίᾱ	πολῖτᾰ
N.A.V.	νεᾱνίᾱ	πολίτᾱ
G.D.	νεᾱνίαιν	πολίταιν
N.	νεᾱνίαι	πολῖται
G.	νεᾱνιῶν	πολῑτῶν
D.	νεᾱνίαις	πολίταις
A.	νεᾱνιᾱ́ς	πολίτᾱς
V.	νεᾱνίαι	πολῖται

NOTE. — α has been shortened in the vocative singular πολῖτᾰ.

REMARK. — The accent of a noun remains, in all the forms, upon the same syllable as in the nominative singular, or as near that syllable as the general laws of accent allow.

An *accented ultima* generally takes the *acute*; but in the *genitive* and *dative*, of all numbers, a *long ultima*, if accented, takes the *circumflex*.

36. Contracts of the First Declension. — Stems in αᾱ- and εᾱ- suffer contraction.

N.	(μνά-ᾱ)	**μνᾶ** *mina.*	(σῡκέ-ᾱ)	**σῡκῆ** *fig-tree.*
G.	(μνά-ᾱς)	**μνᾶς**	(σῡκέ-ᾱς)	**σῡκῆς**
D.	(μνά-ᾳ)	**μνᾷ**	(σῡκέ-ᾳ)	**σῡκῇ**
A.	(μνά-ᾱν)	**μνᾶν**	(σῡκέ-ᾱν)	**σῡκῆν**
V.	(μνά-ᾱ)	**μνᾶ**	(σῡκέ-ᾱ)	**σῡκῆ**
N.A.V.	(μνά-ᾱ)	**μνᾶ**	(σῡκέ-ᾱ)	**σῡκᾶ**
G.D.	(μνά-αιν)	**μναῖν**	(σῡκέ-αιν)	**σῡκαῖν**
N.V.	(μνά-αι)	**μναῖ**	(σῡκέ-αι)	**σῡκαῖ**
G.	(μνα-ῶν)	**μνῶν**	(σῡκε-ῶν)	**σῡκῶν**
D.	(μνά-αις)	**μναῖς**	(σῡκέ-αις)	**σῡκαῖς**
A.	(μνά-ᾱς)	**μνᾶς**	(σῡκέ-ᾱς)	**σῡκᾶς**

NOTE. — (*a*) The contract syllable takes the accent if either of the syllables contracted had an accent.

(*b*) A contract ultima takes the circumflex, unless the ultima had the acute before contraction.

(*c*) Two like vowels give the common long vowel, thus: **α-α = ᾱ.**

(*d*) In this declension, a short vowel followed by α or by any long vowel-sound is absorbed; except that in the singular, εᾱ, after any consonant but ρ, contract to η.

37. SECOND DECLENSION (*o*–DECLENSION).

LATIN.

In words of this declension the stem ends in *o*. They are *masculine* and *neuter*. Masculines end in *-us*, *-er*, *-ir* in the nom. sing. Neuters end in *-um* in the nom., acc., and voc. sing.; the nom., acc., and voc. plural end in *-a*.

GREEK.

In words of this declension the stem ends in **ο**. They are mostly *masculine* and *neuter*, with a few *feminines*. Masculines and feminines end in **-ος** in the nom. sing., and are declined alike. Neuters end in **-ον** in the nom., acc., and voc. sing.; the nom., acc., and voc. plural end in **-α**.

38. Terminations (cf. 34). —

	Masc.		*Neut.*		*Masc. and Fem.*		*Neut.*
N.	*us*		*um*	N.	**ος**		**ον**
G.		*ī* (for *o-i*)		G.		**ου** (for **ο ο**)	
D.		*ō*		D.		**ῳ** (for **ο-ι**)	
A.		*um*		A.		**ον**	
V.	*e*		*um*	V.	**ε**		**ον**
Ab.		*ō*					
				N.A.V.		**ω** (for **ο**)	
				G.D.		**οιν**	
N.	*ī* (for *o-i*)		*a*	N.	**οι**		**α**
G.		*ōrum*		G.		**ων** (for **ο-ων**)	
D.		*īs* (for *o-is*)		D.		**οις**	
A.	*ōs*		*a*	A.	**ους** (for **ονς**)		**α**
V.	*ī* (for *o-i*)		*a*	V.	**οι**		**α**
Ab.		*īs* (for *o-is*)					

Note. — In Latin the stem ending *o* appears as *u* in *us*, *um*, and as *e* in the voc. sing. masculine; in a similar way **ο** in Greek appears as **ε** in the voc. sing. of masculines and feminines.

39.

	Gallus, a Gaul. (*Gallo-*)	*bellum, war.* (*bello-*)		ὁ ἄνθρωπος, *man.* (ἀνθρωπο-)	ἡ ὁδός, *road.* (ὁδο-)	τὸ δῶρον, *gift.* (δωρο-)
N.	*Gallus*	*bellum*	N.	**ἄνθρωπος**	**ὁδός**	**δῶρον**
G.	*Gallī*	*bellī*	G.	**ἀνθρώπου**	**ὁδοῦ**	**δώρου**
D.	*Gallō*	*bellō*	D.	**ἀνθρώπῳ**	**ὁδῷ**	**δώρῳ**
A.	*Gallum*	*bellum*	A.	**ἄνθρωπον**	**ὁδόν**	**δῶρον**
V.	*Galle*	*bellum*	V.	**ἄνθρωπε**	**ὁδέ**	**δῶρον**
Ab.	*Gallō*	*bellō*				
			N.A.V.	**ἀνθρώπω**	**ὁδώ**	**δώρω**
			G.D.	**ἀνθρώποιν**	**ὁδοῖν**	**δώροιν**
N.	*Gallī*	*bella*	N.	**ἄνθρωποι**	**ὁδοί**	**δῶρα**
G.	*Gallōrum*	*bellōrum*	G.	**ἀνθρώπων**	**ὁδῶν**	**δώρων**
D.	*Gallīs*	*bellīs*	D.	**ἀνθρώποις**	**ὁδοῖς**	**δώροις**
A.	*Gallōs*	*bella*	A.	**ἀνθρώπους**	**ὁδούς**	**δῶρα**
V.	*Gallī*	*bella*	V.	**ἄνθρωποι**	**ὁδοί**	**δῶρα**
Ab.	*Gallīs*	*bellīs*				

Attic Second Declension.

Remark. — The ο-declension includes a few stems in **ω**. This **ω** appears in all of the cases and takes ι-subscript where the common endings have **ι**: thus, **ὁ νεώς** *temple*, G. **νεώ**, D. **νεῴ**, A. **νεών**; Dual **νεώ**, **νεῴν**; Plu. **νεῴ**, **νεών**, **νεῴς**, **νεώς**. The long ultima here does not exclude the accent from the antepenult (cf. πόλεως), and the gen. and dat. when accented on the ultima are oxytone.

Third (Consonant) Declension.

40. Stems: —

In Latin this declension includes stems ending in a *consonant* and *i*; stems in *u* constitute the fourth declension; cf. 31.

In Greek this declension includes stems ending in *consonants* or *close vowels* (ι, υ); cf. 31.

41. Stems Ending in a Palatal: —

	lēx, *law*. (*lēg-*)	*pāx*, *peace*. (*pāc-*).		ὁ φάλαγξ, *phalanx*. (φαλαγγ-)	ὁ φύλαξ, *watchman*. (φυλακ-)
N.	*lēx* (for *lēg-s*)	*pāx* (for *pāc-s*)	N.	**φάλαγξ** (for φάλαγγ-ς)	**φύλαξ** (for φύλακ-ς)
G.	*lēg-is*	*pāc-is*	G.	**φάλαγγ-ος**	**φύλακ-ος**
D.	*lēg-ī*	*pāc-ī*	D.	**φάλαγγ-ι**	**φύλακ-ι**
A.	*lēg-em*	*pāc-em*	A.	**φάλαγγ-α**	**φύλακ-α**
V.	*lēx* (see Nom.)	*pāx* (see Nom.)	V.	**φάλαγξ** (see Nom.)	**φύλαξ** (see Nom.)
Ab.	*lēg-e*	*pāc-e*			
			N.A.V.	**φάλαγγ-ε**	**φύλακ-ε**
			G.D.	**φαλάγγ-οιν**	**φυλάκ-οιν**
N.	*lēg-ēs*	*pāc-ēs*	N.	**φάλαγγ-ες**	**φύλακ-ες**
G.	*lēg-um*	———	G.	**φαλάγγ-ων**	**φυλάκ-ων**
D.	*lēg-ibus*	*pāc-ibus*	D.	**φάλαγξι** (for φάλαγγ-σι)	**φύλαξι** (for φύλακ-σι)
A.	*lēg-ēs*	*pāc-ēs*	A.	**φάλαγγ-ας**	**φύλακ-ας**
V.	*lēg-es*	*pāc-ēs*	V.	**φάλαγγ-ες**	**φύλακ-ες**
Ab.	*lēg-ibus*	*pāc-ibus*			

Note. — (*a*) The endings for masc. and fem. nouns of the 3d decl. have been set off by hyphens.

(*b*) A palatal mute (cf. 8) with *s* forms *x* in Latin; with **ς** forms **ξ** in Greek.

42. Stems Ending in a Labial: —

	plēbs, people. (*plēb-*)		ἡ *φλέψ, vein.* (*φλεβ-*)
N.	*plēb-s*	N.	**φλέψ** (for *φλέβ-ς*)
G.	*plēb-is*	G.	**φλεβ-ός**
D.	*plēb-ī*	D.	**φλεβ-ί**
A.	*plēb-em*	A.	**φλέβ-α**
V.	*plēb-s*	V.	**φλέψ**
Ab.	*plēb-e*		
		N.A.V.	**φλέβ-ε**
		G.D.	**φλεβ-οῖν**
N.	*plēb-ēs*	N.	**φλέβ-ες**
G.	*plēb-ium*	G.	**φλεβ-ῶν**
D.	*plēb-ibus*	D.	**φλεψί** (for *φλεβ-σί*)
A.	*plēb-ēs*	A.	**φλέβ-ας**
V.	*plēb-ēs*	V.	**φλέβ-ες**
Ab.	*plēb-ibus*		

Note. — (*a*) Latin *bs* is pronounced exactly like Greek *ψ*.
(*b*) In Greek a labial (*π*, *β*, *φ*) with *σ* forms *ψ*.

43. Accent of Monosyllables. — Monosyllables of the 3d declension, in the gen. and dat. of all numbers, accent the case-ending; **-ων** and **-οιν** take the circumflex.

44. Stems Ending in a Lingual: —

I. Masculine and Feminine.

	pars, part. (*part-*)		ὁ *φυγάς, fugitive.* (*φυγαδ-*)	ἡ *ἐλπίς, hope.* (*ἐλπιδ-*)
N.	*pars* [for *par*(*t*)-*s*][1]	N.	**φυγάς** [for *φυγά*(*δ*)-*ς*]	**ἐλπίς** [for *ἐλπί*(*δ*)-*ς*]
G.	*part-is*	G.	**φυγάδ-ος**	**ἐλπίδ-ος**
D.	*part-ī*	D.	**φυγάδ-ι**	**ἐλπίδ-ι**
A.	*part-em*	A.	**φυγάδ-α**	**ἐλπίδ-α**
V.	*pars* (see Nom.)	V.	**φυγάς** (see Nom.)	**ἐλπί** (see Nom.)
Ab.	*part-e*			
		N.A.V.	**φυγάδ-ε**	**ἐλπίδ-ε**
		G.D.	**φυγάδ-οιν**	**ἐλπίδ-οιν**
N.	*part-ēs*	N.	**φυγάδ-ες**	**ἐλπίδ-ες**
G.	*part-ium*	G.	**φυγάδ-ων**	**ἐλπίδ-ων**
D.	*part-ibus*	D.	**φυγάσι** [for *φυγά*(*δ*)-*σι*]	**ἐλπίσι** [for *ἐλπί*(*δ*)-*σι*]
A.	*part-ēs*	A.	**φυγάδ-ας**	**ἐλπίδ-ας**
V.	*part-ēs*	V.	**φυγάδ-ες**	**ἐλπίδ-ες**
Ab.	*part-ibus*			

[1] Cf. *cīvitā*(*t*)-*s*.

	nox, night. (*noct-*)		*ἡ νύξ, night.* (νυκτ-)	*ὁ λέων, lion.* (λεοντ-)
N.	*nox* [for *noc*(*t*)-*s*]	N.	**νύξ** [for *νύκ*(*τ*)-ς]	**λέων** [for *λέον*(*τ*)-ς]
G.	*noct-is*	G.	**νυκτ-ός**	**λέοντ-ος**
D.	*noct-ī*	D.	**νυκτ-ί**	**λέοντ-ι**
A.	*noct-em*	A.	**νύκτ-α**	**λέοντ-α**
V.	*nox* (see Nom.)	V.	**νύξ** (see Nom.)	**λέον** [for *λέον*(*τ*-)]
Ab.	*noct-e*			
		N.A.V.	**νύκτ-ε**	**λέοντ-ε**
		G.D.	**νυκτ-οῖν**	**λεόντ-οιν**
N.	*noct-ēs*	N.	**νύκτ-ες**	**λέοντ-ες**
G.	*noct-ium*	G.	**νυκτ-ῶν**	**λεόντ-ων**
D.	*noct-ibus*	D.	**νυξί** [for *νυκ*(*τ*)-*σί*]	**λέουσι** [for *λέο*(*ντ*)-*σι*]
A.	*noct-ēs* (*īs*)	A.	**νύκτ-ας**	**λέοντ-ας**
V.	*noct-ēs*	V.	**νύκτ-ες**	**λέοντ-ες**
Ab.	*noct-ibus*			

NOTE. — (*a*) In Latin before *s* and in Greek before ς a lingual mute is dropped.

(*b*) In *νύξ*, after *τ* is dropped, *κ* with *σ* forms ξ, i.e., a palatal mute with *σ* forms ξ (Lat. *x*).

(*c*) Stems in *οντ-* reject the case-ending ς in the nom. sing., and lengthen **ο** to *ω*; the voc. sing. of barytone stems is like the stem, except that the final *τ* is dropped.

(*d*) *ν* and a lingual mute (*τ*, *δ*, *θ*) are dropped before ς, and the preceding vowel is lengthened in compensation; **ο** becomes **ου**.

II. NEUTERS.

	caput, head. (*capit-*)	*cor, heart.* (*cord-*)		*τὸ πρᾶγμα, deed.* (*πρᾱγματ-*)
N.A.V.	*caput*	*cor* [for *cor-*(*d*)-]	N.A.V.	**πρᾶγμα**
G.	*capit-is*	*cord-is*	G.	**πράγματ-ος**
D.	*capit-ī*	*cord-ī*	D.	**πράγματ-ι**
Ab.	*capit-e*	*cord-e*		
			N.A.V.	**πράγματ-ε**
			G.D.	**πρᾱγμάτ-οιν**
N.A.V.	*capit-a*		N.A.V.	**πράγματ-α**
G.	*capit-um*		G.	**πρᾱγμάτ-ων**
D.Ab.	*capit-ibus*		D.	**πράγμασι** [for *πράγμα*(*τ*)-*σι*]

NOTE. — (*e*) The nom., acc., and voc. of neuters are alike, and in the plu. they end in ᾰ in Greek, *ă* in Latin; cf. 37.

(*f*) Stems in ατ- in Greek, and in two consonants in Latin, drop the final lingual in the nominative.

45. Stems Ending in a Liquid: —

1. In Latin the nom. sing. is the same as the stem, except: —
(*a*) Stems in *ōn*- drop *n*: *leō*, for *leō*(*n*), *leōn-is*, etc.
(*b*) Stems in *gin*- and *din*- have *o* in the nom.: *altitūdo*, *altitūdin-is*, etc. Other stems in *in*-, especially neuter nouns, have *e* instead of *i* in the nom.: *flūmen*, *flūmin-is*, etc.
(*c*) Stems in *tr*- retain an original *e* in the nom.: *frāter*, *frātr-is*, etc.
(*d*) Many neuter stems in *er*- and *or*- have *us* in the nom.: *opus*, *oper-is*, etc.; *corpus*, *corpor-is*, etc.
2. The nom., acc., and voc. plu. of neuters take the case-ending *a*; cf. 37, 44, N. *e*.

ὁ ποιμήν, *shepherd*. (ποιμεν-)	ὁ μήν, *month*. (μην-)
ποιμήν	μήν
ποιμέν-ος	μην-ός
ποιμέν-ι	μην-ί
ποιμέν-α	μῆν-α
ποιμήν	μήν
ποιμέν-ε	μῆν-ε
ποιμέν-οιν	μηνοῖν
ποιμέν-ες	μῆν-ες
ποιμέν-ων	μην-ῶν
ποιμέσι [for ποιμέ(ν)-σι]	μησί [for μη(ν)-σί]
ποιμέν-ας	μῆν-ας

	leō, *lion*. (*leōn-*)	ὁ ἡγεμών, *leader*. (ἡγεμον-)	ὁ δαίμων, *divinity*. (δαιμον-)
N.	*leō*	ἡγεμών	δαίμων
G.	*leōn-is*	ἡγεμόν-ος	δαίμον-ος
D.	*leōn-ī*	ἡγεμόν-ι	δαίμον-ι
A.	*leōn-em*	ἡγεμόν-α	δαίμον-α
V.	*leō*	ἡγεμών	δαῖμον
Ab.	*leōn-e*	ἡγεμόν-ε	δαίμον-ε
N.	*leōn-ēs*	ἡγεμόν-οιν	δαιμόν-οιν
G.	*leōn-um*	ἡγεμόν-ες	δαίμον-ες
D.	*leōn-ibus*	ἡγεμόν-ων	δαιμόν-ων
A.	*leōn-ēs*	ἡγεμόσι	δαίμοσι
V.	*leōn-ēs*	[for ἡγεμό(ν)-σι]	[for δαίμο(ν)-σι]
Ab.	*leōn-ibus*	ἡγεμόν-ας	δαίμον-ας

NOTE. — (*a*) Stems in ορ-, e.g., ῥητορ-, have ω in the nom. sing. and the stem in the voc. sing., like δαίμων.

(*b*) Stems in ν- and ρ- reject the case-ending -ς in the nom. sing. and lengthen a preceding ε to η, ο to ω; cf. 44, N. *c* and *d*.

(*c*) The voc. sing. of masc. and fem. nouns of the 3d declension is regularly the mere stem.

(*d*) But many words have the voc. sing. like the nom., thus:

(1) Oxytone stems ending in a liquid.

(2) Stems ending in a mute (cf. 41, 42, 44), except stems in ιδ-, cf. ἐλπι(δ)- 44, and barytone stems in ντ-, cf. λεον(τ)- 44; these drop the final δ and τ.

(*e*) Before σ, ν is dropped, cf. 44, N. *d*.

46. Syncopated Stems in ερ- (Lat. er-). —

	pater, *father*. (*pater-*)		ὁ πατήρ, *father*. (πατερ-)	ἡ μήτηρ, *mother*. (μητερ-)	ὁ ἀνήρ, *man*. (ἀνερ-)
N.	*pater*	N.	**πατήρ**	**μήτηρ**	**ἀνήρ**
G.	*patr-is*	G.	**πατρ-ός** [for πατ(έ)ρ-ος]	**μητρ-ός** [for μητ(έ)ρ-ος]	**ἀνδρ-ός** (for ἀνέρ-ος)
D.	*patr-ī*	D.	**πατρ-ί** [for πατ(έ)ρ-ι]	**μητρ-ί** [for μητ(έ)ρ-ι]	**ἀνδρ-ί** (for ἀνέρ-ι)
A.	*patr-em*	A.	**πατέρ-α**	**μητέρ-α**	**ἄνδρ-α** (for ἀνέρ-α)
V.	*pater*	V.	**πάτερ**	**μῆτερ**	**ἄνερ**
Ab.	*patr-e*				
		N.A.V.	**πατέρ-ε**	**μητέρ-ε**	**ἄνδρ-ε** (for ἀνέρ-ε)
		G.D.	**πατέρ-οιν**	**μητέρ-οιν**	**ἀνδρ-οῖν** (for ἀνέρ-οιν)
N.	*patr-ēs*	N.V.	**πατέρ-ες**	**μητέρ-ες**	**ἄνδρ-ες** (for ἀνέρ-ες)
G.	*patr-ium*	G.	**πατέρ-ων**	**μητέρ-ων**	**ἀνδρ-ῶν** (for ἀνέρ-ων)
D.	*patr-ibus*	D.	**πατρά-σι** [for πατέρ-σι]	**μητράσι** [for μητέρ-σι]	**ἀνδράσι** (for ἀνέρ-σι)
A.	*patr-ēs*	A.	**πατέρ-ας**	**μητέρ-ας**	**ἄνδρ-ας** (for ἀνέρ-ας)
V.	*patr-ēs*				
Ab.	*patr-ibus*				

NOTE. — (*a*) πατήρ and μήτηρ drop ε of the stem in the gen. and dat. sing. and accent the case ending (cf. Lat. *patris*, *patrī*); elsewhere ε is retained and accented, except in the voc. sing. where the accent is irregularly thrown back to the first syllable. In the dat. plur. έρ becomes ρά.

(*b*) ἀνήρ loses ε in all cases where ερ comes before a vowel and inserts δ between ν and ρ; otherwise it follows πατήρ.

47. Stems in εσ- (Lat. s-). —

Cf. 45, *d*. Words like *corpus* may have had the stem-ending *s* changed to *r* between two vowels, thus: *corporis* (for *corpos-is*: cf. *flōs*, *flōris*, etc.).

	τὸ εὖρος, *width*. (εὐρεσ-)		ὁ Σωκράτης. (Σωκρατεσ-)
N.A.V.	**εὖρος**	N.	**Σωκράτης**
G.	**εὔρους** [for εὔρε(σ)-ος]	G.	**Σωκράτους** (-εσ-ος)
D.	**εὔρει** [for εὔρε(σ)-ι]	D.	**Σωκράτει** (-εσ-ι)
N.A.V.	**εὔρη** [for εὔρε(σ)-ε]	A.	**Σωκράτη** (-εσ-α)
G.D.	**εὐροῖν** [for εὐρέ(σ)-οιν]	V.	**Σώκρατες**
N.A.V.	**εὔρη** [for εὔρε(σ)-α]		
G.	**εὐρῶν** [for εὐρέ(σ)-ων]		
D.	**εὔρεσι**		

NOTE. — (*a*) Neuter stems in εσ- have ος in the nom. sing.

(*b*) Before all case-endings σ is dropped and the vowels which come together are contracted.

(*c*) When contraction occurs, an open before a close vowel forms a diphthong with it, ε-ι = ει.

(*d*) ε-ο give ου; ε-ε generally give ει, but irregularly in the dual of stems in εσ- give η.

(*e*) When an *a* and an *e*-sound come together, the first in order absorbs the the second and becomes long; ε-α = η, α-ε = ᾱ.

(*f*) ε and ο are often absorbed in some diphthongs without any change, thus: έ-ων = ῶν, έ-οιν = οῖν.

(*g*) Masculines in εσ-, in the nom. sing., reject the case-ending -ς and lengthen ε to η (cf. masc. and fem. stems in ν-, ρ-, οντ-).

(*h*) Words like Σωκράτης have recessive accent in the voc. sing. (cf. πατήρ, ἀδελφός) and form an irregular accusative in -ην as if they belonged to the first declension.

48. Stems in ι- and υ- (Lat. i- and u-). —

	turris, *tower*. (*turri-*)	*manus*, *hand*. (*manu-*)		ἡ πόλις, *city*. (πολι-)	ὁ ἰχθῦς, *fish*. (ἰχθυ-)
N.	*turris*	*manus*	N.	**πόλι-ς**	**ἰχθύ-ς**
G.	*turris*	*manūs* (for *u-is*)	G.	**πόλε-ως**	**ἰχθύ-ος**
D.	*turrī*	*manuī*	D.	**πόλει** (for πόλε-ι)	**ἰχθύ-ϊ**
A.	*turrim*, -em	*manum*	A.	**πόλι-ν**	**ἰχθῦ-ν**
V.	*turris*	*manus*	V.	**πόλι**	**ἰχθῦ**
Ab.	*turrī*, -e	*manū*			

			N.A.V.	πόλε-ε	ἰχθύ-ε
			G.D.	πολέ-οιν	ἰχθύ-οιν
N.	*turrēs*	*manūs*	N.V.	πόλεις (for *πόλε-ες*)	ἰχθύ-ες
G.	*turr*ium	*man*uum	G.	πόλε-ων	ἰχθύ-ων
D.	*turr*ibus	*man*ibus	D.	πόλε-σι	ἰχθύ-σι
A.	*turrēs*, -īs	*manūs*	A.	πόλεις	ἰχθῦς (for *ἰχθύ-ας*)
V.	*turrēs*	*manūs*			
Ab.	*turr*ibus	*man*ibus			

Note. — (*a*) Final ι or υ of the stem always appears in the nom., acc., and voc. sing.

(*b*) In πόλις, in the other cases, ε is inserted before ι, and then ι is dropped, thus: πολε(ι)-ως, πολε(ι)-ες, etc. The acc. plur. is irregularly like the nom. Contraction takes place in the dat. sing. and nom. plur. after ι is dropped, ε-ε regularly forming ει (cf. 47, n. *d*).

(*c*) The gen. sing. of πόλις and of some υ-stems has the ending -ως for -ος, which does not, however, affect the accent; the gen. plu. follows the gen. sing. in accent.

49. Adjectives of the Vowel Declension. — In both Latin and Greek the masculine and neuter follow the second declension, and the feminine the first declension.

bonus, good.				*ἀγαθός, good.*			
N.	*bonus*	*bona*	*bonum*	N.	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
G.	*bonī*	*bonae*	*bonī*	G.	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ
D.	*bonō*	*bonae*	*bonō*	D.	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ
A.	*bonum*	*bonam*	*bonum*	A.	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν
V.	*bone*	*bona*	*bonum*	V.	ἀγαθέ	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
Ab.	*bonō*	*bonā*	*bonō*				
				N.A.V.	ἀγαθώ	ἀγαθά	ἀγαθώ
				G.D.	ἀγαθοῖν	ἀγαθαῖν	ἀγαθοῖν
N.	*bonī*	*bonae*	*bona*	N.	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά
G.	*bonōrum*	*bonārum*	*bonōrum*	G.	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν
D.	*bonīs*	*bonīs*	*bonīs*	D.	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς
A.	*bonōs*	*bonās*	*bona*	A.	ἀγαθούς	ἀγαθάς	ἀγαθά
V.	*bonī*	*bonae*	*bona*	V.	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά
Ab.	*bonīs*	*bonīs*	*bonīs*				

	amīcus, friendly.		
N.	*amīcus*	*amīca*	*amīcum*
G.	*amīcī*	*amīcae*	*amīcī*
D.	*amīcō*	*amīcae*	*amīcō*
A.	*amīcum*	*amīcum*	*amīcum*
V.	*amīce*	*amīca*	*amīcum*
Ab.	*amīcō*	*amīcā*	*amīcō*
N.	*amīcī*	*amīcae*	*amīca*
G.	*amīcōrum*	*amīcārum*	*amīcōrum*
D.	*amīcīs*	*amīcīs*	*amīcīs*
A.	*amīcōs*	*amīcās*	*amīca*
V.	*amīcī*	*amīcae*	*amīca*
Ab.	*amīcīs*	*amīcīs*	*amīcīs*

	φίλιος, friendly.		
N.	φίλιος	φιλίᾱ	φίλιον
G.	φιλίου	φιλίᾱς	φιλίου
D.	φιλίῳ	φιλίᾳ	φιλίῳ
A.	φίλιον	φιλίᾱν	φίλιον
V.	φίλιε	φιλίᾱ	φίλιον
N.A.V.	φιλίω	φιλίᾱ	φιλίω
G.D.	φιλίοιν	φιλίαιν	φιλίοιν
N.	φίλιοι	φίλιαι	φίλια
G.	φιλίων	φιλίων	φιλίων
D.	φιλίοις	φιλίαις	φιλίοις
A.	φιλίους	φιλίᾱς	φίλια
V.	φίλιοι	φίλιαι	φίλια

Note. — (*a*) The feminine in Greek, in the nom. and gen. plu., follows the masculine: *φίλιαι*, not *φιλίαι*; *φιλίων*, not *φιλιῶν*.

(*b*) Many adjectives of this declension have the masc. and fem. alike; cf. *trīstis, trīste* (3d decl. in Latin).

(*c*) Adjectives in *-εος* and *-οος* suffer contraction, cf. stems in *αᾱ-* and *εᾱ-* of the first declension, thus: —

50. Contract Adjectives. —

N.	(*χρύσεος*)	χρῡσοῦς	(*χρῡσέᾱ*)	χρῡσῆ	(*χρύσεον*)	χρῡσοῦν
G.	(*χρῡσέου*)	χρῡσοῦ	like *συκῆ*.	χρῡσῆς	like masc.	χρῡσοῦ
D.	(*χρῡσέῳ*)	χρῡσῷ		χρῡσῇ		χρῡσῷ
A.	(*χρύσεον*)	χρῡσοῦν		χρῡσῆν	(*χρύσεον*)	χρῡσοῦν
V.	(*χρύσεος*)	χρῡσοῦς		χρῡσῆ	(*χρύσεον*)	χρῡσοῦν
N.A.V.	(*χρῡσέω*)	χρῡσώ		χρῡσᾶ		χρῡσώ
G.D.	(*χρῡσέοιν*)	χρῡσοῖν		χρῡσαῖν		χρῡσοῖν
N.V.	(*χρύσεοι*)	χρῡσοῖ		χρῡσαῖ	*χρύσεᾰ*	χρῡσᾶ
G.	(*χρῡσέων*)	χρῡσῶν		χρῡσῶν		χρῡσῶν
D.	(*χρῡσέοις*)	χρῡσοῖς		χρῡσαῖς		χρῡσοῖς
A.	(*χρῡσέους*)	χρῡσοῦς		χρῡσᾶς		χρῡσᾶ

Note. — (*a*) The voc. sing. masc. is like the nominative.

(*b*) Adjectives of material in *-εος* accent their contract syllable, as if from *χρῡσέος*, cf. 36, N. *a*.

(*c*) All cases are perispomenon except the nom. dual masc. and neut., which irregularly have the acute, cf. 36, N. *b*.

(*d*) Adjectives in *-ρεος* contract in the fem. like *μνᾶ*, cf. 36.

(*e*) Adjectives in *-οος* have contract forms exactly like those of *χρῡσοῦς*, since **οο** and **εο** both contract to **ου**, cf. 47, N. *d*.

51. Adjectives of the Third Declension. —

In Latin, adjectives of this declension (consonant and *i*-stems) may be divided into three classes: (1) those which have a different form for each gender in the nominative singular, (2) those which have the masculine and feminine alike, and (3) those which have but one form: (1) *ācer, ācris, ācre,* (2) *trīstis, trīste; trīstior, trīstius,* (3) *audāx, fēlīx, amāns, vetus, memor,* etc. They are inflected like nouns.

In Greek, adjectives may be classified according to their stem-endings, like nouns of the consonant declension. The feminine, when unlike the masculine, follows the first declension; some adjectives are of three endings, some are of two.

52. Stems in εσ-. — These have two endings: —

Sing.	N.	**εὐγενής**, *well-born.*		**εὐγενές**
	G.		(εὐγενέ-ος) **εὐγενοῦς**	
	D.		(εὐγενέ-ϊ) **εὐγενεῖ**	
	A.		(εὐγενέ-α) **εὐγενῆ**	**εὐγενές**
	V.		**εὐγενές**	
Dual.	N.A.V.		(εὐγενέ-ε) **εὐγενῆ**	
	G.D.		(εὐγενέ-οιν) **εὐγενοῖν**	
Plu.	N.	(εὐγενέ-ες) **εὐγενεῖς**		(εὐγενέ-α) **εὐγενῆ**
	G.		(εὐγενέ-ων) **εὐγενῶν**	
	D.		**εὐγενέσι**	
	A.	**εὐγενεῖς**		(εὐγενέ-α) **εὐγενῆ**

Remark. — For contraction and accent see εὖρος and Notes (47).

53. Stems in ν-. —

N.	**εὐδαίμων**,[1] *fortunate.*		**εὔδαιμον**	**εὐδαίμον-ες**		**εὐδαίμον-α**
G.		**εὐδαίμον-ος**			**εὐδαιμόν-ων**	
D.		**εὐδαίμον-ι**			**εὐδαίμοσι**	
A.	**εὐδαίμον-α**		**εὔδαιμον**	**εὐδαίμον-ας**		**εὐδαίμον-α**
V.		**εὔδαιμον**				
N.A.V.		**εὐδαίμον-ε**				
G.D.		**εὐδαιμόν-οιν**				

[1] Cf. 45, δαίμων.

54. Comparative Stems in ον- (cf. Lat. or-). —

	trīstior, sadder.			*ἡδίων, sweeter.*		
N.	*trīstior*	*trīstius*	N.	**ἡδίων**		**ἥδῖον**
G.	*trīstiōr-is*	*trīstiōr-is*	G.		**ἡδίον-ος**	
D.	*trīstiōr-ī*	*trīstiōr-ī*	D.		**ἡδίον-ι**	
A.	*trīstiōr-em*	*trīstius*	A.	**ἡδίον-α** or **ἡδίω**		**ἥδῖον**
V.	*trīstior*	*trīstius*	V.		**ἥδῖον**	
Ab.	*trīstiōr-e(ī)*	*trīstiōr-e(ī)*				
			N.A.V.		**ἡδίονε**	
			G.D.		**ἡδῑόνοιν**	
N.	*trīstiōr-ēs*	*trīstiōr-a*	N.V.	**ἡδίον-ες** or **ἡδίους**		**ἡδίον-α** or **ἡδίω**
G.	*trīstiōr-um*	*trīstiōr-um*	G.		**ἡδῑόν-ων**	
D.	*trīstiōr-ibus*	*trīstiōr-ibus*	D.		**ἡδίοσι**	
A.	*trīstiōr-ēs(īs)*	*trīstiōr-a*	A.	**ἡδίον-ας** or **ἡδίους**		**ἡδίον-α** or **ἡδίω**
V.	*trīstiōr-ēs*	*trīstiōr-a*				
Ab.	*trīstiōr-ibus*	*trīstiōr-ibus*				

NOTE. — μείζων (for μεγίων), *greater*, is declined in the same way.

55. Participle-Stems in ντ- (Latin nt-). —

	amāns, loving.			*λΰσᾱς, having loosed.*		
N.	*amāns*	*amāns*	N.	**λΰσᾱς**	**λΰσᾱσα**	**λῦσαν**
G.	*amant-is*	*amant-is*	G.	**λΰσαντ-ος**	**λῡσᾱ́σης**	**λΰσαντ-ος**
D.	*amant-ī*	*amant-ī*	D.	**λΰσαντ-ι**	**λῡσᾱ́σῃ**	**λΰσαντ-ι**
A.	*amant-em*	*amāns*	A.	**λΰσαντ-α**	**λΰσᾱσαν**	**λῦσαν**
V.	*amāns*	*amāns*	V.	**λΰσᾱς**	**λΰσᾱσα**	**λῦσαν**
Ab.	*amant-e(ī)*	*amant-e(ī)*				
			N.A.V.	**λΰσαντ-ε**	**λῡσᾱ́σᾱ**	**λΰσαντ-ε**
			G.D.	**λῡσάντ-οιν**	**λῡσᾱ́σαιν**	**λῡσάντ-οιν**
N.	*amant-ēs*	*amant-ia*	N.V.	**λΰσαντ-ες**	**λΰσᾱσαι**	**λΰσαντ-α**
G.	*amant-ium*	*amant-ium*	G.	**λῡσάντ-ων**	**λῡσᾱσῶν**	**λῡσάντ-ων**
D.	*amant-ibus*	*amant-ibus*	D.	**λΰσᾱσι**	**λῡσᾱ́σαις**	**λΰσᾱσι**
A.	*amant-ēs(īs)*	*amant-ia*	A.	**λΰσαντ-ας**	**λῡσᾱ́σᾱς**	**λΰσαντ-α**
V.	*amant-ēs*	*amant-ia*				
Ab.	*amant-ibus*	*amant-ibus*				

NOTE. — (*a*) In λΰσᾱς [for λΰσα(ντ)ς] and λΰσᾱσι [for λΰσα(ντ)σι] ντ of the stem has been dropped and the preceding vowel has been lengthened in compensation, cf. 44, N. *d*. In like manner *amāns* is for *aman(t)s*.

(*b*) The fem. λΰσᾱσα is formed from (λῡσαντ-ια), ντ with ι becoming νσ (λῡσανσα); ν is then dropped (λῡσασα) and the preceding vowel lengthened, giving λΰσᾱσα, which is inflected according to the α-declension; the gen. plu., unlike adjectives, does not follow the masc. in accent.

(*c*) Like λΰσᾱς is declined πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, *all*, except that the voc. sing. masc. is **πᾶν** and **ᾰ** in **πᾶν** is irregularly long.

56. Other Participle-Stems in ντ-. —

	ἔχων (ἐχοντ-), having.			*λυθείς (λυθεντ-), loosed.*		
N.	ἔχων	ἔχουσα	ἔχον	λυθείς	λυθεῖσα	λυθέν
G.	ἔχοντ-ος	ἐχούσης	ἔχοντ-ος	λυθέντ-ος	λυθείσης	λυθέντ-ος
D.	ἔχοντ-ι	ἐχούσῃ	ἔχοντ-ι	λυθέντ-ι	λυθείσῃ	λυθέντ-ι
A.	ἔχοντ-α	ἔχουσαν	ἔχον	λυθέντ-α	λυθεῖσαν	λυθέν
V.	ἔχων	ἔχουσα	ἔχον	λυθείς	λυθεῖσα	λυθέν
N.A.V.	ἔχοντ-ε	ἐχούσᾱ	ἔχοντ-ε	λυθέντ-ε	λυθείσᾱ	λυθέντ-ε
G.D.	ἐχόντ-οιν	ἐχούσαιν	ἐχόντ-οιν	λυθέντ-οιν	λυθείσαιν	λυθέντ-οιν
N.	ἔχοντ-ες	ἔχουσαι	ἔχοντ-α	λυθέντ-ες	λυθεῖσαι	λυθέντ-α
G.	ἐχόντ-ων	ἐχουσῶν	ἐχόντ-ων	λυθέντ-ων	λυθεισῶν	λυθέντ-ων
D.	ἔχουσι	ἐχούσαις	ἔχουσι	λυθεῖσι	λυθείσαις	λυθεῖσι
A.	ἔχοντ-ας	ἐχούσᾱς	ἔχοντ-α	λυθέντ-ας	λυθείσᾱς	λυθέντ-α

Note. — (*a*) For the formation of the nom. sing. and dat. plu. masc. of *ἔχων* cf. *λέων*, 44 and Notes.

(*b*) The fem. *ἔχουσα* is formed from [*ἐχο(ντ-ι)α*], [*ἐχο(ν)σα*], cf. 55, N. *b*.

(*c*) *λυθείς* is from *λυθε(ντ)-ς*; *ντ* is dropped and *ε* lengthened to *ει*.

(*d*) *λυθεῖσα* is from [*λυθε(ντ-ι)α*], [*λυθε(ν)σα*]; cf. N. *b* and 55, N. *b*.

(*e*) The dat. plu. *λυθεῖσι* is for *λυθε(ντ)-σι*, cf. N. *d* and *λέουσι*.

(*f*) Many participle-stems in *ντ-* accent the ultima in inflection; otherwise they are inflected like *ἔχων*: e.g., *ὤν, being; ἐλθών, having gone.*

57. Participles in -άων, -έων, and -όων. — These are contracted; the uncontracted forms are like those of *ἔχων*: —

	τῑμῶν, honoring.			*φιλῶν, loving.*		
	τῑμ(ά-ω)ν	*τῑμ(άου)σα*	*τῑμ(άο)ν*	*φιλ(έω)ν*	*φιλ(έου)σα*	*φιλ(έο)ν*
N. contr.	τῑμῶν	τῑμῶσα	τῑμῶν	φιλῶν	φιλοῦσα	φιλοῦν
G.	τῑμῶντος	τῑμώσης	τῑμῶντος	φιλοῦντος	φιλούσης	φιλοῦντος
D.	τῑμῶντι	τῑμώσῃ	τῑμῶντι	φιλοῦντι	φιλούσῃ	φιλοῦντι
A.	τῑμῶντα	τῑμῶσαν	τῑμῶν	φιλοῦντα	φιλοῦσαν	φιλοῦν
V.	τῑμῶν	τῑμῶσα	τῑμῶν	φιλῶν	φιλοῦσα	φιλοῦν
N.A.V.	τῑμῶντε	τῑμώσᾱ	τῑμῶντε	φιλοῦντε	φιλούσᾱ	φιλοῦντε
G.D.	τῑμώντοιν	τῑμώσαιν	τῑμώντοιν	φιλούντοιν	φιλούσαιν	φιλούντοιν
N.V.	τῑμῶντες	τῑμῶσαι	τῑμῶντα	φιλοῦντες	φιλοῦσαι	φιλοῦντα
G.	τῑμώντων	τῑμωσῶν	τῑμώντων	φιλούντων	φιλουσῶν	φιλούντων
D.	τῑμῶσι	τῑμώσαις	τῑμῶσι	φιλοῦσι	φιλούσαις	φιλοῦσι
A.	τῑμῶντας	τῑμώσᾱς	τιμῶντα	φιλοῦντας	φιλούσᾱς	φιλοῦντα

Remark. — (*δηλόων*) *δηλῶν, showing*, is contracted exactly like *φιλῶν*.

NOTE. — (*a*) An *o*-sound absorbs an *a*- or an *e*-sound and becomes ω, but ε-ο (also ο-ε) and ο-ο give ου.

(*b*) ε is absorbed in ου.

(*c*) Accented contract penults and antepenults follow the general laws for accent; for a contract ultima, see 36, N. *b*.

58. Comparison of Adjectives. —

In Latin, adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the *stem of the positive* the following endings: —

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
ior	**ior**	**ius**	**issimus**	**issima**	**issimum**

In Greek, one method of comparing adjectives is by adding to the *root* of the word the following endings: —

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
ῑων	**ῑων**	**ῑον**	**ιστος**	**ιστη**	**ιστον**

REMARK. — For the declension of adjectives of this sort, cf. 54; superlatives are declined like adjectives of the vowel-declension.

But the most common method of comparison in Greek consists in adding to the *masculine stem of the positive* the following endings: —

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
τερος	**τερᾱ**	**τερον**	**τατος**	**τατη**	**τατον**

REMARK. — Comparatives and superlatives of this kind are declined according to the vowel-declension.

NOTE. — Some very common adjectives in both Latin and Greek are irregularly compared.

59. Cardinal Numbers. —

1.	*ūnus, ūna, ūnum*	**εἷς, μία, ἕν**
2.	*duo, duae, duo*	**δύο**
3.	*trēs, tria*	**τρεῖς, τρία**
4.	*quattuor*	**τέσσαρες, τέσσαρα**
5.	*quīnque*	**πέντε**
6.	*sex*	**ἕξ**
7.	*septem*	**ἑπτά**
8.	*octo*	**ὀκτώ**
9.	*novem*	**ἐννέα**

10.	*decem*	δέκα
11.	*ūndecim*	ἕνδεκα
12.	*duodecim*	δώδεκα
13.	*tredecim*	τρεισκαίδεκα
20.	*vīgintī*	εἴκοσι(ν)
30.	*trīgintā*	τριάκοντα
40.	*quadrāgintā*	τεσσαράκοντα
50.	*quīnquāgintā*	πεντήκοντα
100.	*centum*	ἑκατόν
200.	*ducentī, -ae, -a*	διᾱκόσιοι, -αι, -α
300.	*trecentī*	τριᾱκόσιοι, -αι, -α
400.	*quadringentī*	τετρακόσιοι, -αι, -α
1000.	*mīlle*	χίλιοι, -αι, -α
2000.	*duo mīlia*	δισχίλιοι, -αι, -α

Note.—In Latin, 1 to 3 are declinable; in Greek, 1 to 4. In Latin, 4 to 100 are indeclinable; in Greek, 5 to 199. In Latin, hundreds are declined like the plu. of *bonus;* in Greek, adjectives from 200 on are declined like the plural of φίλιος.

Specially declined are the following:—

N.	*ūnus*	*ūna*	*ūnum*	N.	εἷς	μία	ἕν
G.	*ūnīus*	*ūnīus*	*ūnīus*	G.	ἑνός	μιᾶς	ἑνός
D.	*ūnī*	*ūnī*	*ūnī*	D.	ἑνί	μιᾷ	ἑνί
	etc. (like *bonus*)			A.	ἕνα	μίαν	ἕν
N.	*duo*[1]	*duae*	*duo*				
G.	*duōrum*	*duārum*	*duōrum*	N.A.V.	δύο		
D.	*duōbus*	*duābus*	*duōbus*	G.D.	δυοῖν		
A.	*duōs, duo*	*duās*	*duo*				
Ab.	*duōbus*	*duābus*	*duōbus*				

N.	*trēs* M. & F.	*tria* N.	N.	τρεῖς	τρία
G.	*trium*	*trium*	G.	τριῶν	
D.	*tribus*	*tribus*	D.	τρισί	
A.	*trēs, trīs*	*tria*	A.	τρεῖς	τρία
V.	*trēs*	*tria*			
Ab.	*tribus*	*tribus*			

N.	τέσσαρες	τέσσαρα
G.	τεσσάρων	
D.	τέσσαρσι	
A.	τέσσαρες	τέσσαρα

Remark.—Instead of σσ in τέσσαρες, ττ is also used in all of the forms.

[1] *duo* is a remnant of the dual number found in the Greek δύο.

60. Personal Pronouns. —

N.	*ego, I.*	*tū, thou.*		N.	ἐγώ, *I.*	σύ, *thou.*	
G.	*meī*	*tuī*	*suī*	G.	ἐμοῦ, μοῦ	σοῦ	οὗ
D.	*mihi, mī*	*tibi*	*sibi*	D.	ἐμοί, μοί	σοί	οἷ
A.	*mē*	*tē*	*sē*	A.	ἐμέ, μέ	σέ	ἕ
V.		*tū*					
Ab.	*mē*	*tē*	*sē*				
				N.A.V.	νώ	σφώ	
				G.D.	νῷν	σφῷν	
N.	*nōs*	*vōs*		N.	ἡμεῖς	ὑμεῖς	σφεῖς
G.	*nostrūm* / *nostrī*	*vestrūm* / *vestrī*	*suī*	G.	ἡμῶν	ὑμῶν	σφῶν
D.	*nōbīs*	*vōbīs*	*sibi*	D.	ἡμῖν	ὑμῖν	σφίσι
A.	*nōs*	*vōs*	*sē*	A.	ἡμᾶς	ὑμᾶς	σφᾶς
V.		*vōs*					
Ab.	*nōbīs*	*vōbīs*	*sē*				

Note. — (*a*) *suī* and *οὗ* are most often used as reflexives, *of himself, herself, itself;* the nominative is wanting.

(*b*) The stems of the sing. (except the nominatives, which are differently formed) are: *ἐμε-* (Lat. *mē*), *σε* (*tē*), *ἑ* (*sē*). The stems of the dual are: *νω-* (Lat. *nō-s*), *σφω-*. The stems of the plural are: *ἡμε-*, *ὑμε-*, *σφε-*; *ε* is contracted with most of the endings.

(*c*) *μοῦ, μοί, μέ*; *σοῦ, σοί, σέ*; *οὗ, οἷ, ἕ* and *σφίσι* are enclitics (23), and lose their accent except when they are emphatic.

61. Intensive Pronoun. —

N. *ipse, self.*	*ipsa*	*ipsum*
G. *ipsīus*	*ipsīus*	*ipsīus*
D. *ipsī*	*ipsī*	*ipsī*
	(like *bonus*)	
N. *īdem, same.*	*eadem*	*idem*
G. *ējusdem*	*ējusdem*	*ējusdem*
D. *eīdem*	*eīdem*	*eīdem*
A. *eundem*	*eandem*	*idem*
	etc.	

(1) **αὐτός**, *self.* **αὐτή** **αὐτό**
αὐτοῦ **αὐτῆς** **αὐτοῦ**
etc., like *ἀγαθός* (49) except that the neut. sing. in the nom. and acc. does not take the case-ending **-ν**.

(2) Preceded by the article (63) (**ὁ αὐτός, ἡ αὐτή, τὸ αὐτό**) it means *same.*

(3) In the gen., dat., and acc. it serves as a personal pronoun of the 3d person, *him, her, it, them, οὗ* being reflexive (60, N. *a*).

Note. — (*a*) *ὁ αὐτός* becomes by *crasis* (mingling) *αὑτός, ἡ αὐτή = αὑτή, τὸ αὐτό = ταὐτό* or *ταὐτόν, τὰ αὐτά = ταὐτά.*

(*b*) ἄλλος, *other* (Lat. *alius*), is inflected like αὐτός.

(*c*) The reciprocal pronoun, meaning *each other*, is used only in the gen., dat., and acc. of the dual and plural. It is declined as follows: —

G.D.	ἀλλήλοιν	ἀλλήλαιν	ἀλλήλοιν
A.	ἀλλήλω	ἀλλήλᾱ	ἀλλήλω
G.	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων
D.	ἀλλήλοις	ἀλλήλαις	ἀλλήλοις
A.	ἀλλήλους	ἀλλήλᾱς	ἄλληλα

62. Reflexive Pronouns. — Besides the indirect reflexive οἷ (Lat. *suī*) the Greek language has: —

	myself.	*thyself.*	*himself, herself, itself.*
G.	ἐμαυτοῦ, -ῆς	σεαυτοῦ, -ῆς	ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς
D.	ἐμαυτῷ, -ῇ	σεαυτῷ, -ῇ	ἑαυτῷ, -ῇ
A.	ἐμαυτόν, -ήν	σεαυτόν, -ήν	ἑαυτόν, -ήν, -ό
	ourselves.	*yourselves.*	*themselves.*
G.	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ἑαυτῶν or σφῶν αὐτῶν
D.	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς	ἑαυτοῖς, -αῖς or σφίσιν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς
A.	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς, -ᾱ́ς	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς, -ᾱ́ς	ἑαυτούς, -ᾱ́ς, -ά or σφᾶς αὐτούς, -ᾱ́ς

Note. — (*a*) The reflexive pronouns are formed from the stems of the personal pronouns compounded with αὐτο-, thus: ἐμε + αὐτο, σε + αὐτο, ἑ + αὐτο, etc.; cf. 60, n. *b*.

(*b*) Like οὗ, these pronouns have no nominative; αὐτός in the nominative is used as a reflexive in all persons, cf. 61.

(*c*) In the plural both stems are declined separately, but the third person has also compounds from ἑ + αὐτο.

(*d*) σεαυτοῦ and ἑαυτοῦ are often contracted: σαυτοῦ, αὑτοῦ, etc.

63. Article. — The Latin language has neither definite nor indefinite article. The Greek has the definite article, *the*. Its stem (το-) is inflected in most of its forms like ἀγαθός: —

N.	ὁ	ἡ	τό					N.	οἱ	αἱ	τά
G.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	N.A.V.	τώ	τώ	τώ	G.	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
D.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ	G.D.	τοῖν	τοῖν	τοῖν	D.	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
A.	τόν	τήν	τό					A.	τούς	τᾱ́ς	τά

Note. — (*a*) ἡ, ὁ, οἱ, αἱ are proclitics (22, *a*).

(*b*) For the rare feminine forms τά and ταῖν, the masculine are commonly employed.

64. Demonstrative Pronouns. — There are three important demonstrative pronouns in Greek: —

ὅδε	ἥδε	τόδε,	*this* (one near by, Lat. *hīc*).
ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο,	*that* (one remote, Lat. *ille*).
ουτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο,	*this*, *that*.

ὅδε is formed from the article by adding the enclitic ending -δε. It is declined like the article (63) with -δε added to each form; the forms ὅδε, ἥδε, οἵδε, αἵδε, are accented.

ἐκεῖνος is declined exactly like αὐτός (61).

οὗτος follows the article with regard to the initial τ or rough breathing. It also takes αυ in the penult when the last syllable has an α-sound (α, η); but ου where the last syllable has an ο-sound (ο, ω, ου). It is declined thus: —

N.	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο
G.	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
D.	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
A.	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο
N.A.	τούτω	τούτω	τούτω
G.D.	τούτοιν	τούτοιν	τούτοιν
N.	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
G.	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
D.	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
A.	τούτους	ταύτᾱς	ταῦτα

65. The Relative Pronoun. —

N.	*quī, who*	*quae*	*quod*	N.	ὅς, *who*	ἥ	ὅ
G.	*cūjus*	*cūjus*	*cūjus*	G.	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ
D.	*cui*	*cui*	*cui*	D.	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ
A.	*quem*	*quam*	*quod*	A.	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ
Ab.	*quō*	*quā*	*quō*				
				N.A.	ὥ	ὥ	ὥ
				G.D.	οἷν	οἷν	οἷν
N.	*quī*	*quae*	*quae*	N.	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
G.	*quōrum*	*quārum*	*quōrum*	G.	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
D.	*quibus*	*quibus*	*quibus*	D.	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
A.	*quōs*	*quās*	*quae*	A.	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ
Ab.	*quibus*	*quibus*	*quibus*				

NOTE. — The Greek relative is declined like αὐτός; the masculine forms are used instead of the feminine in the dual.

Remark. — ὅσος and ὁπόσος, relatives of quantity or number, meaning *of which quantity* or *number, as much as, as many as, as great as*, are declined like ἀγαθός.

οἷος and ὁποῖος, relatives of quality, meaning *of which sort, (such) as*, are declined like φίλιος.

The corresponding demonstratives, τοσοῦτος and τοιοῦτος, have forms with and without -ν in the nominative and accusative neuter singular.

66. Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns. —

INTERROGATIVE.
quis, who, which, what?

N.	*quis*	*quae*	*quid*
G.	*cūjus*	*cūjus*	*cūjus*
D.	*cui*	*cui*	*cui*
A.	*quem*	*quam*	*quid*
Ab.	*quō*	*quā*	*quō*
N.	*quī*	*quae*	*quae*
G.	*quōrum*	*quārum*	*quōrum*
D.	*quibus*	*quibus*	*quibus*
A.	*quōs*	*quās*	*quae*
Ab.	*quibus*	*quibus*	*quibus*

The indefinite *quis* is declined like the interrogative.

INTERROGATIVE.

	M. & F.		N.
N.	τίς		τί
G.		τίνος, τοῦ	
D.		τίνι, τῷ	
A.	τίνα		τί
N.A.		τίνε	
G.D.		τίνοιν	
N.	τίνες		τίνα
G.		τίνων	
D.		τίσι	
A.	τίνας		τίνα

INDEFINITE.

	M. & F.		N.
N.	τὶς		τὶ
G.		τινός, τοῦ	
D.		τινί, τῷ	
A.	τινά		τὶ
N.A.		τινέ	
G.D.		τινοῖν	
N.	τινές		τινά
G.		τινῶν	
D.		τισί	
A.	τινάς		τινά

Note. — (*a*) In Latin the interrogative and indefinite *quis* are alike in form and declension.

(*b*) In Greek the interrogative τίς never changes the acute to the grave, and accents the first syllable; the indefinite τὶς is enclitic (23, *b*), and when accented takes the accent on the ultima.

67. Indefinite-Relative Pronoun. —

quisquis, quīcumque, whoever, etc.

Both parts of *quisquis* are declined, but the feminine is wanting in classic Latin; *quīcumque* is declined like the simple *quī*.

N.	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅ τι
G.	οὗτινος	ἧστινος	οὗτινος
	or		or
	ὅτου		ὅτου
D.	ᾧτινι	ᾗτινι	ᾧτινι
	or		or
	ὅτῳ		ὅτῳ
A.	ὅντινα	ἥντινα	ὅ τι
N.A.V.	ὥτινε	ὥτινε	ὥτινε
G.D.	οἷντινοιν	οἷντινοιν	οἷντινοιν
N.	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα
G.	ὧντινων	ὧντινων	ὧντινων
	or		or
	ὅτων		ὅτων
D.	οἷστισι	αἷστισι	οἷστισι
	or		or
	ὅτοις		ὅτοις
A.	οὕστινας	ἅστινας	ἅτινα

Note. — (*a*) The indefinite relative ὅστις is formed by combining the relative ὅς with the indefinite τις; both words are declined, and the accent is that of the relative.

(*b*) In the genitive and dative, masculine and neuter, shorter forms, ὅτου, ὅτων, ὅτοις, etc., are often used.

Verbs.

68. Voices. — The Greek verb has three voices, *active*, *middle*, and *passive*. The active and passive correspond in meaning to the Latin active and passive. The middle voice represents the subject as acting (*a*) *on himself*, (*b*) *for himself*, or (*c*) in a manner but slightly different from the active voice.

Remark. — Deponent verbs are those that have no active voice, but the middle or passive forms have an active sense.

69. Modes. — Each voice has six modes, viz.: four finite modes, the *indicative*, *subjunctive*, *optative*, and *imperative*; and the *infinitive* and *participle*, which are essentially nouns. How many modes are there in Latin? What are they?

70. Tenses. — The tenses of the *indicative* mode are seven: —

the *present* and *imperfect* (for continued action);
the *aorist* and *future* (for indefinite action);
the *perfect, pluperfect,* and *future perfect* (for completed action).

The tenses of the other modes are three: —

the *present* (for continued action);
the *aorist* (for indefinite action);
the *perfect* (for completed action).

The *optative, infinitive,* and *participle* have also the *future* and *future perfect.*

71. Tense-Systems. — The different forms of the Greek verb may be arranged into the following *systems* of tenses: —

1. The *present* system, including the *present* and *imperfect.*
2. The *future* system, including the *future active* and *middle.*
3. The *first aorist* system, including the 1st *aorist active* and *middle.*
4. The *second aorist* system, including the 2d *aorist active* and *middle.*
5. The *first perfect* system, including the 1st *perf.* and 1st *plup. active.*
6. The *second perfect* system, including the 2d *perf.* and 2d *plup. active.*
7. The *perfect middle* system, including the *perf., plup.,* and *fut. perf. mid.*
8. The *first passive* system, including the 1st *aorist* and 1st *fut. pass.*
9. The *second passive* system, including the 2d *aorist* and 2d *fut. pass.*

72. Stems, Theme, Root. — Each tense-system has a separate stem called a *tense-stem.* It is made from a common *verb-stem* (*theme*), or from a shorter form known as a *root,* by the addition of suffixes and prefixes.

73. The Formative Elements of the Greek Verb. — These are the various additions by which the different forms of the verb are made from the *theme.* They are: —

1. The *augment.*
2. The *reduplication.*
3. The *tense* and *mode suffixes.*
4. The *endings.*

Remark. — The suffixes and the reduplication *form* the tense-stems; the endings and the augment *inflect* them. Which of these formative elements are used in Latin?

74. Synopsis of the Verb (cf. amo). —

I. Active Voice, arranged according to formation from the different tense-stems: —

MODE.	*amō, amāre, love*		*amāvī*		*amātum*	
Indic.	Pres. Imp. Fut.	*amō* *amābam* *amābō*	Perf. Plup. Fut. Perf.	*amāvī* *amāveram* *amāverō*		
Subj.	Pres. Imp.	*amem* *amārem*	Perf. Plup.	*amāverim* *amāvissem*		
Imv.	Pres. Fut.	*amā* *amātō*				
Infin.	Pres.	*amāre*	Perf.	*amāvisse*	Fut.	*amātūrus esse*
Partc.	Pres.	*amāns*			Fut.	*amātūrus*
	Gerund	*amandī*			Supine	*amātum*

	λύω, *loose*	λῡ́σω	ἔλῡσα	λέλυκα
MODE.	PRES. AND IMP.	FUTURE.	AORIST.	PERF. AND PLUP.
Ind.	{ λῡ́ω { ἔλῡον	λῡ́σω	ἔλῡσα	λέλυκα ἐλελύκη or -κειν
Subj.	λῡ́ω		λῡ́σω	λελύκω
Opt.	λῡ́οιμι	λῡ́σοιμι	λῡ́σαιμι	λελύκοιμι
Imv.	λῦε		λῦσον	
Infin.	λῡ́ειν	λῡ́σειν	λῦσαι	λελυκέναι
Partc.	λῡ́ων	λῡ́σων	λῡ́σᾱς	λελυκώς

II. Passive and Middle.

Passive.

MODE.	*amor, amārī*	*amātus sum*
Ind.	Pres. *amor.* Imp. *amābar* Fut. *amābor*	Perf. *amātus sum* Plup. *amātus eram* Fut. Perf. *amātus erō*
Subj.	Pres. *amer* Imp. *amārer*	Perf. *amātus sim* Plup. *amātus essem*
Imv.	Pres. *amāre* Fut. *amātor*	
Infin.	Pres. *amārī*	Perf. *amātus esse* Fut. *amātum īrī*
Partc.	Ger. *amandus*	Perf. *amātus*

Middle.

	PRES. AND IMP.	FUTURE.	AORIST.	PERF. AND PLUP.
Ind.	{ λῡ́ομαι { ἐλῡόμην	λῡ́σομαι	 ἐλῡσάμην	λέλυμαι ἐλελύμην
Subj.	λῡ́ωμαι		λῡ́σωμαι	λελυμένος ὦ
Opt.	λῡοίμην	λῡσοίμην	λῡσαίμην	λελυμένος εἴην
Imv.	λῡ́ου		λῦσαι	λέλυσο
Infin.	λῡ́εσθαι	λῡ́σεσθαι	λῡ́σασθαι	λελύσθαι
Partc.	λῡόμενος	λῡσόμενος	λῡσάμενος	λελυμένος

Passive.

Ind.	Like the Middle	λυθήσομαι	ἐλύθην	Perf. and Plup. like the Middle
Subj.			λυθῶ	
Opt.		λυθησοίμην	λυθείην	
Imv.			λύθητι	
Infin.		λυθήσεσθαι	λυθῆναι	
Partc.		λυθησόμενος	λυθείς	

Fut. Perf.: Ind. λελύσομαι, Opt. λελυσοίμην, Infin. λελύσεσθαι, Partc. λελυσόμενος.

75. The Principal Parts of a Greek verb are the first person singular indicative of every system used in it, thus of λῡ́ω, *loose*: **λῡ́ω, λῡ́σω, ἔλῡσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην.**

76. Present System Active (cf. *amo*).

MODE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
Indic.	1. *amō*	*amāba-m*	1. λῡ́ω	ἔ-λῡο-ν
	2. *amā-s*	*amābā-s*	2. λῡ́ει-ς	ἔ-λῡε-ς
	3. *ama-t*	*amāba-t*	3. λῡ́ει	ἔ-λῡε
			2. λῡ́ε-τον	ἐ-λῡ́ε-τον
			3. λῡ́ε-τον	ἐ-λῡέ-την
	1. *amā-mus*	*amābā-mus*	1. λῡ́ο-μεν	ἐ-λῡ́ο-μεν
	2. *amā-tis*	*amābā-tis*	2. λῡ́ε-τε	ἐ-λῡ́ε-τε
	3. *ama-nt*	*amāba-nt*	3. λῡ́ουσι (λῡ́ο-νσι)	ἔ-λῡο-ν
	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PRESENT.	
Subj.	1. *ame-m*	*amāre-m*	1. λῡ́ω	
	2. *amē-s*	*amārē-s*	2. λῡ́ῃ-ς	
	3. *ame-t*	*amāre-t*	3. λῡ́ῃ	
			2. λῡ́η-τον	
			3. λῡ́η-τον	
	1. *amē-mus*	*amārē-mus*	1. λῡ́ω-μεν	
	2. *amē-tis*	*amārē-tis*	2. λῡ́η-τε	
	3. *ame-nt*	*amāre-nt*	3. λῡ́ω-σι (λῡ́ω-νσι)	
Opt.			1. λῡ́οι-μι	
			2. λῡ́οις	
			3. λῡ́οι	
			2. λῡ́οι-τον	
			3. λῡοί-την	
			1. λῡ́οι-μεν	
			2. λῡ́οι-τε	
			3. λῡ́οιε-ν	
		FUTURE.		
Imv.	2. *amā*	2. *amā-tō*	2. λῦε	
		3. *amā-tō*	3. λῡέ-τω	
			2. λῡ́ε-τον	
			3. λῡέ-των	
	2. *amā-te*	2. *amā-tōte*	2. λῡ́ε-τε	
		3. *ama-nto*	3. λῡό-ντων or λῡέ-τωσαν	
Infin.	*amā-re*		λῡ́ειν	
Partc.	*amā-ns* *ama-nt-is*		λῡ́ων, λῡ́ουσα, λῦον λῡ́ο-ντ-ος, λῡούσης, etc.	

77. Present System Middle (Passive) (cf. *amor*).

MODE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
Ind.	1. *amo-r*	*amāba-r*	1. λῡ́ο-μαι	ἐ-λῡό-μην
	2. *amā-ris (re)*	*amābā-ris (re)*	2. λῡ́ει	ἐ-λῡ́ου
	3. *amā-tur*	*amābā-tur*	3. λῡ́ε-ται	ἐ-λῡ́ε-το
			2. λῡ́ε-σθον	ἐ-λῡ́ε-σθον
			3. λῡ́ε-σθον	ἐ-λῡέ-σθην
	1. *amā-mur*	*amābā-mur*	1. λῡό-μεθα	ἐ-λῡό-μεθα
	2. *amā-minī*	*amābā-minī*	2. λῡ́ε-σθε	ἐ-λῡ́ε-σθε
	3. *ama-ntur*	*amāba-ntur*	3. λῡ́ο-νται	ἐ-λῡ́ο-ντο
	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PRESENT.	
Subj.	1. *ame-r*	*amā-rer*	1. λῡ́ω-μαι	
	2. *amē-ris (re)*	*amārē-ris (re)*	2. λῡ́ῃ	
	3. *amē-tur*	*amārē-tur*	3. λῡ́η-ται	
			2. λῡ́η-σθον	
			3. λῡ́η-σθον	
	1. *amē-mur*	*amārē-mur*	1. λῡώ-μεθα	
	2. *amē-minī*	*amārē-minī*	2. λῡ́η-σθε	
	3. *ame-ntur*	*amāre-ntur*	3. λῡ́ω-νται	
Opt.			1. λῡοί-μην	
			2. λῡ́οι-ο	
			3. λῡ́οι-το	
			2. λῡ́οι-σθον	
			3. λῡοί-σθην	
			1. λῡοί-μεθα	
			2. λῡ́οι-σθε	
			3. λῡ́οι-ντο	
		FUTURE.		
Imv.	2. *amā-re*	2. *amā-tor*	2. λῡ́ου	
		3. *amā-tor*	3. λῡέ-σθω	
			2. λῡ́ε-σθον	
			3. λῡέ-σθων	
	2. *amā-minī*		2. λῡ́ε-σθε	
		3. *ama-ntor*	3. λῡέ-σθων or λῡέ-σθωσαν	
Infin.	*amā-rī*		λῡ́ε-σθαι	
Partc.			λῡόμενος, -μένη, -μενον	

78. FUTURE SYSTEM. **79.** FIRST AORIST SYSTEM.

MODE.	78. ACTIVE.	78. MIDDLE.	79. ACTIVE.	79. MIDDLE.
Ind.	1. λῡ́σω	λῡ́σο-μαι	1. ἔ-λῡσα	ἐ-λῡσά-μην
	2. λῡ́σεις	λῡ́σει	2. ἔ-λῡσα-ς	ἐ-λῡ́σω
	3. λῡ́σει	λῡ́σε-ται	3. ἔ-λῡσε	ἐ-λῡ́σα-το
	2. λῡ́σε-τον	λῡ́σε-σθον	2. ἐ-λῡ́σα-τον	ἐ-λῡ́σα-σθον
	3. λῡ́σε-τον	λῡ́σε-σθον	3. ἐ-λῡσά-την	ἐ-λῡσά-σθην
	1. λῡ́σο-μεν	λῡσό-μεθα	1. ἐ-λῡ́σα-μεν	ἐ-λῡσά-μεθα
	2. λῡ́σε-τε	λῡ́σε-σθε	2. ἐ-λῡ́σα-τε	ἐ-λῡ́σα-σθε
	3. λῡ́σου-σι (λῡ́σο-νσι)	λῡ́σο-νται	3. ἔ-λῡσα-ν	ἐ-λῡ́σα-ντο
Subj.			1. λῡ́σω	λῡ́σω-μαι
			2. λῡ́σῃ-ς	λῡ́σῃ
			3. λῡ́σῃ	λῡ́ση-ται
			2. λῡ́ση-τον	λῡ́ση-σθον
			3. λῡ́ση-τον	λῡ́ση-σθον
			1. λῡ́σω-μεν	λῡσώ-μεθα
			2. λῡ́ση-τε	λῡ́ση-σθε
			3. λῡ́σω-σι (λῡ́σω-νσι)	λῡ́σω-νται
Opt.	1. λῡ́σοι-μι	λῡσοί-μην	λῡ́σαι-μι	λῡσαί-μην
	2. λῡ́σοι-ς	λῡ́σοι-ο	λῡ́σαι-ς, -ειας	λῡ́σαι-ο
	3. λῡ́σοι	λῡ́σοι-το	λῡ́σαι, -ειε	λῡ́σαι-το
	2. λῡ́σοι-τον	λῡ́σοι-σθον	λῡ́σαι-τον	λῡ́σαι-σθον
	3. λῡσοί-την	λῡσοί-σθην	λῡσαί-την	λῡσαί-σθην
	1. λῡ́σοι-μεν	λῡσοί-μεθα	λῡ́σαι-μεν	λῡσαί-μεθα
	2. λῡ́σοι-τε	λῡ́σοι-σθε	λῡ́σαι-τε	λῡ́σαι-σθε
	3. λῡ́σοιε-ν	λῡ́σοι-ντο	λῡ́σαιε-ν or λῡ́σεια-ν	λῡ́σαι-ντο
Imv.			λῦσον	λῦσαι
			λῡσά-τω	λῡσά-σθω
			λῡ́σα-τον	λῡ́σα-σθον
			λῡσά-των	λῡσά-σθων
			λῡ́σα-τε	λῡ́σα-σθε
			λῡσά-ντων λῡσά-τωσαν	λῡσά-σθων or λῡσά-σθωσαν
Infin.	λῡ́σειν	λῡ́σε-σθαι	λῦσαι	λῡ́σασθαι
Partc.	λῡ́σων, -ουσα, -ον	λῡσόμενος, -η, -ον	λῡ́σᾱς, -σᾱσα, -σαν	λῡσάμενος, -η, -ον

Latin Future Ind., *amā-bō, -bis, -bit, -bimus, -bitis, -bunt.* For Future Imperative, see 77. Fut. Partc., *amātūrus, -a, -um.*

80. First Perfect System (cf. perf. of *amo*).

MODE.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Ind.	*amāv-ī*	*amāv-eram*	λέ-λυ-κα	ἐ-λε-λύ-κη, -ειν
	amāv-istī	*amāv-erās*	λέ-λυ-κα-ς	ἐ-λε-λύ-κη-ς, -εις
	amāv-it	*amāv-erat*	λέ-λυ-κε	ἐ-λε-λύ-κει
			λε-λύ-κα-τον	ἐ-λε-λύ-κει-τον
			λε-λύ-κα-τον	ἐ-λε-λυ-κεί-την
	amāv-imus	*amāv-erāmus*	λε-λύ-κα-μεν	ἐ-λε-λύ-κει-μεν
	amāv-istis	*amāv-erātis*	λε-λύ-κα-τε	ἐ-λε-λύ-κει-τε
	amāv-ērunt (*ēre*)	*amāv-erant*	λε-λύ-κᾱσι	ἐ-λε-λύ-κε-σαν
			PERFECT.	
Subj.	*amāv-erim*	*amāv-issem*	λε-λύ-κω	
	amāv-eris	*amāv-issēs*	λε-λύ-κῃ-ς	
	amāv-erit	*amāv-isset*	λε-λύ-κῃ	
			λε-λύ-κη-τον	
			λε-λύ-κη-τον	
	amāv-erimus	*amāv-issēmus*	λε-λύ-κω-μεν	
	amāv-eritis	*amāv-issētis*	λε-λύ-κη-τε	
	amāv-erint	*amāv-issent*	λε-λύ-κω-σι	
Opt.			λε-λύ-κοι-μι	
			λε-λύ-κοι-ς	
			λε-λύ-κοι	
			λε-λύ-κοι-τον	
			λε-λυ-κοί-την	
			λε-λύ-κοι-μεν	
			λε-λύ-κοι-τε	
			λε-λύ-κοιε-ν	
Infin.	*amāv-isse*		λε-λυ-κέ-ναι	
Partc.			λε-λυ-κώς, -κυῖα, -κός	

Note. — (*a*) The Latin has a fut. perfect, exactly like the perf. subj., except the first person singular, where the ending is *-erō* instead of *-erim* of the subjunctive.

(*b*) The Greek perfect imperative is lacking, except in a few perfects which have a present meaning.

81. Perfect Middle Passive (cf. perf. of *amor.*)

MODE.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Ind.	*amātus sum*	*amātus eram*	λέ-λυ-μαι	ἐ-λε-λύ-μην
	" *es*	" *erās*	λέ-λυ-σαι	ἐ-λέ-λυ-σο
	" *est*	" *erat*	λέ-λυ-ται	ἐ-λέ-λυ-το
			λέ-λυ-σθον	ἐ-λέ-λυ-σθον
			λέ-λυ-σθον	ἐ-λε-λύ-σθην
	amātī sumus	*amātī erāmus*	λε-λύ-μεθα	ἐ-λε-λύ-μεθα
	" *estis*	" *erātis*	λέ-λυ-σθε	ἐ-λέ-λυ-σθε
	" *sunt*	" *erant*	λέ-λυ-νται	ἐ-λέ-λυ-ντο
			PERFECT.	
Subj.	*amātus sim*	*amātus essem*	λε-λυ-μένος (-η, -ον) ὦ	
	" *sīs*	" *essēs*	" ᾖς	
	" *sit*	" *esset*	" ᾖ	
			λε-λυ-μένω (-ā, -ω) ἦτον	
			" ἦτον	
	amātī sīmus	*amātī essēmus*	λε-λυ-μένοι (-αι, -α) ὦμεν	
	" *sītis*	" *essētis*	" ἦτε	
	" *sint*	" *essent*	" ὦσι	
Opt.			λε-λυ-μένος (-η, -ον) εἴην	
			" εἴης	
			" εἴη	
			λε-λυ-μένω (-ā, -ω) εἶτον or	εἴητον
			" εἴτην	εἰήτην
			λε-λυ-μένοι (-αι, -α) εἶμεν	εἴημεν
			" εἶτε	εἴητε
			" εἶεν	εἴησαν
Imv.			λέ-λυ-σο	
			λε-λύ-σθω	
			λέ-λυ-σθον	
			λε-λύ-σθων	
			λέ-λυ-σθε	
			λε-λύ-σθων or λε-λύ-σθωσαν	
Infin.	*amātus esse*		λε-λύ-σθαι	
Partc.	*amātus*		λε-λυ-μένος, -η, -ον	

82. Fut. Perf. Mid. (Pass.) **83.** First Passive System.

MODE.		1ST AORIST.	1ST FUTURE.
Ind.	λε-λῡ́-σο-μαι	ἐ-λύ-θη-ν	λυ-θή-σο-μαι
	λε-λῡ́-σει	ἐ-λύ-θη-ς	λυ-θή-σει
	λε-λῡ́-σε-ται	ἐ-λύ-θη	λυ-θή-σε-ται
	λε-λῡ́-σε-σθον	ἐ-λύ-θη-τον	λυ-θή-σε-σθον
	λε-λῡ́-σε-σθον	ἐ-λυ-θή-την	λυ-θή-σε-σθον
	λε-λῡ-σό-μεθα	ἐ-λύ-θη-μεν	λυ-θη-σό-μεθα
	λε-λῡ́-σε-σθε	ἐ-λύ-θη-τε	λυ-θή-σε-σθε
	λε-λῡ́-σο-νται	ἐ-λύ-θη-σαν	λυ-θή-σο-νται
Subj.		λυ-θῶ	
		λυ-θῇς	
		λυ-θῇ	
		λυ-θῆ-τον	
		λυ-θῆ-τον	
		λυ-θῶ-μεν	
		λυ-θῆ-τε	
		λυ-θῶ-σι	
Opt.	λε-λῡ-σοί-μην	λυ-θείη-ν	λυ-θη-σοί-μην
	λε-λῡ́-σοι-ο	λυ-θείη-ς	λυ-θή-σοι-ο
	λε-λῡ́-σοι-το	λυ-θείη	λυ-θή-σοι-το
	λε-λῡ́-σοι-σθον	λυ-θεῖ-τον or λυ-θείη-τον	λυ-θή-σοι-σθον
	λε-λῡ-σοί-σθην	λυ-θεί-την λυ-θειή-την	λυ-θη-σοί-σθην
	λε-λῡ-σοί-μεθα	λυ-θεῖ-μεν λυ-θείη-μεν	λυ-θη-σοί-μεθα
	λε-λῡ́-σοι-σθε	λυ-θεῖ-τε λυ-θείη-τε	λυ-θή-σοι-σθε
	λε-λῡ́-σοι-ντο	λυ-θεῖε-ν λυ-θείη-σαν	λυ-θή-σοι-ντο
Imv.		λύ-θη-τι	
		λυ-θή-τω	
		λύ-θη-τον	
		λυ-θή-των	
		λύ-θη-τε	
		λυ-θέ-ντων or λυ-θή-τωσαν	
Infin.	λε-λῡ́-σε-σθαι	λυ-θῆ-ναι	λυ-θή-σε-σθαι
Partc.	λε-λῡ-σό-μενος, -η, -ον	λυ-θείς, -εῖσα, -έν	λυ-θη-σό-μενος, -η, -ον

84. Second Aorist System. **85.** Second Perfect System.

λείπω (λιπ), leave.

MODE.	ACTIVE.	MIDDLE.	2D PERFECT.	2D PLUPERFECT.
Ind.	ἔ-λιπο-ν	ἐ-λιπό-μην	λέλοιπα	ἐλελοίπη, -ειν
	ἔ-λιπε-ς	ἐ-λίπου	λέλοιπας	ἐλελοίπης, -εις
	ἔ-λιπε	ἐ-λίπε-το	λέλοιπε	ἐλελοίπει
	ἐ-λίπε-τον	ἐ-λίπε-σθον	λελοίπατον	ἐλελοίπειτον
	ἐ-λιπέ-την	ἐ-λιπέ-σθην	λελοίπατον	ἐλελοιπείτην
	ἐ-λίπο-μεν	ἐ-λιπό-μεθα	λελοίπαμεν	ἐλελοίπειμεν
	ἐ-λίπε-τε	ἐ-λίπε-σθε	λελοίπατε	ἐλελοίπειτε
	ἔ-λιπο-ν	ἐ-λίπο-ντο	λελοίπᾱσι	ἐλελοίπεσαν
			2D PERFECT.	
Subj.	λίπω	λίπωμαι	λελοίπω	
	λίπῃς	λίπῃ	λελοίπῃς	
	λίπῃ	λίπηται	λελοίπῃ	
	λίπητον	λίπησθον	λελοίπητον	
	λίπητον	λίπησθον	λελοίπητον	
	λίπωμεν	λιπώμεθα	λελοίπωμεν	
	λίπητε	λίπησθε	λελοίπητε	
	λίπωσι	λίπωνται	λελοίπωσι	
Opt.	λίποιμι	λιποίμην	λελοίποιμι	
	λίποις	λίποιο	λελοίποις	
	λίποι	λίποιτο	λελοίποι	
	λίποιτον	λίποισθον	λελοίποιτον	
	λιποίτην	λιποίσθην	λελοιποίτην	
	λίποιμεν	λιποίμεθα	λελοίποιμεν	
	λίποιτε	λίποισθε	λελοίποιτε	
	λίποιεν	λίποιντο	λελοίποιεν	
Imv.	λίπε	λιποῦ		
	λιπέτω	λιπέσθω		
	λίπετον	λίπεσθον		
	λιπέτων	λιπέσθων		
	λίπετε	λίπεσθε		
	λιπόντων or λιπέτωσαν	λιπέσθων or λιπέσθωσαν		
Infin.	λιπεῖν	λιπέσθαι	λελοιπέναι	
Partc.	λιπών, -οῦσα, -όν	λιπόμενος, -η, -ον	λελοιπώς, -υῖα, -ός	

86. SECOND PASSIVE SYSTEM.

στέλλω (στελ), send.

MODE.	2D AORIST.	2D FUTURE.
Ind.	ἐστάλην ἐστάλης ἐστάλη ἐστάλητον ἐσταλήτην ἐστάλημεν ἐστάλητε ἐστάλησαν	σταλήσομαι σταλήσει σταλήσεται σταλήσεσθον σταλήσεσθον σταλησόμεθα σταλήσεσθε σταλήσονται
Subj.	σταλῶ σταλῇς σταλῇ σταλῆτον σταλῆτον σταλῶμεν σταλῆτε σταλῶσι	
Opt.	σταλείην σταλείης σταλείη σταλεῖτον or σταλείητον σταλείτην σταλειήτην σταλεῖμεν σταλείημεν σταλεῖτε σταλείητε σταλεῖεν σταλείησαν	σταλησοίμην σταλήσοιο σταλήσοιτο σταλήσοισθον σταλησοίσθην σταλησοίμεθα σταλήσοισθε σταλήσοιντο
Imv.	στάληθι σταλήτω στάλητον σταλήτων στάλητε σταλέντων or σταλήτωσαν	
Infin.	σταλῆναι	σταλήσεσθαι
Partc.	σταλείς, -εῖσα, -έν	σταλησόμενος, -η, -ον

87. Accent of the Greek Verb. — As a rule, the accent stands as far as possible from the end of the form; on the penult when the ultima is long; otherwise, on the antepenult. The exceptions are: —

(*a*) Second aorists like ἔλιπον accent the end of the stem in the *imperative* 2d sing. of the middle: λιποῦ for λιπέ(σ)ο.

(*b*) The *infinitive* and *participle* in the second aorist active and middle accent the end of the stem: λιπεῖν, λιπών, λιπέσθαι.

(*c*) The perfect middle (passive) *infinitive* and *participle* accent the penult: λελύσθαι, λελυμένος.

(*d*) The first aorist active *infinitive* accents the penult: κελεῦσαι.

(*e*) All *infinitives* in -ναι accent the penult: λυθῆναι.

(*f*) Third-declension *participles* in -ς, except that of the first aorist active, accent the ultima: λυθείς.

Remark. — In compound verbs the accent cannot go back of the augment or reduplication.

88. Reduplication. — This is a sign of completed action and belongs to the *perf.*, *pluperf.*, and *future perf.* through all the modes.

(*a*) Verbs beginning with a consonant repeat the consonant with -ε: λύω, λέ-λυκα.

(*b*) Verbs beginning with *two consonants* or a *double consonant* omit the consonant and take ε only, the reduplication taking the same form as the *syllabic augment*: ψεύδω, ἐ-ψευσμένος.

(*c*) Verbs beginning with a vowel lengthen the vowel, the reduplication taking the same form as the *temporal augment*: αἰσθάνομαι, ᾔσθημαι.

89. Tense-suffixes. — The tense-suffixes are added to the *theme* to form the tense-stems; they are as follows: —

Present system, -ο/ε- (most common).
Future system, -σο/ε-.
First aorist system, -σα-.
Second aorist system, -ο/ε- or none.
First perfect system, -κα- (plup. -κη- or -κει-).
Second perfect system, -α- (plup. -η- or -ει-).
Perfect middle system, none (future perfect -σο/ε-).
First passive system, -θε- (future passive -θησο/ε-).
Second passive system -ε- (future passive -ησο/ε-).

90. Mode-suffixes: —

(*a*) The subjunctive puts -ω/η- in place of the final vowel of the tense-suffix; in the aorist passive, however, -ω/η- is *added* to the tense-stem, with which ε of the tense-suffix contracts: (λυθέ-ω) λυθῶ.

(*b*) The optative adds the mode-suffix -ι- or -ιη- (-ιε-) to the tense-stem: *λύ̆ο-ι-μι, λύ̆ο-ιε-ν, λύ̆σα-ι-μι, ε-ἴη-σαν.*

91. Endings. — In the finite modes the endings are called *personal* endings, because they generally have a different form for each person. There are two series of endings, one for the *active* voice, the other for the *middle*. The endings of the *passive* voice are like those of the middle except in the *aorist* and *future;* the *aorist passive* has the endings of the active voice; the *future passive*, those of the middle.

92. Endings of the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Optative: —

	Active		Middle	
	PRINCIPAL TENSES.	PAST TENSES.	PRINCIPAL TENSES.	PAST TENSES.
Sing. 1	-μι	-ν	-μαι	-μην
2	-ς	-ς	-σαι	-σο
3	-σι	———	-ται	-το
Dual. 2	-τον	-τον	-σθον	-σθον
3	-τον	-την	-σθον	-σθην
Plu. 1	-μεν	-μεν	-μεθα	-μεθα
2	-τε	-τε	-σθε	-σθε
3	-νσι	-ν, -σαν	-νται	-ντο

93. Endings of the Imperative: —

Active			Middle		
Sing. 2. -θι	Dual. 2. -τον	Plu. 2. -τε	Sing. 2. -σο	Dual. 2. -σθον	Plu. 2. -σθε
3. -τω	3. -των	3. -ντων or -τωσαν	3. -σθω	3. -σθων	3. -σθων or -σθωσαν

94. Endings of the Infinitive. — They are (*a*) *active*, -εν (contracted with preceding ε to -ειν), or -ναι; (*b*) *middle*, -σθαι.

95. Suffixes of the Participle. — They are added to the tense-stem, -ντ- (perf. -οτ-) for the *active* voice, -μενο for the *middle*.

Note. — The subjunctive has the endings of the *principal* tenses; the optative those of the *past* tenses, except in the 1st sing. after the mode-suffix -ι-, where -*μι* is used; in the optative 3d plu. -*ν* is used after -*ιε*-, -*σαν* after -*ιη*-.

VOCABULARY.

The **full-faced** numbers after a definition refer to the chapter and section in which the word first occurs.

A.

ἅ, ἅ-περ. See **ὅς, ὅσ-περ.**

Ἀβροκόμᾱς, -ᾱ (Dor. gen.), ὁ, *Abrocomas.* **3, 20.**

Ἄβῡδος, -ου, ἡ, *Abȳdus.* See Map. **1, 9.**

ἀγάγῃ, ἀγαγών. See **ἄγω.**

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν, *good, brave.* **1, 6.**

ἄγαμαι, aor. ἠγάσθην, *admire.* **1, 9.**

ἀγγέλλω, ἀγγελῶ, ἤγγειλα, ἤγγελκα, ἤγγελμαι, ἠγγέλθην, *report, announce.* **7, 13.**

ἄγγελος, -ου, ὁ, *messenger.* **2, 21.**

ἀγορά, -ᾶς, ἡ, *assembly; place of assembly, market-place; market, provisions on sale.* **2, 10.**

ἀγοράζω, -άσω, [ἀγορά], *buy in the market, buy.* **3, 14.**

ἄγριος, -ίᾱ, -ον, *wild.* **2, 7.**

ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον, ἦχα, ἦγμαι, ἤχθην, *lead, bring, conduct.* **3, 5.**

ἀγών, -ῶνος, ὁ, *game, contest.* **2, 10.**

ἀδελφός, -οῦ, ὁ, *brother.* **1, 3.**

ἀδικέω, -ήσω, ἠδίκησα, [ἀ + δικος], *do injustice, harm, wrong.* **3, 9.**

ἄ-δικος, -ον, *unjust, bad;* as a subst., ὁ ἄδικος, *the wrong-doer;* τὸ ἄδικον, *injustice.* **6, 8.**

Ἀθηναῖος, -ᾱ, -ον, *Athenian.* In the Anab. as a substantive, Ἀθηναῖος, ὁ, *an Athenian.* **8, 15.**

ἆθλον, -ου, τό, *prize* in a contest. **2, 10.**

ἀθροίζω, -οίσω, *collect, muster troops;* mid., *assemble.* **1, 2.**

ἄ-θῡμος, -ον, *without heart, disheartened, spiritless.* **4, 9.**

αἱ, αἵ, αἷς. See **ὁ, ὅς.**

Αἰγύπτιος, -ίᾱ, -ον, *Egyptian.* As a substantive, Αἰγύπτιος, ὁ, *an Egyptian.* **4, 2.**

Αἰνιάν, -ᾶνος, ὁ, *an Aeniánian.* The Aeniánians lived in Thessaly, occupying the valley of the Spercheius. **2, 6.**

αἱρετός, -ή, -όν, *taken, chosen; οἱ αἱρετοί, the delegates.* **3, 21.**

αἱρέω, -ήσω, εἷλον, ᾕρηκα, -ημαι, ᾑρέθην, *take;* mid., *take for one's self, choose.* **3, 5.**

αἴρω, ἀρῶ, ἦρα, ἦρκα, ἦρμαι, ἤρθην, *raise, lift up.* **5, 3.**

αἰσθάνομαι, αἰσθήσομαι, ᾐσθόμην, ᾔσθημαι, *perceive, become aware of.* **1, 8.**

αἰσχῡ́νω, -ῶ, *disgrace, shame;* αἰσχῡ́νομαι, pass. dep., *feel ashamed before, stand in awe of.* **3, 10.**

αἰτέω, -ήσω, ᾔτησα, *ask, demand,* often followed by two acc.; mid., *beg, entreat.* **1, 10.**

αἰτιάομαι, -ᾱ́σομαι, mid. dep., *blame, accuse, charge.* **2, 20.**

αἴτιος, -ίᾱ, -ον, *chargeable with; responsible; the cause of.* **4, 15.**

ἀκῑνάκης, -ου, ὁ, *Persian dagger,* short and straight. **2, 27.**

ἀκοντίζω, *hurl a javelin, hit* or *wound with a javelin.* **8, 27.**

ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκήκοα, ἠκούσθην, *hear.* **2, 5.**

ἀκρόπολις, -εως, ἡ, *upper city, the highest part of a city, citadel.* **2, 1.**

ἄκρος, -ᾱ, -ον, *highest;* τὸ ἄκρον, *top;* τὰ ἄκρα, *heights, hills.* **2, 21.**

ἄκων, *-ουσα, -ον*, gen. *-οντος, -ούσης*, *unwilling*; Κύρου ἄκοντος, *against the will of Cyrus*. **3, 17.**

ἀλέξω, *ward off*; mid., *ward off from one's self, defend one's self from, repel, punish*. **3, 6.**

ἀλέτης, *-ου, ὁ, grinder*; as adj., ὄνος ἀλέτης, *grinding mill, grindstone*. **5, 5.**

ἄλευρον, *-ου, τό*, usually plur., *flour, wheat-flour*. **5, 6.**

ἀληθεύω, *-εύσω*, [ἀληθής], *speak the truth*. **7, 18.**

ἁλίσκομαι, ἁλώσομαι, ἑάλων or ἥλων, ἑάλωκα or ἥλωκα, *be taken, captured*, used as a pass. of αἱρέω. **4, 7.**

ἀλλά, *but*; ἀλλ' ὅμως, *but yet*; at the beginning of a speaker's words, untranslated, or like the Eng. *well*; ἀλλὰ δέχομαι, *well, I accept it*. **1, 4.**

ἀλλήλοιν, **-αιν**, **-οιν**, *one another, each other*. **2, 27.**

ἄλλος, **-η**, **-ο**, *other, rest of, another*; ὁ ἄλλος, *the rest, the other*; τὰ ἄλλα ἐτίμησε, *in other respects*; τὶ καὶ ἄλλο (ὕλης), *any other kind of*; ἄλλοι ἄλλως, *some in one way, others in another*; ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν, *some from one direction, others from another*; *in various directions*. **1, 7.**

ἄλλως, *otherwise, differently*. See **ἄλλος. 6, 11.**

ἄλφιτον, *-ου, τό*, usually plur., *grains, groats*; *barley-grains, barley-meal*. **5, 6.**

ἁλῶ, ἁλώσομαι, ἁλώσοιντο. See **ἁλίσκομαι.**

ἅμα, *at the same time, together with*; ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, *at daybreak*. **2, 9.**

ἅμαξα, *-ης, ἡ, wagon, heavy wagon* for hauling freight. **5, 7.**

ἁμαξιτός, *-όν, for wagons, fit for wagons*. **2, 21.**

ἁμαρτάνω, ἁμαρτήσομαι, ἥμαρτον, ἡμάρτηκα, -ημαι, ἡμαρτήθην, *miss, fail, err*. **5, 12.**

ἀμαχεί, *without a battle*. **7, 9.**

Ἀμβρακιώτης, *-ου, ὁ, an Ambraciot* or *Ambracian*. Ambracia was a city of Epīrus, about 80 stadia, or 7 miles, north of the Ambracian Gulf. See **Ἀμπρακιώτης. 7, 18.**

ἀμείνων, *-ον*, gen. *-ονος*, comp. of ἀγαθός, *better, superior, braver*. **7, 3.**

ἀ-μελέω, *-ήσω, ἠμέλησα, neglect, slight*. **3, 11.**

ἀ-μήχανος, *-ον, without means; impracticable; insurmountable*. **2, 21.**

ἄμπελος, *-ου, ἡ, vine*. **2, 22.**

Ἀμπρακιώτης. See **Ἀμβρακιώτης.**

ἀμφί, prep. with acc., rarely gen., *about, around*. **1, 8.**

ἀμφι-λέγω, *speak on both sides, dispute, quarrel*. **5, 11.**

ἀμφότερος, *-ᾱ, -ον, both*; τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω, *both the sons*. **1, 1.**

ἄν. 1, 10.

ἄν, for ἐάν, *if*. See **ἤν.**

ἀνά, *up*, opposed to κατά, prep. with acc.; ἀνὰ κράτος, *up to one's strength, at full speed*. **8, 1.**

ἀνα-βαίνω, (βήσομαι, ἔβην, βέβηκα, βήσω and ἔβησα causative), *go up, embark, mount, proceed from the coast into the interior*. **1, 2.**

ἀνάβασις, *-εως, ἡ, upward march* or *expedition, ascent*. **4, 9.**

ἀνα-γιγνώσκω, *recognize, read*. See **γιγνώσκω. 6, 4.**

ἀναγκαῖος, *-ᾱ, -ον, necessary*; τὶ ἀναγκαῖον, *some necessity*. **5, 9.**

ἀνάγκη, *-ης, ἡ, necessity*; ἀνάγκη ἐστίν, *it is necessary*. **3, 5.**

ἀνα-γνούς. See **ἀνα-γιγνώσκω.**

ἀναξυρίδες, *-ων, αἱ, trousers*, such as were worn by the Persians. **5, 8.**

ἀνα-πείθω, *persuade, induce*. See **πείθω. 4, 11.**

ἀν-αρπάζω, *snatch up, carry off*. **3, 14.**

ἀνα-στάς. See **ἀν-ίστημι.**

ἀνα-στρέφω, *turn back* or *around, retreat*. See **στρέφω. 4, 5.**

ἀνα-σχέσθαι. See **ἀν-έχω.**

ἀνα-ταράττω, *-άξω*, *stir up, disturb, confuse.* 7, 20.
ἀνα-τεταραγμένον. See **ἀνα-ταράττω.**
ἄνδρα, ἀνδρός. See **ἀνήρ.**
ἀνδράποδον, *-ου, τό*, *slave, captive.* 2, 27.
ἀν-έβην. See **ἀνα-βαίνω.**
ἄνευ, improper prep., with gen., *without.* 3, 11.
ἀν-έχω, *hold up, sustain;* mid., *endure.* See **ἔχω.** 7, 4.
ἀνήρ, *ἀνδρός, ὁ*, *man,* meaning about the same as the Lat. *vir.* 1, 6.
ἀν-ηρπακότες. See **ἀν-αρπάζω.**
ἀνθ', by elision, for **ἀντί.**
ἄνθρωπος, *-ου, ὁ*, *man, homo; human being;* sometimes used in a contemptuous sense. 3, 15.
ἀνῑάω, *-ᾱ́σω*, *trouble, annoy.* 2, 11.
ἀν-ίστημι, *raise* or *start up;* mid., *rise, stand up.* See **ἵστημι.** 3, 13.
ἀντ', by elision, for **ἀντί.**
ἀντ-αγοράζω, *buy in return* or *exchange.* See **ἀγοράζω.** 5, 5.
ἀντί, prep. with the gen., *over against, against, instead of, in return for.* 1, 4.
ἀντίος, *-ίᾱ, -ον*, *opposite, face to face; ἀ. ἰέναι, go against.* 8, 17.
ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζομαι, *-άσομαι*, *make counter preparations.* 2, 5.
ἀντιπέρᾱς, *opposite.* 1, 9.
ἀντιστασιώτης, *-ου, -ὁ*, *political opponent* or *adversary.* 1, 10.
ἄντρον, *-ου, τό*, *cave.* 2, 8.
ἀνυστός, *-όν*, *practicable, possible.* 8, 11.
ἄνω, *upwards, high up, into the interior* (from the seacoast). 2, 1.
ἀξίνη, *-ης, ἡ*, *axe.* 5, 12.
ἄξιος, *-ίᾱ, -ον*, *worth, worthy.* 3, 12.
ἀξιόω, *-ώσω*, *consider as proper, ask* or *demand* as one's right. 1, 8.
ἄξων, *-ονος, ὁ*, *axle.* 8, 10.
ἀπ-αγγέλλω, *bring back tidings* from a place or person, *report.* See **ἀγγέλλω.** 3, 19.
ἀπ-αγορεύω, *refuse, renounce, give out* through exhaustion, *be fatigued, fail.* 5, 3.
ἀπ-άγω, *bring* or *lead away* or *back.* See **ἄγω.** 3, 14.
ἀπ-αιτέω, *ask for* or *demand* as one's right. See **αἰτέω.** 2, 11.
ἁπαλός, *-ή, -όν*, *soft, tender.* 5, 2.
ἀ-παράσκευος, *-ον*, *un-prepared.* 1, 6.
ἅπᾱς, *-ᾱσα, -ᾱν*, *all together, all, entire.* 4, 4.
ἀπ-εγνωκέναι. See **ἀπο-γιγνώσκω.**
ἀπ-έδωκα. See **ἀπο-δίδωμι.**
ἀπ-έθανον. See **ἀπο-θνήσκω.**
ἄπ-ειμι, *go from* or *away, depart, desert.* 3, 11.
ἀπ-ελαύνω, *drive away, ride* or *march away, retreat.* See **ἐλαύνω.** 4, 5.
ἀπ-ελθών. See **ἀπ-έρχομαι.**
ἀπ-έρχομαι, *go away, come from, withdraw, desert.* See **ἔρχομαι.** 1, 4.
ἀπ-έσπᾱ. See **ἀπο-σπάω.**
ἀπ-έχω, *be away from, be distant; refrain from.* See **ἔχω.** 3, 20.
ἀπ-ήγαγον. See **ἀπ-άγω.**
ἀπ-ῄειν. See **ἄπ-ειμι.**
ἀπ-ήλαυνον. See **ἀπ-ελαύνω.**
ἀπ-ῆλθον. See **ἀπ-έρχομαι.**
ἀπ-ιέναι, ἄπ-ιμεν. See **ἄπ-ειμι.**
ἀπό, prep. with the gen., *from, from off, away from; by means of.* 1, 2.
ἀπο-βιβάζω, *cause to go off* or *away from, disembark* (trans.). 4, 5.
ἀπο-βλέπω, *look away from, look forth, look steadily.* See **βλέπω.** 8, 14.
ἀπο-γιγνώσκω, *decide negatively, relinquish* or *abandon* a thought or purpose. See **γιγνώσκω.** 7, 19.
ἀπο-δέδρακα. See **ἀπο-διδρᾱ́σκω.**
ἀπο-δείκνῡμι, (*δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην*), *show forth, appoint.* 1, 2.
ἀπο-διδρᾱ́σκω, (*δρᾱ́σομαι, ἔδρᾱν, δέδρᾱκα*), *run off, escape, sneak away.* 4, 8.
ἀπο-δίδωμι, *give back* or *over, return* what is due; *pay.* See **δίδωμι.** 2, 11.

ἀπο-δοῦναι, ἀπο-δώσω. See preceding.

ἀπο-κρίνομαι, *-κρινοῦμαι, ἀπεκρῑνάμην, reply, answer.* **3, 20.**

ἀπο-κτείνω, *-κτενῶ, ἀπέκτεινα* and *ἀπέκτανον, ἀπέκτονα, kill, put to death.* **1, 3.**

ἀπο-λαμβάνω, *take back, receive back.* See **λαμβάνω. 2, 27.**

ἀπο-λείπω, *leave, leave behind; desert.* See **λείπω. 4, 8.**

ἀπο-λήψομαι. See **ἀπο-λαμβάνω.**

ἀπ-όλλῡμι, mid., *be destroyed, perish, die.* **2, 25.**

Ἀπόλλων, *-ωνος, ὁ, Apollo.* **2, 8.**

ἀπο-πέμπω, *send away* or *back;* w. *τοὺς δασμούς, remit,* etc. See **πέμπω. 1, 3.**

ἀπο-πλέω, *sail away* or *back, sail homeward.* See **πλέω. 3, 14.**

ἀ-πορέω, *-ήσω,* [*ἀ + πόρος*], *be without a way, perplexed, distressed.* **3, 8.**

ἀπορίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, perplexity, difficulty.* **3, 13.**

ἀπό-ρ-ρητος, *-ον, not to be told, secret.* **6, 5.**

ἀπο-σπάω, *draw off, withdraw.* See **σπάω. 5, 3.**

ἀπο-στῆναι. See **ἀφ-ίστημι.**

ἀπο-σῡλάω, *strip off, spoil, plunder.* **4, 8.**

ἀπο-τείνω, (*τενῶ, ἔτεινα, τέτακα, τέταμαι, ἐτάθην*), *stretch away, extend.* **8, 10.**

ἀπο-φαίνω, *show forth, reveal;* mid., *show one's self, appear; show* something of *one's own, express* an opinion. See **φαίνω. 6, 9.**

ἀπο-φεύγω, *flee away, escape.* See **φεύγω. 4, 8.**

ἀπο-χωρέω, *go away from, retreat, withdraw.* **2, 8.**

ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι, *vote away from, vote "No," vote against.* **4, 15.**

ἅπτω, mid., *touch.* **5, 10.**

ἀπ-ωλόμην, -ώλοντο. See **ἀπ-όλλῡμι.**

ἄρα, postpositive inferential particle, *therefore, then; probably.* **7, 18.**

Ἀραβίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, Arabia.* **5, 1.**

Ἀράξης, *-ου, ὁ, the Araxes.* See Map. **4, 19.**

Ἀρβάκης, *-ου, ὁ, Arbaces.* **7, 12.**

ἀργύριον, *-ου, τό, silver, silver money, money.* **4, 13.**

ἀρετή, *-ῆς, ἡ, fitness, virtue, goodness; good service.* **4, 8.**

Ἀριαῖος, *-ου, ὁ, Ariaeus.* **8, 5.**

ἀριθμός, *-οῦ, ὁ, number, enumeration.* **2, 9.**

Ἀρίστιππος, *-ου, ὁ, Aristippus.* **1, 10.**

ἄριστος, *-η, -ον, fittest, bravest, best, best* in rank, *noblest; most advantageous.* **3, 12.**

Ἀρκάς, *-άδος, ὁ, an Arcadian, native of Arcadia.* Arcadia was a country in the center of the Peloponnēsus. **2, 1.**

ἄρκτος, *-ου, ἡ, bear,* the Constellation Ursa Mājor, *north.* **7, 6.**

ἅρμα, *-ατος, τό, chariot* for war. **2, 16.**

ἁρμάμαξα, *-ης, ἡ, covered chariot.* **2, 16.**

ἁρπάζω, *-άσω, ἥρπασα, ἥρπακα, ἥρπασμαι, ἡρπάσθην, seize, carry off, plunder.* **2, 25.**

Ἀρταγέρσης, *-ου, ὁ, Artagerses.* **7, 11.**

Ἀρταξέρξης, *-ου, ὁ, Artaxerxes.* **1, 1.**

Ἀρταπάτης, *-ου, ὁ, Artapates.* **6, 11.**

Ἄρτεμις, *-ιδος, ἡ, Artemis,* the Lat. *Diana.* **6, 7.**

ἀρχαῖος, *-ᾱ, -ον, old, ancient; τὸ ἀρχαῖον, formerly.* **1, 6.**

ἀρχή, *-ῆς, ἡ, beginning, rule, government, province.* **1, 2.**

ἄρχω, *ἄρξω, ἦρξα, ἦργμαι, ἤρχθην, begin, rule, command;* as a substantive, *ἄρχων, ὁ, leader, ruler, commander.* **1, 2; 1, 8.**

ἄρωμα, *-ατος, τό, spice.* Cf. Eng. AROMA. **5, 1.**

ἀσθενέω, [*ἀσθενής*], *be feeble, ill.* **1, 1.**

ἀ-σθενής, *-ές,* [*ἀ + σθένος, strength*], *without strength, weak.* **5. 9.**

Ἀσπένδιος, *-ου, ὁ, an Aspendian, native of Aspendus.* Aspendus was in Pamphylia in southern Asia Minor. **2, 12.**

ἀσπίς, -ίδος, ἡ, large oval *shield* of the heavy-armed soldiers. **2, 16.**

ἀστράπτω, *gleam, flash.* **8, 8.**

ἀ-σφαλής, -ές, comp. -έστερος, superl. -έστατος, *without stumbling, sure, safe;* ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ, *in a safe place.* **8, 22.**

ἀ-σφαλῶς, superl. ἀσφαλέστατα, *safely.* **3, 11.**

ἄ-τακτος, -ον, *without order, in disorder, not in battle array.* **8, 2.**

ἀτῑμάζω, *dishonor.* **1, 4.**

Ἀττικός, -ή, -όν, *Attic, Athenian.* Attica was a country in the southeastern part of Greece; Athens was its capital. **5, 6.**

αὖ, *again, in turn.* **1, 7.**

αὕτη, αὗται. See **οὗτος.**

αὐτίκα, *immediately, at once.* **8, 2.**

αὐτόθι, *there, in this* or *that place.* **4, 6.**

αὐτόματος, -η, -ον, *self-moved;* ἀπὸ or ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, *voluntarily, of one's own accord.* **2, 17.**

αὐτομολέω, *desert.* **7, 13.**

αὐτόμολος, -ου, ὁ, *deserter.* **7, 2.**

αὐτός, -ή, -ό, *ipse, self;* ὁ αὐτός, *idem, same;* in oblique cases it is the ordinary pron. 3d pers. **1, 2.**

αὐτοῦ, *in this* or *that place, here, there,* **3, 11.**

αὑτοῦ. See **ἑαυτοῦ.**

ἀφ', for ἀπό when ο is elided before a rough breathing.

ἀφ-αιρέω, *seize* or *take away, rob;* usually mid. See **αἱρέω.** **3, 4.**

ἀ-φανής, -ές, *unseen, invisible.* **4, 7.**

ἀφ-ίημι, *send away* or *off, dismiss, release.* See **ἵημι.** **3, 19.**

ἀφ-ειστήκειν. See **ἀφ-ίστημι.**

ἀφ-ικνέομαι, ἀφίξομαι, ἀφῑκόμην, ἀφῖγμαι, *arrive, come.* **1, 5.**

ἀφ-ιππεύω, *ride off* or *back* on horseback. **5, 12.**

ἀφ-ίστημι, mid., *stand off* or *away, revolt.* See **ἵστημι.** **1, 6.**

Ἀχαιός, -ά, -όν, *Achæan.* Achæa or Achaia was a portion of the Peloponnēsus, bordering on the Corinthian Gulf. **1, 11.**

ἄχθομαι, ἀχθέσομαι, ἠχθέσθην, *be vexed, displeased.* **1, 8.**

ἀψίνθιον, -ου, τό, *wormwood.* **5, 1.**

B.

Βαβυλών, -ῶνος, ἡ, *Babylon.* See Map. **4, 11.**

Βαβυλωνίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *Babylonia.* The district in which Babylon was situated. **7, 1.**

βάθος, -ους, τό, *depth.* **7, 14.**

βαθύς, -εῖα, -ύ, *deep.* **7, 14.**

βάλανος, -ου, ἡ, *acorn;* of palm, *date.* **5, 10.**

βάλλω, βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην, *throw, hit, stone.* **3, 1.**

βαρβαρικός, -ή, -όν, *barbaric, barbarian.* **2, 1.**

βαρβαρικῶς, *in a barbarian way; in the barbarian tongue.* **8, 1.**

βάρβαρος, -ου, ὁ, *a barbarian;* οἱ βάρβαροι, people who were not Greeks, *barbarians.* **1, 5.**

βασιλείᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *kingdom.* **1, 3.**

βασίλειος, -ον, *belonging to a king, royal;* τὰ βασίλεια, as a substantive, *royal residence, palace.* **2, 7.**

βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ, *king.* **1, 5.**

βασιλεύω, *be king.* **1, 4.**

Βέλεσυς, -υος, ὁ, *Belesys,* **4, 10.**

βέλτιστος. See **βελτίων.**

βελτίων, -ον, *better,* βέλτιστος, -η, -ον, *best,* irregular comp. and superl. of **ἀγαθός.** **1, 6.**

βίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *force.* **4, 4.**

βιάζομαι, mid. dep., *use force, compel.* **3, 1.**

βιαίως, *forcibly, violently.* **8, 27.**

βίος, -ου, ὁ, *life.* **1, 1.**

βλέπω, βλέψω, ἔβλεψα, *look;* of things, *face, point* (towards). **8, 10.**

βοάω, *shout, cry aloud.* **8, 1.**

Βοιώτιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *Bœotian.* Bœotia lay northwest of Attica. **1, 11.**

βουλεύω, *plan, plot;* mid., *deliberate, consult.* 1, 4.
βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην or ἠβουλήθην, *wish.* 1, 1.
βραδέως, *slowly.* 8, 11.
βραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ, *short;* βραχύ (adv. acc.), *short distance.* 5, 3.
βρέχω, *wet, moisten.* 4, 17.
βωμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *altar.* 6, 7.

Γ.

γάρ, postpos., *for;* καὶ γάρ, *etenim, for.* 1, 6.
Γαυλίτης, -ου, ὁ, *Gaulītes.* 7, 5.
γέ, postpos. and enclitic, *at least, you see, you know.* 3, 9.
γεγένημαι, γέγονα. See **γίγνομαι.**
γέλως, -ωτος, ὁ, *laughter.* 2, 18.
γενέσθαι, γενοίμην. See **γίγνομαι.**
γένος, -ους, τό, *birth, race, family.* 6, 1.
γερρο-φόρος, -ου, ὁ, *soldier with a wicker shield.* 8, 9.
γέφῡρα, -ᾱς, ἡ, *bridge.* 2, 5.
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ, *earth, land.* 1, 7.
γή-λοφος, -ου, ὁ, *hill.* 5, 8.
γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα, γεγένημαι, *become, be born.* 1, 1.
γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην, *know.* 3, 2.
Γλοῦς, -οῦ, ὁ, *Glus.* 4, 16.
γνοίην, γνώσομαι. See **γιγνώσκω.**
γνώμη, -ης, ἡ, *opinion, plan, expectation.* 3, 6.
γόνυ, γόνατος, τό, *knee.* 5, 13.
γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι, ἐγράφην, *write.* 6, 3.
γυμνάζω, *exercise.* 2, 7.
γυμνής, -ῆτος, ὁ, *light-armed soldier.* 2, 3.
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ, *woman, wife.* 2, 12.
Γωβρύᾱς, -ου or -ᾱ, ὁ, *Gobryas.* 7, 12.

Δ.

δ', by elision, for δέ.
δακρύω, *weep.* 3, 2.
δαπανάω, -ήσω, *spend* or *expend money.* 1, 8.
Δάρδας, -ατος, ὁ, *the Dardas.* See Map. 4, 10.
Δᾱρεῖος, -ου, ὁ, *Darīus.* 1, 1.
δᾱρεικός, -οῦ, ὁ, *daric.* A Persian coin containing about as many grains of gold as 5½ American dollars. 1, 9.
δασμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *tax, revenue.* 1, 8.
δέ, postpos., *but, and.* 1, 1.
δεδιώς, δέδοικα. See **δείδω.**
δέδομαι. See **δίδωμι.**
δεηθῆναι, δεῖ. See **δέω.**
δείδω, δείσομαι, ἔδεισα, δέδοικα and δέδια used as presents, *fear, be afraid.* 3, 10.
δείλη, -ης, ἡ, *afternoon, evening.* 8, 8.
δειλός, -ή, -όν, *cowardly.* 4, 7.
δεῖται. See **δέω.**
δέκα, *ten.* 2, 10.
δένδρον, -ου, τό, *tree.* 2, 22.
δέξομαι. See **δέχομαι.**
δεξιός, -ᾱ́, -όν, *right;* ἡ δεξιᾱ́ (sc. χείρ), *right hand, pledge;* ἐν δεξιᾷ, *on the right* (hand). 2, 15.
δέρμα, -ατος, τό, the *skin* as removed from the body, *hide.* 2, 8.
δεῦρο, *hither.* 3, 19.
δεύτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, *second;* τὸ δεύτερον, *second time.* 8, 16.
δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, ἐδέχθην, *receive, accept.* 8, 17.
δέω, δεήσω, ἐδέησα, δεδέηκα, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην, *need;* mid., *want, desire, beg;* δεῖ, *it is necessary;* τὸ δέον, *the necessary thing.* 1, 10.
δή, postpos., a strengthening particle, *now, accordingly, surely;* in questions, *pray.* 1, 4.
δῆλος, -η, -ον, *evident;* δῆλον ὅτι, *evidently.* 2, 11.
διά, prep. with gen. and acc.; with gen., *through;* διὰ ταχέων, *quickly;* with acc., *on account of.* 2, 5.
δια-βαίνω, *go through* or *over, cross.* See **βαίνω.** 2, 6.
δια-βάλλω, *slander.* See **βάλλω.** 1, 3.

διάβασις, -εως, ἡ, act of *going over*, *place of crossing*, *ford*. 5, 12.
διαβατός, -ή, -όν, *fordable*. 4, 18.
δια-βάς, **δια-βῆναι**. See **δια-βαίνω**.
δι-αγγέλλω, *bring word through*, *report*. See **ἀγγέλλω**. 6, 2.
δια-γίγνομαι, *come through*, *subsist*; *continue*, *pass* time. See **γίγνομαι**. 5, 6.
δι-άγω, *lead through* or *across*; *continue*; *pass* time. See **ἄγω**. 2, 11.
δια-δέχομαι, *receive in succession* or *in a line*, *relieve*. See **δέχομαι**. 5, 2.
δια-κινδῡνεύω, *run all risks*, *make a desperate attempt*. 8, 6.
δια-κόπτω, (κόψω, ἔκοψα, κέκοφα, κέκομμαι, ἐκόπην), *cut through*, *cut to pieces*. 8, 10.
διᾱκόσιοι, -αι, -α, *two hundred*. 2, 9.
δια-λέγομαι, *converse*, *confer with*. 7, 9.
δια-λείπω, *leave* (a space) *between*, *stand at intervals*, *be distant*. See **λείπω**. 7, 15.
δι-αρπάζω, *plunder*. See **ἁρπάζω**. 2, 19.
δια-σπάω, *draw apart*, *separate*, *scatter*; pass. in Anab. See **σπάω**. 5, 9.
δια-σπείρω, *scatter about*; pass. in Anab., *be scattered*, *routed*; *disperse*. 8, 25.
δια-στάς, **-στάντες**. See **δι-ίστημι**.
δια-τάττω, *arrange* or *draw up* in line of battle. See **τάττω**. 7, 1.
δια-τελέω, (τελῶ, ἐτέλεσα, τετέλεκα, τετέλεσμαι, ἐτελέσθην), *bring to an end*, *finish*, *continue*. 5, 7.
δια-τίθημι, *dispose*, *arrange*. See **τίθημι**. 1, 5.
δια-τρίβω, (τρίψω, ἔτρῑψα, τέτριφα, τέτρῑμμαι, ἐτρίβην), *rub away*; of time, *waste*, *delay*. 5, 9.
διδάσκω, διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, δεδίδαχα, δεδίδαγμαι, ἐδιδάχθην, *teach*, *inform*, *show*. 7, 4.
δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην, *give*. 1, 6.
δι-έβαινον, **δι-έβην**. See **δια-βαίνω**.
δι-ελαύνω, *drive*, *ride*, *march through*, *charge through*. See **ἐλαύνω**. 5, 12.
δι-έρχομαι, *come* or *go through*; λόγος διῆλθε, *a rumor spread through* (the army) or *abroad*. See **ἔρχομαι**. 4, 7.
δι-εσπάσθαι. See **δια-σπάω**.
δι-έχω, *hold apart*, *be apart* or *distant*. See **ἔχω**. 8, 17.
δι-ήλασε. See **δι-ελαύνω**.
δι-ῆλθον. See **δι-έρχομαι**.
δι-ίστημι, *set apart*; mid., *stand apart*; *open the ranks*. See **ἵστημι**. 5, 2.
δίκαιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *just*, *right*; neut. plur., *justice*. 3, 5.
δίκη, -ης, ἡ, *justice*. 3, 10.
διό, = δι' ὅ, *on account of which*, *wherefore*. 2, 21.
δισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *two thousand*. 1, 10.
διφθέρᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, tanned *skin*; *bag*. 5, 10.
δίφρος, -ου, ὁ, wagon or chariot *seat*. 8, 10.
διώκω, *pursue*, *chase*, *rout* an enemy. 4, 7.
διῶρυξ, -υχος, ἡ, *trench*, *canal*. 7, 15.
δοθῆναι, **δοίην**. See **δίδωμι**.
δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι, ἐδόχθην, *think*, *suppose*; δοκεῖ, *it seems*, *seems best*; τὰ δόξαντα, *the things which seemed best* or *were determined upon*. 2, 1.
Δόλοψ, -οπος, ὁ, (only in the plu.), *a Dolopian*. The Dolopians or Dolopes lived in the southwestern parts of the Pindus range. 2, 6.
δόξᾱς, **δόξω**. See **δοκέω**.
δορκάς, -άδος, ἡ, *gazelle*. DORCAS. 5, 2.
δόρυ, -ατος, τό, *spear* used by the Greek hoplite. 8, 18.
δοῦναι, **δούς**. See **δίδωμι**.
δουπέω, -ήσω, *rattle*, *clash*. 8, 18.
δρεπανη-φόρος, -ον, *scythe-bearing*. 7, 10.
δρέπανον, -ου, τό, *scythe*. 8, 10.
δρόμος, -ου, ὁ, *a run*, *race*; δρόμῳ, *with a run*, *at full speed*. 2, 17.

δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην or ἠδυνήθην, *be able, can;* ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο, *as much* or *as well as he could; be worth, valued at.* 1, 4.
δύναμις, -εως, ἡ, *force, ability; military force* or *strength.* 1, 6.
δυνάστης, -ου, ὁ, *man of power, officer, nobleman.* 2, 20.
δυνατός, -ή, -όν, *able, possible;* ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, *as much as possible.* 3, 15.
δύο, *two.* 1, 1.
δυσ-πόρευτος, -ον, *hard* or *difficult to pass through* or *along.* 5, 7.
δῶ, δώσω. See **δίδωμι.**
δώδεκα, *twelve.* 2, 10.
δῶρον, -ου, τό, *gift.* 2, 27.

E.

ἐάν, followed by the subj., *if;* ἐὰν μή, *if not, unless, except.* See **ἤν, ἄν.**
ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς, *sui, of himself.* 1, 5.
ἐάω, ἐάσω, *permit, allow.* 4, 7.
ἐβόᾱ. See **βοάω.**
ἐγγύς, comp. ἐγγύτερον or -τέρω, superl. -τάτω or -γύτατα, *near.* 8, 8.
ἐγενόμην, ἐγιγνόμην. See **γίγνομαι.**
ἐγ-κέλευστος, -ον, *bidden, urged on.* 3, 13.
ἐγ-κρατής, -ές, *in power over, master of.* 7, 7.
ἔγνω. See **γιγνώσκω.**
ἐγώ, *I.* 3, 3.
ἔγωγε, *I for my part, equidem.* 4, 8.
ἔδει, ἐδεῖτο. See **δέω.**
ἔδεισαν. See **δείδω.**
ἔδωκα. See **δίδωμι.**
ἔζων. See **ζάω.**
ἐθελοντής, -ου, ὁ, *volunteer;* as adj., *willing.* 6, 9.
ἐθέλω, -ήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα, *be willing, wish.* 2, 26.
ἐθέμην, ἔθηκε. See **τίθημι.**
ἔθνος, -ους, τό, *tribe, nation;* κατ' ἔθνη, *according to nations, by tribes.* 8, 9.

εἰ, *if, whether;* εἰ μή, *unless;* εἰ δὲ μή, *but if not.* 2, 2.
εἴᾱ, εἴᾱσα. See **ἐάω.**
εἰδέναι. See **οἶδα.**
εἶδον. See **ὁράω.**
εἰδῶ, εἰδώς. See **οἶδα.**
εἴην, εἴησαν. See **εἰμί.**
εἰκάζω, *liken unto, conjecture, suppose, guess.* 6, 1.
εἴκοσι(ν), *twenty.* 2, 5.
εἱλόμην, εἷλον. See **αἱρέω.**
εἰμί, ἔσομαι, *exist;* ἔστι(ν), *it is possible;* ἔστι δ' ὅστις, *some one.* 1, 4.
εἶμι, (the pres. ind. has a fut. meaning), *go, come.* 2, 11.
εἶπον, fut. ἐρῶ, εἴρηκα, εἴρημαι, ἐρρήθην, *say, speak.* See **φημί.** 2, 5.
εἴ-περ, stronger than εἰ, *if really.* 7, 9.
εἴρηκα. See **φημί.**
εἰς, prep. with the acc., *into, against;* with num., *as much as, about.* 1, 2.
εἷς, μία, ἕν, *one.* 2, 6.
εἰσ-άγω, *lead* or *bring into.* 6, 11.
εἰσ-βάλλω, *throw into, enter;* of rivers, etc., *empty into.* See **βάλλω.** 2, 21.
εἰσ-βολή, -ῆς, ἡ, *entrance.* 2, 21.
εἴσ-ειμι, *come* or *go into* or *in, enter.* 7, 8.
εἰσ-ελαύνω, *ride* or *march into, enter.* See **ἐλαύνω.** 2, 26.
εἰσ-ελθεῖν. See **εἰσ-έρχομαι.**
εἰσ-έρχομαι, *come* or *go into, enter.* See **ἔρχομαι.** 2, 21.
εἰσ-ῄειν, -ῇσαν. See **εἴσ-ειμι.**
εἰσ-ήλασα, -ήλασεν. See **εἰσ-ελαύνω.**
εἰσ-ήχθη. See **εἰσ-άγω.**
εἴσομαι, -εται. See **οἶδα.**
εἰσ-πηδάω, -ήσομαι, *leap into.* 5, 8.
εἴσω, *within.* 2, 21.
εἶτα, *then, next, thereupon, afterwards.* 2, 16.
εἶχον. See **ἔχω.**
ἐκ. See **ἐξ.**
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον, *each;* plur., *several, severally.* 1, 6.
εἴων. See **ἐάω.**
ἑκάτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, *either, each* of two. 8, 27.

ἑκατέρωθεν, *from each side, on each* or *both sides.* 8, 13.

ἑκατέρωσε, *to each side, towards both sides.* 8, 14.

ἑκατόν, *one hundred.* 2, 25.

ἐκ-βάλλω, *throw* or *drive out, expel.* See **βάλλω.** 1, 7.

ἐκ-δέρω, (δερῶ, ἔδειρα, δέδαρμαι, ἐδάρην), *skin, flay.* 2, 8.

ἐκεῖ, *there, in that place.* 3, 20.

ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ο, *that, that one; he, she, it.* 1, 4.

ἐκ-καλύπτω, *uncover.* 2, 16.

ἐκκλησίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *assembly.* 3, 2.

ἐκ-κλίνω, *bend out of position; give way.* 8, 19.

ἐκ-κομίζω, *bring* or *fetch out.* 5, 8.

ἐκ-κόπτω, *cut out, off,* or *down.* See **δια-κόπτω.** 4, 10.

ἐκ-κυμαίνω, -ανῶ, *bend* (in any direction) like a wave. 8, 18.

ἐκ-λείπω, *leave, abandon, forsake.* See **λείπω.** Cf. ECLIPSE. 2, 24.

ἐκ-πεπτωκώς. See **ἐκ-πίπτω.**

ἐκ-πίπτω, *fall out, be banished; οἱ ἐκπεπτωκότες, the exiles.* See **πίπτω.** 1, 7.

ἐκ-πλαγείς. See **ἐκ-πλήττω.**

ἐκ-πλήττω, *strike out* of one's senses; *terrify, amaze.* 5, 13.

ἐκ-ποδών, *out from* under *the feet, out of the way.* 6, 9.

ἐκτώμην. See **κτάομαι.**

ἐκ-φεύγω, *flee out* or *forth, escape.* See **φεύγω.** 3, 2.

ἑκών, -οῦσα, -όν, *willing, of one's own accord; willingly.* 1, 9.

ἔλαβον. See **λαμβάνω.**

ἐλαύνω, ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, ἐλήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι, ἠλάθην, *drive, ride, march.* 2, 23.

ἐλάφειος, -ον, *of* or *belonging to a deer; ἐ. κρέᾱ, venison.* 5, 2.

ἑλεῖν, ἑλέσθαι. See **αἱρέω.**

ἐλελίζω, *raise the war-cry.* 8, 18.

ἔλεξα, ἐλέχθην. See **λέγω.**

ἐλευθερίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *freedom.* 7, 3.

ἐλήφθην. See **λαμβάνω.**

ἐλθεῖν, ἐλθών. See **ἔρχομαι.**

Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἡ, *Greece, Hellas.* 2, 8.

Ἕλλην, -ηνος, ὁ, *a Greek.* 1, 2.

Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν, *Greek, Hellenic.* 1, 6.

ἑλληνικῶς, *in the Greek way, in Greek.* 8, 1.

Ἑλλησποντιακός, -ή, -όν, *Hellespontic.* 1, 9.

Ἑλλήσποντος, -ου, ὁ, *the Hellespont.* 1, 9.

ἕλοιμι, -οίμην, -όμενος. See **αἱρέω.**

ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *hope, expectation; ἐλπίδας λέγων, expressing hopes.* 2, 11.

ἑλών. See **ἐλαύνω.**

ἐμαυτοῦ, -ῆς, *of myself.* 3, 10.

ἐμ-βαίνω, *go into, embark.* 3, 17.

ἐμ-βάλλω, *throw into;* of rivers, *flow into, empty; ἐ. πληγάς, inflict blows; ἐ. χῑλόν, give fodder* (to horses); in battle, *charge, fall upon.* See **βάλλω.** 2, 8.

ἔμεινα. See **μένω.**

ἐμός, -ή, -όν, *my.* 6, 6.

ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί. See **ἐγώ.**

ἔμ-παλιν, *back, backwards, back again.* 4, 15.

ἐμ-πίμπλημι, *fill in* or *up, satisfy.* 7, 8.

ἐμπόριον, -ου, τό, *port of trade, market.* 4, 6.

ἔμ-προσθεν, *before, in front.* 8, 23.

ἐν, prep. with the dat., *in, among, on; ἐν τούτῳ, at this time.* 1, 6.

ἕν, ἕνα, ἑνός. See **εἷς.**

ἑν-δέκατος, -η, -ον, *eleventh.* 7, 18.

ἐν-δύω, (δῡσω, ἔδῡσα and ἔδῡν, δέδῡκα, δέδυμαι, ἐδύθην), *enter, put on.* 8, 3.

ἐν-έβαλον. See **ἐμ-βάλλω.**

ἐν-εδρεύω, *lie in ambush.* 6, 2.

ἔν-ειμι, *be in* or *on,* or *there.* 5, 1.

ἕνεκα, prep. with the gen. usually after its case, *on account of, for the sake of.* 4, 5.

ἐνενήκοντα, *ninety.* 5, 4.

ἐν-ῆν. See **ἔν-ειμι.**

ἔνθα, *there, here; where; thereupon.* 5, 8.

ἐνθέμενοι. See **ἐντίθημι.**

ἐνί, ἑνός. See **εἷς.**
ἔνιοι, -*αι*, -*α*, *some*. **5, 8.**
ἐνίοτε, *sometimes, occasionally.* **5, 2.**
ἐννέα, *nine.* **4, 19.**
ἐν-οικέω, *inhabit ; οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες, the inhabitants.* **2, 24.**
ἐν-οράω, *see in* a thing, *perceive, distinguish.* See **ὁράω.** **3, 15.**
ἐνταῦθα, *here, there ; hereupon, then.* **2, 1.**
ἐντελής, -*ές*, *at the end ; full, complete ; in full.* **4, 13.**
ἐντεῦθεν, *thence, thereupon, thereafter.* **2, 7.**
ἐν-τίθημι, *place on* or *in, put on board.* See **τίθημι.** **4, 7.**
ἐν-τυγχάνω, *happen upon, find, fall in with.* See **τυγχάνω.** **2, 27.**
Ἐνῡάλιος, -*ου*, *ὁ*, *Enyālius*, epithet of Ares, as god of destructive warfare. **8, 18.**
ἐξ, prep. with gen., *out of, forth from.* **1, 6.**
ἕξ, *six.* **1, 10.**
ἐξ-αγγέλλω, *bring out word, report.* See **ἀγγέλλω.** **6, 5.**
ἐξ-άγω, *bring* or *conduct out ; induce.* See **ἄγω.** **6, 10.**
ἐξ-αιτέω, *ask* or *demand from* or *back ;* mid., *beg off.* See **αἰτέω.** **1, 3.**
ἑξακισχῑ́λιοι, -*αι*, -*α*, *six thousand.* **7, 11.**
ἑξακόσιοι, -*αι*, -*α*, *six hundred.* **8, 6.**
ἐξ-έβαλον. See **ἐκ-βάλλω.**
ἐξ-ελαύνω, *drive out ;* intransitive, *ride forth, march.* See **ἐλαύνω.** **2, 5.**
ἐξ-ελθεῖν. See **ἐξ-έρχομαι.**
ἐξ-έλιπον. See **ἐκ-λείπω.**
ἐξ-έρχομαι, *come* or *go out, escape.* See **ἔρχομαι.** **3, 17.**
ἐξέτασις, -*εως*, *ἡ*, *review, examination.* **2, 9.**
ἐξ-έφυγον, -**έφυγε.** See **ἐκ-φεύγω.**
ἐξ-ῆλθον. See **ἐξ-έρχομαι.**
ἐξ-ήχθην. See **ἐξ-άγω.**
ἐξ-ικνέομαι, *come forth to, reach.* See **ἀφικνέομαι.** **8, 19.**
ἐξ-ίστημι, mid., *stand out* or *away from.* See **ἵστημι.** **5, 14.**
ἕξομεν. See **ἔχω.**
ἐξ-οπλίζω, *arm fully* or *completely.* **8, 3.**
ἐξοπλισίᾱ, -*ᾱς*, *ἡ*, *state of being fully armed ; full armor.* **7, 10.**
ἔξω, adv., *outside ; τὸ ἔξω, the outside* or *outer.* **4, 4.**
ἔπαθον. See **πάσχω.**
ἐπ-αινέω, -*έσω*, -*ῄνεσα*, *applaud, praise, commend.* **3, 7.**
ἐπεί, conj., *when, after ; since* (causal). **1, 1.**
ἐπειδάν, conj. with subj., *whenever.* **4, 8.**
ἐπειδή, *when indeed, after.* **2, 17.**
ἔπ-ειμι, *be upon* or *over.* **2, 5.**
ἔπ-ειμι, *come against, attack, advance.* **2, 17.**
ἔπεισα, ἐπείσθην. See **πείθω.**
ἔπειτα, *thereupon, then, afterwards, next, moreover.* **3, 10.**
ἐπ-έλιπεν. See **ἐπι-λείπω.**
ἐπ-έστην. See **ἐφ-ίστημι.**
ἐπ-ῄειν, -ῇσαν. See **ἔπ-ειμι** (2).
ἐπ-ῆν. See **ἔπ-ειμι** (1).
ἐπήν, conj. with subj., *when, whenever.* **4, 13.**
ἐπ-ῄνεσαν. See **ἐπ-αινέω.**
ἐπί, prep. ; with gen., *on, upon ; ἐπὶ τεττάρων, in fours, four deep ; ἐφ' ἡμῶν, in our time ;* with dat., *at, upon, for* (purpose); *ἐπὶ τούτῳ, for that object ; ἐπὶ θανάτῳ, to death ; ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, in the power of,* etc. ; with acc., *to, against ; ἐπὶ πολύ, for a great distance.* **1, 3.**
ἐπ-ίᾱσι(ν). See **ἔπ-ειμι** (2).
ἐπι-βουλεύω, *plot against.* **1, 3.**
ἐπιβουλή, -*ῆς*, *ἡ*, *conspiracy, plot.* **1, 8.**
ἐπι-δείκνῡμι, *show, exhibit.* See **ἀπο-δείκνῡμι.** **2, 14.**
ἐπι-θεῖναι, ἐπι-θῶ, -ῇ. See **ἐπι-τίθημι.**
ἐπι-κάμπτω, *bend upon* or *towards, bring together* (the wings of an army). **8, 23.**

ἐπι-κίνδῡνος, *-ον, dangerous.* **3, 19.**

ἐπι-κρύπτω, (*κρύψω, ἔκρυψα, κέκρυμμαι, ἐκρύφθην* or *-φην*), *cover over, conceal.* **1, 6.**

ἐπι-λείπω, *leave behind, fail, give out.* See **λείπω.** **5, 6.**

ἐπι-μελέομαι, *-μελήσομαι, -μεμέλημαι, ἐπ-εμελήθην, care for, give attention to.* **1, 5.**

ἐπίμπλην. See **πίμπλημι.**

ἐπι-πίπτω, *fall upon, attack.* See **πίπτω.** **8, 2.**

ἐπίπονος, *-ον, laborious, difficult.* **3, 19.**

ἐπί-ρ-ρυτος, *-ον, flowed upon, overflowed, well watered.* **2, 22.**

ἐπι-σῑτίζομαι, *lay in provisions.* **4, 19.**

ἐπι-σῑτισμός, *-οῦ, ὁ, a laying in of provisions.* **5, 9.**

ἐπίσταμαι, *ἐπιστήσομαι, ἠπιστήθην, know, know how.* **3, 12.**

ἐπι-στήσᾱς. See **ἐφ-ίστημι.**

ἐπιστολή, *-ῆς, ἡ, letter.* **6, 3.**

ἐπι-σφάττω, *slay upon* or *over.* **8, 29.**

ἐπιτήδειος, *-ᾱ, -ον, suitable, fitting; τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, provisions.* **3, 11.**

ἐπι-τίθημι, *place upon; ἐ. δίκην, inflict punishment on.* See **τίθημι.** **3, 10.**

ἐπι-τρέπω, *turn* or *give over to, entrust, permit.* See **τρέπω.** **2, 19.**

ἐπι-χωρέω, *move upon* or *against; advance.* **2, 17.**

ἐπ-ιών, -οῦσα, -όν. See **ἔπ-ειμι** (2).

ἔπλευσα. See **πλέω.**

ἕπομαι, *ἕψομαι, ἑσπόμην, follow.* **3, 6.**

ἑπτά, *septem, seven.* **2, 5.**

ἑπτα-κόσιοι, *-αι, -α, seven hundred.* **4, 3.**

Ἐπύαξα, *-ης, ἡ, Epyaxa.* **2, 12.**

ἐπύθετο, ἐπυθόμην. See **πυνθάνομαι.**

ἐρεῖ. See **φημί, εἶπον.**

ἔρημος, *-η, -ον,* or *-ος, -ον, deserted, desert; deprived of, without.* **3, 6.**

ἐρίζω, *strive, contend, vie with.* **2, 8.**

ἑρμηνεύς, *-έως, ὁ, interpreter.* **2, 17.**

ἔρομαι, *ἐρήσομαι,* 2 aor. *ἠρόμην, ask;* only fut. and 2 aor. used in Attic Greek. See **ἐρωτάω.** **7, 9.**

ἔρυμα, *-ατος, τό, defence, protection.* **7, 16.**

ἐρυμνός, *-ή, -όν, fortified, strong* (of a fort). **2, 8.**

ἔρχομαι, *ἐλεύσομαι* (Attic fut. *εἶμι*), *ἦλθον, ἐλήλυθα, come, go.* **1, 10.**

ἐρωτάω, *-ήσω, ask.* **3, 18.**

ἐσθίω, *ἔδομαι, ἔφαγον, ἐδήδοκα, ἐδήδεσμαι, ἠδέσθην, eat.* **5, 6.**

ἐσοίμην, ἔσται, ἐστέ, ἐστί(ν). See **εἰμί.**

ἕστηκα, ἑστώς, ἕστην. See **ἵστημι.**

ἔσχατος, *-η, -ον, last, farthest.* **2, 10.**

ἔσχον. See **ἔχω.**

ἔσωθεν, *within; τὸ ἔσωθεν, the inner.* **4, 4.**

ἔσωσα. See **σώζω.**

ἔταξα, ἐτάχθην. See **τάττω.**

ἕτερος, *-ᾱ, -ον, the other, one of two; ὁ ἕτερος — ὁ ἕτερος, the one — the other;* without the article, *another, a second, others.* **2, 20.**

ἐτετῑμήμην. See **τῑμάω.**

ἔτι, *yet, still; hereafter, afterwards; again, any longer.* **1, 4.**

ἕτοιμος, *-η, -ον,* or *-ος, -ον, ready.* **6, 3.**

ἔτρωσα. See **τιτρώσκω.**

ἔτυχον. See **τυγχάνω.**

εὖ, adv., *well.* **3, 4.**

εὐδαιμονίζω, *congratulate.* **7, 3.**

εὐδαίμων, *-ον, having a good genius, fortunate, prosperous.* **2, 6.**

εὐήθεια, *-ᾱς, ἡ, simplicity, folly.* **3, 16.**

εὐήθης, *-ες, simple, foolish.* **3, 16.**

εὐθύς, *immediately, straightway, at once.* **5, 8.**

εὔνοια, *-ᾱς, ἡ, good will.* **8, 29.**

εὐνοϊκῶς, *well disposed, friendly; εὐν. ἔχειν, be well disposed, friendly.* **1, 5.**

εὑρεῖν. See **εὑρίσκω.**

εὑρίσκω, *εὑρήσω, ηὗρον, ηὕρηκα, -ημαι, ηὑρέθην, find.* **2, 25.**

εὖρος, *-ους, τό, width, breadth.* **2, 5.**

εὐταξίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, good order, arrangement, discipline.* **5, 8.**

εὐ-τυχέω, *be successful.* **4, 17.**

Εὐφράτης, -ου, ὁ, *Euphrātes.* See Map. 4, 11.
εὔχομαι, *pray, wish earnestly, vow.* 4, 7.
εὐ-ώδης, -ες, *fragrant.* 5, 1.
εὐ-ώνυμος, -ον, *of good name* or *omen*, euphemistic for ἀριστερός, *left, left side, left wing* (of an army), sc. κέρας. 2, 15.
ἐφάνην. See **φαίνω.**
ἔφασαν. See **φημί.**
Ἔφεσος, -ου, ἡ, *Ephesus.* See Map. 4, 2.
ἐφ-ειστήκεσαν. See **ἐφ-ίστημι.**
ἔφην, ἔφη. See **φημί.**
ἐφ-ίστημι, ἐπι-στήσω, *place* or *set upon* or *in; make halt, bring to a stop;* mid., *stand by* or *over, command.* See **ἵστημι.** 4, 4.
ἔφυγον. See **φεύγω.**
ἐχθρός, -οῦ, ὁ, personal *enemy, foe.* 3, 6.
ἔχω, impf. εἶχον, ἕξω or σχήσω, ἔσχον, ἔσχηκα, ἔσχημαι, (ἐσχέθην), *have, hold;* εὐνοϊκῶς ἐ., *be well disposed;* οὕτως ἐ., *be so, in this condition;* κακῶς ἐ., *be in bad condition;* ἐχόμενος, *taking hold of, coming next, adjoining.* 1, 2.
ἕψομαι. See **ἕπομαι.**
ἑώρων, ἑώρᾱ. See **ὁράω.**
ἕως, ἕω, ἡ, Attic 2d decl., *dawn.* 7, 1.
ἕως, conj., *while, as long as; until.* 3, 11.

Z.

ζάω, -ήσω, pres. infin. ζῆν, *live.* 5, 5.
ζεύγνῡμι, ζεύξω, ἔζευξα, ἔζευγμαι, ἐζύγην, *yoke, join.* Lat. *jungo.* 2, 5.
Ζεύς, Διός, ὁ, *Zeus,* the king of gods and men. 7, 9.
ζῆν. See **ζάω.**
ζηλωτός, -ή, -όν, *enviable, one to be envied.* Cf. Eng. ZEAL, ZEALOUS. 7, 4.
ζώνη, -ης, ἡ, *belt, girdle, zone;* εἰς ζώνην, *for a girdle, for pin money.* 4, 9.

H.

ἤ . . . ἤ, *either . . . or.* 3, 5.
ἤ, *than.* 1, 4.
ἦ, *verily, certainly.* 6, 8.
ἡ. See **ὁ, ἡ, τό.**
ἥ. See **ὅς, ἥ, ὅ.** 2, 4.
ἦ. See **εἰμί.**
ἠγάσθην. See **ἄγαμαι.**
ἡγεμών, -όνος, ὁ, *leader, guide, commander.* 3, 14.
ἡγέομαι, -ήσομαι, *lead, command; think, deem.* 2, 4.
ᾔδειν. See **οἶδα.**
ἡδέως, *sweetly, gladly.* 2, 2.
ἤδη, *now, already, at length, at last.* 2, 1.
ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ, comp. ἡδΐων, superl. ἥδιστος, *sweet, delicious, fine.* 4, 9.
ἥδομαι, ἡσθήσομαι, ἥσθην, *be pleased, be glad.* 2, 18.
ᾔειν, ᾔεσαν. See **εἶμι.**
ἤθελε, ἤθελον. See **ἐθέλω.**
ἥκω, ἥξω, *be come, have come, have arrived.* 2, 1.
ἤλασα, -ε, ἤλαυνον. See **ἐλαύνω.**
ἦλθον. See **ἔρχομαι.** 2, 18.
ἠλί-βατος, -ον, *impassible, precipitous.* 4, 4.
ἡμᾶς, ἡμεῖς, plur. of ἐγώ, *we.*
ἠμελημένως, *carelessly.* 7, 19.
ἡμέρᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *day.* 2, 6.
ἡμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, *our.* 3, 9.
ἡμι-δᾱρεικόν, -ου, τό, *half-daric.* 3, 21.
ἡμι-όλιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *one and one-half, a half more.* 3, 21.
ἥμισυς, -εια, -υ, *half;* as substantive, *a half.* 8, 22.
ἡμι-ωβόλιον, -ου, τό, *a half obol.* See **ὀβολός.** 5, 6.
ἤν, = ἐάν, *if,* with subjunct. 1, 4.
ἦν. See **εἰμί.**
ἠνεσχόμην. See **ἀνέχω.**
ἡνίκα, conj., *when.* 8, 1.
ἡνί-οχος, -ου, ὁ, *rein-holder, driver* of a wagon or chariot. 8, 20.
ἥξειν, ἥξοιμι. See **ἥκω.**

ἧπερ. See **ὅσπερ.**
ἠρξάμην, ἠρχόμην. See **ἄρχω.**
ἤρετο, ἠρόμην. See **ἔρομαι.**
ἠρώτων. See **ἐρωτάω.**
ἦσαν. See **εἰμί.**
ᾐσθάνετο, -όμην, ᾐσθόμην. See **αἰσθάνομαι.**
ἥσθη. See **ἥδομαι.**
ἡσυχῇ, *quietly, noiselessly.* **8, 11.**
ἡττάομαι, *-ήσομαι, be conquered, defeated.* **2, 8.**
ηὐχόμην, -οντο. See **εὔχομαι.**
ηὗρον. See **εὑρίσκω.**

Θ.

θ', for *τέ*, by elision before an initial rough vowel.
θάλαττα, *-ης, ἡ, sea.* **1, 7.**
θάνατος, *-ου, ὁ, death.* **6, 10.**
θαρρέω, *be of good courage, be confident.* **3, 8.**
θαρρύνω, *give encouragement, cheer.* **7, 2.**
θάττων, comp. of *ταχύς*, which see.
θαυμάζω, *-άσομαι, wonder, admire, wonder at.* **2, 18.**
Θαψακηνός, *-οῦ, ὁ, inhabitant of Thapsacus.* **4, 18.**
Θάψακος, *-ου, ἡ, Thapsacus.* See Map. **4, 11.**
θεάομαι, *-άσομαι*, mid. dep., *behold, see, view.* **5, 8.**
θεῖν. See **θέω**, *run.*
θεῖος, *-ᾱ, -ον, divine, miraculous, marvellous.* **4, 18.**
θέμενος, θέντες. See **τίθημι.**
θεός, *-οῦ, ὁ, deity, god.* **4, 8.**
θεράπων, *-οντος, ὁ, servant.* **8, 28.**
θέσθαι. See **τίθημι.**
Θετταλίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, Thessaly*, the most northern country of Greece. **1, 10.**
Θετταλός, *-ου, ὁ, a Thessalian.* **1, 10.**
θέω, *θεύσομαι, run.* **8, 18.**
θεωρέω, *view, review*, e.g., an army. **2, 10.**
θηράω, *-άσω, hunt* wild animals. **5, 2.**
θηρεύω, *hunt, chase, capture.* **2, 7.**
θηρίον, *-ου, τό, wild animal.* **2, 7.**
θνήσκω, *θανοῦμαι, ἔθανον, τέθνηκα, die, be slain.* **6, 11.**
Θόανα, *-ων, τά, Thoana.* See Map. **2, 20.**
θόρυβος, *-ου, ὁ, noise.* **8, 16.**
Θρᾷξ, *-κός, ὁ, a Thracian, a native of Thrace*, whether (1) in southern Europe, or (2) in northwestern Asia Minor, called also Bithynian Thrace. **1, 9.**
Θύμβριον, *-ου, τό, Thymbrium.* See Map. **2, 13.**
θύρᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, gate, door.* **2, 11.**
θύω, *θύσω, ἔθῡσα, τέθυκα, τέθυμαι, ἐτύθην, sacrifice.* **2, 10.**
θώρᾱξ, *-ᾱκος, ὁ, breastplate.* **8, 3.**

I.

ἰάομαι, *-άσομαι, dress* or *heal* a wound. **8, 26.**
ἰᾱτρός, *-οῦ, ὁ, physician.* **8, 26.**
ἰδεῖν, ἰδοῦσα, ἰδών. See **ὁράω.**
ἴδιος, *-ᾱ, -ον, own, private; εἰς τὸ ἴδιον, for private use.* **3, 3.**
ἰδιώτης, *-ου, ὁ, a private person, private soldier.* **3, 11.**
ἱδρόω, *sweat.* **8, 1.**
ἵεμαι, ἵεντο. See **ἵημι.**
ἰέναι, ἴω, ἰών. See **εἶμι.**
ἱερός, *-ά, -όν, sacred; τὰ ἱερά, the omens* indicated by the sacrifices. **8, 15.**
ἵημι, *ἥσω, ἧκα, εἷκα, εἷμαι, εἵθην, send, throw;* mid., *send one's self, rush, hasten.* **5, 8.**
ἱκανός, *-ή, -όν, enough, able.* **1, 5.**
Ἰκόνιον, *-ου, τό, Iconium*, a city of Phrygia. See Map. **2, 19.**
ἴλη, *-ης, ἡ, troop*, chiefly of horse, probably sixteen front and four deep. **2, 16.**
ἵνα, conj. with subj. or opt., *that, in order that.* **3, 4.**
ἰόντες, ἰόντος, ἰόντων, etc. See **εἶμι.**
ἱππεύς, *-έως, ὁ, horseman;* plur., *cavalry.* **2, 4.**
ἱππικός, *-ή, -όν, of cavalry; τὸ ἱππικόν, the cavalry.* **3, 12.**

ἱππό-δρομος, *-ου, ὁ, race-course.* Cf. Eng. HIPPO-DROME. **8, 20.**

ἵππος, *-ου, ὁ, horse ; ἀπὸ ἵππου, on horse-back.* **2, 7.**

ἴσος, *-η, -ον,* cf. Eng. ISO-SCELES, *equal ; ἐν ἴσῳ, in an even line, with equal step.* **8, 11.**

Ἰσσοί, *-ῶν, οἱ, Issi* or *Issus,* in eastern Cilicia, at the northeast corner of the Mediterranean. See Map. **2, 24.**

ἴστε. See **οἶδα.**

ἵστημι, *στήσω, ἔστησα, ἔστην, ἕστηκα, -έσταμαι, ἐστάθην,* trans. tenses (pres., impf., fut., 1 aor.), *cause to stand, halt, set, place ; ἕστηκα, I am standing ; ἔστην, I stood, halted, stopped.* **2, 15.**

ἱστίον, *-ου, τό, sail.* **5, 3.**

ἰσχῡρός, *-ά, -όν, strong.* **5, 9.**

ἰσχῡρῶς, *strongly, exceedingly.* **2, 21.**

ἰσχύς, *-ύος, ἡ, vis, strength.* **8, 22.**

ἰχθύς, *-ύος, ὁ, fish.* **4, 9.**

ἴχνος, *-ους, τό, trace, track.* **6, 1.**

Ἰωνίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, Ionia,* the most central part of western Asia Minor. **2, 21.**

Ἰωνικός, *-ή, -όν, Ionian.* **1, 6.**

K.

καθ', by elision for *κατά,* before a rough vowel.

καθ-έζομαι, impf. *ἐκαθεζόμην, sit down, halt, rest.* **5, 9.**

καθ-εύδω, *lie down to sleep, sleep.* **3, 11.**

καθ-ηδυ-παθέω, *squander* or *waste in luxury.* **3, 3.**

καθ-ήκω, *come down, extend down ; belong to,* as a duty. See **ἥκω. 4, 4.**

κάθ-ημαι, *sit down, sit ;* of an army, *be stationed.* **3, 12.**

καθ-ίστημι, *set down, place, arrange,* of forces ; mid., with 2 aor. act., *take one's place, be established, be settled.* See **ἵστημι. 1, 3.**

καθ-οράω, *κατ-εῖδον, look down on* from above, *observe, discern.* See **ὁράω. 8, 26.**

καί, *et, and, even, also ;* with partic., *although ; καί . . . καί, τέ . . . καί, both . . . and.* **1, 1.**

καί-περ, with partic., *although.* **6, 10.**

καιρός, *-οῦ, ὁ, fitting time* or *occasion.* **7, 9.**

καί-τοι, conj., *and assuredly, and yet.* **4, 8.**

καίω or **κᾱ́ω**, *καύσω, ἔκαυσα, κέκαυκα, -μαι, ἐκαύθην, burn.* **6, 1.**

κακίους. See **κακός.**

κάκιστος. See **κακός.**

κακός, *-ή, -όν,* comp. *κακῑ́ων,* superl. *κάκιστος, bad, base, cowardly.* **3, 18.**

κακῶς, *badly, ill ; κ. ποιέω, harm, wrong ; κ. ἔχω, be in a bad condition ; κ. πρᾱ́ττω, fare badly.* **4, 8.**

κάλαμος, *-ου, ὁ, reed.* **5, 1.**

καλέω, *καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην, call, summon, invite.* **2, 2.**

καλός, *-ή, -όν, beautiful, honorable ;* of omens, *favorable.* **2, 22.**

καλῶς, *beautifully, well, honorably ; κ. πρᾱ́ττω, fare well, succeed ; κ. ἔχω, be well, be in a good condition.* **2, 2.**

κᾱ̓́ν, by crasis for *καὶ ἄν.*

κάνδυς, *-υος, ὁ,* a Persian long outer garment, *robe.* It was made of woolen cloth, with loose, flowing sleeves, and was colored purple or some other bright color. **5, 8.**

καπηλεῖον, *-ου, τό, booth, shop.* **2, 24.**

καπίθη, *-ης, ἡ, capithe,* a Persian measure, equal to $2\frac{1}{4}$ *choenixes,* or 2.3 litres, *about 2 quarts.* **5, 6.**

Καππαδοκίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, Cappadocia,* a province of central Asia Minor, north of the Taurus mountains. See Map. **2, 20.**

Κάρσος, *-ου, ὁ, the Carsus.* See Map. **4, 4.**

κάρφη, *-ης, ἡ, hay.* **5, 10.**

Καστωλός, *-ου, ἡ, Castōlus,* a plain in western Asia Minor, near Sardis. **1, 2.**

κατά, prep.; with gen., *down from,*

down, down along; with acc., *down along, along, against*; κατὰ γῆν, *by land*; κατ' ἔθνη, *according to tribes* or *nations*; κατὰ χώρᾱν, *in* (*the proper*) *place*. **1, 7.**

κατα-βαίνω, *come* or *go down, descend, dismount.* See **βαίνω**. **2, 22.**

κατ-αγάγοι. See **κατ-άγω**.

κατ-άγω, *lead* or *bring down* or *back, restore*; mid., *march* or *go back, return.* See **ἄγω**. **1, 7.**

κατα-δύω, *cause to sink*; intr., *sink.* See **ἐνδύω**. **3, 17.**

κατα-θεάομαι, -ᾱ́σομαι, *gaze down upon, look out towards.* **8, 14.**

κατα-καίνω, -κανῶ, *slay, put to death.* **6, 2.**

κατα-καίω or **-κάω**, *burn down, burn completely.* See **καίω**. **4, 10.**

κατα-κεκόψεσθαι. See **κατα-κόπτω**.

κατα-κόπτω, *cut down, cut to pieces.* See **κόπτω**. **2, 25.**

κατα-λαμβάνω, *seize, take possession of, catch, overtake.* See **λαμβάνω**. **3, 14.**

κατα-λείπω, *leave behind, leave, abandon, desert.* See **λείπω**. **2, 18.**

κατα-λεύω, *stone to death.* **5, 14.**

κατα-ληφ-, -ληψ-. See **κατα-λαμβάνω**.

κατα-λιπόντες, -λιπών. See **κατα-λείπω**.

κατ-αλλάττω, (ἀλλάξω, ἤλλαξα, ἤλλαχα, ἤλλαγμαι, ἠλλάγην or -χθην), *exchange, change* a person from hostility to friendship, *reconcile*; pass., *become reconciled.* **6, 1.**

κατα-λύω, *dissolve, end*; of an army, *break ranks, halt*; κ. πρός, *make peace with.* **1, 10.**

κατα-νοέω, *consider* or *watch carefully.* **2, 4.**

καταντιπέρᾱς, adv., with the gen., *opposite.* **1, 9.**

κατα-πετρόω, *stone to death.* **3, 2.**

κατα-πηδάω, -ήσομαι, *leap down.* **8, 3.**

κατα-πρᾱ́ττω, *do well, accomplish, succeed.* See **πρᾱ́ττω**. **2, 2.**

κατα-σκέπτομαι, -σκέψομαι, κατ-εσκεψάμην, κατ-έσκεμμαι, *view thoroughly, inspect, review, reconnoitre.* **5, 12.**

κατα-στήσομαι, -σω. See **καθ-ίστημι**.

κατα-τίθημι, *lay down, deposit, put away*, e.g., a treasure. See **τίθημι**. **3, 3.**

κατα-φανής, -ές, gen. -οῦς, *distinctly visible.* **8, 8.**

κατα-φεύγω, *flee for refuge, escape.* **5, 13.**

κατ-έβην. See **κατα-βαίνω**.

κατ-εθέμην. See **κατα-τίθημι**.

κατ-ελήφθην. See **κατα-λαμβάνω**.

κατ-έστην. See **καθ-ίστημι**.

κατ-ιδεῖν. See **καθ-οράω**.

καῦμα, -ατος, τό, (καίω), *heat.* **7, 6.**

Καΰστρου πεδίον, -ου, τό, *Caÿster Plain* or *Caÿsterfield* (cf. *Springfield*), a city in Phrygia. See Map. **2, 11.**

κᾱ́ω. See **καίω**.

κέγχρος, -ου, ὁ, *panic*, a kind of *millet*, a small grain valued as a food. **2, 22.**

κεῖμαι, κείσομαι, *lie, lie fallen.* **8, 27.**

κέκτημαι -σθε. See **κτάομαι**.

Κελαιναί, -ῶν, αἱ, *Celænæ*, a city in Phrygia. **2, 7.**

κελεύω, -σω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκελεύσθην, *order, bid, command.* **1, 11.**

κενός, -ή, -όν, *empty*; foll. by gen., *without.* **8, 20.**

Κεράμων ἀγορά, -ᾶς, ἡ, *Ceramon Agora, Tile Market* (cf. *Newmarket*), a market-town in Phrygia. **2, 10.**

κεράννῡμι, (κεράσω), ἐκέρασα, κέκρᾱμαι, ἐκρᾱ́θην or ἐκεράσθην, *mix, mingle*, usually wine and water. **2, 13.**

κέρας, -ᾱτος or -ως, τό, *horn*; *wing*, of an army. **7, 1.**

κεφαλή, -ῆς, ἡ, *head.* **8, 6.**

Κιλικίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *Cilicia*, the southeastern province of Asia Minor. **2, 20.**

Κίλιξ, -ικος, ὁ, *a Cilician.* **2, 12.**

Κίλισσα, -ης, ἡ, *Cilician woman.* **2, 12.**

κινδῡνεύω, *incur danger.* **1, 4.**

κίνδῡνος, -ου, ὁ, *danger.* **7, 5.**

Κλέαρχος, -ου, ὁ, *Clearchus.* **1, 9.**

Κορσωτή, -ῆς, ἡ, *Corsōte*. See Map. 5, 4.

κνημίς, -ῖδος, ἡ, *greave, leggin*, worn to protect the lower part of the leg, and made usually of metal lined with some soft material. 2, 16.

Κολοσσαί, -ῶν, αἱ, *Colossae*, in Phrygia, seat of the church to which Paul wrote the "Epistle to the Colossians." 2, 6.

κονι-ορτός, -οῦ, ὁ, *cloud of dust*. 8, 8.

κόπρος, -ου, ἡ, *dung*. 6, 1.

κοῦφος, -η, -ον, *light*, i.e., not heavy; of grass, *dry*. 5, 10.

κράνος, -ους, τό, *helmet*. Cf. Eng. CRANIUM. 2, 16.

κρατέω, -ήσω, *have power over, be master of, conquer*. 7, 8.

κράτιστος. See **κρείττων**. 5, 8.

κράτος, -ους, τό, *strength, power*; κατὰ κράτος, *with all one's strength*; ἀνὰ κράτος, *at full speed*. 8, 1.

κραυγή, -ῆς, ἡ, *shout*. 2, 17.

κρέας, κρέως, τό, *flesh, meat*. 5, 2.

κρείττων, κράτιστος, comp. and superl. of ἀγαθός, *stronger, superior, better, higher in rank*. 2, 26.

κρεμάννῡμι, *hang up, suspend*. 2, 8.

κρήνη, -ης, ἡ, *spring, well, fountain*. 2, 13.

Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ, *a Cretan, a native of Crete*, a large island in the Mediterranean. 2, 9.

κρῑθή, -ῆς, ἡ, usually plur., *barley*. 2, 22.

κρίνω, κρινῶ, ἔκρῑνα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην, *judge, decide*. Cf. Eng. CRITIC. 5, 11.

κρίσις, -εως, ἡ, *trial*. Cf. Eng. CRISIS. 6, 5.

κρύπτω, κρύψω, ἔκρυψα, κέκρυμμαι, ἐκρύφθην or -φην, *hide, conceal*. Cf. Eng. CRYPT. 4, 12.

κτάομαι, *acquire*; perf. κέκτημαι, *I have acquired for myself, possess*. 7, 3.

Κτησίᾱς, -ου, ὁ, *Ctesias*. 8, 26.

Κύδνος, -ου, ὁ, *Cydnus*. See Map. 2, 23.

κύκλος, -ου, ὁ, *circle*. Cf. CYCLE, BICYCLE. 5, 4.

κυκλόω, *encircle, surround*. 8, 13.

κύκλωσις, -εως, ἡ, *a surrounding, an encircling*. 8, 23.

Κῦρος, -ου, ὁ, *Cyrus*. 1, 1.

κωλύω, *prevent, hinder*. 2, 21.

κώμη, -ης, ἡ, *village*. 4, 9.

Λ.

λαβεῖν, -οι, -ών. See **λαμβάνω**.

λαθεῖν. See **λανθάνω**.

λάθρᾱ or **λάθρᾳ**, *secretly, without the knowledge of*. 3, 8.

Λακεδαιμόνιος, -ου, ὁ, *a Spartan, Lacedæmonian*. The Lacedæmonians lived in the southeastern part of the Peloponnēsus. 1, 9.

λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, εἴληφα, εἴλημμαι, ἐλήφθην, *take, seize, capture*. 1, 2.

λαμπρότης, -ητος, ἡ, *brightness, splendor*. 2, 18.

λανθάνω, λήσω, ἔλαθον, λέληθα, -σμαι, *escape the notice of*; generally used with a participle, and then best translated *secretly*, the participle being translated as the main verb, e.g., τρεφόμενος ἐλάνθανε, *he was secretly nourished*. 1, 9.

λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, (εἴρηκα), λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην, *say, speak*. 2, 8.

λείπω, λείψω, ἔλιπον, λέλοιπα, λέλειμμαι, ἐλείφθην, *leave*. 2, 21.

λελοιπώς. See **λείπω**.

λέξων. See **λέγω**.

λευκο-θώρᾱξ, -ᾱκος, ὁ, ἡ, *having a white breastplate* or *corselet*. See **θώρᾱξ**. 8, 9.

λευκός, -ή, -όν, *bright, white*. 8, 8.

ληφθῆναι, λήψομαι. See **λαμβάνω**.

λίθος, -ου, ὁ, *stone*. LITHO-GRAPH. 5, 13.

λῑμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *hunger*. 5, 5.

λόγος, -ου, ὁ, *word, rumor, argument*. 4, 7.

λόγχη, -ης, ἡ, *spear-head, spear*. 8, 8.

λοχᾱγίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *a captaincy, position of captain.* **4, 15.**

λοχ-ᾱγός, -οῦ, ὁ, *leader of a company* (λόχος), *captain.* **7, 2.**

λόχος, -ου, ὁ, *company* of soldiers, consisting of 100 men. **2, 25.**

Λῡδίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *Lydia*, the west central province of Asia Minor. **2, 5.**

Λύδιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *Lydian.* **5, 6.**

Λύκαια (ἱερά), -ων, τά, *the Lycæan Festival*, celebrated by the Arcadians each spring in honor of Zeus, on the Lycæan range. **2, 10.**

Λυκᾱονίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *Lycaonia*, a country in the central part of Asia Minor. **2, 19.**

λῡμαίνομαι, λῡμανοῦμαι, *ruin, spoil.* **3, 16.**

λῡπέω, *pain, grieve, trouble, annoy.* **3, 8.**

M.

μά, adv. of swearing followed by acc., *nay, surely;* μὰ τοὺς θεούς, *nay, by the gods.* **4, 8.**

Μαίανδρος, -ου, ὁ, *the Mæander river.* Meander. **2, 7.**

μακρός, -ά, -όν, *long.* **5, 7.**

μάλα, comp. μᾶλλον, superl. μάλιστα, *very, exceedingly;* comp. *rather, more;* superl. *most especially, most, best.* **1, 4.**

μᾶλλον. See **μάλα.**

μάλιστα. See **μάλα.**

μάντις, -εως, ὁ, *prophet, soothsayer.* **7, 18.**

Μαρσύᾱς, -ου, ὁ, *Mársyas, the Mársyas river.* **2, 8.**

Μάσκᾱς, -ᾱ (Dor. gen.), ὁ, *Mascas*, a river or canal near Corsōte. See Map. **5, 4.**

μαστός, -οῦ, ὁ, *the breast.* **4, 17.**

μάχαιρα, -ᾱς, ἡ, *sword, sabre, dagger*, with only one edge sharp, the dull edge being straight, the sharp one curved; this weapon was worn at the belt. **8, 7.**

μάχη, -ης, ἡ, *battle, fight.* **2, 8.**

μάχομαι, μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, μεμάχημαι, *fight, fight against*, with the dat. **5, 9.**

μέ, μ', μοῦ, μοί. See **ἐγώ.**

μεγάλη. See **μέγας.**

μεγαλο-πρεπῶς, *in a courtly* or *magnificent way, magnificently, munificently.* **4, 17.**

Μεγαρεύς, -έως, ὁ, *a Megarian, a native of Megara.* Megara was the capital of Megaris, a country which lay west of Attica. **2, 3.**

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, *great, large;* τὸ μέγιστον, *chiefly.* **2, 4.**

Μεγαφέρνης, -ου, ὁ, *Megaphernes.* **2, 20.**

μεθ', by elision for μετά, before a rough vowel.

μείζων, *larger, greater;* comp. of μέγας. **2, 4.**

μεῖναι, aor. inf. act. of μένω.

μελανίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *blackness, black object.* **8, 8.**

μέλει, μελήσει, ἐμέλησε, μεμέληκε, (impersonal forms of μέλω, *care for*), *it is a care, concerns*, followed by the dat. **4, 16.**

μελίνη, -ης, ἡ, *millet, panic*, usually plur. **2, 22.**

μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα, *be about to, intend, be likely.* **4, 16.**

μέλω, μελήσω, ἐμέλησα, μεμέληκα, -ημαι, ἐμελήθην, *care for.* **8, 1.**

μέμνημαι, μεμνήσεσθαι. See **μιμνήσκω.**

Μένων, -ωνος, ὁ, *Menon.* **2, 6.**

μέν, postpos. particle, *on the one hand;* reg. foll. by an adversative δέ, *on the other hand.* See Note, Less. I. **1, 1.**

μέν-τοι, *assuredly, however, nevertheless.* **3, 9.**

μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα, *remain.* **2, 6.**

μέρος, -ους, τό, *part, portion.* **5, 8.**

μεσ-ημβρίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *mid-day; south.* **7, 6.**

μέσος, -η, -ον, *middle;* τὸ μέσον, *the middle.* **2, 7.**

μεστός, *-ή, -όν, full.* **4, 19.**
μετά, prep. with gen. or acc.; with gen., *with; μετὰ ἀδικίᾱς, with, by means of, injustice;* with acc., *after.* **2, 24.**
μετα-μέλει, *poenitet, it repents; μ. σοι, you repent.* **6, 7.**
μεταξύ, adv., used as prep. with the gen., *between.* **7, 15.**
μετά-πεμπτος, *-ον, sent after.* **4, 3.**
μετα-πέμπω, *send after;* com. mid., *send after* to come to one's self. See **πέμπω. 1, 2.**
μετέωρος, *-ον, in mid air, raised* from the ground. METEOR. **5, 8.**
μέχρι, adv., as a prep. with the gen., *up to, as far as, until.* **4, 13.**
μή, neg. adv. and conj., *not, that not, lest; μή* is used of something aimed at or contingent, *οὐ* is used to express negation as absolute and unconditional; *ὅποι μή, except where; εἰ μή, unless, except.* **1, 10.**
μηδέ, *nor, ne . . . quidem, not even,* **3, 14.**
μηδείς, *-μία, -έν, not even one, no one.* **3, 15.**
Μηδίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, Media,* the country lying north and east of the Tigris river. **7, 15.**
μη-κ-έτι, *not again, no longer.* **2, 27.**
μῆκος, *-ους, τό, length.* **5, 9.**
μήν, *μηνός, ὁ, month.* **1, 10.**
μή-ποτε, *not at any time, never.* **1, 4.**
μήτε, *and not; μήτε . . . μήτε, neither . . . nor.* **3, 14.**
μήτηρ, *-τρός, ἡ, mother.* **1, 3.**
Μίδᾱς, *-ου, ὁ, Midas.* **2, 13.**
μῑκρός, *-ά, -όν, small; μῑκρόν,* adv. acc., *narrowly.* **3, 2.**
Μῑλήσιος, *-ία, -ον, Milesian, a native of Milētus.* **1, 11.**
Μίλητος, *-ου, ἡ, Milētus,* an Ionian city. **1, 6.**
μιμνήσκω, *μνήσω, ἔμνησα, μέμνημαι, ἐμνήσθην, remind;* perf. mid., *remember.* **7, 5.**
μισθο-δότης, *-ου, ὁ, pay-giver, paymaster.* **3, 9.**
μισθός, *-οῦ, ὁ, pay, wages.* **1, 10.**
μισθο-φόρος, *-ου, ὁ, pay-receiving, mercenary* (soldier). **4, 3.**
μισθόω, *hire.* **3, 1.**
μνᾶ, *-ᾶς, ἡ, mina,* = 100 *drachmæ,* $\frac{1}{60}$ of a talent, about $18. **4, 13.**
μόνος, *-η, -ον, alone, only.* **4, 15.**
Μῡρίανδος, *-ου, ἡ, Myriandus.* **4, 6.**
μῡριάς, *-άδος, ἡ, myriad,* 10,000. **4, 5.**
μύριοι, *-αι, -α,* 10,000. **1, 9.**
Μύσιος, *-ᾱ, -ον, Mysian.* Mysia lay in the northwest part of Asia Minor. **2, 10.**
Μυσός, *-οῦ, ὁ,* same as the preceding. **6, 7.**

N.

ναύ-αρχος, *-ου, ὁ, ship-commander, admiral, captain.* **4, 2.**
ναῦς, *νεώς, ἡ, navis, ship.* **4, 2.**
ναυτικός, *-ή, -όν, naval.* **3, 12.**
νέος, *-ᾱ, -ον, novus, young.* **1, 1.**
νεφέλη, *-ης, ἡ, cloud.* **8, 8.**
νεώς, νεῶν. See **ναῦς.**
νή, adv. of swearing, used in affirmative oaths, *yea by; νὴ Δία, yea, by Zeus.* **7, 9.**
νῆες. See **ναῦς.**
νῑκάω, *-ήσω, conquer.* **2, 8.**
νίκη, *-ης, ἡ, victory.* **5, 8.**
νομίζω, *νομιῶ, suppose, believe, think.* **1, 8.**
νόμος, *-ου, ὁ, custom.* **2, 15.**
νοῦς (*νόος*), *-οῦ (-όου), ὁ, mind.* **5, 9.**
νύκτες, etc. See **νύξ.**
νῦν, *nunc, now.* **4, 14.**
νύξ, *νυκτός, ἡ, night; μέσαι νύκτες, midnight.* **7, 1.**

Ξ.

Ξενίᾱς, *-ου, ὁ, Xenias.* **1, 2.**
ξενικός, *-ή, -όν, of mercenaries; τὸ ξ., the mercenary army.* **2, 1.**
ξένος, *-ου, ὁ, guest-friend, mercenary.* **1, 10.**

Ξενοφῶν, *-ῶντος, ὁ, Xénophon.* **8, 15.**
Ξέρξης, *-ου, ὁ, Xerxes.* **2, 8.**
ξύλινος, *-η, -ον, wooden.* **8, 9.**
ξύλον, *-ου, τό, wood, piece of wood.* **5, 12.**

O.

ὁ, ἡ, τό, the article, *the; ὁ μέν . . . ὁ δέ, this . . . that, the one . . . the other, the former . . . the latter; ὁ δέ, and he, but he;* frequently poss., e.g., *πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν, to his brother;* freq. = *those who,* e.g., *τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας,* THOSE WHO *had been exiled.* **1, 1.**
ὅ. See **ὅς.**
ὀβολός, *-οῦ, ὁ, obol,* about 3 cents. **5, 6.**
ὅδε, *ἥδε, τόδε, this, this one, the following.* **1, 9.**
ὁδός, *-οῦ, ἡ, way, route, journey.* **2, 13.**
ὅθεν, *whence.* **2, 8.**
οἱ, see **ὁ.** **οἵ**, see **ὅς.** **οἱ**, encl., see **οὗ.**
οἶδα, *I know;* perf. with a pres. meaning; *χάριν οἶδα, be grateful;* fut., *εἴσομαι.* **3, 5.**
οἴκαδε, *homeward.* **2, 2.**
οἰκέω, *inhabit; πόλις οἰκουμένη, an inhabited city.* **1, 9.**
οἰκο-δομέω, *build* (house, palace, etc.). **2, 8.**
οἴκοι, *at home; οἱ οἴκοι, those at home.* **1, 10.**
οἰκτείρω, *pity.* **4, 7.**
οἶμαι, *think;* often parenthetic, *methinks.* See **οἴομαι.** **3, 6.**
οἶνος, *-ου, ὁ, vinum, wine.* **2, 13.**
οἴομαι, *οἰήσομαι, ᾠήθην, think, suppose.* See **οἶμαι.** **3, 6.**
οἷος, *-ᾱ, -ον, qualis, of what* or *which kind* or *nature.* **3, 13.**
οἷόσ-περ, *-ᾱπερ, -όνπερ,* stronger than *οἷος, of just which kind* or *nature.* **3, 18.**
οἵτινες. See **ὅστις.**
οἴχομαι, *οἰχήσομαι,* pres. as perf., *be gone, have gone.* **4, 8.**
ὀκνέω, *hesitate, be reluctant.* **3, 17.**
ὀκτακόσιοι, *-αι, -α, eight hundred.* **2, 9.**
ὀκτώ, *eight.* **2, 6.**
ὄλεθρος, *-ου, ὁ, destruction.* **2, 26.**
ὀλίγος, *-η, -ον, small, little* (in quantity); plur., *few; ὀλίγου (δεῖ), almost.* **5, 14.**
ὁλκάς, *-άδος, ἡ, freight-vessel, merchantman.* **4, 6.**
ὅλος, *-η, -ον, whole, entire.* **2, 17.**
Ὀλύνθιος, *-ου, ὁ, an Olynthian, native of Olynthus,* an important city in the Chalcidian peninsula. **2, 6.**
ὁμαλής, *-ές, even, level.* **5, 1.**
ὁμαλῶς, *evenly.* **8, 14.**
ὁμοίως, *in like manner.* **3, 12.**
ὁμολογέω, *acknowledge, confess, admit.* **6, 7.**
ὁμο-τράπεζος, *-ου, ὁ,* adj. used as noun, *table-companion.* **8, 25.**
ὅμως, *yet, still, nevertheless.* **3, 21.**
ὅν. See **ὅς.**
ὄνομα, *-ατος, τό, name.* **2, 23.**
ὄνος, *-ου, ὁ, ass; ὄ. ἀλέτης, millstone.* **5, 2.**
ὄντος, **-ες**, etc. See **εἰμί.**
ὅ-περ. See **ὅσ-περ.**
ὅ-πῃ, *whither, in what way* or *direction.* **3, 6.**
ὄπισθεν, *from behind, in the rear.* **7, 9.**
ὁπλίζω, *arm, put on armor.* **8, 6.**
ὁπλίτης, *-ου, ὁ, heavy-armed soldier, hoplite.* **1, 2.**
ὅπλον, *-ου, τό,* plur., *τὰ ὅπλα, armor, arms.* **2, 2.**
ὁπόσος, *-η, -ον, how large soever; as much as;* plur., *how many soever, as many as.* **1, 6.**
ὁπότε, *whenever, when* (indefinite). **2, 7.**
ὅπου, *wherever; ὅπου μή, except where.* **3, 6.**
ὅπως, adv., *how, in whatever way;* conj., *that, in order that.* **1, 4.**
ὁράω, *ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ἑόρᾱκα* or *ἑώρᾱκα, ὄπωπα, ἑώρᾱμαι* or *ὦμμαι, ὤφθην, see.* **2, 18.**
ὀργή, *-ῆς, ἡ, anger.* **5, 8.**

ὀργίζομαι, *be angry, become angry.* **2, 26.**
ὀργυιά, *-ᾶς, ἡ, fathom, six feet.* **7, 14.**
ὄρθιος, *-ίᾱ, -ον, steep, straight up, erect.* **2, 21.**
ὁρμάω, mid., *start, set out from.* **1, 9.**
ὁρμέω, *lie at anchor.* **4, 3.**
Ὀρόντᾱς, -ᾱ (Dor. gen.), *ὁ, Orontas.* **6, 1.**
ὄρος, *-ους, τό, mountain.* **2, 21.**
ὀρυκτός, *-ή, -όν, dug.* See **ὀρύττω.** **7, 14.**
ὀρύττω, *ὀρύξω, ὤρυξα, ὀρώρυχα, -γμαι, ὠρύχθην, dig.* **5, 5.**
ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, *who, which; οὗ*, as adv., *where; ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, as much as possible.* **1, 2.**
ὅσος, *-η, -ον, quantus, how much* or *great;* plur., *as many as; πάντες ὅσοι, all who;* with numerals, *ὅσον, about.* **1, 2.**
ὅσοσ-περ, *ὅσηπερ, ὅσονπερ*, stronger than *ὅσπερ, just as much* or *many as.* **7, 9.**
ὅσ-περ, *ἥπερ, ὅπερ*, stronger than *ὅς, who* or *which very, the very one who* or *thing which.* **4, 5.**
ὅσ-τις, *ἥτις, ὅ τι, whoever, whichever, whatever.* **1, 5.**
ὅταν, (*ὅτε + ἄν*), with the subj., *whenever, when.* **2, 9.**
ὅτε, *when.* **2, 9.**
ὅτι, conj., *that, because;* with the superl., intensive, e.g., *ὅτι πλείστους, as many as possible*, cf. *ὡς.* **1, 6.**
ὅ τι, ὅτου, ὅτῳ. See **ὅστις.**
οὐ, *οὐκ, οὐχ, not* (denying a fact); *οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, they refused to go.* **1, 8.**
οὗ. See **ὅς.** **2, 22.**
οὗ, οἷ, ἕ, encl., *sui, sibi, se, of himself* or *herself*, etc. **1, 8.**
οὐδέ, *οὐδ᾽, and not, nor; = ne . . . quidem, not even.* **2, 25.**
οὐδ-είς, *οὐδεμία, οὐδέν*, gen. *οὐδενός, οὐδεμιᾶς*, (*οὐδέ + εἷς*), *not even one, not any, none, no;* as a substantive, *nobody, nothing.* **1, 8.**
οὐκ. See **οὐ.**
οὐκ-έτι, *no longer.* **8, 17.**
οὐκοῦν, *therefore, then;* in questions, *so then?* **6, 7.**
οὖν, postpositive, *accordingly, therefore, then; be this as it may, at any rate.* **1, 2.**
οὔ-ποτε, *not ever, never.* **3, 5.**
οὔ-πω, *not yet.* **5, 12.**
οὐ-πώ-ποτε, *not yet at any time, never before.* **4, 18.**
οὗς. See **ὅς.**
οὖσα, οὖσιν. See **εἰμί.**
οὔτε, *nor; οὔτε . . . οὔτε, neither . . . nor.* **2, 26.**
οὗτινος. See **ὅστις.**
οὗτος, *αὕτη, τοῦτο, this, that; καὶ ταῦτα, and that too.* **1, 7.**
οὑτοσ-ί, *αὑτηί, τουτί*, strengthened form of *οὗτος, this one here, this . . . here.* **6, 6.**
οὕτω(ς), *thus*, generally as precedes. **1, 5.**
ὀφείλω, *ὀφειλήσω, ὠφείλησα* or *ὤφελον, ὠφείληκα, ὠφειλήθην, owe;* pass., *be owed, be due.* **2, 11.**
ὄφελος, *τό*, only in nom. and acc., *use, benefit.* **3, 11.**
ὀφθαλμός, *-οῦ, ὁ, eye.* **8, 27.**
ὀχυρός, *-ά, -όν*, (*ἔχω*), *tenable, strong;* of a stronghold, *fortified.* **2, 22.**

Π.

παθεῖν. See **πάσχω.**
πάθος, *-ους, τό, suffering, experience.* **5, 14.**
παιᾱνίζω, *sing a pæan* or *war-song.* **8, 17.**
παῖς, *παιδός, ὁ* or *ἡ, child; boy, girl; son.* **1, 1.**
παίω, *παίσω* or *παιήσω, ἔπαισα, πέπαικα, ἐπαίσθην, strike.* **8, 26.**
πάλαι, *long ago, previously.* **4, 12.**
πάλιν, *back, again, over again.* **1, 3.**
παλτόν, *-οῦ, τό, javelin*, Persian *spear*, light and easily handled. **5, 15.**

πᾶν. See **πᾶς.**

παντά-πᾱσι(ν), *all in all, wholly.* **2, 1.**

πάντῃ, *on every side, in every way, all together.* **2, 22.**

παντοδαπός, -ή, -όν, *of every kind.* **2, 22.**

παντοῖος, -ᾱ, -ον, *of every kind, various, manifold.* **5, 2.**

πάνυ, *wholly, very.* **4, 10.**

παρά, prep. with the gen., dat., and acc., *beside;* (*a*) with gen., *from beside, from;* (*b*) with dat., *beside, at, with;* (*c*) with acc., *to the side of, to, beside, along.* **1, 5.**

παρ-αγγέλλω, *pass along a message* or *an order, pass the word along, send word to, order, command.* See **ἀγγέλλω. 1, 6.**

παρα-γίγνομαι, *become by the side of, arrive.* See **γίγνομαι. 1, 11.**

παράδεισος, -ου, ὁ, (a Persian word, cf. PARADISE), *park.* **2, 7.**

παρ-αινέω, *advise; exhort.* See **αἰνέω. 7, 2.**

παρα-καλέω, *call to one's side, invite, exhort.* See **καλέω. 6, 5.**

παρα-κελεύομαι, *bid, urge on, encourage.* See **κελεύω. 7, 9.**

παρα-μηρίδιον, -ου, τό, adj. used subst., *thighpiece, armor for the thigh.* **8, 6.**

παρα-πλήσιος, -ίᾱ, -ον, or -ος, -ον, *somewhat like, similar, resembling.* **3, 18.**

παρασάγγης, -ου, ὁ, (a Persian word), *parasang,* = 30 stadia, $5\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers, a little more than 3 miles, *league.* **2, 5.**

παρα-σκευάζω, mid., *prepare, make ready.* **8, 1.**

παρασκευή, -ῆς, ἡ, *preparation.* **2, 4.**

παρα-τείνω, (τενῶ, ἔτεινα, τέτακα, τέταμαι, ἐτάθην,) *stretch along, extend.* **7, 15.**

παρ-εγενόμην, -ετο. See **παρα-γίγνομαι.**

πάρ-ειμι, *be by* or *on hand, be present; arrive.* **1, 1.**

παρ-ελαύνω, *march* or *drive by* or *along.* See **ἐλαύνω. 2, 16.**

παρ-έρχομαι, *go along, past* or *through.* See **ἔρχομαι. 4, 4.**

παρ-ετέτατο. See **παρα-τείνω.**

παρ-έχω, *furnish; cause.* **1, 11.**

παρήγγειλε. See **παρ-αγγέλλω.**

παρ-ήλασα, -σε. See **παρ-ελαύνω.**

παρ-ῆλθον. See **παρ-έρχομαι.**

παρ-ῆν. See **πάρ-ειμι.**

πάρ-οδος, -ου, ἡ, *way past, passage, pass.* **4, 4.**

Παρράσιος, -ου, ὁ, *a Parrhasian.* Parrhasia was in southwest Arcadia. **1, 2.**

παρ-ών. See **πάρ-ειμι.**

Παρύσατις, -ιδος, ἡ, *Parysatis.* **1, 1.**

πᾶς, *every, all;* ὁ πᾶς, *the whole.* **1, 2.**

Πᾱσίων, -ωνος, ὁ, *Pasion.* **2, 3.**

πάσχω, πείσομαι, ἔπαθον, πέπονθα, *suffer, experience;* εὖ π., *enjoy* or *receive favors.* **3, 4.**

Πατηγύᾱς, -ᾱ (Dor. gen.), ὁ, *Pategyas.* **8, 1.**

πατήρ, -τρός, ὁ, *father.* **4, 12.**

πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *fatherland.* **3, 3.**

πατρῷος, -ᾱ, -ον, *paternal, hereditary.* **7, 6.**

παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα, πέπαυκα, πέπαυμαι, ἐπαύθην, *cause to cease;* mid., *cease, stop.* **2, 2.**

Παφλαγών, -όνος, ὁ, *a Paphlagonian.* Paphlagonia was a country in Asia Minor on the Euxine. **8, 5.**

πεδίον, -ου, τό, *plain.* **1, 2.**

πεζός, -ή, -όν, *of infantry;* subst., *foot-soldier,* plur. *infantry;* πεζῇ, *on foot.* **3, 12.**

πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα, πέπεικα, πέποιθα (*I trust*), πέπεισμαι, ἐπείσθην, act., *persuade;* mid. and pass., *obey, believe.* **1, 3.**

πειράω, -ᾱ́σω, com. mid., *try, attempt.* **1, 7.**

πείσᾱς, πεισθείς. See **πείθω.**

πείσομαι. See **πάσχω** and **πείθω.**

πελάζω, *draw near, approach.* **8, 15.**

Πελοποννήσιος, -ίᾱ, -ον, *Peloponnesian.* **1, 6.**

Πελοπόννησος, -ου, ἡ, *Peloponnese, Peloponnēsus*, that part of Greece which is south of the Isthmus of Corinth. 4, 2.
Πέλται, -ῶν, αἱ, *Peltæ*. See Map. 2, 10.
πελταστής, -ου, ὁ, *peltast*, a soldier armed with a spear (ἀκόντιον) about 4½ feet long, a sword, and a small wooden shield (πέλτη) covered with leather. 2, 3.
πελταστικός, -ή, -όν, *of peltasts;* subst., *force of peltasts, targeteers*. 8, 5.
πέμπω, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα, πέπομφα, πέπεμμαι, ἐπέμφθην, *send*. 1, 8.
πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *five hundred*. 2, 3.
πέντε, *five*. 2, 8.
πεντε-καί-δεκα, (*five and ten*), *fifteen*. 4, 1.
πεντήκοντα, *fifty*. 4, 19.
πεπτοκότα, πέπτωκα, -κώς. See **πίπτω**.
πέρᾱν, *on the other side, across*, often with gen. 5, 10.
πέρδῑξ, -ῑκος, ὁ, ἡ, *partridge*. 5, 3.
περί, prep. with the gen., dat., and acc., *around;* with gen., *about, concerning;* π. παντὸς (or πολλοῦ) ποιεῖσθαι, *to consider as all* (or *very*) *important;* with dat. (rare), *about*, with the idea of *place where;* with acc., *about, concerning, around;* οἱ περὶ Κῦρον, *Cyrus and his men*, lit. *those about Cyrus*. 2, 8.
περι-γίγνομαι, *become above, overcome, excel*, with the gen. 1, 10.
περί-ειμι, *get the upper hand, surpass*. See **περι-γίγνομαι**. 8, 13.
περι-έχω, *surround*. See **ἔχω**. 2, 22.
περι-ῆν. See **περί-ειμι**.
περι-πεσεῖν. See **περι-πίπτω**.
περι-πίπτω, *fall round about, embrace*. See **πίπτω**. 8, 28.
περι-πλέω, (πλεύσομαι or πλευσοῦμαι, ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, -σμαι), *sail around*. 2, 21.
περι-ρ-ρέω, *flow round about*. 5, 4.
περιστερά, -ᾶς, ἡ, *dove*. 4, 9.
Πέρσης, -ου, ὁ, *a Persian*. 2, 20.
Περσικός, -ή, -όν, *Persian*. 2, 27.
πέτομαι, *fly*. 5, 3.
πέτρᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *rock, rocky cliff*. 4, 4.
πηγή, -ῆς, ἡ, *source*, of a river; *fountain, spring*. 2, 7.
πηλός, -οῦ, ὁ, *mud*. 5, 7.
Πίγρης, -ητος, ὁ, *Pigres*. 2, 17.
πιέζω, *press, bring into distress;* pass., *be hard pressed*. 1, 10.
πίμπλημι, πλήσω, ἔπλησα, πέπληκα, πέπλη(σ)μαι, ἐπλήσθην, *fill*. 5, 10.
πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, ἔπεσον, πέπτωκα, *fall*. 8, 28.
Πῑσίδης, -ου, ὁ, *a Pisidian*. Pisidia was a district of Asia Minor, south of Phrygia, and bordering on the Mediterranean. 1, 11.
πιστεύω, *trust, have confidence in*. 2, 2.
πίστις, -εως, ἡ, *trust, confidence, faith, fidelity, pledge*. 2, 26.
πιστός, -ή, -όν, *trusty;* τὰ πιστά, *pledges*. 4, 15.
πιστότης, -ητος, ἡ, *faithfulness*. 8, 29.
πλάγιος, -ίᾱ, -ον, *oblique;* εἰς πλάγιον, *obliquely, sidewise*. 8, 10.
πλαίσιον, -ου, τό, *rectangle; square*. 8, 9.
πλανάομαι, *wander*. Cf. PLANET. 2, 25.
πλεθριαῖος, -αίᾱ, -ον, *of a plethron* (101 feet) in length or width. 5, 4.
πλέθρον, -ου, τό, *plethron*, 30.83 meters, a little more than 101 feet. 2, 5.
πλείων, πλεῖστος. See **πολύς**.
πλέων, πλέον. See **πολύς**.
πληγή, -ῆς, ἡ, *plaga, blow*. Cf. PLAGUE. 5, 11.
πλῆθος, -ους, τό, *multitude, extent, number*. 5, 9.
πλήθω, *be full;* ἀγορᾱ̀ πλήθουσα, *market-time*. 8, 1.
πλήν, prep. with the gen., *except;* conj., *except, except that*. 1, 6.
πλήρης, -ες, *full*. 2, 7.
πλησιάζω, *come near, approach*. 5, 2.
πλησίον, adv., *near*. 8, 1.
πλοῖον, -ου, τό, *boat*, large or small; the larger boat propelled by banks of oars is called ναῦς or τριήρης. 2, 5.

ποδ-ήρης, *-ες, reaching to the feet.* 8, 9.
ποδός, **ποδῶν**. See **πούς**.
ποιέω, *make, do.* See **εὖ**, **κακῶς**, **περί**. 1, 2.
ποιητέος, *-ᾱ, -ον, faciendus, requiring to be made* or *done.* Cf. POET. 3, 15.
ποικίλος, *-η, -ον, many colored, embroidered.* 5, 8,
πολεμέω, *make* or *carry on war.* 1, 5.
πολέμιος, *-ιᾱ, -ον, hostile;* subst., *an enemy; τὰ πολέμια, military affairs.* 2, 19.
πόλεμος, *-ου, ὁ, war.* 5, 9.
πολιορκέω, *besiege.* 1, 7.
πόλις, *-εως, ἡ, city.* 1, 6.
πολλάκις, *often.* 2, 11.
πολλα-πλάσιος, *-ίᾱ, -ον, manifold, many times as many.* 7, 3.
πολύς, comp. *πλείων* or *πλέων*, superl. *πλεῖστος, much,* plur. *many; τὸ πολύ, the greater part; διὰ πολλά, for many reasons; πλεῖον, πλέον, plus, more.* 1, 6.
πολυ-τελής, *-ές, very expensive, costly.* 5, 8.
πονέω, *labor, toil.* 4, 14.
πορείᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, journey.* 7, 20.
πορεύομαι, *proceed, march, journey.* 2, 1.
πόρρω, *far away, far from,* often with gen. 3, 12.
πορφυροῦς (*-εος*), *-ᾶ* (*-έᾱ*), *-οῦν* (*-εον*), *purple.* 5, 8.
ποσί. See **πούς**.
ποταμός, *-οῦ, ὁ, river.* Cf. HIPPO-POTAMUS. 2, 5.
ποτέ, *at some time, once.* 5, 7.
πότερον, *utrum, whether.* 4, 13.
πού, *anywhere; perhaps.* 2, 27.
πούς, *ποδός, ὁ, foot.* 2, 8.
πρᾶγμα, *-ατος, τό, deed, affair;* plur., *business; trouble;* cf. *πράττω.* 1, 11.
πρᾱέων. See **πρᾶος**.
πρᾱνής, *-ές, steep, headlong.* 5, 8.
πρᾶξις, *-εως, ἡ, business, undertaking.* 3, 16.
πρᾶος or **πρᾷος**, *-εῖα, -ον, mild, tame.* 4, 9.
πρᾱ́ττω, *πρᾱ́ξω, ἔπρᾱξα, πέπρᾱγα* or *-χα, πέπρᾱγμαι, ἐπρᾱ́χθην, do, effect, accomplish; εὖ π., fare well; κακῶς π., fare ill.* 6, 6.
πρᾴως, *mildly.* See **πρᾶος**. 5, 14.
πρέσβυς, *-εως,* comp. *-ύτερος, old.* Cf. PRESBYTER. 1, 1.
πρίασθαι. See **ὠνέομαι**.
πρίν, conj., *before,* freq. with *πρόσθεν* preceding. 1, 10.
πρό, prep. with the gen., *before; in front of, before* (temporal); *in behalf of.* 2, 17.
προ-αισθάνομαι, *perceive in advance* or *beforehand.* See **αἰσθάνομαι**. 1, 7.
προ-βάλλω, *throw before;* mid., *throw before one's self; προβάλλεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, present arms.* See **βάλλω**. 2, 17.
προ-δίδωμι, *prodo, give up, betray.* See **δίδωμι**. 3, 5.
προ-δόντα, **προ-δούς**. See **προ-δίδωμι**.
προ-δραμόντες, **-μών**. See **προ-τρέχω**.
προ-εἶδον. See **προ-οράω**.
πρό-ειμι, *go forward.* 2, 17.
προ-εῖπον, *speak forth, proclaim.* See **εἶπον**. 2, 17.
προ-ειστήκειν. See **προ-ίστημι**.
προ-ῄειν. See **πρό-ειμι**.
πρό-θῡμος, *-ον, eager, zealous.* 3, 19.
προ-θύμως, *eagerly, zealously.* 4, 9.
προ-θῡ́ομαι, *sacrifice before* (something) or *in behalf of* (some one). 7, 18.
προ-ίδοιεν, **-μι**. See **προ-οράω**.
προ-ιέναι, **-ιόντων**. See **πρό-ειμι**.
προ-ίστημι, *place in command, set in charge;* intr., *command.* See **ἵστημι**. 2, 1.
προ-κατα-καίω or **-κάω**, *burn in advance of* or *before* others. See **καίω**. 6, 2.
προ-κατα-λαμβάνω, *seize in advance of* or *before* others. See **λαμβάνω**. 3, 14.
προ-μετωπίδιον, *-ου, τό, protection for the head, head-piece, frontlet.* 8, 7.
Πρόξενος, *-ου, ὁ, Proxenus.* 1, 11.

προ-οράω, *see beforehand* or *in front.* 8, 20.

πρός, prep. with the gen., dat., and acc.; with gen., *in front of; πρὸς θεῶν, in the sight of the gods; πρὸς τοῦ τρόπου, in accord with the character;* with dat., *at, in addition to;* with acc., *to, towards; with reference to.* 1, 3.

προσ-αιτέω, *ask in addition, ask besides.* See **αἰτέω.** 3, 21.

προσ-έλαβον. See **προσ-λαμβάνω.**

πρόσ-ειμι, *come towards, advance.* See **εἶμι.** 5, 14.

προσ-ελαύνω, *ride* or *march towards, advance.* See **ἐλαύνω.** 5, 12.

προσ-ελθόντες. See **προσ-έρχομαι.**

προσ-έρχομαι, *come towards, approach.* See **ἔρχομαι.** 3, 9.

προσ-ετάχθη. See **προσ-τάττω.**

προσ-έχω, *hold to, apply; τὸν νοῦν προσέχω, give attention to.* See **ἔχω.** 5, 9.

προσ-ῄειν. See **πρόσ-ειμι.**

προσ-ήκω, *come* or *extend towards, pertain to, be related to.* 6, 1.

προσ-ῄεσαν. See **πρόσ-ειμι.**

πρόσθεν, *before; π. . . . πρίν, before, sooner than; ὁ πρόσθεν, the previous.* 1, 10.

προσ-θέσθαι. See **προσ-τίθημι.**

προσ-ιών. See **πρόσ-ειμι.**

προσ-κυνέω, *do reverence, bow down to;* of an oriental salute, *make a salaam, do homage.* 6, 10.

προσ-λαμβάνω, *take in addition* or *besides.* See **λαμβάνω.** 7, 3.

προσ-ποιέομαι, *pretend, claim.* 3, 14.

προσ-πολεμέω, *make war against.* 6, 6.

προσ-τάττω, *lay a command* or *duty upon, command.* See **τάττω.** 6, 10.

προ-στερνίδιον, *-ου, τό, breast-protector, breastplate.* 8, 7.

προσ-τίθημι, *put* or *place to, add;* mid., *put one's self to another, concur, agree.* 6, 10.

πρόσω, *forward.* 3, 1.

πρότερος, *-ᾱ, -ον, prior, before, sooner;* superl. *πρῶτος.* 2, 25.

προ-τῑμάω, *honor* or *esteem before* others. See **τῑμάω.** 4, 14.

προ-τρέχω, *run forward* or *before, outrun.* See **τρέχω.** 5, 2.

προ-φαίνω, mid., *appear in sight.* 8, 1.

πρό-φασις, *-εως, ἡ, pretext.* 1, 7.

πρῶτος, *-η, -ον, first; πρῶτον*, adv., *primum, first;* comp. *πρότερος.* 2, 16.

πτέρυξ, *-υγος, ἡ, wing.* 5, 3.

Πῡθαγόρᾱς, *-ου, ὁ, Pythagoras.* 4, 2.

Πύλαι, *-ῶν, Pylæ,* i.e., "*The Gates.*" 5, 5.

πύλη, *-ης, ἡ, gate;* generally in plur. 4, 4.

πυνθάνομαι, *πεύσομαι, ἐπυθόμην, πέπυσμαι, learn by inquiry, learn, inquire, ascertain.* 5, 15.

Πύραμος, *-ου, ὁ, Pyramus.* 4, 1.

πῡρός, *-οῦ, ὁ,* chiefly plur., *wheat.* 2, 22.

πώ, *yet, up to this* or *that time, hitherto.* 2, 26.

πωλέω, *sell.* 5, 5.

πώποτε, *ever yet, ever, up to this* or *that time.* 6, 11.

πῶς, *how?* 7, 2.

πώς, encl., *somehow; ὧδέ πως, about as follows.* 7, 9.

Ρ.

ῥέω, *ῥεύσομαι* or *ῥυήσομαι, ἐρρύηκα, ἐρρύην, flow.* 2, 7.

ῥίπτω, *ῥίψω, ἔρρῑψα, ἔρρῑφα, -μμαι, ἐρρίφθην* and *-φην, throw.* 5, 8.

Σ.

σαλπίζω, *blow the trumpet.* 2, 17.

Σάμιος, *-ου, ὁ, a Samian.* Samos was a very important island lying off the west central part of Asia Minor. 7, 5.

Σάρδεις, *-εων, αἱ, Sardis,* on the river Pactōlus; the capital of Lydia. 2, 2.

σατραπεύω, *be satrap, govern as satrap.* 7, 6.

σατράπης, -ου, ὁ, *satrap*, governor of a province under the Persian king. 1, 2.

Σάτυρος, -ου, ὁ, *a satyr, Silēnus* in Anab. 2, 13.

σαφῶς, *clearly.* 4, 18.

σεαυτοῦ, -ῆς, or **σαυτοῦ**, -ῆς, *of thyself.* 6, 7.

σήσαμον, -ου, τό, *sesame*, a seed largely cultivated in Persia for the oil it furnishes, and for its excellence as a food. 2, 22.

σῑγή, -ῆς, ἡ, *silence.* 8, 11.

σίγλος, -ου, ὁ, *siglus, shekel*, = 7½ obols, 25 cents. 5, 6.

Σῑλᾱνός, -ου, ὁ, *Silānus.* 7, 18.

σῑτ-αγωγός, -όν, *grain-carrying;* with πλοῖα, *grain transports.* 7, 15.

σῖτος, -ου, ὁ, *grain*, especially *wheat.* 4, 19.

σιωπάω, *be silent.* 3, 2.

σκεπτέος, -ᾱ, -ον, *to be considered.* 3, 11.

σκέπτομαι or **σκοπέω**, σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, ἔσκεμμαι, *look at, view, examine, watch.* See **σκεπτέος**.

σκευο-φόρος, -ον, *baggage-carrying;* subs., neut. plur., *pack-animals, baggage.* 3, 7.

σκηνέω, *encamp.* 4, 9.

σκηνή, -ῆς, ἡ, *tent.* 2, 17.

σκηπτοῦχος, -ου, ὁ, *scepter-bearer.* 6, 11.

σκοπέω. See **σκέπτομαι.**

Σόλοι, -ων, οἱ, *Soli.* See Map. 2, 24.

Σοφαίνετος, -ου, ὁ, *Sophænetus.* 1, 11.

σοφίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *wisdom*, (musical) *skill.* 2, 8.

σοφός, -ή, -όν, *wise, accomplished, skilful.* See **σοφίᾱ.**

σπάω, σπάσω, ἔσπασα, ἔσπακα, ἔσπασμαι, ἐσπάσθην, *draw.* 8, 29.

σπεύδω, *hasten.* 3, 14.

σπουδή, -ῆς, ἡ, *haste.* 8, 4.

στάδιον, -ου, τό, plur. τὰ στάδια, or οἱ στάδιοι, *stadion*, little less than a *furlong*, = about 606 feet. 4, 1.

σταθμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *stopping-place, station, day's journey*, about five parasangs, or fifteen miles. 2, 5.

στέγασμα, -ατος, τό, *covering* (for tents). 5, 10.

στενός, -ή, -όν, *narrow.* Cf. STENOGRAPHY. 4, 4.

στενο-χωρίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *narrow place* or *pass.* 5, 7.

στερέω, *deprive;* pass. στέρομαι. 4, 8.

στέρνον, -ου, τό, *breast.* 8, 26.

στέφανος, -ου, ὁ, *crown.* 7, 7.

στῆναι, στήσᾱς. See **ἵστημι.**

στίβος, -ου, ὁ, *path, track.* 6, 1.

στῖφος, -ους, τό, (dense) *mass* or *body.* 8, 13.

στλεγγίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *strigil, flesh-comb, scraper, tiara.* 2, 10.

στολή, -ῆς, ἡ, *dress, robe.* 2, 27.

στόλος, -ου, ὁ, *military preparation, expedition.* 2, 5.

στράτευμα, -ατος, τό, *army.* 1, 7.

στρατεύω, *engage in war, be in the field.* 1, 11.

στρατηγέω, *be general, command, lead.* 3, 15.

στρατηγίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *office of leader* or *general, military command.* 3, 15.

στρατηγός, -οῦ, ὁ, *general.* 1, 2.

στρατιά, -ᾶς, ἡ, *army.* 2, 12.

στρατιώτης, -ου, ὁ, *soldier.* 1, 9.

στρατοπεδεύω, com. mid., *encamp.* 3, 7.

στρατός, -οῦ, ὁ, *army.* 5, 7.

στρεπτός, -ή, -όν, *twisted;* ὁ στρεπτός, *necklace.* 2, 27.

στρουθός, -οῦ, ὁ, ἡ, *sparrow;* with μέγας, *ostrich.* 5, 2.

Στυμφάλιος, -ου, ὁ, *a Stymphalian.* Stymphālus was a city in northeastern Arcadia. 1, 11.

σύ, *thou.* 3, 3.

συγ-γενής, -ές, *of the same race, akin;* subst., *relative, kinsman.* 6, 10.

συγ-γίγνομαι, *come into intercourse* or *acquaintance with, associate with.* See **γίγνομαι.** 1, 9.

συγ-καλέω, *convoke, call together.* See **καλέω.** **4, 8.**

Συέννεσις, *-ιος, ὁ, Syennesis.* **2, 12.**

συλ-λαμβάνω, *apprehend, arrest.* See **λαμβάνω.** **1, 3.**

συλ-λέγω, (λέξω, ἔλεξα, εἴλοχα, εἴλεγμαι, ἐλέγην), *collect, gather together.* **1, 7.**

συλ-λογή, *-ῆς, ἡ, collection, levy* (of soldiers). See preceding word. **1, 6.**

συμ- = **συν**.

συμ-βάλλω, mid., *contribute.* See **βάλλω.** **1, 9.**

συμ-βουλεύω, *counsel, advise;* mid., *confer with, consult.* See **βουλεύω.** **1, 10.**

σύμ-βουλος, *-ου, ὁ, counsellor.* **6, 5.**

σύμ-μαχος, *-ου, ὁ, ally.* **3, 6.**

σύμ-πᾱς, *-ᾱσα, -αν,* stronger than πᾶς, *all* taken *together, altogether.* **2, 9.**

συμ-πέμπω, *send with* some one. See **πέμπω.** **2, 20.**

σύμ-πλεως, *-ων, filled with, abounding in.* **2, 22.**

συμ-πολεμέω, *fight with* (as an ally). **4, 2.**

συμ-πορεύομαι, *proceed with.* **3, 5.**

συμ-πράττω, *work with* another, *co-operate.* See **πράττω.** **1, 8.**

σύν, prep. with the dat., *with, in company with, along with;* frequently used by Xenophon where other Attic prose writers used μετά with the gen. **1, 11.**

συν-αγείρω, *gather together, collect.* **5, 9.**

συν-άγω, *bring together, collect.* See **ἄγω.** **3, 2.**

συν-αλλάττω, *change together, reconcile.* See **ἀλλάττω.** **2, 1.**

συν-ανα-βαίνω, *go up with.* See **βαίνω.** **3, 18.**

συν-αντάω, *meet with, meet.* **8, 15.**

συν-άπτω, *join together, join.* See **ἅπτω.** **5, 16.**

συν-εγενόμην. See **συγ-γίγνομαι.**

συν-εῖδον. See **συν-οράω.**

συν-εκ-βιβάζω, *join in making go out, help extricate.* **5, 7.**

συν-έλεξα, συν-ελέγετο. See **συλ-λέγω.**

συν-έπεμψεν. See **συμ-πέμπω.**

συν-επι-σπεύδω, *join in hastening on.* See **σπεύδω.** **5, 8.**

συν-επολέμει. See **συμ-πολεμέω.**

συν-έπομαι, *follow with, accompany.* **3, 9.**

συν-εσπειραμένην. See **συ-σπειράω.**

συν-έσπων. See **συ-σπάω.**

συν-εστρατεύοντο. See **συ-στρατεύω.**

συν-ήγαγεν, -ον. See **συν-άγω.**

συν-ῄειν, συν-ῄεσαν. See **σύν-ειμι.**

σύν-θημα, *-ατος, τό, agreement, watch-word.* [σύν + τίθημι.] **8, 16.**

συν-ιδεῖν. See **συν-οράω.**

σύν-οιδα, *be conscious, realize.* See **οἶδα.** **3, 10.**

συν-οράω, *see together* or *at a glance.* **5, 9.**

συν-τάττω, *arrange together, draw up* (forces). See **τάττω.** **2, 15.**

Συρᾱκόσιος or **Συρᾱκούσιος**, *-ου, ὁ, a Syracusan.* Syracuse was the largest city of Sicily, situated in the south-eastern part. **2, 9.**

Συρίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, Syria,* that part of western Asia lying east of the Mediterranean and north of Arabia. **4, 4.**

Σύριος, *-ίᾱ, -ον, Syrian.* **4, 5.**

Σύρος, *-ου, ὁ, a Syrian.* **4, 9.**

συ-σκευάζω, *pack up; make ready.* **3, 14.**

συ-σπάω, *draw together.* See **σπάω.** **5, 10.**

συ-σπειράω, *roll* or *draw closely together.* **8, 21.**

συ-στρατεύω, com. mid., *join in an expedition.* **4, 3.**

συ-στρατιώτης, *-ου, ὁ, fellow-soldier.* **2, 26.**

συχνός, *-ή, -όν, much, considerable;* of time, *long;* of number, *many, numerous;* συχνὸν (sc. χωρίον), *at a considerable distance.* **8, 8.**

σφάγιον, *-ου, τό, sacrificial victim;* plur., *omens* from sacrifices. **8, 15.**

σφεῖς, σφίσι. See **οὗ, οἷ, ἕ.**

σχεδίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *raft, float.* **5, 10.**
σχεδόν, *nearly, almost.* **8, 25.**
σχίζω, *split.* **5, 12.**
σχολαίως, *leisurely.* **5, 8.**
σχολή, -ῆς, ἡ, *leisure.* **6, 9.**
Σωκράτης, -ους, ὁ, *Socrates.* **1, 11.**
Σῶσις, -ιος, ὁ, *Sōsis.* **2, 9.**
σωτήρ, -ῆρος, ὁ, *savior.* **8, 16.**

T.

τ᾽, by elision for τέ.
τάλαντον, -ου, τό, *talent*, about $1,100. **7, 18.**
τἆλλα, crasis for τὰ ἄλλα.
Ταμώς, -ώ, ὁ, *Tamos.* **2, 21.**
τάξις, -εως, ἡ, *arrangement, order; line* or *body of soldiers; post, position.* **2, 16.**
τάραχος, -ου, ὁ, *confusion.* **8, 2.**
Ταρσοί, -ῶν, οἱ, *Tarsus* or *Tarsi*, the capital of Cilicia. **2, 23.**
τάττω, τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμαι, ἐτάχθην, *arrange, put in order, draw up in line of battle, marshal.* **2, 15.**
τάφος, -ου, ὁ, *burial, grave.* **6, 11.**
τάφρος, -ου, ἡ, *ditch, trench.* **7, 14.**
ταχθῆναι, ταχθείς. See **τάττω.**
τάχα, *quickly.* **8, 8.**
ταχέως, comp. θᾶττον, superl. τάχιστα, *quickly.* **2, 4.**
τάχιστα. See **ταχέως.**
ταχίστην. See **ταχύς.**
ταχύς, comp. θάττων, superl. τάχιστος, *quick.* **2, 20**; cf. **2, 4.**
τέ, postpositive and enclitic, *and;* τε . . . καί or τε . . . τε, *both . . . and.* **1, 5.**
τεθνηκότα, τεθνηκώς. See **θνήσκω.**
τεῖχος, -ους, τό, *wall.* **4, 4.**
τέκνον, -ου, τό, *child.* **4, 8.**
τελευτάω, -ήσω, *bring to an end, finish; end one's life, die.* **1, 3.**
τελευτή, -ῆς, ἡ, *end.* **1, 1.**
τετρακισχίλιοι, -αι, -α, *four thousand.* **1, 10.**
τετρακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *four hundred.* **4, 3.**
τετταράκοντα, *forty.* **5, 13.**
τέτταρες, -α, *four.* **2, 12.**
τεύξεσθε, τεύξομαι. See **τυγχάνω.**
Τίγρης, -ητος, ὁ, *the Tigris;* a river whose course is southeasterly through the countries southeast of the Euxine; it unites with the Euphrates, near Babylon, before entering the Persian Gulf. **7, 15.**
τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθεικα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην, *put, place;* mid., τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, *stand under arms, halt in line; put down arms, stack arms.* **2, 10.**
τῑμάω, -ήσω, *honor.* **3, 3.**
τίμιος, -ίᾱ, -ιον, *honorable, honored, valuable.* **2, 27.**
τῑμωρέω, *avenge;* mid., *avenge one's self on, punish.* **3, 4.**
τὶς, τὶ, *some one, any one, some person* or *thing.* **2, 20.**
τίς, τί, *who? what?* **3, 18.**
Τισσαφέρνης, -ους, ὁ, *Tissaphernes.* **1, 2.**
τιτρώσκω, τρώσω, ἔτρωσα, τέτρωμαι, ἐτρώθην, *wound.* **8, 26.**
τοιόσ-δε, -άδε, -όνδε, *such as, such as this,* especially of what follows; λέγειν τοιάδε, *to speak as follows.* **3, 2.**
τοιοῦτος, -αύτη, -οῦτο(ν), *such*, usually referring to what precedes. **3, 14.**
τόξευμα, -ατος, τό, *arrow.* **8, 19.**
τοξεύω, *shoot the bow;* pass., *be struck with an arrow.* **8, 20.**
τοξότης, -ου, ὁ, *bowman.* **2, 9.**
τόπος, -ου, ὁ, *place.* **5, 1.**
τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οῦτο(ν), *so great, so much* (plur., *so many*). **3, 14.**
τότε, *then, at that time.* **1, 6.**
τοὔμπαλιν. See **ἔμπαλιν.** **4, 15.**
Τράλλεις, -εων, αἱ, *Tralles*, a city in the northern part of Caria, near the Mæander. **4, 8.**
τραῦμα, -ατος, τό, *wound.* **8, 26.**
τράχηλος, -ου, ὁ, *neck, throat.* **5, 8.**
τρεῖς, τρία, *tres, three.* **1, 10.**

τρέπω, *τρέψω, ἔτρεψα, τέτροφα, τέτραμμαι, ἐτράπην, turn.* **8, 24.**

τρέφω, *θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, τέτροφα, τέθραμμαι, ἐτράφην, nourish, support.* **1, 9.**

τρέχω, *δραμοῦμαι, ἔδραμον, δεδράμηκα, δεδράμημαι, run.* **5, 2.**

τρία. See **τρεῖς.**

τριάκοντα, *thirty.* **2, 9.**

τριακόσιοι, *-αι, -α, three hundred.* **1, 2.**

τριήρης, *-ους, ἡ, trireme,* the Greek war-vessel. **2, 21.**

τρισκαίδεκα, *thirteen.* **5, 4.**

τρισχίλιοι, *-αι, -α, three thousand.* **6, 4.**

τρίτος, *-η, -ον, third.* **6, 8.**

τροπή, *-ῆς, ἡ, a turning, defeat, rout.* See **τρέπω. 8, 25.**

τρόπος, *-ου, ὁ, turn, way, manner, custom, character.* See **τρέπω. 1, 9.**

τροφή, *-ῆς, ἡ, support, nurture.* See **τρέφω. 1, 9.**

τυγχάνω, *τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχηκα, happen, chance, happen* or *chance upon.* **1, 2.**

Τυριάειον, *-ου, τό, Tyriæum.* **2, 14.**

Υ.

ὕδωρ, *ὕδατος, τό, water.* **5, 7.**

ὕλη, *-ης, ἡ, wood, bush, shrubbery.* **5, 1.**

ὑμᾶς, ὑμεῖς, ὑμῖν, ὑμῶν. See **σύ. 3, 3.**

ὕπ-αρχος, *-ου, ὁ, subordinate officer, lieutenant.* **2, 20.**

ὑπ-άρχω, *begin, exist, support, favor.* See **ἄρχω. 1, 4.**

ὑπέρ, prep. with the gen. and acc., *super, over;* with gen., *over, in behalf of, on account of, concerning;* with acc., *over, beyond.* **1, 9.**

ὑπερ-βολή, *-ῆς, ἡ, passage over* (e.g., mountains). **2, 25.**

ὕπερθεν, *from over, over above.* **4, 4.**

ὑπ-εσχόμην. See **ὑπ-ισχνέομαι.**

ὑπ-ήκοος, *-ον, obedient, subject.* **6, 6.**

ὑπ-ισχνέομαι, *ὑποσχήσομαι, ὑπεσχόμην, ὑπέσχημαι, hold one's self under, undertake, promise.* **2, 2.**

ὑπό, prep. with the gen., dat., and acc., *sub, under;* with gen., *under, by* (of agency, with passive verbs); with dat., *under, at the foot of;* with acc., *to* (a position) *under, down under.* **1, 10.**

ὑπο-δέχομαι, (*δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, ἐδέχθην*), *take* or *receive under* one's protection, *welcome.* **6, 3.**

ὑπο-ζύγιον, *-ου, τό, yoke-animal, beast of burden.* **3, 1.**

ὑπο-λαμβάνω, *take under* one's protection. See **λαμβάνω. 1, 7.**

ὑπο-λείπω, *leave behind;* pass., *be left behind, stay* or *fall behind.* See **λείπω. 2, 25.**

ὑπόμνημα, *-ατος, τό, reminder, remembrance.* **6, 3.**

ὑπ-οπτεύω, *suspect.* **1, 1.**

ὑπο-χωρέω, *withdraw, give way, retreat.* **4, 18.**

ὑποψίᾱ, *-ας, ἡ, suspicion, distrust.* See **ὑπ-οπτεύω. 3, 21.**

ὑστεραῖος, *-ᾱ, -ον, next* (in time), *following.* **2, 21.**

ὑστερέω, *be behind, later than, too late for.* **7, 12.**

ὕστερος, *-ᾱ, -ον, later, behind;* **ὕστερον**, adv., *later, afterwards.* **3, 2.**

ὑψηλός, *-ή, -όν, high.* **2, 22.**

Φ.

φαίην. See **φημί.**

φαίνω, *φανῶ, ἔφηνα, πέφαγκα, πέφηνα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνην* and *ἐφάνθην, show; show one's self, appear, be seen.* **3, 19.**

φάλαγξ, *-αγγος, ἡ, line* or *order of battle, phalanx.* **2, 17.**

φανερός, *-ά, -όν,* [*φαίνω*], *apparent, evident.* **3, 21.**

φασί(ν). See **φημί.**

φέρω, *οἴσω, ἤνεγκον* or *-κα, ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἠνέχθην, bear, carry, endure; χαλεπῶς φ., be troubled.* **2, 22.**

φεύγω, *φεύξομαι* or *φευξοῦμαι*, *ἔφυγον*, *πέφευγα*, *flee*; *ὁ φεύγων*, *fugitive, exile*. **1, 7.**

φημί, *φήσω*, *ἔφησα*, *say*; *οὔ φημι*, *refuse, deny*; instead of *φήσω* and *ἔφησα*, *ἐρῶ* and *εἶπον* are generally used. See **εἶπον. 2, 5.**

φθάνω, *φθήσομαι* or *φθάσω*, *ἔφθασα* or *ἔφθην*, *anticipate, be before*. **3, 14.**

φθέγγομαι, *utter* or *make a sound, shout*. **8, 18.**

φιλέω, *love*. **1, 4.**

φιλίᾱ, *-ᾱς*, *ἡ*, *love, friendship*. **3, 5.**

φίλιος, *-ίᾱ*, *-ον*, *friendly*. **3, 14.**

φίλος, *-ου*, *ὁ*, *friend*. **1, 2.**

φιλο-τῑμέομαι, *love honor, be piqued* or *jealous*. **4, 7.**

φλυᾱρίᾱ, *-ᾱς*, *ἡ*, *folly, nonsense*. **3, 17.**

φοβέω, *frighten*; mid., *fear*. **3, 17.**

φόβος, *-ου*, *ὁ*, *fear*. **2, 18.**

φοινῑκοῦς (*-εος*), *-ῆ* (*-έᾱ*), *-οῦν* (*-εον*), *purple*. **2, 16.**

Φοινίκη, *-ης*, *ἡ*, *Phœnicia*, a country on the eastern coast of the Mediterranean. **4, 5.**

φοινῑκιστής, *-οῦ*, *ὁ*, *wearer of the purple, courtier*. **2, 20.**

φοῖνιξ, *-ῑκος*, *ὁ*, *palm-tree*, espec. *date-palm*. **5, 10.**

Φοῖνιξ, *-ῑκος*, *ὁ*, *a Phœnician*. **4, 6.**

φορέω, *wear*. **8, 29.**

φράζω, *φράσω*, *-σα*, *πέφρακα*, *-σμαι*, *ἐφράσθην*, *show, declare, tell*. **6, 3.**

φρούρ-αρχος, *-ου*, *ὁ*, *watch-commander, commander of a garrison*. **1, 6.**

φρουρέω, *guard, watch*. **4, 8.**

φρούριον, *-ου*, *τό*, *watch-post, guard, garrison*. **4, 15.**

Φρυγίᾱ, *-ᾱς*, *ἡ*, *Phrygia*, a country in central Asia Minor. **2, 6.**

Φρύξ, *Φρυγός*, *ὁ*, *a Phrygian*. **2, 13.**

φυγάς, *-άδος*, *ὁ*, *fugitive, exile*. **1, 9.**

φυγή, *-ῆς*, *ἡ*, *flight*. **8, 24.**

φυλακή, *-ῆς*, *ἡ*, *vigilia, a garrison*. See **φυλάττω. 1, 6.**

φύλαξ, *-κος*, *ὁ*, *watcher, guard*. Cf. **φυλακή.**

φυλάττω, *φυλάξω*, *ἐφύλαξα*, *πεφύλακα*, *πεφύλαγμαι*, *ἐφυλάχθην*, *watch, guard*. **2, 1.**

φῡ́ω, *φύσω*, *ἔφῡσα* and *ἔφῡν*, *πέφῡκα*, *produce*; perf. and 2d aor., *be by nature*. **4, 10.**

X.

χαλεπαίνω, *be angry*. **4, 12.**

χαλεπός, *-ή*, *-όν*, *hard, difficult*. **3, 12.**

χαλεπῶς, *hardly, grievously*; *χαλεπῶς φέρω*, *be troubled, grieved*. **3, 3.**

χαλκοῦς (*-εος*), *-ῆ* (*-έᾱ*), *-οῦν* (*-εον*), *brazen, of bronze*. **2, 16.**

χαλκός, *-οῦ*, *ὁ*, *bronze*. **8, 8.**

Χάλος, *-ου*, *ὁ*, *the Chalus*. See Map. **4, 9.**

χάρις, *-ιτος*, *ἡ*, *grace, favor*; *χ. εἰδέναι*, *recognize a favor, feel grateful*. **4, 15.**

Χαρμάνδη, *-ης*, *ἡ*, *Charmande*. See Map. **5, 10.**

χειμών, *-ῶνος*, *ὁ*, *winter, cold*. **7, 6.**

χείρ, *χειρός*, *ἡ*, *hand*. **2, 26.**

Χειρίσοφος, *-ου*, *ὁ*, *Chīrisophus*. **4, 3.**

Χερρόνησος, *-ου*, *ἡ*, *Chersonese* or *Chersonēsus*. **1, 9.**

χῑ́λιοι, *-αι*, *-α*, *one thousand*. **2, 3.**

χῑλός, *-οῦ*, *ὁ*, *hay, fodder*. **5, 7.**

χιτών, *-ῶνος*, *ὁ*, *tunic*, the garment of linen or wool worn next the body. **2, 16.**

χοῖνιξ, *-κος*, *ἡ*, *chœnix*, about a *liter* or *quart*. **5, 6.**

χόρτος, *-ου*, *ὁ*, *dry grass, fodder*. **5, 5.**

χράομαι, *use, employ, treat, find*, with the dat. **3, 5.**

χρή, imperf. *ἐχρῆν* or *χρῆν*, infin. *χρῆναι*; impersonal, *it is necessary*, often best translated with a personal subject *one must* or *ought*. **3, 11.**

χρῄζω, *desire, wish*. **3, 20.**

χρῆμα, *-ατος*, *τό*, *thing*; plur., *goods, means, wealth*. **1, 9.**

χρῆναι, see **χρή**; **χρῆσθαι**, see **χράομαι.**

χρήσιμος, *-η*, *-ον*, *useful*. **6, 1.**

χρόνος, *-ου*, *ὁ*, *time*. **3, 2.**

χρῡσοῦς (-εος), -ῆ (-έᾱ), -οῦν (-εον), *golden*. **2, 10.**

χρῡσίον, -ου, τό, *gold piece, gold money*. **1, 9.**

χρῡσο-χάλῑνος, -ον, *golden-bridled*. **2, 27.**

χώρᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *place, land, country*. **1, 11.**

χωρέω, *give place, make room, go, move, advance*; of a measure, *contain, hold*. **5, 6.**

χωρίον, -ου, τό, *place, stronghold*. **2, 24.**

χωρίς, adv., *separately, apart*; as a prep., with the gen., *apart from*. **4, 13.**

Ψ.

Ψάρος, -ου, ὁ, *the Psarus*. See Map. **4, 1.**

ψέλιον, -ου, τό, *bracelet*. **2, 27.**

ψεύδω, *deceive*; mid., *deceive, lie*, with acc., *prove false to*; pass., *be deceived*. **3, 5.**

ψηφίζομαι, *to give one's vote, vote*. **4, 15.**

ψῑλός, -ή, -όν, *bare, unprotected*. **5, 5.**

Ω.

ὧδε, *thus* (as follows). **1, 6.**

ᾤετο. See **οἴομαι.**

ᾤκτειρον. See **οἰκτείρω.**

ὠνέομαι, ὠνήσομαι, ἐπριάμην, ἐώνημαι, ἐωνήθην, *buy, purchase*. **5, 6.**

ὤνια, -ων, τά, *wares*. **2, 18.**

ὥρᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *hora, season, suitable time, hour*. **3, 11.**

ὥρμουν. See **ὁρμέω.**

ὡς: (1) adv., *as, how, so as*; with numerals, *about*; with superlatives, *as possible*; with participles, *saying that, on the ground that*; (2) conj., temporal, *as, when*; declarative = ὅτι, *that*; causal, *since, as*; final, *that, in order that*, with subj. and opt.; (3) prep. with the acc. of a person, *to, against* **1, 2.**

ὥς, *thus, so*, like οὕτως. **8, 21.**

ὥσ-περ, *just as, just as if*. **3, 9.**

ὥστε, *so as, so that*. **1, 5.**

ὠτίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *bustard*. **5, 2.**

ὠφελέω, *help, assist, benefit*. **1, 9.**

ὠφέλιμος, -ον, *helping, useful, beneficial*. **6, 2.**

108929 CLASSICAL SEMINAR 488
Harper, William and Castle, C H23i
Inductive Greek primer
DATE

108929 CLASSICAL SEMINAR 488
H23i
DATE ~~TAKEN OUT~~ DUE

~~JUL 21 '79~~
~~AUG 4 '79~~